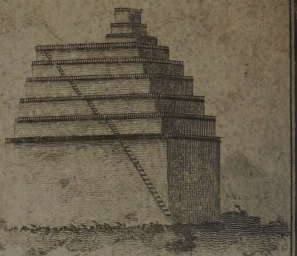
20383/c

A PLAN of the CITY and Lake of MEXICO.

with an elevation of an ANCIENT TEMPLE



Acolman

N.B. The Smoke marks the Platform of Sacrifice when the Battle was fought

Tepeaca

2d Position of Sandoval

Quatitlan

Tultepec

Tezcuco

Chimalhuacan

Xoloc

Villages

Cuyoacan

Post of the Cl. & of the Fleet under CORTES

Mexicaltzingo

Iztapalapa

1st Position of Sandoval

Ayotlan

Culhuacan

Huitzilopochtlis

Cuitlahuac

Chalco

Tepepan

Mexiquic

Ayotzingo

Tepalcan

Tetlahuacan

Suchimilco

10 Miles

20383/c
81075
Keatinge
January 3. 1806.

THE

TRUE HISTORY

OF THE

CONQUEST OF MEXICO,

By CAPTAIN BERNAL DIAZ del CASTILLO,
One of the Conquerors.

WRITTEN IN THE YEAR 1568.

printed at Madrid. in one Volume folio. 1632

——Labore, et expensis, et damno,
Tempore, veritatis cognitio adquiritur.
Doctor Evangelicus.

Translated from the Original Spanish,
By MAURICE KEATINGE Esq.

LONDON,
PRINTED FOR J. WRIGHT, PICCADILLY,
BY JOHN DEAN, HIGH STREET, CONGLETON,
1800.

1806
1568
238

WELLCOME
HISTORICAL
MEDICAL
LIBRARY

le society conforms with that of the Esquimaux. They pursued the Norwegians who discovered them and
ught a short armed with bows & arrows and having dogs with them and coming out of houses
grounds half buried in the ground. These Esquimaux however did not escape
1350. In the meantime the Norwegian Colony in East & West Greenland extended in 16 parishes and
farms as far as the 65th degree of north Latitude. They occasionally saw some traces of other populated
Esquimaux probably were not remote. It enumerates 17 Bishops the last of whom never was heard of
his arrival, so that the fate of the Colony which was established by the Esquimaux who came in
hers thither in and about a. 1400. N. B. as the Esquimaux are the only nation of America
know the use of the sail. it is very possible they adopted it from these Norwegians.
/ N. B. / were Pagans until the year 1000. / N. B. / the present Herrenhutter mission went
ther in 1721.

000. In the beginning of the 11th century America and Newfoundland was discovered by the Ice
ders Her-jolf, and Biorn who being driven to the South West came upon a flat coast overgrown with
d, and on their return they fell in with that is land. They were followed by Leif the son of Erick
came upon a stony barren part of coast, then, a White sandy flat & two days after to Vin
th an Island on the north / Bay of Esquimaux, R. St Laurence. They continued this situation for
eral years and explored the country without finding any trace of inhabitants until latterly
probably about a. 1040 / they had a skirmish with some people of diminutive stature
Esquimaux / very barbarous, using bows and arrows and leather boats, at that time a
ce & cruel people, propelled thither / by their own arrows / by the people of the interior
the / Chichimecas or hunting tribes / whom they described as cannibals and giants. / N. B. /
this day the Esquimaux are hated and persecuted by the Indians of the interior, they are in
sequence a dispirited race. / So that we find population just reaching the Eastern parts
America about the end of the 10th Century.

1400. An Italian vessel was driven on the coast of America, sailing along it to the
th, they met Savages who were cannibals, went naked, and were armed with
ws and arrows. From these the first intelligence is obtained of the Salvan
ation, around the Lake of Mexico. They said that farther to the South were
ies with great temples where men were offered in sacrifice to the Gods
d afterwards eaten.

E Oviedo

Eisenhis map which mentions the Antilles or anti-Insula might have been an idea borrowed from
Thabo. The petion of Columbas was Juan Perez de Marchena, rector of the Monastery of La Rabida
in Seville, a man of science and enthusiastic for discoveries. It is known Columbas was on the
point of returning when on the 19th. of September they saw a land bird (a 1492) and on the 11th
of October at 10 o'clock in the evening being in his cabin, on the poop, Columbas saw a light a head which
was first seized and then covered. He pointed it out to Pedro Gutierrez. It vanished and re-
appeared, being a torch carried by an inhabitant from one house to another. In the morning
they saw the Island of Guanahani or St. Salvador.
Newfoundland was discovered by Cabot in 1497.
The continent of America was discovered by Columbas in his third voyage at Punta
de Gracias in the river orinoco august the 14th 1502. In his fourth he coasted to Darien
and obtained an idea of that isthmus. A. 1508. Yucatan was discovered —
Florida in 1512. further intelligence of the Calvan nations was obtained in
1516. Peru was discovered in A. . . and California by the Marquis of
the Valley in 1538.
Not the great link which connects the history of mankind between the New
and Old world was discovered by Captain Cook. it is ascertained to be a cluster
of islands & even this it will appear is worthy of observation. All the nations
of the North coast ~~on the Equinoctial~~ as far as Greenland are connected in
timately with the Nootkan branch. but the Chichimecans of the interior
more remotely. P. D. B. Chichimeca is now the term of reproach of a modern
people to an Indian (as much as to say — barbarian) The Calvan, the Nootkan
& the Chinese languages are all defective in the same sounds —
The house of Wichanenish the Nootkan chief, of timber would hold 500 persons
it was adorned with strings of human skulls, a sack of which composed
his pillow. (these are Scythian customs) the population of this district
consists of eight villages containing about 6500 people. About Port
Cox are 10 villages containing 13,000. and about 3000 are under two
independent chiefs. This district extends to Queen Charlotte
in all four nations from Prince William's sound to Queen Charlotte
islands & the Northern archipelago & thence to Cape Shoalwater

...the South are 13 villages whose people speak a different language but all have the effects of the ...ese and Ledoux. all these nations like the S. S. Islanders exchange names in token of friendship ...the throw-board of the Esquimaux (which the Chickimeans do not) R. B. The population of Am...ica may be divided into three principal branches, viz: those of the first great colony who remained ...the coast as the Nootkans & Esquimaux &c. those who migrated to the South and retained ...e language customs & arts of their Mother country as the Sulvans, and thirdly the Chickimeans which includes all the hunting nations of North America. R. B.

...Eskimaux Tongues such as those of the Esquimaux begin on the west coast of America at 52 degrees North of Cape Mendocino those who use them are migrators from the North.

...e Americans in obeying the calls of nature do the reverse of Europeans as is the case in Asia with ...exception of China, which it is material to observe. The Nootkans squat the Chinese ...agon on their boats &c.

The Western americans on that coast and the islanders who are more ferocious than those to ...e east, and who wear ornamental helmets, blue stones in the under lip and tatooed, chew lime ...d tobacco as the Indians do their betle.

The Chinese boatmen like the Nootkans keep time with their oars to a song not unharmonious ...is custom does not extend beyond Columbia river. note Mexican Labourers

...me observers think the Oonalaskans Esquimaux and Greenlanders to be the same people ...d a distinct race from the Nootkans. such is Capt Cooks opinion

The Nootkans and New Zealanders who resemble in many points also many features ...eir cloth in the same particular way which may be called knotting or netting.

...the dances of these Americans every operation of life they know is dramatized. They accompany ...eir with the music of the drum and rattle. They have also a peculiar game ...ey play at with 52. pieces of wood. They use the patos patos of the South ...eas.

The people to the East of Queen Charlotte sound speak a different language are ...ery fierce cannibals and use the Tiki paho of New Zealand. their part is called ...loak bay. The Language of Port des Francois of Peyrouse is Nootkan.

The natives of Prince Williams sound in many respects resemble the Nootkans ...eir customs and dress, (who, greenstones, adzes, rattles, red feathers ...e other things they resemble the Esquimaux and Greenlanders

their language has the deficiencies of the Nootkan. The Americans further westward resemble those of Prince William's sound and not the Nootkans as is also the case with those of Cook's inlet and Hottons sound. Hare, Dogrib Hare & Greenlanders Esquimaux. Those of P. W.ms & Hottons sounds are of closest affinity. As far south as Lat 56 the people are like the Nootkans, use swords with flint edges and are cannibals. N. B. the Greenlanders know the use of iron in an early period. The Nootkans put the edge on the convex side of the knife, like that in the Egyptian paintings. V. Robertson.

The Tshutski and Koriacs the opposite neighbors to these people speak a language different from the Kamtschadals and shave the head. The peninsula of Kamtschatka was very populous until the small pox was brought thither by the Russians. The Lues was unknown there till their arrival. It has the Argali which was unknown in America or elsewhere except in Sardinia & Corsica. They have the Rein deer. call their God Kout-koo, and are Mungalians of an identical descent. A sledge was found on the coast of America in Lat. 64

The Nootkans in their sameness of countenance, want of expression, deficiency of beard resemble both Chineses and Calmucs. In their arts they bear relation to the South Sea Islanders. Their edge differs no way from that of the Greenlanders whom they resemble most. There is every reason to suppose they apply their ingenuity in carving and painting to the purpose of preserving as several figures of unobvious meaning are observed frequently to recur. — note infra. — A

The Esquimaux of Greenland previous to the inoculation of the small pox in 1733. amounted to 30,000 since that they are less than 10,000 The west side is now known to be inhabited by them to the 71.st degree. and inland to the 70.th The Americans of the Esquimaux branch are distinguished by the use of Skin boats, the Land board & the sail.

From Nootka to the west foot of the Rocky Mountains (which probably are the true Apallachian, which would bear the construction of posterior ages & Mountains) that is for five degrees of Longitude the people are the same with those on the coast. Their houses tombs customs arts & language are the same. They have the lab

dances, songs, the plaintive song, the hieroglyphics, the ingenuity in painting the
faces in pantomime the veneration of particular women, the drawing by the distaff upon
and names. These feasts are upon their ferocity a great terror to those inland that
those who inhabit from the west foot of the great Shining mountains, which they do not
end, which mountains run east of Columbia river and west of Slave lake, and who
under one parallel of latitude / under the names of the Naguiler, or Rocky Mountain,
Chipeweyan, beaver, and Dog-ribbed tribes. Next to these as a distinct nation are
the Knistinos and Algonquin who reach to Labrador and the river St Lawrence. To
the north of whom along the whole east as the Esquimeaux. and to the south the
first mentioned tribes have the Nadouessis who occupy the heads of the Missi-
sippi. In the vicinity of Albany is the seite of the Iroquois or five nations now
light, but almost extinct from the practice of abortion, or answer of the hard labour
the women are put to and the impossibility of procuring in the hunters life
any succedaneum, for food for a child in place of the mothers milk. At Lake
Superior the Algonquin nation was very populous until the end of the 17th Century.
To the Nadouessis, a Mississipi tribe the Assinipoels and Stone Indians be-
long. { If these five nations are what some call the six nations they speak a peculiar
language destitute of the sounds of M. and P.
The Knistinos are north of Lake ouiniepec. They are a very Laughty people
They extend there to Montreal, Askatchiwine, & red River they speak the Langu-
age used in Labrador and on the River St Lawrence. They are dogs for dress.
The Piaenous, Blackfoot, and Blood Indians use a language peculiar to
themselves
The fall, or big bellied Indians are in Lat. 47. Long.e 101.
The Chipeweyan and Algonquin language is considered the same. The Dog ribbed
Indians use a dialect of it, it therefore extends thro' America from the Shining
mountains to Labrador. This language may be considered the general one
of the Chichimecan or Appalachian tribes to which moreover belong the
Sioux, Slouacis Denees, Nascudenee, Atnah or Tschin / Tschin
a nation or tribe. asiatic / and others. The Chipeweyans who meet the
Knistinos about Lake ouiniepec & Superior are regular in their lives
well inclined in dolent and industrious, they eradicate the hair

is avenged by the next of kin. They never attack openly in the day but make night attacks surprise and put all they find to death. but if their enemies prepared they draw off and lie in ambush with inflexible patience. When they have succeeded they go home in great triumph bringing with them the [illegible] of their enemies and sending frequent messengers home in advance to inform their town that they are returning. The women come out to meet them and they enter triumphant and pile the heads of their enemies in the court before their Chief's house and dance round the pile. They then sit down to a feast of boiled meat and fermented liquors. The Chiefs fix the heads of their Enemies on their parents graves which they consider the highest honor their ancestors can receive [illegible] i.e. offer them to their manes. Manis, i. e. sacred Shades. The bodies of these their ancestors are sometimes dried over fire and then deposited in chests, others suspend them from trees and some preserve the bones, offering food to their manes. They eat dogs, have deformed mummeries to entertain them at their festivals, and also a religious custom of suspending to strings from the top of a cane to the ground and paying it some kind of adoration. — N.B. The Tunguses suspend their dead with ornaments &c. on a squatting on the knees and heel which is the Scythian custom as well as the American is probably the most ancient. We see chairs among the ancient carvings of Persepolis.

The Kamtschadals and Mongow Tartars now plant the heads of the bears they kill on posts in rows round their houses. note. A

Those best qualified from circumstances to judge see that a more orderly form of Government anciently prevailed among all the Indian tribes. The records of the modern Indians are the exact delineations of things. A square figure of white wampum is a fort or castle. The wampum is red in case of war. An axe signifies war. A rope or chain an alliance the figures at the ends of it the two nations concerned.

The Esquimaux are more destitute of religious ideas than any people in America they say all has been and will ever be as it is. Yet there are traces of their once

going had one. They bury a dog with the dead as the Cuboas did to lead them to paradise —
The north american Indians symbolize the anglo Americans as the long knife. —

Arcknard — Norfolk bay, mentioned by Dixon, is called by the natives Tchin kitanee
Tchin a tribe. Esquimaux - tanee, a man. S. E. Islands and America. alias dince. Their dog is of
a fox kind, almost dumb, domestic & faithful. They have the life ornament as was the custom
on the coast of Brazil. The dragon & Equinox of China is carved on their boats, they
do not use the sail — say they have good houses upon the Coventry — venerate the Sun,
the women eat with the men who are very jealous, reserved, and suppressors of
emotion of which they are very susceptible. — They have the guttural R. but are
deficient in the other sounds like the Hottentots & Chinese — They had two planks
duplicates of the same, nine feet long wooded with representations of different parts of
the human body painted in red green and black, very ancient, and of unknown appropria-
tion or usage.

Queen Charlotte Islands. temple a decreased elevation of earth inclosed and a little
shrine on the summit. They are a handsome people & have less of the Esquimaux
face than the Tchinkitanee.

Hudson's bay is inhabited to 54. North. Hearne discovered the Sea in Lat. 70
Long. 96. this is the parallel of Cumberland Island the most least known of
Baffin's bay. The Natives say that at the North of Davis's Straits the current
runs too strong south to be navigated. The wood thrown on the west coast
of Greenland is Asiatic. The East of Greenland is now inaccessible from
ice. The best part of Greenland resembles Vogelsburg country in Cotter
davia. The farther progress is made westwards in Hudson's bay the higher
the tides rise and the greater is the swell with a west tide wind. nor does
the cold increase in calculable proportions.

All America is an inclined plane descending to the East. in South America on the
west coast the sea is unfathomable and the coast perpendicular. all the
east coast is soundable far out of sight of Land. of which the first that is per-
ceptible are the mangroves. the centre of America is calcareous.

Baron de la Hontan's travels. He set out from Michillimakinack the
4th of September 1688. visited the Pototami, Sakis, Nadouessis,

Adoueni, Essonapi, Ekoro, 00 togami nations — quitting Quanto river they came to the river Ouisconsine, — Nov.r 19 — and descending that river for four days they came to the Missisippi Nov.r 3d. there seems a mistake. — January 7. 1689. He was with the Gnassitari nation on the Missisippi. they sent to a nation 80 leagues to the South on an island, who knew the Spaniards — post — buffalos. — New Mexico 400 miles distant. — The Mozembick nation wore clothing, thick beards, long hair, swarthy complexions, grave countenances, had slaves. — Hontan's map was copied from one painted on deer's skin given him by the Gnassitari. — Many islands here in the Missisipi, and villages upon a river that springs out of a ridge of mountains from which the long river also derives its source, there being in that tract many brooks which by their confluence form the river. — When the Gnasitari hunt buffalos they sail up in periogues until they come to a confluence of rivers. near which is the bounds of the Mozambick nation. These Mountains are 20 leagues broad and very high. 150 Leagues from where Hontan was, the principal river of the Mozambic nation ran into a salt Lake 300 Leagues in circumference, (probably the Gulf of California) the River runs west low down the river are six cities (Celibola or the seven cities of Coronado) the houses whereof have no roofs but are open like a platform as you see them drawn in the maps — Query? for these Maps. — Besides these cities are a hundred towns on the Lake, on which they navigate in such boats as are drawn on the Maps. — they manufacture cloths, copper axes — the name of the nation is Taghulak. Returning home commencing his route on the 26th of January — he came to the Country of the Essonapi on the fifth of February, on the second of March he arrived in the Missisipi so he must have sailed up a branch of it. on the ninth of April came to the Illinois — 15th to Greenbay 22d to Michillimakinac —

Q. B. Observe their sports. The Bloodmans butt of freeyland as the placing of Montezuma's
and the much more serious one at Mobila sound. The Game of football played by the
Moon nations as at Prodon Sumatra and extending to Cuba & Greenland.

M. B. Schude means, alien, foreigner, or idolator. or is so applied.

Sicoo-quicos- Islands North of Japan. Lucayo- Islands on the East coast of America observe
the occurrence of this word. and the lineage of particular priests of Peru from Sicoo-quicoo
Inquis. Chap. 25. oviedo or Acosta.
Chayan. was the most policied state of Peru

" There is a singular coincidence in the practice of the Rookies or Sumtas with that of some of the tribes of North American Indians as Relates in Bartrams travels and it must appear a curious fact that in so very particular an instance there should be this similitude / in burial of the dead / in the customs of two Savage Nations placed in such opposite parts of the world where the climate & other peculiar local circumstances are so totally different — account of the Rookies, Asiat - Researches - V. 7. "

General Vallancey

2

V. Nunez Balboa found, in his way across the isthmus of Panama a black nation
Spaniards of Ethiopian extraction very inveterate & hostile to their neighbours.

Cannibals or Caribs Art. 4

Caribana the continental site of the Caribs cannibal nation was in
the district of Uraguana. V. P. Inv. — Caribana was the general
name of What they call the East Region of the Gulf of Dario or Darien
Ena otherwise Uraba. "Here men founde the villages full of
people all the whyche gyve themselves onely to man huntynge Insomuch
that if they take enemyes agaynste whom they may make warre, they
exercise cruelty agaynste themselves and eyther slaye the one the other
devoure the vanquished to flyghte whereby it is apparant that by these their contin-
ual warres and devouryng the one the other ast of their countries this infection hathe gon
to passe not onely on the firme land but in the islands. —

Early Intelligence of Mexico Art 5. about 1514 or 15 at Darien

One Corrales a judge in causes of Lawe among the Spaniardes of Darien saythe that on a tyme walkynge abrode with a booke in his handde he met by the waye with a fugitive which had fledde from the great landes lying farre toward the weste and remeyned here with a King wyth whom he was interteyned. When this man perceived the Lawyer lookynge on his booke he spake thus unto him. "Have you also bookes wherein you may reserve thynges in perpetuall memorye?" and then wyth desyred that the booke myghte bee opened to him supposing he should thereon have found the letters of his owne Countrey. But when he sawe them unlyke he sayde further that in his Countrey there were citeis fortified with walles and governed by Lawes. But of what religion they were I dis not learn yet had some new knowledge both by the woordes & signes of this man that they were circumcised. P. Peter martyr ab Angleria this author wrote these accounts as he collected them on their arrival from the Spaniards who returned from America he being an Officer in the Casa de contratatione. & having been in various diplomatic & other employments. this account seems before the arrival of Arias in 1514

We find some trace of the word Chiribirichena in Mraba, on the river Darien the Government of Pedrarias De Avila who talks of a King Cheremacus there. River Orinoco

Mr Keatinge presents his compliments to General Vallancey and
es leave to submit the manuscript part of the book he has the honor of trans-
itting that it may obtain so much of General Vallancey's consideration
he will have the goodness to bestow on it. The ancient history of
Sythe-Americans is so obscured by time neglect and prejudice
t any effort to feel our way in that direction is discouraging. Mr
eatinge has endeavored, by classing the circumstantial evidence that
e reached him, under the heads beneath which they usually fall,
the printed work, to preserve as many as he could from oblivion
d, moreover, by concentrating them from their obscure and diffuse
ecesses, to make them reflect mutual light on each other.
Mr Keatinge is impressed with the idea that the first Colonists of the
ntinent of America were an expatriated tribe from North China
inland / Scientific it is true, but not literate, that they were
umerous, advanced in the arts of life according to the system
the oriental nations, and internally classed in the due gradation
well organized society.

Leech's Hotel. Dublin
January 3d — 1807

General Vallancey
&c &c &c
Dawson Street.

Answer

Sir

Dec 6

I return you many thanks for the pleasure and
struction the perusal of your manuscript notes in the history
Mexico have afforded me. You have in my opinion

connected the Old and New world in a manner not to be refuted, and at the same time confirmed the assertion of Sir William Jones that Persia was the Officina Gentium.- I beg leave to repeat his words. "Persia was the centre of population, of knowledge, "of language, of arts, which were expanded in all directions "to all the regions of the world. The language of the first "Persian Empire was the Mother of the Sanscreet and consequently "of the Zend and Parsi - the language of the Assyrians was the "parent of the Chaldaic and Pahlavi, and the primary Tartarian "language had been current in the same Empire. We discover therefore in "Persia at the earliest dawn of history the three distinct Races of Men "whom I described on former occasions as Possessors of India, Arabia "and Tartary." Now, if Mankind diverged originally from that Country as from a common Centre, it is natural to think that successors took the same Route. The Hindus never moved from their original position. Migration is forbid by the laws of their Religion. we are therefore to look for the first inhabitants of the new world among the Scythian or which is the same among the Tartar tribes. The Northern Scythæ I presume migrated to North America they were not great Navigators but we now find that it would be no dangerous Voyage to cross to America by the Archipelago of Kamtschatka in the Skin-boats of the Esquimaux. The Southern Scythæ, or as the Greeks call them, Indo-Scythæ were great Navigators and I think it can be proved the first builders of Ships of timber and planks they established themselves on the Pontus and Euxine and carried on a great commerce in the Mediterranean Sea and at length with Spain. They settled on the border of China under the name of Seres, and peopled Japan. The Japanese acknowl

Tourselves of Scythian origin. Here then are two points from whence they might reach South America. — from Spain and from China The words you have produced in the Eskimaw dialect and which you justly observe are Tartarian are in my opinion a proof of this System. Permit me to add another. Inca, the Peruvian name for King protector, defender. In the Persian and Tartar ئاك Anak. in the Arabic ملك Anak —. Golius and after him Richardson inform us the word is of Tartar origin. Now to come home to Sir William Jones's assertion, the word is also Chaldaic. Genesis 27 & 37. Isaac said to Esau — "Behold I have made him (his brother) they (anak - עבד) Lord, and all his brethren have I given him for Servants" And — Lord — or King — is the proper explanation of the word Anak — is agreed by the Rabbinic commentators.

The Irish are of the Indo-Scythic race, that is, of Tartar race, and the word is still familiar in the language of this country. Anac sinn a Tighearna! — Defend us — O Lord! — I have now got on my hobby-horse and cannot with good manners proceed further

I remain

Dawson Street — Sir your most obedient Servt

7th Jan 1785 — Charles Vallancey —

Art 7.

Note. Eskimaux ignorant of letters, of artificial light, and of the use of the sail

Esquimaux acquainted with the use of artificial light and the sail. Scythians ignorant of the use of artificial light. — Esquimaux alone use the throw-board

probably in consequence of their fishery —

General Bellancey appears to have an idea of the Indo Sy the having reached America from the coast of Spain — and the antiquities of Mexico would tend to corroborate it, if there were not stronger proofs on the other side —

The natives of new South wales had the Throw board & circular tomahawk,

+ They took their way directly to the West by the province named by the inhabitants Tomi & Maiam.

They chaunced upon a great iland named Guia-
na whose begenninge the inhabitaunctes cale Yucatan. Owre men went to the citye
and ynd ynge on the sea side the whyche for the bigness thereof they named Layness or
Venice. The inhabitaunctes entertayned them very frendly. ~~They~~ When they were
entred into the ~~city~~ citye they marvelled to behold the howses builded like towres
and magnificial temples, streates well payed and great ~~exchange~~ resorte of bayeing and selling by
exchaunge of ware for ware. Their howses are eyther bylte of stone or of brick & lime
and artificially wrought. To the fayrest porches of theyr howses and fayrest habitations
they ascend by ten or twelve staires. They are rayced with tyles slater, ~~Steades~~ or
walkes of certayne herbes. They gratyfyed the one the other with mutuall gyftes. The bar-
barians gave owre men many broches and jewels of golde very fayre and of curyous work
manshyppe. ~~They~~ They sette gowrgyte by lookynge glasses because they have certayne
stones muche brighter. This nation is apparelled after a thousand fashions with
clothes made of gossampyne cotton or bombage of dyvers colours. The woman are rayced from
the girdle to the heel havynge dyvers fashions of velles about their heades and brestes
with great curtele laste any part of their legges or ~~parte~~ feete to be seene. They resort muche to
their temples unto the which the rulers have the wayes payed from their owne howses. They are ed-
ucated & instructed. They observe their manner of exchaunge with much fidelitie. They use to
name the heares of their heddes. Being demaunded by the interpretours of whom they receyved
their instruction they answered that there once passed an exceedynge fayre man by the
coastes who left them that in token to remember hym. Others sayde that a man brighter
than the Sonne went among them & preached that Joyce. Whan owre men had remayned
five certayne dayes they seemed to be molestous to the inhabitaunctes, the which them-
selves men perceavynge made the more haste away. ——x—— Havyng sailed about
120 myles they thought it good to ley anker in a provynce named Campeche
whose chief towne consisteth of 3000 howses. The Kynge receyved owre men
honorably & brought them into his palace where he feasted them well after
his maner. They are accustomed to eate flesh & have great plentie
of beastes and fowles as peacockes and other which they ~~possesse~~ frank

feede in theyr howses. After this banquete the Kynge brought owre men into a house
Crosse way where many steades dos ~~stande~~ meete. In this they shewed them a
it were a greate and high auttar buylded four Square of marble compact
together fayrly with the tough clay of Babylon called Bitumen & partly
with Smaule Stones. It had on every syde foure Steares. Upon the altar was a
Image of a man made of marble & paste by it the images of two beastes of
unknowen Shape, which seemed as though they would with ravenynge
mouthes have torne in sunder the beasly of the manner image. ~~And on the~~
~~part Eyenge in length~~ On the other syde stoode a great serpent compacte of the syde stough
clay and smaule stones, being in length 47 feete, of the bygnes of a large ox, & seemed
to devoure a Lyon of marble and was all besparkled with blonde. Hard by the auttar were three postes fastned in the grounde the whyche three other traversed and were
sustayned with stones In this place offenders were put to death. In tokens whereof they saw instrumentes
arrowes steined with blodde were scatered and lying in heapes here & there broken. Also a great number of mennes bones lying in a court or yard neare unto this fenestel place. Their houses are
here buylded of Lime and Stone. They named this Kyng Lazanes becawse they arrived
at this lande on S^t Lazarus day. Departyng from hence & directing theyr Course
Sayl towards the west for the Space of 15 myles they came to a provynce named
Aguanil whose chief town is called Inaca & the Kynge Capoton. He beheld
owre men with a froward countenance & sought occasion to do them some furie
but chiefly whyle they sought for fresh water, for he made signes to them that if
the further syde of the hill they should fynde Springes of water intendyng to do
= sayle them in that narrow passage. but — owre men perceaved theyr wyly=
=nes & refused to go any further. yet a thousand of the barbarians assayled
them unawares, by reason whereof they were put to flight, & divers of them slain
in the chase, 22 were slayne with arrowes. Hernandez receaved 33 woundes
they therefore that escaped returned to the island of Fernandina.

The Stomacas at the head of the Orinoko. were subjects to a regulated
Policy and had the Cuban and Asiatic game of ball. v. Asiatic travels
Capons, Oviedo. —

Caribbs, preserve their ancient manners, about the mouth of the Orinoko and
El Dorado. seems to have been a re-echo of the fame of Mexico. which was
echo met by the European Navigators on their first Landing in North America
—— as is here seen — v. first Navigators — The nation of Eldorado
had a name which in Spanish is made Omega. they were placed by the Indi
ns of Guiana far South, this does not agree with the Geography of
Mexico but tradition contains as gross Errors in this respect. all the
accounts placed this people on a great Lake described them as numer
us, policied wealthy & warlike — their buildings were of Silver — so
the Spaniards thought of the Cuban nations from the first evidences
of their own Eyes. The heads of Gods & religion were loaded with
ornaments of Gold — their utensils were of gold & Silver. kept on foot
formidable armies the terror of neighboring nations. such was the
Indian's account. and also of those Indians respectively too remote to have
encountered it. Similar accounts existed in Peru, where they had no
positive knowledge of Mexico, but they placed this nation of wonder
& Splendour to their North East which agreed with the situation
of Mexico. Pizarro sent in search of it Quesada who was directed
Eastwards from Bogota. — Diego de Ordaz was lost in the same
pursuit — Philip de Utera did the same from Venezuela in Tierra
Firme. (v Oviedo) — he was on an Indian expedition when he found
Quesada, from the Opposite side of the Continent in his neighborhood
and adopted the same pursuit — he was directed on to the Lake of
Parima — Here the nation passed among the Indians by another name
made by the Spaniards — Itaguas. — He passed on to the River
Guayquiava — to the town Macatoa — five days beyond which
was reported to have come on the object of his search, which was

apparently an imposition practised on the world by his party by whom he was murdered — see infra —

Situation of the Lake of Parima on the west side of which is the supposed Eldorado — 3. deg. N. Lat. 63. West Long. from Paris.

Far diffused as was this rumour, its duration was equal thereto for it existed adventurers in 1780. When a wild Indian, thence, as he alledged (Parima) came to the Spanish Governor of Guiana. — He gave similar accounts — but added thereto, that the high Priest officiated anointed with turtle fat, and his body & head & face powdered by an affation of gold dust — Observe this is a custom of the west indians mentioned in the Earliest accounts. Six Spaniards set out on this discovery & travelled about 500 Leagues to the South. When the Indians abandoned them and they all perished. save one, Don Anthonio Santos who long after returned to Guiana.

By the account of B. Humboldt. 1800. the Rivers Oronoko & Amazons join by Rio Negro. wherein are the Piwarish nation of Pigmies Guayeas. who are of the height of 4 feet. 4 inches (French) The Lake of Parima is small and shallow, bordered and steeped with tallow Rocks.

Terra Firma

Caracas. a captain Generalship. comprizing Venezuela, Maracaibo Varina Cumana. & Spanish Guiana — N. & S. from the Equator to the 12th. deg. of N. Lat. — product. cacao (highest priced) indigo, tobacco sugar coffee, all of the highest quality. Vanilla. Wild Cochineal, valuable timber, horned cattle, horses Sheep. mules, &c.

Mines of Mexico & Peru annually decreasing in value

Venezuela named by Alphonzo de Ojeda who landed here a. 1499. at Maracaipano on the East Shore. a. 1527. is the date of the first settlement of the Spaniards on the Lake Maracaibo.

Terra Firma was discovered by Columbus 1498. Ojeda came in company with Vespucius in 1499. —

ie first expeditions to America adopted the spirit of crusade, or establishment of
faith. Columbus in his second voyage brought priests for the purpose, but
followers soon felt inconvenience from this system the brethren were per
ected "Guilt always bold hastened to persecute timid innocence, they were
en forced to vindicate themselves against absurd accusations the real objec
which was to keep back the the criminations they were justified in bringing
gainst their accusers.

It is a gross and common mistake to draw deductions relation to the State of
progenitors of a nation, from that of their descendants. perhaps some nearly
ith civilization proceeds pace for pace with population in countries where
e increase is the fact. Nations degenerate in the ratio of their population
here that population has space to diffuse itself, condensation alone
mpels to society & the observance of those laws without which
ociety cannot exist. The first migrators were probably in all cases
ossessed of more virtue than the generation, which succeeded
em.

Montezuma's present sent to Charles 5. July 15 19

A shield a round plate of gold 40 inches diameter, with the figure of the Sun embossed. an Aztec Calendar 52 cells
One of Silver of the same size with the figure of the Moon. a scarf
a necklace of gold in 7 pieces. 183 emeralds. 232 rubies, 237 bells of gold, & pearls interspersed
One — of 4 pieces — 102 rubies, 172 emeralds 60 pearls 26 gold bells.
A wooden helmet. plated with Gold. studded with gems, 25 bells of Gold. panache a green bird with gold Eyes beak & feet.
a Gold bracelet
a rod of Gold like a sceptre 2 ring of gold at each end studded with pearls.
Four tridents pointed with pearls. feathered
Sandals with soles of Bitumen blue & white. very thin, of deer skin sewed with gold thread
A shield of wood, plated with gold over leather, with little bells hanging to it. ornamented with the figure of Huitzilopochtli between 4 heads of a lion, tyger, owl, & Eagle, represented in their hair & feathers
Skins and plumage,
28 Shields, ornamented with gold, silver, feathers & pearls
4 fishes, 2 ducks, & some other birds of cast gold.
They cast fishes with scales alternate gold & silver.
2 sea shells & a crocodile in gold.
Mirrors set in gold
Crowns & diadems of of gold, & pearls feathers & gems.
Plumage panaches with gems
Fans of the same kind

Ark 10

A list of Montezumas presents — V. p. 57.

Mantles —, all white — chequered black & white — red green, yellow, blue, rough on the outside with a long nap. cotton — without nap on inside

tapestries, carpets, & of cotton

The Goldsmiths of Seville could not ascertain the manner in which the gold was wrought

5

6 pesos or castellanos are 6 ducats.

The Pesos uncoined & the Castellan coined are the same weight

B. De ...

B. Diaz's account says

Two hoops & round plates which seem to represent the images of the sun & moon 3 spans in circumference — that of Gold is of the weight of 3,000 castellanos & very good that weighs more than a ducat by a trifle. in the centre of this is the image of a tigress of half a cubit in height sitting on a throne & appended to the knee like unto a mammette with such countenance as ... tigresses are used to have — ... or Spirites — of feathers, girdles, & scarves made of feathers. I will not what should say but surely if were the wyttes & inventions of men have deserved honour commendacion in such artes these seemed most worthy to be had in admiration. I do not mervaile at gold & precyous stones but am astonyshed to see the workmanship & all the subjects for I have with wondryng eyes beheld a many and formes & ~~strange~~ similitudes of the which I am not able to write. And my judgment I never saw any thing whose beautie might so allure the eyes of Men. We do mervel at the beautie of such things as they make of feathers & gyrdles inpaled with gold. They wrought also sheetes of goossen fyne cotton ... with golde & precious stones, & chequered lyke the panes of a chess board. Some are on syde black red & white & on the other, plaine. Other some are wrought with visible colours with a wheel or circle of black in the middest & interminyst with shynyng feathers & sparkes of Golde like Stones. with many other things more beautiful to the Eye than rich or precious ——

registered in one Senate of the Affairs of India out of which we collected these few annotations ——

Azteean Records. on their Migration

When at Tumpanus (a 1216) in the Vale of Mexico, where they came from
Tula Tochpanecatl Lord of Tumpanus married his son Ichuitcatl to
Nacopantzin a Mexican Virgin.

Ichuicatl. Nacopantzin. a.D. 1220 Tumpanus
Their Son born. Huitzilhuitl. a.D. 1227. or 8. Tezayocan
Opochtli Atzcotzli
Acamapitzin. 1st King of Mexico

2d K. Huitzilhuitl. 3d K. Chimalpopoca. Tezozomoctli = Mallatzin. his niece. 4th K. Itzcoatl.
Mallalcihuatzin = 5th K. Montezuma = Ilhuicamina
mother of Nezualcojotl. King of Tezuco.
Mallalatzin.
6th K. Axayacatl. 7th K. Tizoc. 8th K. Ahuitzotl
Tzotzocatzin / Xocotzin wife of Nezualpilli
Ixtlalcuechahuac Lord of Toltlan
Miahuaxochitl wife of her uncle Montezuma
9th K. Montezuma Xocoyotzin. Miahuaxochitl
10th K. Cuitlahuatzin.
Ahuitzotl 11th Quauhtemotzin

Tlacahuepan Johuatzin or Don Pedro Montezuma
Don Diego Luis Huitzilxochitzin Montezuma married in Spain D.a Francisca de la Cueva. Count Montezuma & Tula, Iluca & Tula
Tecuichpotzin or D.a Elizabeth Montezuma. wife of Cuitlahuatzin her Uncle, Cualcuauhtzin her cousin of Alonzo de Grado & of two other Spaniards
Juan & Andrea Montezuma's houses now existing descended

Don Pedro Montezuma or Johualicahuatzin married his niece
Quauhxochitl or D.ª [redacted] Catalina
His son D. Diego Luis Ihuitemotzin Mont.ª married in Spain D.ª Fran.ª
a de La Cueva.
The descendents of this family are Marquisses of Tenebron in C. S.

Guatimala (Quauhtimallan. (wood) Of Spaniards. H. Hawkes. 1577.

PREFACE.

I BERNAL DIAZ DEL CASTILLO, regidor of this loyal city of Guatimala, and author of the following moſt true hiſtory, during the time I was writing the ſame, happened to ſee a work compoſed by Franciſco Lopez de Gomara, the elegance of which made me bluſh for the vulgarity of my own, and throw down my pen in deſpair. But when I had read it, I found that the whole was a miſrepreſentation, and alſo that in his extraordinary exaggerations of the numbers of the natives, and of thoſe who were killed in the different battles, his account was utterly unworthy of belief. We never much exceeded four hundred men, and if we had found ſuch numbers bound hand and foot, we could not have put them to death. But the fact was, we had enough to do to protect ourſelves, for I vow to God, and ſay Amen thereto, that we were every day repeating our prayers, and ſupplicating to be delivered from the perils that ſurrounded us. Alaric a moſt brave king, and Attila a proud warrior, never killed ſo many of their foes as we are ſaid by that hiſtorian to have done in New Spain. He alſo ſays we burned many cities and temples; and this he does to aſtoniſh his reader; not ſeeming to recollect that any of the true conquerors exiſted, to contradict him. He alſo enhances the merit of one officer at the expence of another; ſpeaking of ſome as captains who were not with us.

a. 1572 —

He ſays that Cortes gave orders, ſecretly, for the deſtruction of the ſhips; whereas it was done by the common conſent of all, to have the aſſiſtance of the mariners. He alſo depreciates Juan de Grijalva moſt unjuſtly; he being a very valiant captain. He omits the diſcovery of Yucatan by De Cordova, and is in an error again when he ſpeaks of the firſt expedition of Garray, as if Garray had come with it. In what concerns the defeat of Narvaez, his account is conformable to the relations given; but in that of the wars of Tlaſcala he is as erroneous as ever. As to the war in Mexico, where we loſt above eight hundred and ſeventy ſoldiers, this he treats as a matter of little importance; and he makes no mention of our loſſes in the ſubſequent ſiege, but ſpeaks of it as if it had been a feſtival, or a marriage! but why ſhould I waſte paper and ink in the detection of his numerous errors; I will therefore proceed with my relation, for according to what the wiſe ſay, the art and beauty of hiſtorical compoſition is, to write the truth; and proceeding upon this rule, with ſuch embelliſhment and ornament as I ſhall hereafter judge expedient, I will relate and bring into full light the conqueſt of New Spain, and the heroic ſervices of us the true conquerors, who with our ſmall numbers, under the adventurous and brave Captain Hernando Cortes, and with great danger and hardſhips, gained to his Majeſty this rich country; for which ſervice his Majeſty has frequently iſſued his orders that we ſhould be amply rewarded. Moreover, as a good pilot ſounds, and diſcovers ſhoals and ſands as he proceeds, by the lead and line, ſo will I, with my pen in my hand, expoſe miſrepreſentations, in my voyage through the hiſtory of Gomara, to the haven of truth; but if I were to point out every error, the chaff would outweigh the grain.

My relation will give to hiſtorians ſufficient whereby to celebrate our

our general, Cortes, and the brave conquerors by whoſe hands this holy and great undertaking ſucceeded; for this is no hiſtory of diſtant nations, nor vain reveries; I relate that of which I was an eye witneſs, and not idle reports and hearſay: for truth is ſacred. Gomara received and wrote ſuch accounts as were intended to enhance the fame and merit of Cortes; no mention being made by him of our valiant captains and ſoldiers; and the whole tenor of the work ſhews how much he was influenced by his attachment to that family by whom he and his are patroniſed. He has alſo miſled the Doctor Illeſcas, and Biſhop Paulus Jovius.

The following hiſtory I have brought to its concluſion, in the loyal city of Guatimala, the reſidence of the royal court of audience, on this twenty ſixth day of February, in the year of our Lord, one thouſand five hundred and ſeventy two.

THE CONTENTS.

PART I.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE

Expedition of Hernandez de Cordova. A. D. 1517. 1

Discovery of Yucatan

CHAPTER II.

Expedition of Juan de Grijalva. A. D. 1518. 13

CHAPTER III.

Expedition of H. Cortes. A. D. 1518. 25

CHAPTER IV.

Arrival of the armament commanded by H. Cortes, at St. Juan de Ulua. Tranſactions and occurrences there. 54

CHAPTER V.

The Spaniſh army advances into the country. 66

CHAPTER. VI.

March of the Spaniſh army for the city of Mexico. Wars in Tlaſcala. Submiſſion of that nation. 89

CHAPTER VII.

The Spaniſh army proceeds on its march to Mexico. 116

CHAP-

Contents.

Beginning of the book — State of the New World at it's first discovery.

Page 10. antiquities × / × & one of the ages.
57. Cyclography, Calendar & computation of time × a
130. On the Colonization of America × On this subject note that the wind blows in the South Seas in Lat 40 — in both Hemispheres steadily & strongly from the west so as to propel vessels easily from Asia to North America or Peru —
143. Dances
148. Religion
216 Polity. Government
224 History
362 Architecture. ×
450. Funereal Ritual ×
474. Inland discoveries & 494 ×
496 Literature or Science (historical) —
53 Language —
256. Cosmography × 2. (Chorography?)
310. Navigation —

more × a

100 Castellanos, 130 Ducats & a portion a £6 of Gold
256. Sterling. (Lab. Cyclography. Literature or Science. Cosmography. Astr.
See p. 172 State when first discovered & inland discoveries ought to be placed together

a crown in Gold. the third part of a £ weight

CHAPTER VIII.

Mexico, November 8th, 1519. Deſcription of that court and city. Tranſactions and occurrences there. 132

CHAPTER IX.

Expedition of P. de Narvaez. His army defeated by Cortes at Cempoal, May 26th. 1520.—Return of the Spaniards to Mexico. War there. Death of Montezuma. Expulſion of the Spaniards, July 1ſt. Battle of Obtumba. Reception of the Spaniards in Tlaſcala, July 10th. 178

PART II.

CHAPTER I.

Tlaſcala, July, 1520. Tranſactions and occurrences there. Foundation of the colony of Segura de la Frontera. Subjugation of the neighbouring diſtricts by the Spaniards. 229

CHAPTER II.

March of the Spaniards to beſiege Mexico, December 28th. 1520. Inveſtment of Mexico, May 30th. 1521. Siege of that city, and final conqueſt Auguſt 16th. 1521.

PART III.

CHAPTER I.

Tranſactions and occurrences in New Spain ſubſequent to the conqueſt. 319

CHAPTER II.

Expeditions of G. de Sandoval and P. de Alvarado. 333

CHAP-

CHAPTER III.

Armament of Francisco de Garay. 340

CHAPTER IV.

Expeditions under various officers. 351

CHAPTER V.

Transactions in Old Spain. 370

CHAPTER VI.

Transactions and occurrences in Old and New Spain. Expedition against the Zapotecans. 379

CHAPTER VII.

a. 1524 *Expedition of Cortes to Higueras.* 390

CHAPTER VIII.

Return of Cortes to Mexico; occurrences there. Return of the author to Mexico. 436

CHAPTER IX.

Cortes goes to Europe; is created Marquis of the Valley of Guaxaca. Account of various transactions and occurrences in Old and New Spain. Death and character of the Marquis of the Valley. 453

CHAPTER X.

Enumeration and account of the valiant companions who passed over to the conquest of New Spain with the most adventurous and magnanimous Don Hernando Cortes Marquis of the Valley. Advantages resulting from the conquest—Transactions at court. Concluding observations of the author. 483

Tierra Firma the continent of America between Lat. 5° & 10° North.
Discovered by Columbus in his 3d voyage. — after Columbus's death —
K. Ferdinand gave a general license to adventurers. Hereto, but a special one
to Diego Nicuessa & alfonso Ojeda. who sailed for Carthago on the main with
300 soldiers. the latter — & 200 the former — the natives here were cannibals, &
used poisoned arrows. Ojeda was to occupy the East & Nicuessa the west side of the
Gulf of Uraba. — both deserted their armaments, being unfortunate in their
encounters with the Caribbs. —
Nicuessa who commanded the larger force. entered a caravel commanding
the larger ships to follow far behind
Enciso came out from Hispaniola with relief for Ojeda but
the latter was returned thither. from Enciso Ojeda left Hispaniola in
Dec^r. & Enciso Sep^r. after — Ojeda did not return to his troops — they were did in Hisp^a
in great distress & mutiny — Enciso, was for a time in command — but he
last returned to Hisp^a & Spain — of Nicuessa hereafter — Valdivia
was elected ~~to the command~~ in place of Nicuessa, in the distress of the
troops, & sent to Hisp^a to get relief — but proceeded Subsequently Vasco
Nuney de Balboa was elected to the command & so continued
until the Arrival of Pedro Arias.
Enciso came to Spain & complained against V. Nuney to the King with success.

Numbers being incited by the Story of Enciso, that the weights of the fishermen's nets
were of gold.
V. N. de Balboa discovered the South Sea a. 1513
The Chagre river rises at two leagues from the South Sea and runs into the Atlantic
five leagues from Nombre de Dios. near an island named Bastimentos where the
its mouth is a very good Port. it is two leagues from Panama to the natural
bridge over a river that runs into the Chagre, and two from that to the
latter river — Isthmus 10 Leagues across
P. 1. — "a rich man" hombre rico. original. Query. Rico hombre
a class in the State, with the Franks Goths &c. The person here mentioned
was by no means circumstanced according to our acceptation of the terms —
if used in the old sense it is perhaps the last instance in which it is to

THE TRUE HISTORY

OF

THE CONQUEST OF MEXICO.

PART THE FIRST.

CHAPTER I.

Expedition of Hernandez de Cordova. A.D. 1517.

IN the year 1514, I left Caſtille in company with Pedro Arias de Avila, who was then appointed governor of Tierra Firma, with whom I arrived at the port of Nombre de Dios. A peſtilence raged at that time, of which many ſoldiers died, and moſt of the ſurvivors were invalids. The governor P. A. De Avila had a jealouſy which terminated fatally, with an Hidalgo who had conquered that province, of which he was Captain: his name was Vaſco Nunez de Balboa, a rich man, and to whom Avila had married his Daughter; but being afterwards ſuſpicious that his Son-in-law had an intention of revolting, he cauſed him to be beheaded. When

When we saw that troubles were likely to ensue, and learned that the Island of Cuba had been lately gained under the government of Diego Velasquez, a certain number of us, persons of quality who had come with Avila, resolved to demand his permission to go to Cuba. This he readily granted us; not wanting so many soldiers as had come with him from Castille, for the country of which he was appointed to the government, had but few inhabitants, and was already conquered. Permission being obtained we sailed for Cuba, and arriving there, waited on the governor, who received us kindly, and promised to give us the first lands that should fall vacant. Three years however elapsed, reckoning from the time we left Castille, and no settlements had as yet offered. Considering this therefore as so much loss of time, one hundred and ten of us elected for our Captain a rich Hidalgo of Cuba named Francisco Hernandez de Cordova, and determined to set out under his command, upon a voyage of discovery. For this purpose we bought two vessels of considerable burthen, and our third was a bark which we obtained on credit from the governor Velasquez; he however proposed as a condition, that we should engage the soldiers to make a descent on certain Islands between Cuba and Honduras, named Los Guanages, to seize a number of the inhabitants and make slaves of them, in order thereby to pay the cost of the bark; but when the proposal of Velasquez was made known to the soldiers, we to a man refused it, saying, that it was not just, nor did God or the King permit, that free men should be made slaves.

Velasquez was immediately convinced, and assented to the justice of what we said, and he gave us also what assistance he could as to provisions. We laid in a store of Hogs, which were then sold at three Crowns each, and Cassava bread, there being in Cuba neither Oxen or Sheep. With such poor provisions, and some trifling Toys and Ornaments for the Indians, we prepared ourselves for the voyage, having engaged three Pilots, the principal of whom was Anthon de Alaminos, a native of Palos; the other two were named Camacho de Triana, and Juan Alvarez el Manquillo de Huelva. Having provided ourselves as well as we could with every necessary, we all assembled at a port on the North

The natives of the Antilles were ~~one~~ of two different races. The more ancient seemed
ve wandered from the coast of Florida. They resided in villages some amounting to
ousand inhabitants and were subordinate to hereditary governors male and female. Their
behaved with a dignity that attracted the notice of the Spaniards. The number under the age of 30
is an excessive preponderance which proves the recentness of the population. When a family
t sent from home crossed sticks at the door were sufficient guard for the house, and this pra
ow exists in California. They manufactured cotton cloth. In trade and manufactures the
e of Trinidad exceeded the other Islanders. The men wore mantles the women loose vests
d gold they said they obtained from a great King in the continent. Their King gave
mbus a golden vizor. They said a people came to them from the South whose ~~arms~~ agaies were
ded with a mixed metal gold silver and copper. They used the sulvan play of foot-ball and
gaie, is Malay. surpan Kootkan - Sagacis Teythian under Latin senses.

near these Islands Columbus had a specimen of the state of commercial intercourse to
hich these people had advanced while left to themselves. He met a canoe 90
iles from the continent on its way to the Islands. it was eight feet wide and
ed on board 25. men and women. ~~The use of the sail was not known to these~~
~~ople~~ ~~or any americans except the Esquimaux~~ the vessel was covered with an awning. Their provisions consisted of
aiz-bread, potatoes, aji or camotii (chilli red pepper) and beer. Their
erchandize of bales of cotton cloth, men's mantles dyed variously, shirts with
sleeves for women, painted (i.e. wrought) waist-cloths for men, wood
swords the edges whereof were of sharp stones glued in grooves. as we
in Mexican paintings and with the modern South Sea Islanders, copper hatchets
ells, and cacao (money) and small bells of metal. The men on entering
ship behaved with great decorum and the women covered their faces with
ir mantles which were like those of the Moors. They told Columbus that in
ir country golden ornaments were worn on the head arms and ancles, and
at chairs, tables, bows & arrows were covered with it & mantles embroidered
th it, insomuch that he was convinced he was on the coast of China.

The price of a dog at the Canaries previous to the Conquest was 10 maravedis

painted themselves black red and white. They intoxicated with tobacco. The inhabitants of Trinidad had deer. Their dog was perfectly mute. Copied [illegible] of various colours This innocent race of Islanders would have been speedily destroyed by the Caribs a nation of cannibals who came from the continent, spoke a different language and used poisoned arrows. They invaded the islands in succession killing the men and taking possession of the lands and women. In consequence of the latter of their race the men and women of the Caribbee Islands spoke different Languages. They also maintained great subordination in war to their chiefs as was shewn by those in French pay. The Caribbs were probably the descendants of the Accawaies and Okaracas driven from the Lake of Parime by the Caliban tribes. The Galibans did not use poisoned weapons as their superstition ordained the sacrifice of the living prisoner. Thomas Cage's Ships crew lost many in the West Indies by wounds of poisoned arrows. Though so ferocious in war these Caribbs were kind and social among themselves. They were more ingenious than the other islanders, they had a peculiar loom and their houses were neatly built of woven canes. As for instance of their peaceful the first discoverers found there, bales of spun cotton, and human skulls and bones. Poisonous weapons were not used in Peace. They were common throughout the [illegible] from East to West. Several varieties existed in the human race in America at its first discovery. Perigon is the first who mentions the Patagonians and their gigantic stature. The Floridans were latterly the North West part was inhabited by a mild inoffensive people. but population had not yet reached the extremity of the peninsulae of California, a proof of its recentness. The Brazilians were warlike and cannibals. The whole Atlantic coast Southwards appeared to the discoverers one continued garden being under cultivation for grain and Maguey. The Caribbs are however said to be a nervous nation of the

The Creek Indians now wear the waist-cloth of the Galibans. and much identity of manners exists between the Muscoquizee Creeks of the modern day and the ancient Galibans
V. Bartram's travels. An ancient painting in the British Museum represents a body of these dressed. possibly see Hibaud Voyages

North of the Iſland, eight leagues from the town of St. Chriſtopher, the ſettlers of which were two years after removed to the Havannah. This port is called in the language of Cuba, Agaruco. That our expedition might be conducted on proper principles, we perſuaded a Clergyman of that town named Alonzo Gonzales, to accompany us, and we alſo choſe for Veedor a ſoldier named Bernardino Iniguez, that in caſe Gold ſhould happen to fall in our way, the proper Officer might be at hand, to take care of his Majeſty's rights.

On the eighth of February 1517, having recommended ourſelves to God, and the bleſſed Virgin, we ſailed from the port of Agaruco, and in twelve days paſſed St. Anton, otherwiſe called the land of the Guanatareyes, a tribe of ſavages. Doubling this Point, we ſailed at hazard towards that part of the Horizon where the Sun ſet, utterly ignorant of ſhallows, currents, or prevailing winds. During our voyage a ſtorm came on, and for two days and two nights we were in the moſt imminent danger; the wind however ſubſided, and in twenty-one days from our leaving the Iſland of Cuba, we ſaw land which had never before been diſcovered. We alſo on approaching perceived a large town, at the diſtance of two leagues from the coaſt, which from its ſize, it exceeding any town in Cuba we named Grand Cairo. The ſmalleſt Veſſel was then ordered to approach and examine the neighbouring coaſt.

On the morning of the fourth of March, five Canoes came off to us. Theſe veſſels are like troughs, made of one entire tree, and many of them capable of containing fifty men. We made ſignals of invitation to thoſe on board, with which they readily complied, not ſhewing the leaſt apprehenſion. Above thirty entered the principal veſſel, where they were treated with ſuch proviſions as we could give them, and each was preſented with a ſtring of green beads. After admiring the veſſels for ſome time their chief deſired to return, ſaying that he would on the enſuing day come again to us with more Canoes, ~~in order~~ to bring us to land. Theſe Indians wore cloſe dreſſes of cotton, their waiſts being girded with a narrow cloth; in which, we obſerved that they exhibited more

Yucatan

first landing
v. B. Martyrs account

Can ja. Red. Sea
this is the modern
word.
Kajac. Greenland
Kaianee.
Scythians of the
Sagalien or
Karamooran
River.
the Culwan

name was a-talli - water dwelling-Kalli from the ancient Scythian
Kalla, a dwelling or fixed habitation.
Do americans of the East knew the use of the oar, which is confined to the Esquemaux? - in Chinese, as in Sulwan the
same word is used to signify house, and ship

Note— this is what he calls Grand Cairo— D. Fernando's account is quite different— he only says the Natives grew tired of them

Cotton Cloth— their looms and described as similar to those for weaving in Tapestry—

more ſenſe of decency than the natives of Cuba, with whom this dreſs was uſed by the women only. On the enſuing day, the ſame chief came with twelve large Canoes, and made ſignals to our Captain that he would bring us to land. This he expreſſed by ſaying, "Con-Eſcotoch," "Con-Eſcotoch," which ſignifies, come to our town: and it was from this that we gave it the name of Punta de Cotoche. It was determined by us to accept the invitation, obſerving the proper precaution of going all in a body, and by one embarkation, as we perceived the ſhore to be lined with Indians. We therefore hoiſted out our own boats, and in them, with twelve Canoes brought to us by the chief, and our ſmalleſt veſſel we proceeded to the land. On arriving there we halted for a time to conſider what ſhould be done, but the Cacique or Chief ſtill urging us by ſigns to advance, we proceeded in good order, with fifteen croſs-bows and ten muſquets, the chief guiding us, and accompanied by a number of the natives. On a ſudden, as we paſſed by ſome thick woods, the Cacique began to call out loudly to a body of Indians which he had poſted there in ambuſcade; they ſallied out upon us at the ſignal, and poured in a diſcharge of arrows, whereby they wounded fifteen of our ſoldiers.

Theſe warriors were armed with thick coats of cotton, and carried, beſides their bows and arrows, lances, ſhields and ſlings; they alſo wore ornaments of feathers on their heads. Having diſcharged their arrows they advanced, and attacked us with their lances, but the keenneſs of our ſwords and the effect of our croſs-bows and muſquetry ſoon drove them to a diſtance, with the loſs of fifteen left dead upon the ſpot. Near the place of this ambuſcade were three buildings of lime and ſtone, wherein were idols of clay with diabolical countenances, and in ſtrange unnatural poſtures, and ſeveral wooden cheſts which contained ſimilar idols but ſmaller, ſome veſſels, three diadems, and ſome imitations of birds and fiſhes in alloyed gold. The buildings of lime and ſtone, and the gold gave us a high idea of the Country we had diſcovered. On our return to the ſhore we had the ſatisfaction to find, that while we were fighting, our chaplain Gonzales had taken care of the cheſts and their

- Orinoques (orono in some American languages signifies water, on the outside as it applies to the divinity. P. B. all their nations place their paradise in waters)
was an invasion of Guiana by a native Nation it appears about the year 1500
a nation descended the Orinoco. This great river is navigable to the falls for
vessels 1000. for smaller 2000 miles in 2000 leagues to the Sea. Some say the Amazonals did not ascend
ers. There are different accounts of the head of the Orinoco some say it consists of Lakes
ashes, bogs & wilderness others speak of a civilized nation on a lake as large
a Sea. Query is this not the Sea and the Nation Peru?

Cape Catoche. Isla de Mugheres - here they found remarkable idols.

Boturini conjectures that the Olmecas when driven from their Country by
Falcon settlers went to the Antilles & South America, this conjecture seems
corroboration of his judgment on other points, for the progress of the Caribs
subduing the other Islanders appears in point of time with their sub
sed expulsion, and they used poisoned arrows like their Country
men in Brazil. They were the terror of the harmless pre-occupants
the islands, who were themselves recent settlers, as appears from the
great predominance of the number of those under 30 years of age. They
seem to have roamed hither by the Streights of Florida. they had no animal
domestic nature save the dumb dog.

+ There is not a running stream in all this promontory - but fresh water is found every where near the surface by digging wells. Excavation is a great abundance of species of shell fish — When thrown by the surge or impulse of the waters these bodies are thrown higher up, on the shore than any others that are Specifically heavier than water and this may readily account for their being found where they sometimes are but could not have been originally

their contents, which he had with the assistance of two Indians of Cuba brought off safely to our ships. In this action we made two natives prisoners, who were afterwards baptized, and called by the names of Melchor, and Julian. Having re-embarked, we proceeded as before, coasting towards the West.

Campeche

After fifteen days cautious sailing by an unknown coast, we discovered from our ships a large town with an inlet which was apparently a River. This place we named from the day on which we discovered it, which was Sunday of Lazarus; and here we determined to endeavour to procure water, of which we were in want, owing to the badness of our casks, our limited means not enabling us to purchase proper vessels for that purpose. As the tides run very far out, we left our large ships a league's distance from the shore, and proceeding thither well armed, came to the water which supplied the town; for in this Country as far as we could observe, there are no running streams. Here we filled our casks, and just as we had finished, about fifty Indians dressed in cotton mantles and to all appearance chiefs, approached us, enquiring by signs what we wanted; to which we replied in the same manner, that we came for water, and were returning to our vessels. They then pointed to the East, by way of asking if we came from that quarter, repeating several times the word "Castillan;" after which they invited us to their town, to which we proceeded with them, and arrived at some large, and very well constructed buildings of lime and stone, with figures of serpents and of idols painted upon the walls. When we entered these temples, for such they were, we perceived about one of the altars traces of blood fresh spilled; there were also several idolatrous figures and symbols, all which contributed to impress us with surprise and horror. During this time the Indians behaved peaceably, but collected in great numbers, which put us upon our guard though they appeared only to be attracted by curiosity. A body of natives soon appeared, dressed in very ragged mantles, and each bearing a bundle of dry reeds, which having deposited together, they retired. After them came two bodies of warriors, each commanded by its captain, who drew them up opposite to us; immediately

mediately after which, ten prieſts ruſhed out of an adjoining temple.— They were dreſſed in looſe robes of white cotton, their long hair was clotted with blood, and matted and twiſted together ſo as to be apparently impoſſible to be ſeparated; they had in their hands veſſels containing fire and aromatics, with which they fumigated us, making ſigns at the ſame time, that unleſs we quitted their Country before the fuel lying by us was conſumed, they would put us to death. They then kindled the faggots, and retired without doing any thing more. The warriors however began to make a noiſe by whiſtling, ſounding their horns, and drums. Theſe formidable preparations made us think it moſt prudent to retire, which we accordingly did, and regaining our boats on board of which the water caſks had been already put, we embarked, and reaching our veſſels, proceeded on our voyage. We coaſted for ſix days, during which time we encountered a violent gale of wind from the North, and were in imminent danger of being driven on ſhore. We alſo ſuffered from want of water, owing to the badneſs of the veſſels, and were conſtantly obliged to go on ſhore and ſink wells, in order to procure a daily ſupply. Continuing our route, we arrived oppoſite a town about a league from the coaſt, which we determined to proceed to, and for that purpoſe caſt anchor.

This town the name of which was Pontonchan, contained ſeveral buildings of lime and ſtone, and was ſurrounded by fields of maize.— Having landed and found a ſpring of water, while we were engaged in filling our caſks, large bodies of warriors approached us in ſilence; they were armed with their uſual miſſile weapons, ſhields, and two handed ſwords. Their bodies were covered by a defenſive armour of cotton reaching to the knees, their faces painted black, white, and red, and plumes of feathers ornamented their heads. They accoſted us in the ſame manner that the natives of Campeche had done, pointing to the Eaſt and ſaying "Caſtillan, Caſtillan," we replied to them by ſigns that we came from the Eaſt, but were much perplexed to know the meaning of this expreſſion, or whether to conſtrue it favorably or otherwiſe; and as we meant to remain on ſhore, for the night, we formed ourſelves

g hair &c – the priesthood of the solar ritual of Asia after this assimilation of
arance, Rama Rama or Bacchus the great Eastern conqueror introduced the custome
s reached Arabia but not India or China until the Tartar Conquest. The priests of
ypt shaved the whole body.

nsequently long subsequent to the migration to America — B. B. as Siguenza traces the
logy of the Aztecan Kings to the 7th Century this adds probability to this period being
the that of the Migration.

Cotton. It is ~~stated~~ calculated that one man who has no other employment is able
ltivate 8, or 9 acres, but the opening the capsules taking place very rapidly when it is
it would not be possible for him to pick it by himself. A man & woman may
ver easily, with two or three children, cultivate four acres, independently of
maize necessary for their subsistence, and calculating on the moderate
n in good ground of 350 lb per acre, there will be a product of 14 Cwt
cotton freed from the seed. At the rate of 10 dollars the quintal, a very low
ice, this amounts to 252 dollars from which deducting 40 for the expence
ultivation there is a nett produce of 212 dollars, while the same land planted
th maize or sown with wheat would give only 50 dollars. Michaux

The same idioms used by the Canadian Indians & Boothians of the present day on the
N.W. west Coast.

ourſelves into a body, and kept a good watch in every direction; being alſo occupied in conſulting upon the arrangement of our future movements. During this time we heard a great noiſe among the Indians, which we conſidered as portending us no good. Some of us were for embarking, but that was conſidered too dangerous to attempt in the face of the enemy, others were for attacking them, on the old principle that he who makes the firſt attack conquers; but we had at leaſt three hundred to encounter, for each one of us, and this was conſidered too raſh. While thus occupied, day broke, and gave us a ſight of our danger. We comforted each other with hopes of God's mercy, and each determined to exert himſelf to the utmoſt. We ſoon perceived great bodies of warriors advancing, with colours flying, and joining themſelves to thoſe who had aſſembled on the preceding night. They then encloſed us on all ſides, fighting with us foot to foot, and wounded above ten of our ſoldiers; the execution however of our fire arms and ſwords made them draw off a little, but it was only to uſe their arrows to more effect.—They continually cried out, "Al Calachioni," or ſhoot at the captain; in conſequence, he received no leſs than twelve arrows. I alſo got three for my ſhare, one of which, in my left ſide, was very dangerous, and two of our ſoldiers they carried off alive; one was named Alonzo Bote, the other was an old Portugueſe. Our captain ſeeing that all our exertions to drive them off were ineffectual, that the enemy were continually receiving ſupplies, while we had above fifty of our number killed, determined to endeavour to cut his way through them. This we effected, being formed into a compact body; but they purſued us at our heels, attacking us with their lances, and with ſhowers of arrows. We however reached our boats, but it was only to encounter new difficulties; the hurry and preſſure to embark was ſuch, that the boats were ſunk, and we were forced, half wading, and half ſwimming, to endeavour to reach the ſmall veſſel, which came as far as poſſible to our aſſiſtance; our ſoldiers received many wounds, while in and about the boats, and it was with the utmoſt difficulty that any of us eſcaped with our lives. On counting our numbers when we arrived on board the ſhips, we found that our loſs amounted to fifty-ſeven. This action laſted above half an hour.

hour. In the marine charts this bay is named " De Mala pelea." Our wounds after a little time became very painful, from the cold and ſea water, and we began to grow very much out of humour with the pilot Alaminos, and his diſcoveries. He ſtill however perſiſted in his original opinion, and in denying that this land was a continent.

One ſoldier only of thoſe who ſurvived had eſcaped unwounded; moſt of us had three or four wounds, our captain twelve. The mariners alſo were many of them diſabled; for which reaſon we burned our ſmalleſt veſſel, and divided her crew between the others. But I have yet to mention the greateſt misfortune that attended us. In the hurry to eſcape from the natives, we had been forced to leave our caſks behind. The thirſt we endured in conſequence thereof, during the time that we were at ſea was ſuch that our very tongues and lips cracked: Such cruel hardſhips attend thoſe who go on voyages of diſcovery! After three days ſail, we perceived an inlet which we concluded would lead to a river or ſome freſh water; fifteen mariners and three ſoldiers entered to examine it, but what water they found was all ſalt, even where they ſunk pits on the ſhore, and when they returned with it, diſtreſſing as our thirſt was we found it undrinkable. We called this the inlet of alligators, from the number of thoſe animals ſeen there. The reigning winds of North and North Eaſt at this time increaſed to a ſtorm which we fortunately weathered, and then, having determined to return to the Havannah, by the advice of Alaminos we ran for the coaſt of Florida, which by his maps, his degrees, and altitudes, he found to be diſtant about ſeventy leagues. With this navigation he was well acquainted, having been in that country in a voyage of diſcovery with Juan Ponce de Leon, ten or twelve years before. Accordingly, having ſailed for four days acroſs the gulf, we diſcovered that part of the coaſt of America to which we were bound.

When we approached the coaſt, the firſt object with us was to obtain a ſupply of water. Our captain, from his wounds and ſufferings by thirſt, was ſinking hourly; on his account therefore and our own,

twenty

a. 1512. He discovered it on Easter day & thence gave it the name of Florida. This was the point of Florida. He returned here in 1521. & receive a wound of w^ch afterwards died. There was said to be the fountain of Rejuvenescence

Florida from P. Martyr.

"The governour of the Islands of Borriquena John Ponce de
on being discharged of his office and very riche furnished and sent forth
to travels to seeke the Islands of Boyuca in the which the Indians affirm
be a fontayne or spring whose water is of vertue to make olde men
ynge. Whyle he travayled six monethes with outrageous diligence to
ende that he sought & could fynde no token of any such fount
tayne, he entered into Bimini & discovered the Lande of Florida in

"the yeare 1512 on Easter day which the Spaniards call the florydo heynge day of Pasha
"whereby they named that land Florida. and supposynge great ryches might
"be brought from thence he returned into Spayne & covenanted with Kynge
"Ferdinando as touchynge the taske — the Kynge not onely made hime good
"owner of Bimini & Florida but sent hime three Shippes — In the yeare
"1515 he went aland (on the coast of Florida) "to espie a place most
"commodious to inhabite & peante a Colony. But the Indians comynge
"forth agaynst hym assayled the Spaniards fiercely & slew & wounded many of
"them. — He himself beinge wounded with an arrow dyed shortly after in the
"iland of Cuba. Florida is poynte of lande lyke unto a tounge beinge
"a famous place among the Indians by reason of the many Spaniards
"that have been slayne there. — Ferdinando de Soto who had
"byn a Capitayne in Peru & greatly inriched by the imprisonment of
"Kynge Atabaliba attempted a voyage thither with a goode bande of
"men and Spaine hyred men seekynge of golde mynes. he finally
"dyed there and was the destruction of all that went with him with
"out inhabiting that Lande. — these Indians are valiant archers and
"strong and handy men." — this is antecedent to 1544 —
"a. 1549. four dominican friers under F. Luis de Balsas tho
"went aland and catayne Mariners without harnesse or weapon
"ments whom as he began his preachynge many Indians of the saide
"Florida resorted unto the sea-side where without sayynge any
"thinge to his wonder they carryed him away with three
"others of his companions and did eate them, whereby they
"suffered martyrdome for the fayth of Christ. The rest that
"escaped made haste to the Shyppe and kept themselves for
"fearefull as some say." There came of late one from that
Shyppe that had bin the page of Ferdinando de Soto who saw
that the Indians hanged up the Skynnes with the heads and crowns of the
saide friers in one of their temples."

It will be well proved from the last passage the friers had preached

twenty of us, of which number I was one, went on ſhore with the caſks. The pilot Alaminos warned us to be prepared againſt a ſudden attack of the natives, who had in that manner fallen on him, in his former viſit to this coaſt. We accordingly put a good guard in an open place near the ſhore, and proceeded to make wells, in which to our great ſatisfaction we found excellent water. We ſtayed about an hour ſteeping cloths in it, and waſhing our wounds, and this delay enabled the Indians to fall on us; for at the expiration of that period, one of our out centinels came to give us the alarm of their approach, a few moments only before they appeared. Theſe Indians were very tall of ſtature, and were clothed in the ſkins of animals. They aſſailed us with a flight of arrows, with which they wounded ſix of us, and myſelf among the reſt. We however beat them off, and they then went to ſupport another body of their countrymen, who, in their canoes, had attacked and ſeized our boat, and were dragging it away with them, having wounded the pilot Alaminos, and four of the mariners. We followed them cloſe, and wading above our middles in the water, reſcued the boat, leaving in all twenty-two of them dead, and three who were ſlightly wounded, we made priſoners; theſe however died in the voyage. After the natives were beaten off, we enquired of the ſoldier who brought the report of the enemy, what had become of his companion; he ſaid that a ſhort time before, he ſaw him go towards the water ſide with a hatchet in his hand, to cut a palmita; that he ſhortly after heard him cry out as he ſuppoſed when the enemy were putting him to death, and therefore he gave the alarm, the Indians appearing immediately after. This ſoldier was named Berrio: he was the only perſon who eſcaped without a wound in Pontonchan. We went in ſearch of him, and found the plant which he had begun to cut, and the ſand much trodden, but no trace of blood: of courſe we concluded that he had been carried off alive. After ſearching for the ſpace of an hour we gave him up, and returned to the veſſels with the water, which, when our companions ſaw, they knew no moderation in their joy. One man in particular leaped into the boat when it came along-ſide the veſſel, and ſeizing a caſk of water, did not ſtop drinking until he died.

Soto. — The fountain of re-juvenescence, as De Soto — hallacken was the object of Ravaez — El Dorado of Sir atter Raleigh — all terminate in the same way — ale were admitted by the natives to be in up in stones — But the Indian name of El Dorado was Manco or something like and in all probabilities they meant Peru —

We then proceeded on our voyage by ſome low Iſlands named Los Baxos de los Martires, where the veſſel on board which our captain was ſtruck ground, and in conſequence took in ſo much water that ſhe was near ſinking; indeed we feared that our utmoſt exertions in pumping could not bring her into port. There were as I recollect two ſailors of the Levant on board: when we called to them to aſſiſt us in pumping they replied, "facetelo vos! Do it yourſelves!" At this time we were exhauſted by fatigue, and the veſſel in the moſt imminent danger of ſinking: however we forced them to give us their aſſiſtance, though unwillingly: and by our exertions, with the bleſſing of God, we arrived ſafely at Puerto de Carenas, where is now built the city of the Havannah.

On our arrival an expreſs was forwarded to the Governor D. Velaſquez, to inform him that we had diſcovered a Country where the houſes were built of lime and ſtone, and the inhabitants decently clad; that they ſowed maize, and poſſeſſed gold. Our captain went immediately to his eſtate near Santi Spiritus, where he died in ten days after his arrival. Three ſoldiers alſo died of their wounds in the Havannah, and the reſt diſperſed to their different homes or avocations. The fame of our diſcovery was ſpread through the Iſlands by the veſſels on their arrival. When the figures and idols which they brought were produced, it was believed that they were antiques conveyed to thoſe countries by a Jewiſh colony, after the deſtruction of their city by Titus and Veſpaſian. Our Indian priſoners on being aſked if their country produced gold, replied in the affirmative, which is contrary to fact, as has been ſince well aſcertained. The name which that part of the continent now acquired, was owing to an equivocal expreſſion or miſtake of words. Yuca is the Inſular name of the plant made uſe of for bread, the heap of earth in which it is planted is called by theſe people, Tale; on being queſtioned relative to it, they ſaying they knew it, and uſing this word with its ſignification in their language, the two repeated together made the word Yuca-tal, or Yucatan as it was expreſſed by the Spaniards, and ever after remained applied to that part of America. Such was all

that

Merida is in Lat 20. 12 Leagues from the North or east Coast. East to the point of
the are four little Islands called "Do Mugeres" or of women on account of idols found
re. On Cozumel was a temple of pilgrimage. 4 Leagues from the Land.

Jewish colony. A traveller in North America of the name of Adair has
ie maintained this idea with great vehemence. Had he known as that by the
ws of Yucatan, as in Judea, a man might marry, or was by law obliged to
he the widow of his brother in marriage he would have considered it a
clusive proof. Their was this difference however, in Judea it was to raise
[redacted] children or heirs, in the Yucatan country it was to take
e of the Orphans.

At the first discovery Yucatan possessed proofs of a civilization by people advanced in the Arts
ide in old Spain is an assemblage of magnificent ruins in Antiquity. This name was given to
Indian town in Yucatan on this account. "It astonished the Spaniards" say eye witnesses

"how without tools of iron such large stones could be wrought in figures of naked
"men with rings in their Ears." This place is in Latitude 20 north and 12
Leagues from the coast.

There is a close affinity in point of workmanship design and idea in the works of
antiquity in India. the Islands of the South Sea and America. in the fair
plain the rudest tribes of South America laid out their settlements in
lines at Right Angles a degree of science beyond the barbarians of
Europe as for instance the Saxons whose works were circular.
The Remains at Merida seems to have been in some degree similar to
those of Easter Island. which consist of human figures 16 feet high with their
faces turned to the land, probably facing the East and on the sea Shore. near an
extinct volcano. the Stone is material. They are made out of a soft stone called
Tapillo. They are very numerous and always in burying places. the pedestals or
platforms whereon the Statues are are of large slabs arranged by the most perfect rules
of architecture. those which face the land are of the soft kind but those next the sea of
the hardest kind which doubtless proves that those who constructed them were perfectly acquainted
with the effects of the Sea air. They were not wrought by tools but smoothed
and shaped by attrition. as was the method in Peru, the less finished
ones have a fullness in the centres. They have on their heads flowers
baskets which is an attribute of the Sun in the most ancient worship. the countenances neither resemble the S. S. Islanders nor the mo-
dern Indians but do those of the ancient Statues of India.

Most of these remains are monumental. But on Dauphins Island in the Bay of St Louis
in Florida is a great collection of Roman bones. possibly the remains of Narvaez
& Tongataboo is an oblong parallelogram mound with two opposite sloping
ascents. the Natives now have no idea of its use. their burying places are
inclosed in stone areas. At Hogoleiva is a similar work. In Leefooga is one
of 50 feet length by 40 breadth & 4 feet high faced with loose or shaped coral stone
On the North west coast of America are piles of stones on summits of hills of
great antiquity. See also Anson for the Chinese pyramidal pillars of Timian
But the Colossal Statues of Java are most near in structure They are eleven

that the ſoldiers gained by this diſcovery, from which we came back, poor and wounded, and thought thoſe fortunate who had reached their homes alive, for our loſs from firſt to laſt amounted to ſeventy of our number. Diego Velaſquez wrote to his patron the Biſhop of Burgos relating the particulars of his diſcovery and the expences he had been at, for all which he obtained fame and credit with his Majeſty, but not a ſyllable was ſaid of the poor ſoldiers who had expended their properties, and loſt, or riſqued, their lives in the expedition.

Three ſoldiers of us whoſe object was to reach the town of Trinidad, as ſoon as our wounds were healed, agreed with an inhabitant of the Havannah who was going thither in a canoe with a cargo of cotton to ſell, for our paſſage, for which he was to be paid ten crowns in gold. Accordingly we embarked with him, and after coaſting for eleven days, we arrived near an Indian town named Canarreon, where we were driven on ſhore by a violent gale of wind. The canoe was daſhed to pieces, and we with difficulty reached the land, naked, wounded, and bruiſed, by the violence of the waves. We had no reſource but in the clothing adopted by the firſt pair, and in the ſame wood where we procured this, we found a ſpecies of tough flexible roots called Bejucos, with which we tied on our feet ſandals made of the bark of trees, which we cut out for that purpoſe with ſharp ſtones; and travelling thus for two days, we came to the village of Yaguarrama where Fray Bartholome de las Caſas afterwards biſhop of Chiapa was then pariſh prieſt. On the next day I went to another town named Chipiona, belonging to Alonzo de Avila, where, at the houſe of a friend named Anthonio de Medina I got clothed, and then purſued my journey to St. Jago, where I found the governor Velaſquez buſily employed in fiting out another armament for diſcovery. As he was my relation, and alſo as governor, I went to wait upon him, and after paying him my reſpects, he aſked me if I was able to undertake another expedition to Yucatan. I told him that he ſhould ſay the land of wounds and calamity; to which he anſwered that he knew we had ſuffered much in the former voyage, but that

ſuch was the fate of thoſe who ſought honour and fame in new diſcoveries; and that his Majeſty ſhould know and reward our merits. "And now," continued he "my ſon, try your fortune again, and I "will put you in a ſtation where you ſhall acquire honour."

high of hewn stone with Moorish countenances and wide drapery
carved figures of birds and beasts are seen in the face of perpendicular rocks
would have been thought inaccessible when one of the branches of the Missisipi, they are
ably Hieroglyphics. The beast resembles a tiger with a tail resembling that of a Dragon drawn
and beyond the fore legs. And Scythian Hieroglyphics are there found carved in the faces of
pendicular rocks on the River Tunguska in Siberia
The hardest to account for in American antiquities is at the falls of Niagara
days journey from Buffalo creek on the road to New York. East of both Erie and
ntario that place and Genesee River. A vast excavation like an exhausted quarry
a white and probably calcarious earth, evidently the work of human hands
ntent is about two acres and form circular; its antiquity from the size of
trees growing in it, several centuries. It must have been the work of
mbers but what was made of the material excavated does not appear. Its sides
of the perpendicular depth of forty feet, and many heaps of what it con-
sisted lie near it. and resemble half calcined lime stone. A pond is in the
the and trees grow at the bottom. The Indians who attended this traveller
ok him something out of the ordinary track to shew it to him and made
oration on the occasion pointing alternately to the excavation and in
direction of the falls.
is said but doubtfully that tracks of the Lamas are seen west of the heads of
Missisipi, and also that a stone pillar carved with unknown or Tartarian
aracters was sent to Mons. de Maurepas. A very marked line of distinction
drawn in the character of the Scytho-americans by the course of the Missisipi
also is another by that of the Shining or Appallachian Mountains.
The obelisks of Tinian are surmounted by a semi globe the flat appearance
on the ornaments of the heads of the figures on Easter Island resemble a
ewn, those on the heads of the figures of females in Gestation at the
ngueras are of the Mitre form. All are emblems of Nature and
e Solar Ritual.
Columbus thought Hispaniola was richer from the marks
f antiquity that the excavations in the old Mines shewed. Those

mines were in the interior & mountainous part of the country—

"Furthermore certayne of owre buylders wandering one
"lyttel waye from the Sea Coaste (marannon) chaunced to
"fynde certayne peeces of white marble wherby they thynke
"that in tymes paste some Straungers have coome too
"those landes which have dygged marble owte of the moun-
"taines and lefte these fragments on the playne."

In Yucatan on the coast Columbus found a great mass of wall or masonry on the Coast, and took with him a piece of it as a specimen — this was done where on the North West Coast of New Spain —

North Carolina, apparently on Clarendon River. V. Lawson. c 1660 — odd —— In digging a well were found at 26 feet depth many large pieces of the tulip tree, hickory, & other sorts of wood cut & notched & squared as the joints of a house are. Apparently done with iron instruments. Fragments of earthen pots were found under ground or where the river had mined the bank they are thicker and of a different shape & composition from those used by the modern indians of that day.

Works, and human remains apparently of people killed in battle have been recently found in Arizona where the heads flattened

CHAPTER II.

Expedition of Juan de Grijalva. A. D. 1518.

THE governor Diego Velaſquez, encouraged by the accounts of thoſe who returned from the laſt expedition, now fitted out a ſecond armament conſiſting of four ſhips, two of which were employed in the former voyage, and the other two were purchaſed by himſelf. Theſe veſſels were to be commanded by his relation Juan de Grijalva, (in chief,) Pedro de Alvarado, Franciſco de Montejo, and Alonzo de Avila, all perſons of valour, and poſſeſſed of eſtates in the iſlands. The charge of the equipment was divided thus; each captain found proviſions and ſailors, the arms and ſome trifling neceſſaries were provided by the governor. The accounts of the richneſs of the country, eſpecially thoſe given by the native Melchorejo, created an univerſal diſpoſition in thoſe who were unprovided in the iſlands to engage in the expedition. Accordingly, two hundred and forty companions immediately entered themſelves, amongſt whom I determined to try my fortune a ſecond time.

Each of us depoſited a certain ſum to provide various neceſſary articles, both for the veſſels and for ourſelves in the field. The orders and inſtructions given by the governor to our chief were, to procure and bring back all the gold and ſilver that he could, and he gave him diſcretionary power to act as he thought beſt, in regard to colonization or eſtabliſhments. The veedor appointed by us was named Penaloſa, and our chaplain was named Juan Diaz. We had the ſame pilots who had gone the former voyage, and a fourth whoſe name I do not recollect. Our rendezvous was at the port of Matanzas, which was convenient for victualling, as the coloniſts had their plantations and ſtores of hogs in that neighbourhood.

The

The name of Matanzas was given to this place on the following account. Before the iſland was conquered, a Spaniſh veſſel was wrecked on this coaſt, in her voyage from St. Domingo to the Lucayan Iſlands to procure ſlaves. Thirty men and women eſcaped to the land, and were met by a number of Indians who offered them an hoſpitable reception, and propoſed to take them in their canoes. Our people being embarked, when they were in the middle of the river the Indians upſet the canoes, and killed or drowned them all except three men and one woman who was handſome; ſhe was taken by one of their principal caciques, and the three men were allotted to others. After the conqueſt of the iſland was effected, ſhe and the Indian chief parted, and I afterwards knew her married in the city of Trinidad to one Pedro Sanchez Farfan. I was alſo acquainted with the three men; one was named Gonzalo Mexia, another Juan de St. Eſtevan, and the third Caſcorro. This laſt mentioned had married the daughter of the cacique to whoſe lot he fell, and had his ears and noſe bored like the Indians.

On the fifth day of April 1518, after having heard maſs with great devotion, we ſet ſail, and in ten days paſſed the point of Guaniguanico, called by the pilots St. Anton. In eight days more we came in ſight of the Iſland of Cozumel, whither we were driven in part by the currents, which forced us farther down than when we came with Cordova. Coaſting along the iſland by the South, we perceived a landing place at which our captain Grijalva went on ſhore with a conſiderable body of ſoldiers. The natives of an adjacent town fled at the ſight of the ſhips, but our people found two old men who could not follow them concealed in ſome maize. Our interpreters, Julianillo, and Melchorejo, underſtood theſe Indians very well, for that iſland is diſtant but four leagues from their native country. Grijalva treated them well, and made them ſome preſents, in hopes to be thereby able to induce the inhabitants to return to their town, for which purpoſe they were then diſmiſſed. Some time after, an Indian girl of a good perſon and countenance joined us, and addreſſed us in the language of the Iſland of Jamaica, which is the ſame with that of Cuba. The account ſhe gave of herſelf was, that

ſhe

Journal. P. Martyr's account —

Before they saw any land they espyed
are a farre off by the color whereof they came to an island named Cozu-
, from the whych they meete swete savoures proceedyng with the wynde, before they
roched to the lande by the space of three leyles. They founde the ilande to be forty & five
yn circuit it is playne & of marvellous fertilytie. Theyre howses temples theatres &
ild are in all thynges like unto those of Yucatana. In many of theyre howses are pyles
of marble after the manner of ourre buyldyngs. They founde theyre the foundation
steyne walles towres ruinate. and one especially with eighteen steares as-
cendyng to it, after the maner of solemne temples. The cheyfe ruler whom ourre
supposed to be a preest ledde them up to the toppe of the toure where they entred
manner & addicted the Islande to the domynyon of the Kynge of Castey la mayor
to Cruz. because they entred it in the name of Kyng Ferynge the feaste of the Holy
Ghe. They say it was called Cozumel of Kynge Cozumelleus whose auncestours
the fyrste who inhabited the Islande. In the toure they founde many
numbers perysshed with Images made both of Earth & marble to the simi-
tude of beares. These they cauled upon with a Loulynge & lamentable
ge perfumeyng them with swete odours, otherwyse honoryng
m as theyre domestical Goddes. They are clothe circumcised —
the Kynge was in fayre apparell of goss sampine cotton curiously
ought —

The pottery discovered on the banks of the Tenessee at 25. feet depth in
Earth is similar in pattern to the most ancient Specimens of South American
nufacture.

canoes. Instances have occurred in the Pacific of canoes being driven 900 miles with the loss of very few lives. Most of the colonization of the archipelagos of that sea must have been effected by canoes containing not from 20 to 30 men and women.

We must take place in direct opposition to this wind. But in the latitude of Juan Fernandez (which was not occupied) Westerly winds, and in that of the Sandwich Islands South west winds prevail.

Those Islands must have been colonized by a nautical people who had like the Siamese the use of the out-rigger, whereas the Americans had not even the knowledge of the Sail. which it is most probable the Esquimaux derived subsequently to their arrival in America from the Norwegians.

The Malays are used to take their whole families to sea, and go out upon that element in flats. There is no hardship they cannot endure, privation of pure water by frequent immersion. Many islands of the Pacific from Madagascar to Easter Island on the coast of Peru is occupied by this race. How remote the chance must have been that threw a colony on this unconnected spot. But the Sandwich islands occupy seven degrees of Latitude and may be seen at the distance of a hundred and twenty miles. In the west of a storm thousands of these vessels may be committed to the chances of the ocean. The Malays catch fish by towing a wicker basket after the vessel.

The Malays using the sail, could not have the Asiatic superstition that the sea was not to be defiled as being a sacred element. It is to this nation the Indian Mariners must have belonged who in A. A. C. 60 were cast on the coast of Germany & sent by the Suevi to the Roman proconsul. Leucini the Venetian was driven 2600 miles west of the Cape of Norway I must have been on the coast of America but did not know of it.

The Malays had the use of the sail but it was unknown in any part of America. The most ancient accounts of Suiones, (if this is Sweden, or if it is not, of France and the Danish Isles speak of double prowed boats but no sails. It is since the arrival of those colonists on the coasts of the Baltic that they learned the use of the Sail. They were an inland nation.

ſhe had ſailed from Jamaica two years before in a large canoe with ten of her countrymen, to fiſh at certain ſmall Iſlands, and that the current had driven them hither, where the natives had killed and ſacrificed her huſband and all her companions. Our captain thought that this woman might be ſerviceable in inducing the natives to return; he therefore ſent her on a meſſage to that effect, for which he allowed them a period of two days; but on the enſuing one ſhe came back and informed us that ſhe could not prevail on any of them to do ſo. We named this place Santa Cruz, having diſcovered it on the day of that holy feſtival. In the town we found a quantity of honey in hives, vegetables, ſuch as boniatos and potatoes, and droves of hogs of the ſpecies of the country with the navel on the back. There were two ſmaller towns in the Iſland which we did not viſit, Grijalva perceiving further ſtay to be loſs of time,

the Jacino

Purſuing the route of F. H. de Cordova, in eight days we arrived at Champoton, and caſting anchor at the diſtance of a league from the ſhore, on account of the height of the tides, we diſembarked one half of our ſoldiers, landing them cloſe to the town. The natives, proud of their former ſucceſs, attacked us immediately on our landing in great bodies, and with much military parade. Experience had taught us to go well prepared, and accordingly we brought falconets in our boats. Half our number was wounded before we reached the land, but when we formed, and had received a reinforcement by a ſecond embarkation, we ſoon drove them to the marſhes, with the loſs however of three of our ſoldiers, and our captain received three arrows, and had two of his teeth beaten out. When we entered the town after the defeat of the natives, we found that they had removed all their effects. Three of them whom we had taken priſoners we thought by kind uſage to have made friends of, and that they would have induced their countrymen to return, but after we had diſmiſſed them they never came back to us, and we ſuſpected that our interpreters had treacherouſly ſpoken to them in oppoſition to our intentions. The field where we fought with theſe people was very ſtony, and there was on it a prodigious ſwarm of locuſts. Theſe animals during the action ſprang up and ſtruck us in the

which he in his former voyage calls Potonchan — the 3d place they landed at in the first voyage. —

P. M. confounds this with Campeche & Lazamos.

But he speaks of a King Potonchan —

V. P. Martyr

the faces, ſo that we hardly knew when to put up our ſhields to guard us, or whether they were arrows or locuſts which flew round us, they came ſo mixed together.

After four days ſtay in Champoton we re-embarked, and purſuing our voyage arrived at what appeared to be the entrance of a large river; but our pilot Alaminos inſiſted that what we ſaw before us was an Iſland, and that he ſaw the termination of it. Theſe circumſtances cauſed us to name the bay, Boca de Terminos. Captain de Grijalva with many officers and ſoldiers went to examine the bay and neighbouring country; on the ſhore they found ſome adoratories or temples, built of lime and ſtone, and containing idols made of clay and wood, ſome in the figures of women, others of ſerpents, and many horns of deer. Theſe were the occaſional offerings of traders or hunters, who frequented thoſe parts, for they were entirely uninhabited, but abundantly ſtocked with deer and rabbits. We killed ten of the former with one greyhound, and many rabbits. The dog was left behind us on our embarking, but when we returned with Cortes we found him on the ſhore, and he ſeemed to have fared well in our abſence for he was very fat and ſleek.

From the harbour of Boca de Terminos we coaſted weſtward, and in three days arrived at another inlet, which being diſcovered by ſounding to be ſhallow, was entered by the veſſels of the lighteſt burthen, in which, together with the boats, we embarked our whole force, as we perceived numbers of armed Indians in canoes. We therefore judged that we were near ſome populous town or diſtrict, and the more ſo, as we found, and took fiſh out of nets, which were laid in the track of our veſſels. This River was called Tabaſco from a native chieftain; but it was from this time named in honor of our Captain, de Grijalva, and it is ſo put down in the maps. When we approached the ſhore we heard the noiſe occaſioned by the falling of timber, which was a preparation of defence, for they were very well acquainted with the tranſactions of Pontonchan. We diſembarked at a point of land which was diſtant about half a league

Hitherto the Indian language had served them so that it appears to have been the language of the Coast

Boca de Terminos. Here they found two trees apparently planted by the hand
Man, & 15 paces off divers idols of chalk. Two human images of ospreis wood
nan, conjuncti. & one of chalk, virga virili circumcisa, ambobus manibus
ens → Oviedo →

Horns &c. this is a custom at present of Tschuktski and Finns. N. B. Tschutsk may
e understood a mountaineer & Tschuder, a pagan. the Finns and Hungarians
e of the same Scythic branch. The Tuscan and Scythic affinities however increase
i first proportion as the american nations approach the North west coast, and the
mmediate link of the two seems to be at Nootka Sound.

Requipilli. 8000. Enumeration.

0. 1.

P 20.

400.

8000.

P. Martyr seems to think of this when he speaks of the region called Palmaria ——— "this towne where the King keepeth his court. / Lucus Champoton? / conteineth

next page

The art of casting metalls is very ancient in India, and the Americans had no other the Islanders had not this art but hammered the grains together with stones.

The Caribbs who are from Guiana and the Orinoco, first fasten the cotton thread to two sticks parallel at a certain distance from each other to form the length of the web, the threads being single, parallel and contiguous to each other. Then they wind cotton thread on a pointed stick passing it through the alternate threads above and below & when it is gone through in this way it is made return through the threads taking them the reverse way of the former. and this is accordingly represented in the painting of Purchas. it is different from the Brookian and New Zeland method.

league from the town, where was a grove of palm trees, and the natives advanced againſt us here, painted and prepared for battle, in about fifty canoes; but fortunately it was determined on our part, to addreſs them through our interpreters, who declared to them our pacific intentions, and invited their chiefs to an interview. Upon this, about thirty Indians landed, to whom we preſented beads and coloured glaſs. Our captain then cauſed to be explained to them how we had come from a diſtant country, and were the vaſſals of a great prince to whom we recommended them to ſubmit, and further, that in exchange for thoſe beads and glaſſes, we expected that they ſhould give us a ſupply of proviſions. Two of them, a chief and prieſt made anſwer to us by ſaying that they would barter, and give us proviſions: that as to a ſovereign, they already had one, and that our demand was ſo unſeaſonable that they adviſed us to be cautious how we repeated that, or any ſimilar one, leſt they ſhould attack us as in Pontonchan, they having two xiquipils (eight thouſand men each,) of warriors ready for the purpoſe, adding, that though confident of their force, they had come to treat with us amicably, and would repeat to their chiefs our propoſal, and return to us with their deciſion for peace or war. Grijalva embraced them in token of peace, and preſenting them with ſtrings of beads, required their ſpeedy return with an anſwer, which they promiſed and fulfilled, aſſuring us on the part of their chiefs, of the moſt pacific conduct; and as it is the cuſtom of that country in amicable treaties to make preſents, thirty Indians ſhortly afterwards came to us loaded with broiled fiſh, fowls, fruit, bread of maize, and veſſels with lighted coals to fumigate us with incenſe, and ſpreading a mat upon the ground and a mantle over it, they laid thereon ſome toys of gold made in the form of birds, and lizards, and three necklaces of gold caſt like beads, with ſome other trifles not altogether worth two hundred crowns; they alſo produced ſome cotton mantles and other articles of clothing uſed by them, ſaying, that we ſhould receive their preſent kindly, it being the whole of the gold that they were able to collect. But they added, that more to the Weſt there was abundance thereof, repeating ſeveral times, "Mexico," and "Culua," words which we at that time did not underſtand.

 We

We were ſatisfied however by this proof that there was gold in the country, and we haſtened to quit our ſtation, where a gale of wind from the North, ſuch as was to be hourly expected, might prove fatal to us.

In two days ſail from this place, we arrived oppoſite to a town on the coaſt, named Aguayaluco, where we obſerved the inhabitants parading, armed with ſhields of the ſhell of the turtle, which being poliſhed and ſhining in the ſun our ſoldiers inſiſted were of gold. This place we named La Rambla. We next came to an inlet where the river Farole diſcharges itſelf: this we named the river of St. Anthonio. Continuing our route by the mouth of the great river Guacayalco, and the high chain of mountains which are covered with perpetual ſnow, as alſo others nearer the ſea and which we named the ridge of St. Martin, becauſe they were firſt deſcribed by one of our ſoldiers of that name, Alvarado diſcovered and entered the river called by the natives Papalohuna, but by us afterwards the river of Alvarado, where the natives of a place named Tlatocalpa preſented him with ſome fiſh. Our chief was much diſpleaſed with the conduct of this officer, for whoſe return we were obliged to wait during three days, and gave orders that in future no ſhip ſhould ever ſeparate from the ſquadron, leſt an accident ſhould happen where it might not be poſſible to afford aſſiſtance. As ſoon as Alvarado had rejoined us we proceeded on our voyage until we came to the river Vanderas, ſo called by us on account of the white banners which we obſerved upon the ſhore, and which were borne by numbers of Indians, who waved them as a ſignal of invitation to us.

It is now well known through moſt of Chriſtendom, that Mexico is a city as large as Venice, and built in the ſame manner upon the water, alſo that the numerous and extenſive provinces of that empire were ruled by a great monarch named Montezuma, whoſe thirſt for conqueſt induced him to extend his views to the utmoſt limits of poſſibility. This monarch had received information of our firſt expedition under Cordova, of the battle of Champoton, that we were very few in number, and that we came to procure gold in exchange for certain articles

houses, when they receave any death wounds & make a tradicion of friendship
them they are accustomed with a knife made of a sharpe stone to cutte themselves
e in the toonge hande arme or some other part of their bodye, in the sight of those
dmit to friendshipp in token they are ready to shed theyr blodde in theyr
causes. Theyr meetes prefers a victurous lyfe & lyve unmaried—
e month of August & September they eate tayne 32 daies noon flesshe & lyve
with herbes & rootes.

articles which we brought with us. All theſe particulars had been faithfully reported to him by painted repreſentations tranſmitted by expreſſes to his court. Montezuma therefore on our arrival coming to his knowledge, iſſued orders to his officers to procure from us in exchange for gold, our green glaſs beads, on which they ſet great value, not knowing them to be artificial, and he had alſo given them inſtructions, to endeavour to make particular enquiry, both as to our perſons and intentions. We alſo underſtood that he was much influenced by an ancient prophecy which is ſaid to have declared, that men were to come from where the ſun riſes to rule that country. In compliance with theſe orders, his officers were now upon the coaſt and making ſigns of invitation to us. This induced our general to ſend a party to the ſhore under the command of Capt. F. de Montejo; the weather was favorable, an unuſual circumſtance on that coaſt; we therefore landed without difficulty, and found the governor of that diſtrict, under Montezuma, attended by many natives with proviſions of fowls, bread, and fruit, ſuch as pines, and ſapotes. They were repoſing upon mats under the ſhade of ſome trees, and invited us by ſigns to do the ſame, for our Indians of Cotoche did not underſtand their language; they alſo, as on former occaſions, preſented us with incenſe. Our reception being reported to our chief, Grijalva, he immediately landed with the whole of the ſoldiers, and as ſoon as his rank was made known to the Indians, they treated him with the greateſt reſpect, which he returned with equal courteſy, and ordered beads and cut glaſs to be diſtributed to them, ſignifying his wiſh to procure gold in return; in conſequence of which, we obtained pieces of gold of various workmanſhip, to the value of fifteen thouſand crowns. It muſt be this gold that Gomara and Oviedo mean, when they ſay in their hiſtories that ſo much was obtained in Tabaſco, a country in which that metal is not to be found at all, or but in very ſmall quantity. We at this time took poſſeſſion of theſe territories under the Governor of Cuba, and in his Majeſty's name; and after diſtributing ſome ſhirts of European manufacture among the natives, we re-embarked, taking with us one of them, who was baptized and named Franciſco. I ſaw him after the conqueſt of Mexico, ſettled

and married at a place called Santa Fe. After ſtaying here ſix days we now re-embarked and ſailed along the coaſt, paſſing a low Iſland diſtant three leagues from the main, called by us Iſla Blanca. Farther on we came to a large one, diſtant about a league and a half therefrom, where a party commanded by our captain went on ſhore. Our people found on this laſt mentioned Iſland two buildings of lime and ſtone, well conſtructed, each with ſteps, and an altar placed before certain hideous figures, the repreſentations of the Gods of theſe Indians. They found alſo here the bodies of five unfortunate perſons who had been ſacrificed on the preceding night, their hearts cut out, their limbs ſeparated from the bodies, and the walls and altars ſtained with their blood. This Iſland was named Iſla de Los Sacrificios. Oppoſite to it on the continent we landed, and conſtructing huts, remained ſome time time in expectation of trading with the natives for gold. Many Indians came thither, but brought very little of that metal, and appeared ſhy and timorous; in conſequence of which we re-embarked, and proceeded.

San Juan de Ulua

opposite Old San Juans de Ulua. —

On our arrival at that part of the coaſt where the town of St. Juan de Ulua is now built, we lodged ourſelves in huts which we conſtructed upon the ſand hills, and having ſounded the harbour we found good anchorage, and it was ſecure to the North. A party of thirty of us commanded by our captain then proceeded to examine the Iſland, where we found a temple containing a very large and hideous image intended to repreſent a God, the name given to which was Tezcatepuca. Here were four Indians in long black mantles reſembling the habit of the Dominicans; theſe were prieſts, and they had that day ſacrificed two boys, and offered their hearts to that curſed idol. On our entering they came to us with their pots of incenſe, but we could not endure it, being diſguſted and grieved at the ſight, and the horrid cruelty of their ſacrifices. Our interpreter who ſhewed ſome marks of intelligence being queſtioned as to the cauſe of thoſe victims being put to death in that manner, made anſwer as well as he could, that it was done by the Indians of Culva or Culchua, meaning the Mexicans; but he pronounced this word, Ulua, a name which ever after diſtinguiſhed the place. It was called St. John,

partly

1. Juan de Ulua. hereon a forte is now built to defend the port of Vera Cruz. C.
2. the Mexican name of the opposite coast was Chalchiuhcuecan.

The author says, and enforces it, that they called their priests "Papas." Baba is Indian & Egyptian term in the sense of "Father."

Isla de Los Sacrificios

Sayleynge Northe Westwards they founde a greate gulfe in wyche three smalle islands are situate - of these they went to the biggest. But oh abhominable cruelties, oh most corrupted myndes newne & develysh impyetie, let every godlye man close the mouth of his stomacke leste he be disturbed. They offer younge children of both kindes to theyre idoles of marble and earthe. Emong theyre idoles of marble theyre standeth a Lyon having a hole thorow the necke into the whyche they powre the blonde of the miserable sacrifice that it may from thence renne downe into a Sincke

S. Juan de Ulua. The island is so low as to be overflowed by the tide. A second port was made about half a mile from the first — they are about five degrees from the mouth of the River of Canada — Lat 18. 0 Variation 4 E. 22 leagues from the sea. 60 from Mexico.

---

last page

Marble. They cutte not theyr throtes but open the breaste of these selye soules and take owte theyr hartes yet panteynge. with the hotte bludde whereof, they anoynte the lyppes of theyr idoles & suffer the residue to faule into the Synke. This doone they burne the harte and bowels supposynge the smoke thereof to be acceptable to theyr Goddes. Of theyr idoles one is made to the shape of a Man bowe-ynge doowne his heade & lookynge towarde the Synke of bludde as it were acceptyng the offeryng of the slain sacrifice. They eate the flesh of the armes thighes & legges especially when they sacrifice an Enemy taken in the warres. They found a stream of congeled bludde as though it had runne from a bouchery. For this myschevous purpose they bring these wretches from the next islandes. They saw also innumerable heades and trunks of bodies thus mangled beyde many others yet remeynyng hole & covered with certeyne matte. (V. Executions in Japan)

One of oure men wanderynge in the Islande chaunced to fynde two water pottes of alabaster artificially wrought & full of lyttle stones of divers colowres. The inhabitants are circumcised — There are certeyne other islandes inhabited by certeyne women which have vowed chastity & professed to lyve a solitarye lyfe — Oure men drew near the opposite shore of Collua and. The howses & other edifices of this provynce are buylded lyke unto towres. They affirme they have seen some townes of more than 20,000 howses not joyninge together but devided with fayre & gardens. They have also certeyne large marked places inviron-ed with walles, and theatres well paved. Likewise fornaces & ovens made of lyme & Bricke

partly becauſe this was the day of St. John, and partly in compliment to our chief, Juan de Grijalva. The neighbouring Indians brought us ſome gold, but in ſo trifling a quantity as not to be worth mentioning, and here we remained ſeven days deſperately annoyed by the moſquitos. Our bread now growing very bad, and our wounded men declining, being alſo convinced that the land where we were was a part of the continent, and our number having been ſo reduced as to be inſufficient for colonization, it was determined to ſend P. de Alvarado to Cuba for a reinforcement, which was accordingly done, for our chief was very anxious to eſtabliſh a ſettlement, and always ſhewed himſelf a moſt valiant officer, the very reverſe of what would be ſuppoſed, from the aſperſions caſt upon him by Gomara.

From the time of our ſailing the Governor of Cuba had always been penſive and uneaſy as to our fate; at length he determined to ſend a veſſel in ſearch of us, commanded by a valiant ſoldier nauied Chriſtoval de Oli: but after De Oli had ſailed for ſome time in our track, he met with a gale of wind which ſo ſhattered his veſſel that he was obliged to return to Cuba, without having gained in any degree the intelligence he was ſent for. This was a great diſappointment to Velaſquez; however he was ſoon relieved by the arrival of Alvarado. The diſplay of the gold ſtruck the governor and all who ſaw it with aſtoniſhment; and Velaſquez thought he never could ſufficiently ſhew his favor to one who had brought ſuch agreeable intelligence; Alvarado was feaſted and honored, and the fame of the newly diſcovered and wealthy country was diffuſed and enhanced through the Iſlands, and ſoon reached Caſtille.

We determined now to extend our diſcoveries as far as circumſtances would permit, and paſſing by the mountains of Tuſta and Tuſpa, we approached the province of Panuco, thickly ſet with populous towns, about three or four leagues from the coaſt; and advancing further, arrived at the river de Canoas, ſo named by us on account of what I am going to relate. We were here ſuddenly attacked while at anchor by ten canoes filled with Indians; they fell violently on the ſmalleſt ſhip, which

which was commanded by Alonzo de Avila, and it ſeems as if their intention was to have carried her off, for they cut the cable, notwithſtanding the gallant defence made by thoſe on board; but we ſent them ſpeedy aſſiſtance, whereby the enemy were forced to retreat with a conſiderable loſs. We then weighed anchor and purſued our route, until we arrived at a very bold point of land, which the violence of the current, according to the report of our pilot, did not allow us to double; whereupon it was determined in council to return to the Iſland of Cuba, contrary to the opinion of Grijalva who was anxious to eſtabliſh a ſettlement, but was oppoſed for ſeveral reaſons, ſuch as the lateneſs of the ſeaſon, want of proviſions, and hardſhips already ſuſtained by the troops.

We therefore ſet ſail upon our return, in which, aided by the current, we made way rapidly, and entering the river of Tonala, were obliged to delay, in order to repair one of our ſhips. This veſſel ſtruck three times in croſſing the bar, on which the water is ſhallow. The natives came to us here very amicably, and brought proviſions of bread, fiſh, and fruits. We preſented them with beads and cut glaſs, deſiring gold in return, and this being made known in the neighbourhood, the inhabitants of Guacacualco and other places brought to us what gold was in their poſſeſſion.

It was a cuſtom of the Indians of this province invariably, to carry ſmall hatchets of copper, very bright, and the wooden handles of which were highly painted, as intended both for defence and ornament. Theſe were ſuppoſed by us to be gold, and were of courſe eagerly purchaſed, inſomuch that within three days we had amongſt us procured above ſix hundred, and were while under the miſtake as well pleaſed with our bargain, as the Indians with their green beads. One mariner thought he had made his fortune, having purchaſed ſeven of them. I recollect alſo that a ſoldier named Bartholome Pardo entered a temple which was on the ſummit of a high mount, and there found in a cheſt ſome diadems and collars of gold, and two figures of idols. The gold he

the Jabanen give their copper a gold colour by warming it when first put into cold water

The Americans had the art of giving their copper the colour of gold probably this was done in India, with gall. — They say it was with an herb —

"when owre men had many of their tabellets, brass Cettes, bells and such other owches they found them rather to be made of Latton than of golde whereby they suppose that they have used to change their ware with us, and the strangers which brought them these counterfeit owches to defraude them of their Golde. for yow owre men perceived not the deceate until the melting."

The ancient Indians as well as the Chinese possessed in a higher degree of perfection than we do, the Science of fluxing & compounding metals.

America, before the Conquest had not Oranges, Lemons, pomegranates, figs, Quinces, Melons
grapes Olives, Sugar nice or Wheat. Maize.
It is probable such seeds most readily find their way to New Lands as are buoyant
and capable of resisting the elements or animals, as stone fruits &c — but
Grapes we know there were in North America, tho' not in the more genial
climates of that Continent. The Olive ought to have found its way there — but
it is a fruit of the Interior of the Old Continent.

he kept for himſelf, and preſented the idols to our commandant. The ſtory however came to the ears of the latter, who inſiſted on having the gold, but was induced to leave it with the poor man on his paying his Majeſty's fifth, and the whole was not worth eighty crowns.

As this country is infeſted by moſquitos, in order to avoid them I went to ſleep in a large temple, near which I at this time ſowed ſeven or eight ſeeds of oranges, which I had brought from Cuba. They grew very well, for the prieſts of the temple took care of them when they ſaw that they were uncommon plants. This I mention, becauſe they were the firſt trees of the kind that ever grew in New Spain. After the conqueſt of Mexico, this province being conſidered as offering the greateſt advantages, was choſen by moſt of the principal perſons amongſt the conquerors, of which number I was one; and on my arrival there I went in ſearch of, and found my young trees flouriſhing, and having tranſplanted them, they all did very well.

We now embarked, leaving the natives very well ſatisfied with us, and ſailed for Cuba, where we arrived after a voyage of forty-five days. The governor was well pleaſed with the gold, which amounted in value to twenty thouſand crowns: but there was much laughter when the ſix hundred hatchets were produced, and aſſayed; the governor however was on the whole contented, though he appeared for a time diſpleaſed with Grijalva, which was owing to the unjuſt aſperſions of the two captains, Avila and Montejo.

the gold was in part a present from the Lord of Onohualco.

Velaſquez now wiſhing to convey to his Majeſty the firſt account of his voyages of diſcovery, and the reſult of them, ſent his chaplain Benito Martinez to Caſtille with letters to his patron the Biſhop of Burgos, and to the licentiate Juan Zapata, and ſecretary Lope Conchillos, both of whom were employed in the affairs of the Spaniſh ſettlements in the Weſt Indies. With all theſe, who were perſons in power, Velaſquez had created a ſtrong intereſt for himſelf, by giving them rich diſtricts in the iſlands, preferring thereby his own intereſt

to

to that of his Majeſty. Martinez was inſtructed to obtain for the governor a patent or commiſſion to procure gold, and to make conqueſts and ſettlements as he judged expedient, through all the newly diſcovered countries. This he not only completely effected, but ſuch was the ſatisfaction of thoſe in power with the conduct of Velaſquez, and the proofs which he ſent of the wealth of thoſe countries, that Martinez alſo brought back with him a commiſſion for his employer, of adelantado of the Iſland of Cuba.

Cortes came out as secretary to Velasquez. This employment he obtained from his knowledge of the Latin language. A feud having arisen among the Officers of Government in Cuba the party which was against Velasquez, with which party Cortes sided, pitched on him to carry their appeal to the Court of royal audience at St. Domingo, whither Cortes going in an open Canoe, was seized by Velasquez & thrown into prison. Velasquez condemned him to be hanged but at intercession pardoned him and confined him on board of a Ship from which Cortes threw himself and not being able to swim got on shore upon a Spit, and took refuge in a Church, going out from which on an affair of gallantry, one day, he was arrested by one Escudero who it will be seen was hereafter executed at Cempoal for attempting to desert. Velasquez who was of a liberal & kind disposition again pardoned, at intercession and gave him his liberty, but would not take him into his service and Cortes when he married his first wife was in a state of extreme poverty. On this occasion however Velasquez again extended his hand to him, gave him an encomienda (the King's expectation rent of a district for three lives) & made him an Alcalde or Justice of peace. and Cortes being "astutissimo," entirely regained his confidence

Medellin on the Guadiana. The houses are small and low being only ~~of one story~~ ground floors. In the centre of the town they shewed me an humble dwelling but one worthy of remembrance and veneration, being that wherein the great Hernan Cortes conqueror of Mexico first saw the light. A Bishop of Badajos on seeing this house is reported to have exclaimed "How small a nest for so noble a bird!"

Bowles

CHAPTER III.

Expedition of H. Cortes. A. D. 1518.

THE Governor of Cuba was anxious to profecute the advantages of which the expedition of Grijalva afforded him ſo flattering a proſpect. For this purpoſe he provided ten ſhips at the port of St. Jago, four of which had been on the former voyage, and ſupplied them with ſuch proviſions as that place afforded, but their full complement of neceſſaries and appointments was to be taken in at the Havannah. Great difference of opinion exiſted as to the appointment of a chief: Vaſco Porcallo a man of quality and related to the Count de Feria was propoſed, but Velaſquez was afraid to truſt his armament with one of his bold character, leſt he ſhould revolt, and declare himſelf independent. Auguſtin Vermudez, Anthonio Velaſquez Borrego, and Bernardino Velaſquez, all relations of the governor, were alſo ſpoken of, but the ſoldiers were in general inclined towards Grijalva.

Juſt at this time Andres de Duero, ſecretary to the governor, and Amador de Lares, the Contador of his Majeſty in Cuba, made a private propoſal to a reſpectable Hidalgo named Hernando Cortes, a native of Medellin in Eſtremadura, and ſon of Martin Cortes de Monroy, and of Catalina Pizarro Altamirano, both, though poor, Hidalgos, and of the good lineages of that province. Hernando Cortes poſſeſſed a property in the Iſland of Cuba, had been twice Alcalde there, and had lately from motives of inclination married a lady named Donna Catalina Suarez Pacheco, daughter of Diego Suarez Pacheco of Avila, and of Maria de Mercaida a Biſcayan. This marriage brought much trouble upon Cortes, and he was frequently in confinement by the interference of D. Velaſquez. Leaving this to be related more fully by others, I will now however proceed in my narrative of what took place between Cortes and

the Secretary and Contador. Theſe two officers, the particular confidential friends of Velaſquez, agreed with Cortes to procure by their intereſt with the governor his appointment to the command of the armament, on condition of his giving them, each, equal parts with himſelf, in the treaſure which ſhould come to his ſhare; for the commiſſion was to be extended no farther than barter and obtaining gold, and not to colonization. This being agreed amongſt them, the Secretary and Contador took ſuch meaſures, praiſing and recommending Cortes, and vouching for his fidelity, to Velaſquez, who had ſtood as father to him at his marriage, that they ſucceeded in obtaining the commiſſion for him, which, it being the office of the ſecretary to draw it up, was done as the proverb ſays with very good ink, and fully ratified, according to the wiſh of Cortes.

As ſoon as the appointment was made public, to ſome it gave ſatisfaction, and others were diſpleaſed at it; and one Sunday, the governor going as uſual to maſs attended by the moſt reſpectable perſons of the town and neighbourhood, he placed Hernando Cortes by way of diſtinction on his right hand; upon which occaſion one Cervantes, called the mad, a kind of buffoon, ran before them repeating his abſurdities ſuch as, "Huzza for my maſter Diego, what a captain has he "choſen! And how ſoon he will loſe his fleet!" With much of that kind, but all having a malicious tendency. Andres de Duero who was preſent cuffed him, and bid him be ſilent, ſaying he well knew that he repeated what others put in his mouth, but the rogue perſevered, adding, that he would quit his old maſter, and follow the fortunes of Cortes. It was certain that the relations of Velaſquez hired him to repeat thoſe things under the colour of folly, and to alarm the governor; but all he ſaid turned out literally true.

Cortes immediately on his appointment proceeded with the greateſt activity in making his preparations; he alſo dreſſed and appeared in much greater ſtate as to his own perſon than before; wearing a plume of feathers, and a gold medal in his cap, which ornaments became him very

very well. His funds were very inadequate to this expence, for he was much indebted and diſtreſſed, although he had a good eſtate; being very extravagant, both as to himſelf and the dreſs and ſtate of his wife; but certain merchants, his friends, named Jaime or Jeronymo Tria, and Pedro de Xeres, perceiving that he was riſing in the world, and fortune likely to favor him, advanced him four thouſand crowns in money, and merchandizes alſo, upon his property. With this, he cauſed to be made a ſtandard of gold and velvet, with the royal arms and a croſs embroidered thereon, and a latin motto, the meaning of which was, "Brothers "follow this holy croſs with true faith, for with it we ſhall conquer."

It was proclaimed by beat of drum and ſound of trumpet, that all ſuch as entered the ſervice in the preſent expedition, ſhould have their ſhares of what gold was obtained, and grants of land, as ſoon as the conqueſt was effected. I muſt obſerve, that notwithſtanding this was announced to be by his Majeſty's commiſſion and authority, the Chaplain Benito Martinez had not yet returned from Caſtille. The proclamation however was no ſooner made, than by general inclination, as well as the private influence of Cortes, volunteers offered themſelves every where. Nothing was to be ſeen or ſpoken of but ſelling lands to purchaſe arms and horſes, quilting coats of mail, making bread, and ſalting pork for ſea ſtore. Above three hundred of us aſſembled in the town of St. Jago. The principal perſons in the family of the governor entered with us; Diego de Ordas his firſt Major Domo was ſent by him as a ſpy upon Cortes, whom he already began to ſuſpect, although he diſſimulated: and F. de Morla, Eſcobar, Heredia, Ruano, Eſcudero, Ramos de Lares, and many others were all adherents of the governor.

The relations of Velaſquez ſtill continued to be much diſſatisfied with him, and envious of the fortune of Cortes upon this occaſion; they knew that a bitter enmity had ſubſiſted between the two on account of certain circumſtances attending his late marriage, and they omitted nothing that could be done to induce the governor to revoke his com-

 miſſion.

miſſion. Of this Cortes was very well adviſed, and for that reaſon took care always to be in his company, and to appear entirely devoted to him. Andres de Duero alſo warned Cortes to uſe all poſſible expedition, as he perceived that Velaſquez was already wavering, from the importunities of his relations. Leaving therefore to his Lady Donna Catalina the care of ſupplying him with what was neceſſary for his voyage, Cortes warned all his captains, maſters, pilots, and ſoldiers, to be on board at the given time, which having ſeen fully complied with, he went, accompanied by his friends the Secretary and Contador, to take his leave of Velaſquez, whom he parted from with great politeneſs, and many aſſurances of ſervice on both ſides. On the enſuing morning he embarked, being accompanied by the governor to his ſhip, and ſetting ſail immediately, our fleet arrived in a few days at the town of Trinidad.

There were in the town of Trinidad at this period very reſpectable and opulent Hidalgos, from whom all of us, but Cortes in particular, experienced a moſt hoſpitable reception. Cortes here planted the royal ſtandard in front of his quarters, and cauſed a proclamation to be made, inviting volunters, a number of whom, Hidalgos of moſt reſpectable families, and perſons of wealth, immediately joined us; amongſt theſe were the Alvarados and Alonzo de Avila.

At the call of Cortes, Alonzo Hernandez Puertocarrero, couſin of the Count de Medellin, Gonzalo de Sandoval, Juan Velaſquez de Leon a relation of the governor, Rodrigo Rangel, Gonzalo Lopez de Ximena, his brother Juan Lopez, and Juan Sedeno alſo came from the town of Santi Spiritus. They joined us in a body, and were received with rejoicings, diſcharge of artillery, and all the marks of reſpect and courteſy, due to ſuch honorable perſons. Proviſions were procured from the eſtates of theſe Cavaliers, and the number of our companions was hourly increaſing, but it was very difficult to obtain horſes. Cortes ſtripped himſelf of ſome of his golden ornaments, and therewith purchaſed a grey mare for his friend Puertocarrero, whoſe means did not permit him

to

to go to that expence, and at this time a veſſel arriving with a cargo of proviſions, the owner immediately waited on Cortes to kiſs his hands, and enrolling himſelf with us, Cortes bought both ſhip and lading from him upon credit. His name was Sedeno.

From the time that we quitted the port of St. Jago, the relations of Velaſquez had not ceaſed to work upon his mind, in order to induce him to ſupercede Cortes in the command. In this they were much aided by one Juan Millan, an aſtrologer, and conſidered to be mad. This old man, to whom the governor gave an ear, was conſtantly telling him how Cortes would be revenged for ſome former injuries, upon an occaſion when Velaſquez had thrown him into priſon. Every action of Cortes was alſo explained in the moſt unfavorable manner, his ſudden ſailing was dwelt on, and the ſecret treaty with the Secretary and Contador ſurmiſed. Velaſquez in conſequence of theſe repreſentations, ſent two confidential perſons, with poſitive orders to his brother-in-law the Alcalde Major of the town of Trinidad, who was named Franciſco Verdugo, to take the fleet and troops from uuder the command of Cortes, he having been ſuperceded, and Vaſco Porcallo appointed in his place. Diego de Ordas, Franciſco de Morla, and all the friends and relations of Velaſquez alſo received orders to the ſame effect.

Cortes who was well aware of theſe proceedings, exerted himſelf to ſuch effect, that by promiſes and other ways, he contrived to bring over all thoſe upon whom Velaſquez relied, and eſpecially Diego de Ordas, to his own intereſt, which the latter ſupported moſt effectually with the Alcalde Verdugo by his perſuaſions and arguments, repreſenting to him the danger that would reſult from any violent meaſures. Such was the talent of Cortes in making friends, that the very meſſengers ſent by Velaſquez with the orders, came over to him, one of them Pedro Laſſo enrolling himſelf under his command. By the other Cortes wrote to the governor, expreſſing his attachment to him in the ſtrongeſt terms, his ſurpriſe at the ſtep that he had been induced to take, and his requeſt to him, not to let himſelf be deceived by the miſrepreſentations

ſentations of his enemies, and of the old madman Juan Miſſan. Thus Cortes continued in his command. The twelve enſuing days were paſſed in preparations; all the ſmiths of the city were employed in making arrow heads for the croſs-bows, and alſo engaged to join the expedition.

Cortes perceiving that nothing more was to be done at the town of Trinidad, gave orders for the fleet to ſail for the Havannah, and alſo, that all ſuch as choſe to proceed thither by land ſhould go under the command of Pedro de Alvarado, who was to receive the volunteers who expected us in ſome ſettlements upon our road. I and about fifty more marched with Alvarado; and Cortes, having diſpatched one veſſel to the Havannah under the command of his friend Juan de Eſcalante by a northern route, embarked, and ſet ſail with his whole fleet for that port, by the South. All the ſhips except that on board of which Cortes was, arrived at the Havannah without any accident, and our land party having alſo reached that town, we were there for the ſpace of ſeven days, that we could not by any means account for his abſence. We were very apprehenſive that the ſhip was loſt in ſome ſhoals called Los Jardines, and it was determined to ſail with three veſſels in ſearch of it, but as there was no one to command, the time was ſpent in diſputes, and faction began to exiſt as to the choice of a ſubſtitute for Cortes, until we ſhould know what was become of him. The perſon who was moſt particularly buſy on this occaſion was Diego de Ordas. At length theſe intrigues were put a ſtop to by the appearance of Cortes himſelf. The ſhip which he was on board of had ſtruck upon a ſhoal, but being near the land they had got her off, by lightening her of a part of the cargo.

As ſoon as Cortes arrived, he took his quarters at the houſe of Pedro Barba the Lieutenant of Velaſquez, where he planted his ſtandard before the door, and beat up for volunteers. He was accordingly ſoon joined by Franciſco de Montejo, Diego de Soto, one Angulo, Garci Caro, Sebaſtian Rodriquez, Pacheco, Gutierrez, and Rojas, (not Rojas the wealthy)

wealthy) alſo by a lad named Santa Clara, two brothers named Los Martinez de Frexenal, and Juan de Najara, (not the deaf man of the tennis court in Mexico,) all perſons of quality, beſides many other ſoldiers, whoſe names I do not recollect.

Cortes judged it neceſſary to ſend Diego de Ordas to the eſtate of the governor at Guaniguanico, for more proviſions of bread and bacon, and with directions to wait there for further orders. This he did, knowing that during his abſence De Ordas had ſhewn himſelf by no means attached to his intereſt. Cortes now brought his artillery which conſiſted of ten braſs guns and ſome falconets, on ſhore, and gave them in charge to four cannoniers named Meſa, Arbenga, Juan Catalan, and Bartholome de Uſagre. He alſo ordered the croſs-bows to be inſpected, the cords, nuts, and arrows, to be put in proper repair, and their range to be aſcertained by trial at a mark; and as the country about the Havannah produces much cotton, the ſoldiers provided themſelves with good quilted jackets of that material,

Cortes now began to aſſume ſtate in his eſtabliſhment, and to appear in a high character. His ſteward of the houſehold was one Guzman, (not he who took Guatimotzin priſoner,) his chamberlain was one Rodrigo Rangel, and his Major domo Juan de Caceres. He ordered mangers to be fitted up in all the ſhips, and ſtores of maize and hay to be put on board for the horſes, of which I will now deſcribe ſuch as paſſed over with us.

whom Guatimotzin took prisoner

Captain General Cortes, had a cheſnut horſe which died in St. Juan de Ulua: Pedro de Alvarado, and H. Lopez de Avila, (in partnerſhip) an excellent cheſnut mare, for exerciſe, or ſervice; after our arrival in new Spain Alvarado took her entirely to himſelf, either by purchaſe or by force: Alonzo Hernandez Puertocarrero, a grey mare of good ſpeed, bought for him by Cortes: J. Velaſquez de Leon, a very powerful grey mare called La Rabona, (docked tail) well dreſſed, and of great ſpeed: Chriſtoval de Oli, a dark cheſnut horſe, tolerably good:

Franciſco

Franciſco de Montejo, Alonzo de Avila, (between them) a dark cheſnut, not fit for ſervice: Franciſco de Morla, a dark cheſnut horſe, of great ſpeed and well dreſſed: Juan de Eſcalante, a light cheſnut horſe, not good for ſervice: Diego de Ordas, a tolerable grey mare, but of no ſpeed: Gonzalo Dominguez, an excellent horſeman, a dark cheſnut horſe, very good, and of great ſpeed: Pedro Gonzales Truxillo, a good cheſnut horſe, and ſpeedy; Moron of Vaimo, a dappled grey, well on his haunches: Vaena of La Trinidad, a dapple, ſomewhat black; this horſe did not turn out well: Lares the good horſeman, a very good horſe, bright cheſnut, of great ſpeed: Ortiz the muſician and Bartholome Garcia who had gold mines, a horſe called El Harriero, one of the beſt that came over with ns: Juan Sedeno of the Havannah, a cheſnut mare which foaled in the ſhip. Sedeno was the richeſt man in our army, poſſeſſing alſo a ſhip, a negro, bread, and bacon; ſome of which articles were indications of great wealth at that time, for horſes and negroes were hardly to be procured for any money.

I muſt now revert to the proceedings of Velaſquez, who was more determined than ever to deprive Cortes of the command. He was enraged when he found that Verdugo had neglected his orders, and reproached his Secretary and the Contador with having deceived him. He now therefore ſent a confidential perſon named Garnica to his Lieut. Pedro Barba at the Havannah, with orders to him, and letters to his friends De Ordas and Velaſquez de Leon, earneſtly ſoliciting them by no means to ſuffer the fleet to proceed, but to arreſt Cortes, and ſend him a cloſe priſoner to St. Jago. The meſſenger was no ſooner arrived than Cortes knew his buſineſs, for he brought with him letters from a friar who was about the governor, to our Chaplain Fray Bartholome de Olmedo, whereby the Secretary and Contador conveyed intelligence of all the ſchemes of Velaſquez. Diego de Ordas it has been already mentioned had been ſent out of the way; the other perſon, Velaſquez de Leon, Cortes had now brought over completely to his ſide, for he was diſpleaſed with the governor for not having taken, as he thought, proper care of him. As to the Alvarados, Puertocarrero, Montejo, De Oli, Eſcalante,

Eſcalante, the two Monjarazes, and all the reſt of us, the Lieut. Governor not excepted, we would with pleaſure have laid down our lives for him; ſo that if the orders of Velaſquez were concealed in La Trinidad, they were completely ſuppreſſed in the Havannah, for Pedro Barba wrote an anſwer telling him that he dare not put them in execution, ſuch was the popularity of Cortes; and that he was ſure if he were to attempt it, the town would be ſacked, and Cortes would carry away all the inhabitants with him. Cortes alſo wrote to Velaſquez profeſſing his eternal devotion to his intereſt, and informing him that it was his intention to ſail on the enſuing day.

The whole fleet ſailed for the Iſland of Cozumel on the tenth of February 1519. Our ſhip, which was commanded by Alvarado, was ſent round by the north, under orders to wait for the fleet at the point of St. Anton; and Cortes alſo ſent directions to Diego de Ordas to do the ſame; but our pilot neglected his inſtructions, and proceeded for Cozumel, where we on this account arrived two days before the reſt. As ſoon as we had caſt anchor our whole party went to the town of Cozumel, which we found abandoned by the inhabitants. We then proceeded to another place from which the natives fled at our approach, but not in ſufficient time to move their effects, for we found a quantity of fowls, and ſome idols, toys, and ornaments of debaſed gold in the temple of the place, wherewith we returned to the town near which our ſhip was at anchor. At this time Cortes and his fleet arrived, and the firſt thing that he did was to put our pilot Camacho in irons, for not having obeyed his orders. He then ſent for Alvarado, and gravely reprehended him for his imprudence in ſeizing the property of the natives, telling him that was by no means the way to effect any good in the country, and he immediately ordered two men and a woman whom they had made priſoners to be brought before him, and through our interpreter Melchorejo, deſired them to call back their countrymen to their habitations, and aſſured them that they need be under no apprehenſions. He ordered all the articles that had been taken to be returned, for the fowls which had been eaten he paid in beads and trinkets, and

11. veſſels.
11. Companies
500. Soldiers.
109. Sailors
16. Horſes.
10. guns
4. Bombardiers or Falconets

to each of the three natives he preſented a ſhirt. The people were ſo ſatisfied with this treatment, that on the enſuing day the chief of the place and all the inhabitants returned, and mixed with us in ſo eaſy and amicable a manner, that it would have been ſuppoſed we had paſſed our whole lives together.

Cortes now began to take the command upon him in earneſt, and our Lord was pleaſed to give him grace, that whatever he undertook he ſucceeded in.

In the three days which we paſſed here, Cortes ordered a review of his troops, which amounted to five hundred and eight, the mariners not included. The number of theſe was one hundred and nine. We had ſixteen cavalry, eleven ſhips large and ſmall, including a brigantine belonging to one Gines Nortes, thirteen muſketeers, ten braſs field pieces, four falconets, and (as well as I recollect) thirty-two croſs-bows with plenty of ammunition. He alſo ordered the artillery-men to put their guns in order, and appointed one Franciſco de Orozca, who had been a good ſoldier in Italy, his captain of artillery. But I know not why I now waſte ſo much ink in relating this, for truly he uſed the greateſt vigilance and exactneſs in all things relating to the ſervice he was upon.

Cortes now ſent for me and a Biſcayan named Martin Ramos, in order to queſtion us as to our opinions of the meaning of the word "Caſtillan," ſo frequently repeated by the Indians of Cotoche, when we came with Captain Hernandez de Cordova; adding that he was convinced that it muſt allude to ſome Spaniards in that country: for which reaſon, he queſtioned the native chiefs upon the ſubject. They all anſwered in the affirmative, and certain indian merchants then in Cozumel aſſured us that they had ſpoken to them a few days before. Cortes was anxious to obtain their releaſe, and being informed that compenſation would be expected, he amply provided his meſſengers for the purpoſe. By theſe perſons he ſent letters to them, and he ordered

for

for this ſervice two light veſſels, with twenty croſsbow-men and muſketeers under the command of Diego de Ordas. One ſhip was to remain at the point of Cotoche for eight days, while the meſſengers went and returned, and the ſecond was to bring the report to Cortes how the buſineſs proceeded.

The places where the Spaniards were ſaid to reſide, were diſtant from the point of Cotoche only about four leagues. The letter which Cortes ſent was as follows, "Gentlemen and brothers; here in Co-"zumel I have been informed that you are detained priſoners by a ca-"cique: I requeſt as a favour that you will forthwith join me. I ſend "a ſhip and ſoldiers, with whatever is neceſſary for your ranſom; they "have orders to wait eight days, but come with all diſpatch to me, "from whom you ſhall receive every aſſiſtance and protection. I am "here with eleven ſhips and five hundred ſoldiers, with which I will, "with the aſſiſtance of God, proceed to Tabaſco, Pontonchan, &c. &c."

The merchants of Cozumel to whom this buſineſs was intruſted being embarked, the ſhips croſſed the gulf, and the letters were in two days received by a Spaniard named Jeronimo de Aguilar, together with the beads ſent for his ranſom. He immediately waited upon his maſter, who accepted them with ſatisfaction, and gave him his liberty. Aguilar then went to his companion Alonſo Guerrero, and having made known his buſineſs, Guerrero replied to him as follows: "Brother Aguilar, I "am married; I have three ſons, and am a cacique and captain in the "wars; go you in God's name; my face is marked, and my ears "bored; what would thoſe Spaniards think of me if I went among "them? Behold theſe three beautiful boys; I beſeech you give me for "them ſome of theſe green beads, and ſay that my brother ſent them "as a preſent to me from our country." The man's wife who was preſent now became greatly enraged and ſaid in her language, "See this "ſlave how he comes to ſeduce my huſband!" Aguilar perſevered in adviſing the other not to loſe his precious ſoul for the ſake of an Indian, or at any rate if he could not part from his wife and children, to bring

In the North American tribes the captains are also chosen for merit & end. [illegible] of the Chiefs

them with him; but he could not be induced to quit his home. When Aguilar ſaw that it was impoſſible to move him, he came with the Indian meſſengers to the part of the coaſt where the ſhips had been ſtationed; but they had already ſailed, for the eight days to which De Ordas conſidered himſelf limited, and one more, were expired; and De Ordas deſpairing of the return of his meſſengers, had gone back to Cozumel, ſo that Aguilar was forced to return with great ſorrow to his Indian maſter. Cortes was exceedingly diſpleaſed at De Ordas, for returning without the Spaniards, or even thoſe whom he ſent in queſt of them.

Certain ſailors named the Penyates of Gibraleon, were at this time accuſed of ſtealing bacon from one Berrio a ſoldier, and a general examination and queſtions upon oath taking place, they denied it, but upon a ſearch, proofs were brought home to them, and notwithſtanding much interceſſion was made, Cortes ordered ſeven of them to be ſeverely whipped.

There was on the Iſland of Cozumel a temple, and ſome hideous idols, to which all the Indians of the neighbouring diſtricts uſed to go frequently in ſolemn proceſſion. One morning the courts of this temple were filled with Indians, and curioſity having alſo drawn many of us thither, we found them burning odoriferous reſins like our incenſe, and ſhortly after, an old man in a large looſe mantle aſcended to the top of the temple, and harangued or preached to the multitude for a conſiderable time. Cortes who was preſent at length called Melchorejo to him, to queſtion him in regard to the evil doctrines which the old man was delivering; he then ſummoned all the caciques and chief perſons to come to him, and as well as he could, by ſigns and interpretations, explained to them that the idols which they worſhipped were not gods, but evil things, which would draw their ſouls down to hell, and that if they wiſhed to remain in a brotherly connection with us, they muſt pull them down, and place in their ſtead the crucifix of our Lord, by whoſe aſſiſtance they would obtain good harveſts, and the ſalvation of their ſouls;

ſouls; with many other good and holy reaſons, which he expreſſed very well. The prieſts and chiefs replied, that they worſhipped theſe gods as their anceſtors had done, becauſe they were kind to them; and that if we attempted to moleſt them, the gods would convince us of their power, by deſtroying us in the ſea. Cortes then ordered them to be proſtrated, which we immediately did, rolling them down ſome ſteps. He next ſent for lime of which there was abundance in the place, and Indian maſons, by whom, under our direction, a very handſome altar was conſtructed, whereon we placed an image of the Holy Virgin, and the carpenters having made a crucifix which was erected in a ſmall chapel cloſe to the altar, maſs was ſaid by the Rev. Father Juan Diaz, and liſtened to by the prieſts, chiefs, and the reſt of the natives, with great attention.

The regulation of our fleet was now made by Cortes, and the captains appointed. The firſt or admiral's ſhip was commanded by Cortes in perſon, and the reſt as follows: The St. Sebaſtion by P. de Alvarado, the third ſhip in ſize by Alonzo H. Puertocarrero, the fourth by F. de Montejo, the fifth by Chriſtoval de Oli. the ſixth by Diego de Ordas, the ſeventh by J. Velaſquez de Leon, the eighth by J. de Eſcalante, the ninth by F. de Morla, the tenth by Eſcobar, and the eleventh by Gines Nortes. Pilots were appointed, the night ſignals given, and each captain received his inſtructions.

In the beginning of the month of March, we ſet ſail, after having taken a friendly leave of the natives, who promiſed to take care of the holy altar and crucifix; and they preſented Cortes on his departure with ſome fowls and honey. We had ſailed but a few hours when a ſignal gun and cry of alarm informed us that the veſſel of Juan de Eſcalante which contained the bread for the fleet was in danger, having ſprung a leak. This forced us to put back to the place from whence we had ſailed. On our return there, we were viſited by the friendly Indians, and the cauſe of it being made known to them, they immediately brought their canoes to aſſiſt us in taking the lading out of the veſſel,

and

and we had alſo the further ſatisfaction of perceiving on entering the temple, that ſo far from having done any injury to the holy altar and crucifix, they had taken care of, and placed incenſe before them.

The Indian meſſengers and Aguilar hearing of our return, joyfully hired a boat and croſſed the gulf to join us. Intelligence of the arrival of a large canoe was given to Cortes, by ſome ſoldiers who had gone out to hunt wild ſwine, whereupon he ordered Andres de Tapia and two others to go and ſee who and what theſe Indians were, who came to us thus without apprehenſion. Aguilar was not in his appearance to be diſtinguiſhed from a native, and he had hardly the pronunciation of his own language; his only words at firſt were, "Dios, Santa "Maria," and "Sevilla." His colour was as dark as a native, and he was marked like them; he had a few rags about his ſhoulders and waiſt, an oar in his hand, and the remnant of an old book of prayers tied in a bundle on his ſhoulder. When he came into the preſence of Cortes, he like the reſt of his companions ſquatted down upon his hams, and every one was looking for the Spaniard. At length, to the enquiry of Cortes he replied, "Here he is," and then coming forward, he was immediately ſupplied with proper clothing.

Aguilar was after wards their interpreter for the Mexican tongue — & soon became interpreter with D. Jamaica. before the arrival he Spanish —

Being queſtioned concerning himſelf he informed us that he was a native of Ecija, and had been ordained in the church. That eight years before, he was wrecked with fifteen men and two women, going from Darien to the Iſland of St. Domingo, at a time of a certain litigation between one Enciſo, and Valdivia. That the veſſel which they were on board was ſtranded and went to pieces, and with her were loſt ten thouſand crowns in gold. Thoſe on board taking to the boat, endeavoured to reach the Iſland of Cuba or Jamaica, but were forced by the current upon this coaſt, where the different chiefs had divided and made property of them. Many had been ſacrificed, ſome had died of diſeaſe, and the two women had ſunk a ſhort time before under hard labour at their mills. He was to have been at one time ſacrificed, but he made his eſcape, and taking refuge with a certain cacique had remained

A. 1510. When Darien was first settled. V. P. Martyr P. 61. &c —

Any man however who killed a slave suffered death for it by the laws of Mexico.

nated &c Tatawoing is a practice of most ancient date among the Thracians it was
k of nobility. as is with the Ethiopians a welt raised in the skin. among the mountainous
hin China both one and the other are used as a guard against witchcraft. Both
in practice in America and among the Malays Islanders.

is the Custom of the Mountaineers of the Indian Caucasus. and the more ancient,
Japan - Kempfer — v. also the ancient Egyptian Statues —

mountain

crowns in gold. this always means the third part of a pound
ight — peso, or castellano. P. M. calculates the annual export
Gold from Port Royal at 300,000 lb. weight —

Aguilar. P. Martyr's accounts. — "In my decades I have made mention of a certayne nobleman named Valdivia whom the Spanyards which inhabited Darien in the Gulf of Uraba, sent to Hispaniola to Colomes with the residue of the senate & counsel there, to signifie to them in what extreme necessitie & penurie they lyved. Unhappy Valdivia thought to hyrnge thys matter in hand in ev'll howre was with a sudden & vyolent whirlwind drywen upon certayne quicksandes in the prospect of the Island of Jamaica, called Las Viboras, because many shyppes are entangled in them as lyzardes are vsyally take in the trayles of the vypers. While the carvel thus wrestled with the water it was so brused in sunder that Valdivia with 30. of his fellowes could scarcely with much difficulty descende into the shyppe boate where without oers or sayles they were tanyed along by the vyolence of the water, for the seas do runne there continually wyth a vyolent course toward the west. They wandered thus 13 dayes not knowyng whither they were not yet fyndyngne any thyngne to eate — Famen consumed seven of them which were cast into the sea to feede the fyshes. The residue lykewyse in maner consumed by famen and faulyngne from one calamytye into another, were drywen to Jucatana and fell into the handes of a cruel Kyngne who slew Valdivia with certayne of hys fellowes. and when he had fyrste sacrificed them, shortly after he eate them; for they eate only enemies and straungiers, and doo otherwyse abolcine from mannes flesshe. In this meane time Aguilar with syxe of his fellowes were reserved to be sacrificed the thyrde daye, they brooke theyre bandes and fledde to another Kyngne who receaved them not only as bondsmen. When Aguilar receaved the governors letter he declared to the Kyngne, their humanitie & gentlesse, & agayn their vyctorye to such as contemned them & promised they should ayde him agaynste hys enemies if neede should so require whereupon he dismissed Aguilar with three of his familiers and companions

mained with him ever ſince; and of the whole number there were now in exiſtence, only himſelf, and Guerrero. As to his knowledge of the country it was very confined, for he was only employed in procuring wood and water, and digging in the maize fields, and had never been farther from the coaſt than about four leagues; but he underſtood that it was very populous. He deſcribed Guerrero as exactly reſembling an Indian, adding that he was conſidered by the natives as a very brave man, inſomuch that when above a year before, three ſhips came upon the coaſt at the point of Cotoche, (this was the expedition of H. de Cordova,) he planned the attack upon thoſe who landed, and led the Indians in perſon. Upon hearing this, Cortes regretted much his not being able to get him into his hands.

Aguilar

Aguilar was well treated by the natives of Cozumel, who ſupplied him plentifully with proviſions; he in return earneſtly exhorted them to continue faithful to our holy religion, the good effects of which they ſhould ſoon perceive; and he alſo adviſed them to apply to Cortes for a letter of protection, which would be of ſervice to them in caſe of the arrival of other Spaniards on their coaſt. This was immediately granted them; and ſuch is the true narrative in regard to Aguilar.

On the fourth of March the fleet again put to ſea, and was during the night ſeparated by a gale of wind, but on the next day all the ſhips joined company except that of Velaſquez de Leon, which not appearing on the enſuing day, Cortes made ſail for a certain bay on the coaſt, where, according to the ſurmiſe of the pilot, they found the ſhip, which had put in during the ſtorm, and was detained there wind bound. Here ſeveral of our companions went on ſhore, and found in the town hard by, four temples, the idols in which repreſented human female figures of large ſize, for which reaſon we named this place, Punta de las Mugeres.

Punta de Las Mugeres

The temples were of stone, thatched

The idols ranged in order.

Aguilar ſaid that he had once been ſent ſo far with a load, and that the town where he reſided was about four leagues diſtant; he alſo told us

us that the reſidence of Guerrero was not far off, and that the country contained gold though in very ſmall quantity, offering to ſerve as a guide, if Cortes thought proper to ſend a party on ſhore; to which the general replied that he did not come for ſuch trifles, but to ſerve God and his ſovereign effectually. Cortes now ordered Capt. de Eſcobar to examine the bay called Boca de Terminos; and to leave ſigns on the coaſt of his having been there, or cruize off the bay, till the arrival of the fleet, for by the deſcription given of the harbour, and the abundance of game, he was inclined to think it an advantageous ſituation to colonize.

Eſcobar proceeded thither, and on his landing found the grey-hound which had been left behind by Grijalva waiting for him on the ſhore, and teſtifying his joy at the ſight of our people; he was taken on board, and the veſſel then cruized, waiting for the arrival of the fleet; but a ſtrong gale of wind from the South came on, and forced her conſiderably out to ſea, ſo that when we arrived there, Eſcobar's ſhip was no where to be ſeen. On ſending on ſhore however, a letter was found, wherein he told Cortes of the ſtate of the harbour, and country, both of which he repreſented in a favorable light. We then ſtood out, and in the enſuing day his veſſel joined us. At this time we were near the point of Pontonchan, the natives of which Cortes and many of us were well inclined to puniſh for their conduct on former occaſions, but it was oppoſed by the pilots on account of the ſhallowneſs of the coaſt, and height of the tides, whereby veſſels are compelled to ride at leaſt two leagues out at ſea. We therefore continued our voyage for the river of Grijalva.

River of Chiapa- in the Province of Tabasco.

On the thirteenth day of March 1519, we arrived with the whole armament at the river of Tabaſco or Grijalva. As we knew that it did not admit veſſels of great burthen we ſelected the lighter ones, and in them, together with the boats, our troops proceeded to the ſhore, and diſembarked at the point of Palmares, which was diſtant from the town of Tabaſco about half a league. The borders of the river, which are

covered

Town of Tabasco. Near Punta de Palmares. this town is described or mentioned before — it does not appear there was
than the one ——— "a towne of such portentuous bygeness as I
ot speak but Alaminos sayth it conteyneth in circuite 5000 myles. &
teth of 25,000 houses. Now make it sum what lesse. but they all are
exceeding great & notable. The houses are divided with gardens & are
d of lyme and stone very artificially & of curyous woorkemanshyppe.
Theyre hauled chambers parlers or other places of habitation they
de by twone or twelve steares, and have certeyne spaces betweene
y houses so that it is not lawfull for any one to lade his neighbours
es with rafters or beames. Theyre houses are separate one from
ther by the space of three houses and are for the more part covered
, reedes & thatch. and many also with slate or other stone. —
"Owre men possessed the towne 22 dayes where they made
d cheere under covert whyle the owners of the howses lay under
trimanent and durst not assayle ourtrew who had placed themse
ves in the strongest part of the towne where they kept centin
watch lest the barbarians should sodenly invade them. —
yde others gave themselves to rest and sleepe. The inhabitaunts
ule this towne Potanchana But owre men named it for the
torie which they obtained here Victoria. It is a mavellous thyng
onsider the greatnes magnificence, and fyrenes of the buyldyng
certeyne palaices they have in the countrey to the whyche they re-
sumtymes for theyre solace and pastyme. There are curiously
elded with many pleasaunt devyces as galeries, solars, tarrats
tals, with chambers boorded after the maner of owre waynscot
d flowred — Foure of owre Spaniardes went into one of them &
uch greatnesse that they wandered in the same for the space of
re howres before they wold fynde the way owte. Being
tered (the natives & citizens) they gave owre men victuayle
d and twentie slaves ———

covered by mangroves, were filled with canoes containing armed Indians, and above twelve thouſand warriors had aſſembled in the town of Tabaſco which was at that time poſſeſſed of an extenſive domination over the neighbouring diſtricts. This afforded matter of ſurpriſe to us who had been at this place before, and the reaſon of their preſent hoſtility we afterwards found to be, that the neighbouring nations of Pontonchan and Lazarus, (as we named the place,) had reproached them for their daſtardly timidity, as they conſidered it, in treating amicably with us, inſtead of attacking us at our landing as the others had done. For this reaſon they were determined to take the preſent opportunity of retrieving their character with their neighbours.

As ſoon as Cortes perceived what kind of reception he was to expect, he directed Aguilar to addreſs himſelf to ſome of the natives who appeared to be chiefs, and who were in a canoe which was then paſſing very near us, and aſk them the reaſon of theſe hoſtile appearances when we came to them as friends and brothers, adding, that if they were ſo raſh as to recur to hoſtilities they ſhould certainly have cauſe to repent it. This, and more to the ſame purpoſe being explained to them, only ſeemed to render them more violent againſt us, and they replied by threatening us all with inſtant death if we ventured to approach their town, which they had fortified with parapets aud paliſades. Aguilar then requeſted permiſſion to procure wood and water, and an interview with their caciques, to whom our general had matters of the greateſt importance and of a holy nature to communicate, but to this they only replied in the ſame manner as before.

Cortes hereupon ordered three guns to be placed in each veſſel, and alſo divided the muſketeers and croſs-bowmen through them. It was recollected by us who had been there before, that a narrow road went from the point of Palmares, by ſome brooks and marſhes, to the town of Tabaſco. Cortes ordered three ſoldiers to watch the motions of the enemy, and report to him if they retired to their town; which they ſhortly did.

Subsequently reduced by Captain Luis Marin.

On the next morning, after maſs, our general detached Captain Alonzo de Avila with one hundred ſoldiers, to march by the narrow road already mentioned, with inſtructions, that as ſoon as he heard the diſcharge of the artillery, he ſhould attack the town on one ſide, while the main body did the ſame upon another. This being arranged, Cortes with his troops proceeded in the veſſels towards the ſhore near the town. As ſoon as thoſe of the enemy who were in canoes amongſt the mangroves perceived that we were proceeding to the attack, they all ſallied out, and ſuch a prodigious number of them collected at our point of diſembarkation, that nothing was to be ſeen around us but armed hoſts, nor heard except their trumpets, horns, and timbrels.

Cortes obſerving this, ordered a halt, and that the firing ſhould not commence, for he wiſhed to proceed in a ſtrictly juſtifiable manner. He therefore ordered Diego de Godoy a royal notary, formally to require them to permit us to ſupply ourſelves with wood and water, and ſpeak to them as we were in duty bound upon what concerned the ſervice of our God and King, warning them, that in caſe of violence they were anſwerable for all the miſchief that reſulted. All this, being duly explained to them produced no effect, they ſeemed as determined to oppoſe us as they were before. They made with their drums the ſignals for a general attack, and to cloſe upon us, and theſe were immediately followed by diſcharges of arrows. Their canoes then proceeded to ſurround us, and we were compelled to fight them up to our middles in water. We were detained a conſiderable time here, partly owing to the attacks of the enemy with their lances and arrows, partly to the depth of the mud on the ſhore, from which we could not extricate ourſelves but with great difficulty; and Cortes in particular, was obliged to leave one of his buſkins behind him in it, and come to land barefooted. We were juſt at that time in very great difficulty, but as ſoon as we got to the dry land, with our general at our head, calling upon St. Jago, we fell upon the enemy, and forced them to give a little ground. They then fell back behind ſome circular works conſtructed of large timber, until we alſo drove them from thence, and entered by certain ſmall gateways into

Ceiba. This word is Jeibaw. Bosholt, Sulvaw. the Bentley of Africa, it bears a Cotton-pod. the cotton in pillows &c swells in the sea. V. Allen

into the town. We then drove them before us up the ſtreet to a ſecond barricade, behind which they poſted themſelves, fronting us valiantly, whiſtling, and ſhouting, "Al calachioni," or "kill the captain." While we were thus engaged, the party commanded by Captain De Avila and which had marched from the point of Palmares arrived, and joined us moſt opportunely. He had been retarded on his route, in croſſing marſhes and breaking down barricades, whereby he arrived at the moſt convenient moment, for we had been detained longer than we expected in making the ſummons which I have related. We now drove the enemy before us, though they fought manfully and never could be made to turn their backs, until they arrived at a great encloſed court, where were ſome large apartments and halls, and three houſes containing idols. Here they had collected all their effects, but as they were forced to evacuate this laſt poſt, our general ordered a halt, and that they ſhould be purſued no farther.

Cortes took poſſeſſion of the country for his Majeſty and in his royal name in the following manner. Drawing his ſword, he gave three cuts with it into a great ceiba tree which ſtood in the area of this encloſure, and ſaid, that againſt any who denied his Majeſty's claim, he was ready to defend and maintain it, with the ſword and ſhield which he then held. This ſtep was generally approved of, and it was formally witneſſed by a royal notary. It gave cauſe for ſecret murmurs however amongſt the party of Velaſquez. In theſe actions fourteen of our ſoldiers were wounded; I received a ſlight one, and eighteen of the enemy were left dead upon the field. Here we poſted ſtrong guards, and halted for the night.

On the next day Cortes detached Captain P. de Alvarado with one hundred men, to march through and reconnoitre the country for the diſtance of two leagues round our poſt. On this occaſion the interpreter Melchorejo being ordered to attend, it was found that he had deſerted on the preceding night, leaving his clothes behind him. This vexed Cortes much, as it was to be apprehended that he could convey

to his countrymen intelligence very injurious to us. Our general detached a ſecond party of equal ſtrength and upon the ſame duty under Captain Franciſco de Lugo. This laſt mentioned detachment had not marched far, when it fell in with ſeveral large bodies of the enemy's warriors, who attacked our people on all ſides, inſomuch that all the valour of De Lugo and his ſoldiers could not repulſe them and he was obliged to fall back, which he however did with great regularity, to our quarters, ſending before him a ſwift Indian of Cuba to call for ſuccour. Alvarado with his detachment had advanced ſomewhat farther, to the diſtance of above a league from the town, when his progreſs was intercepted by an arm of the ſea, or river. Being obliged thereby to march in another direction, it was the will of God that he ſhould come within hearing of the muſketry, and the inſtruments and ſhouts of the Indians with whom De Lugo was engaged. He immediately flew to his relief, and the two bodies joining repelled the enemy and retreated towards the town, in which we who occupied it had at the ſame time been attacked by great bodies of the enemy, whom however we ſoon made retreat by the effect of our muſketry and croſs-bows, and our good ſwords. As ſoon as Cortes received intelligence that his detachments were engaged, he ſallied out at the head of all of us who could carry arms, and we met our companions in their retreat, at about half a leagues diſtance. They had loſt in the engagement two ſoldiers of the company of Captain de Lugo, and had in all eleven wounded. We returned with them to the town, bringing with us three priſoners, one of whom appeared to be a chief. We were informed by them that Melchorejo had adviſed them to attack us by day and by night, whereby they would, he ſaid, deſtroy us, being ſo few. The native who told us this we releaſed and ſent to his countrymen with an amicable meſſage, but he never returned, and Aguilar was informed by the others, that we were to expect to be attacked by the whole force of the warriors of that country.

When Cortes underſtood the formidable preparations which were making againſt us, he ordered the horſes to be landed, and all the wounded

wounded men who were able to march to turn out. The horſes when firſt brought to land were very dull and torpid, but in the courſe of a day they recovered their ſpirit. Several of our beſt and moſt alert young men were at this time taken ſo ill and weak by an ailment in the reins, that they could not ſtand on their feet, or help themſelves: we could only account for it from their good living in Cuba, and the heat of the weather, and weight of their arms. Cortes ordered them to be put on board the ſhips, and aſſigning the horſes to the beſt horſemen, he furniſhed each with a breaſtplate with bells hanging to it, and gave his cavalry general inſtructions not to halt, or make thruſts with the lance, until the enemy were put to flight, but in their attack to point at their faces. He ſelected the following officers and ſoldiers to ſerve in the cavalry. Chriſtoval de Oli, P. de Alvarado, A. H. Puertocarrero, J. de Eſcalante, F. de Montejo, Alonzo de Avila, J. V. de Leon, Franciſco de Morla, Lares (called by way of diſtinction the good horſeman,) Gonzalo Dominguez another excellent horſeman, Moron del Bayamo, and P. Gonzales de Truxillo. This body was commanded by Cortes in perſon. The artillery he put under the command of Meſa, the infantry under that of Diego de Ordas, and the colours were borne by Anthonio de Villaroel. Being thus arranged and appointed, our whole force took the field early on the morning of the day of our lady in the month of March, after hearing maſs, and proceeded to the plain of Cintia, our cavalry making a circuit in order to avoid ſome marſhy ground.

Having marched about a league we ſaw the enemy in the plain in our front, advancing againſt us, ſounding their trumpets, horns, and drums, with plumes of feathers on their heads, their faces painted black, red, and white, all of them bearing defenſive armour of quilted cotton, and ſhields, and their offenſive arms conſiſting of large bows and arrows, lances, two handed ſwords, darts, and ſlings. Their numbers covered the whole plain, and they fell upon us furiouſly, wounding above ſeventy of our ſoldiers by the firſt diſcharge of their miſſile weapons. One ſoldier fell inſtantly dead by an arrow which pierced his ear: his name was Saldana. The enemy then cloſed upon and fought

fought with us foot to foot, while we with our cannon, muſketry, croſs-bows, and ſwords, maintained our ground firmly. When they had pretty well experienced the ſharpneſs of our ſwords, they drew off a little, but it was only to ſhoot at us with more advantage; our artillery now however made great havoc amongſt them from the manner in which they were crowded together, and they were at that diſtance which enabled us to fire at them with the greateſt advantage; but all could not make them give way.

I adviſed Captain de Ordas to cloſe with them, becauſe they ſeemed to be ſhy of our ſwords, and had the advantage of their miſſile weapons when at a little diſtance; but he objected to this, obſerving that they were three hundred for every one of us. However we did advance upon them, and as they were unwilling to come within the reach of our ſwords they yielded ground, and inclined towards a marſh. During all this time we were anxiouſly looking out for Cortes, and very apprehenſive that he had met with ſome diſaſter.

I recollect that in this battle, every time that the cannon were fired, the Indians ſhouted, whiſtled, and ſounded their inſtruments, throwing up ſtraw and duſt in the air, and crying, "Ala, lala;" this they did to prevent our perceiving the miſchief done by our artillery in their crowded bodies. While we were engaged as I have now deſcribed, we were rejoiced at the ſight of Cortes approaching to our ſupport. As the cavalry came round by the rear of the Indians, who were entirely occupied in their attacks upon us, the latter did not perceive them until they made their charge. The ground being very level, moſt of the horſes active, and the men expert, they now rode through the bodies of the enemy as they choſe, and we, encouraged by this ſupport, reiterated our efforts on our ſide. The Indians ſtruck with ſurpriſe thought that the horſe and his rider were one; they were terrified at the ſight, and in an inſtant fled to the adjacent woods and marſhes, leaving the field and victory to us.

Being

The North American Indians throw tobacco powder in the air after an escape
from danger with shouts and gesticulations but their secret intention is the
same of gratitude to their Gods. ~~The custom of the Celts~~
the Celts had a similar custom

Victoria was abandoned in the middle of the 16th century on account of the incursions of the English. Another town was then founded at a greater distance from the coast & named Villa Hermosa, but the Governor of the Province resides at Tlacotalpam

Being thus maſters of the field, after taking breath Cortes related to us how he had been retarded in his march by bad ground, and the attacks of ſome bodies of the enemy who had wounded five of his men and eight horſes. The cavalry then diſmounted, and under a grove of trees on the field of battle, we gave thanks to God and our Lady his bleſſed mother with uplifted hands, for the victory which they had given to us; in conſequence whereof, and on account of the day on which the battle was fought, a town was afterwards founded on that ſpot named Santa Maria de La Vitoria. We next proceeded to take care of our wounds, which we bound up, and thoſe of the horſes we dreſſed with the fat of the Indians whom we found dead thereabout. We then walked over the field to examine the loſs of the enemy, which we found to amount to upwards of eight hundred, dead or dying of their wounds by cannon ſhots, and thoſe of our ſmall arms or ſwords; alſo where the cavalry had charged we found them to lie very thick. For the firſt hour of this battle we could not force the enemy to yield us an inch of ground, nor did they until they ſaw the cavalry coming on them.

We made five Indians priſoners, two of whom appeared to be chiefs; the day was growing late, and we were fatigued; we therefore retreated to our quarters, firſt burying two of our ſoldiers, who were killed, one by a wound in the ear, and the other by one in the throat, and then, after dreſſing our wounds with the fat of Indians, and having placed good guards round our poſt, we eat our ſuppers, and went to our repoſe.

In his account of this action Gomara ſays, that previous to the arrival of the main body of the cavalry under Cortes, Franciſco de Morla appeared in the field upon a grey dappled horſe, and that it was one of the holy apoſtles, St. Peter or St. Jago, diſguiſed under his perſon. I ſay, that all our works and victories are guided by the hand of our Lord Jeſus Chriſt, and that in this battle, there were ſo many enemies to every one of us, that they could have buried us under the duſt they could have held in their hands, but that the great mercy of God aided

us

us throughout. What Gomara aſſerts might be the caſe, and I, ſinner as I am, was not worthy to be permitted to ſee it. What I did ſee was, Franciſco de Morla riding in company with Cortes and the reſt upon a cheſnut horſe, and that circumſtance, and all the others of that day appear to me at this moment that I am writing, as if actually paſſing in the view of theſe ſinful eyes. But although I, unworthy ſinner that I am, was unfit to behold either of thoſe holy apoſtles, upwards of four hundred of us were preſent, let their teſtimony be taken. Let enquiry alſo be made how it happened, that when the town was founded on that ſpot, it was not named after one or other of thoſe holy apoſtles, and called St. Jago de la Vitoria, or St. Pedro de la Vitoria, as it was Santa Maria, and a church erected and dedicated to one of thoſe holy ſaints. Very bad chriſtians were we indeed, according to the account of Gomara, who when God ſent us his apoſtles to fight at our head, did not every day after acknowledge and return thanks for ſo great a mercy! Would to heaven that it were ſo, but until I read the chronicle of Gomara I never heard of it, nor was it ever mentioned amongſt the conquerors who were then preſent.

I have related how we made two chiefs priſoners in the late battle; having been kindly treated by Cortes, and exhorted to induce their countrymen to come into amicable terms, they were diſmiſſed for that purpoſe, after having been preſented with a number of beads, and artificial diamonds. Theſe Indians faithfully executed their miſſion; and to ſuch an effect, that the chiefs of the province immediately ſent fifteen of their ſlaves with their faces beſmeared with black, and in wretched habits, in ſign of contrition for what had paſſed, and bearing fowls, roaſted fiſh, and maize, as a preſent. Cortes received them with kindneſs, but the interpreter ſpeaking ſomewhat angrily to them ſaid, that it was with chiefs, and not with ſlaves that we were to treat.

On the enſuing day thirty Indians of rank came in good dreſſes with another preſent, and to requeſt permiſſion to inter their dead that they ſhould not be eaten by lions and tygers. This being granted them

V. figure in Persian painting &c.

them, they proceeded to burn and inter the bodies. They alſo informed us that on the next day we ſhould receive an embaſſy to treat concluſively of peace. Accordingly, at the time mentioned, ten chiefs richly dreſſed arrived with much ceremony, and ſaluted Cortes and the reſt of us; they brought with them veſſels of incenſe which they offered to us, demanding pardon for the paſt, and declaring their good intentions in future. Cortes aſſuming a grave countenance told them they deſerved death for their neglect of our former offers of peace; but that our great Monarch Don Carlos had enjoined us to favour them ſo far as they ſhould deſerve it, and in caſe of their adopting a bad line of conduct, they ſhould again feel the effect of our vengeance. He then cauſed a cannon to be fired, the noiſe of which terrified them, whoſe imaginations were under the impreſſion of its being a living creature; and the noiſe of the ball in the neighbouring woods confirmed them in their way of thinking. One of the moſt ſpirited of the horſes was then brought into the apartment, and it being ſo contrived that he ſhould ſhow himſelf to the greateſt advantage, his apparent fierceneſs, and his action, ſtruck the natives with awe. Shortly after this twenty Indians of burthen arrived bearing proviſions for our uſe. Cortes converſed a long time with the chiefs, who at length took their leave, highly contented with the reſult of their viſit.

On the enſuing day we were viſited by many chiefs of the neighbouring diſtricts, who brought with them preſents of gold wrought into various forms, ſome reſembling the human face, others of animals, birds, and beaſts, ſuch as lizards, dogs, and ducks. Alſo three diadems, and two pieces in form like the ſole of a ſandal, with ſome other articles of little value, nor do I recollect the amount of the whole. They alſo brought ſome mantles of very large ſize, but that part of the preſent which we held in the higheſt eſtimation was twenty women, among whom was the excellent Donna Marina, for ſo ſhe was called after her baptiſm. Cortes thanked the chiefs for their viſit, but cauſed it to be intimated to them, that the certain indication of peace was, the return of the inhabitants to their town, which by their authority he expected to ſee done within two days, and this was accordingly com-

plied with in the time preſcribed. They alſo on being called on to renounce their idolatrous worſhip, declared a ready aſſent upon that point. Cortes explained to them the myſteries of our true faith, and thoſe parts of it which are repreſented in the crucifix, and the image of our Holy Virgin. To this the caciques replied that they admired the "Tecle-"ciguata," which in their language ſignifies a great princeſs.

When theſe people were queſtioned as to their hoſtilities againſt us they excuſed themſelves by ſaying, that they had been inſtigated thereto by the cacique of Champoton, and alſo by our Indian interpreter who deſerted from us. This man Cortes was very anxious to lay hands on, but to his enquiries concerning him the anſwer was, that he had fled: it came to our knowledge however afterwards, that he had been ſacrificed. Being queſtioned as to the place where they obtained their gold they replied, that it was on the weſt, and they frequently repeated, "Culchua," and "Mexico," words, the ſignification of which was at this time unknown to us. We had here an interpreter named Franciſco, who had alſo been with Grijalva; he did not underſtand the language of Tabaſco in the leaſt, but knew perfectly what they meant by the word Culchua, which country, he endeavoured to explain to Cortes, lay far within the land.

On the enſuing day, an altar being built and the crucifix erected, the town of Tabaſco changed its name for that of Santa Maria de la Vitoria. The twenty Indian women who had been brought to us, were upon this occaſion baptized, the Rev. Father Bartholome de Olmedo preaching to them many good things touching our holy faith. Donna Marina, the principal of them, was a woman of high rank, which indeed ſhe ſhewed in her appearance; and theſe were the firſt chriſtian women in New Spain; Cortes gave one to each of his captains, and we remained here five days longer, taking care of our ſick and wounded. This time Cortes employed in conciliating the natives, recommending to them to preſerve their allegiance to his Majeſty our Emperor, whereby they ſhould enſure our protection to them: this they promiſed

promiſed faithfully to perform, and theſe were the firſt of the natives of this country who became vaſſals to the Spaniſh monarchy.

On the next day, (Palm Sunday) with the aſſiſtance of the natives a croſs was made in a large ceiba tree on the ſpot where the battle was fought, in order to afford a long memorial thereof, for this tree has the quality of reproducing its bark. The natives attended at the adoration of the holy image and croſs, which we went in proceſſion to pay our devotions to, on this feſtival. They then at our requiſition aſſiſted us to make our preparations to re-embark, our pilots wiſhing to get far off that coaſt, which the wind at this time blew ſtrongly upon; and all things being prepared, and Cortes having taken leave of the natives, in the evening of this day the troops went on board, and on the enſuing morning ſailed for St. Juan de Ulua.

As we proceeded along the coaſt, thoſe of us who had been there before with Grijalva pointed out to Cortes the different places we ſaw on the land, ſaying, here Sir is La Rambla, and there Tonala or St. Anton: more forward we ſhewed him the great river of Guacacualco, the lofty mountains covered with ſnow, thoſe of St. Martin, and Roca Partida. We then ſhewed him the rivers of Alvarado, and Vanderas, Iſla Blanca, and Iſla Verde, and cloſe to the land Iſla de Los Sacrificios, and early in the evening of holy Thurſday we thus arrived at the port of St. Juan de Ulua. I recollect that while we were pointing out theſe places to Cortes, a cavalier named Puertocarrero came up to him and ſaid, "It ſeems to me Sir as if theſe gentlemen who have been here be-
"fore are making their exhibition, as it were, here you ſee Monteſinos
"of France, and here you ſee the great city of Paris, and here the
"waters of the Duero where they run to the ſea. But I ſay ſee the rich
"lands, and look to your meaſures!" Cortes very well underſtood the purport to which this was ſpoken, and replied, "God give us fortune
"in arms like the Paladin Roldan, and for the reſt, having you gentle-
"men for ſoldiers, I ſhall know very well how to act to good effect."

The mountains of Guatuſco & Tuxtla are in the horizon from the ſea but 200 from Ulua & 300 from Vera Cruz

The young native who was baptized by the name of Donna Marina, and who rendered ſuch eſſential ſervices in the ſequel, was the daughter of the chief or Prince of Painala, a powerful lord who had ſeveral diſtricts ſubject to him, eight leagues from Guacacualco. He dying while this lady was an infant, his widow married another chief, a young man, by whom ſhe had a ſon whom they determined to place in ſucceſſion after them. They therefore gave this girl to certain Indians of Xicalango to carry off ſecretly, and cauſed it to be rumoured that ſhe was dead; which report they corroborated by taking the advantage of the death of a child about her age, the daughter of a ſlave. The people of Xicalango gave her to thoſe of Tabaſco, and the latter to Cortes, by whom ſhe was preſented to a cavalier named Alonzo Hernandez Puertocarrero: when he went to Old Caſtille, Cortes took her to himſelf, and had by her a ſon who was named Don Martin Cortes, and who was a commander of the order of St. Jago. She afterwards on our expedition to Higueras married a cavalier named Juan Xaramillo.

Donna Marina had by her birth an univerſal influence and conſequence through theſe countries; ſhe was of a fine figure, frank manners, prompt genius, and intrepid ſpirit; an excellent linguiſt, and of moſt eſſential ſervice to Cortes whom ſhe always accompanied. I was acquainted with her mother, and her half brother, who was at the time I knew him grown up; they governed their territory conjointly, the ſecond huſband being alſo dead. They were afterwards baptized, the mother by the name of Marta, the ſon by the name of Lazarus; this I know, for in the expedition to Higueras, when Cortes paſſed through Guacacualco, he ſummoned all the neighbouring chiefs to meet him in that ſettlement; and amongſt many others came the mother, and half brother of this lady. She had told me before that ſhe was of that province, and in truth ſhe much reſembled her mother who immediately recogniſed her. Both the old lady and her ſon were terrified, thinking that they were ſent for to be put to death, and cried bitterly, but Donna Marina dried their tears, ſaying, that ſhe forgave them, that at the time they ſent her from them they were ignorant of what they did; and

that

Present tradition conforms this account. A manuscript in the library of the Jesuits College of S. Peter & Paul. Inf. says she was born in Guilotla a village of Coatzacoalcos named after him Torquemada & Herrera say she was a native of Jalisco & carried this country by Merchants of ~~Jalisco~~ Sivaldanco, which is 900 miles distant, this discredits.

Ipalnemoani - an epithet of the divinity / LANGUAGE

in Culvan. appears to show an Asiatic derivation.
The Culvan likes the Hebrew & French mouth the superlatives and #
like the Hebrew & other languages the comparatives, while we supply by particles. it abounds in diminutives & augmentatives & in verbal & abstract terms. That is words formed from their respective verbs & abstracts from nouns.
Example. Chihua. to do
Chichihua to do repeatedly
Chihuilia to do to another
Chihualtia to cause to be done
Chihuatiuh to go to do
Chihuaco to go to do
Chihuaco. to come to do
Chihuatiuh to be doing.

Tatt. father - Amo = Ta - or tatt. your father
Neco - to ascend - Imperative. Xilleco. ascend - ~~Ximo Lic~~
Ximolliahuia - ascend, Sir
Maximotlia Huitzino. - ascend Lord. -
Tlatotli. loved. Tahuitztli. honored
Pia. to hold - verb. [guard, keep]

They cut off syllables in their numerous compounds according to the Universal Missionaries. the Delaware & Iroquois are the only distinct languages of N. A. out of Labrador. The Delaware is probably derived from the Culvan as it is deficient in the same sounds, uses L - for R has a strong guttural pronunciation & their words much compounded. The word Papa or Papa applied to the divinity is found there.
The Indians of Nantucket - Spoke the Natticke dialect in which Babbles are pointed terminates in sharp consonants. t. k. see. V. american farmers letters 8. 11 & note among others Wattapoan which has a Culvan sound

that ſhe thanked God, who had taken her from the worſhip of idols to the true church, and was happier in having a ſon by her lord and maſter Cortes, and in being married to a cavalier like her huſband, than if ſhe had been ſovereign of all the provinces of New Spain. All this I heard with my own ears, and ſwear to the truth thereof. Amen. At parting ſhe gave them a very handſome preſent of gold, and thus diſmiſſed them. This ſtory brings to my mind that of Joſeph in Egypt, when his brothers were in his power. Donna Marina underſtood the language of Guacacualco and Mexico which is one and the ſame, and as ſhe alſo could converſe with Aguilar in that of Tabaſco and Yucatan, we thus acquired a medium of communication with the Mexican language, which was an object of great importance to us.

or Maya

The Jeloan Language wants the sounds. B. D
F. G R & S. & abounds with those of T. X. T'. Z. T L.
T'Z. but although L is so frequent in this Language no word
begins with it. It has few words of acute terminations (what
ever is so called) most of the words have the penult
syllable long.

Mexican. — prevalent Language of the North East —

Chinese Guttural. Jeghole. what the English
call Jehole —

Tul. tyl. migration ancient Language

CHAPTER IV.

Arrival of the Armament commanded by H. Cortes, at St. Juan de Ulua. Tranſactions and Occurrences there.

Having left Tabasco the evening of the preceding Saturday = Sunday

ON Holy Thurſday of the year 1519, we arrived at the port of St. Juan de Ulua, and Cortes hoiſted the royal ſtandard. In about half an hour, two large canoes called piraguas full of Mexicans ſet off from the ſhore to viſit the ſhip which bore the flag. When theſe people came on board, they enquired for the lord, or as they expreſs it Tlatoan, who was pointed out to them by Donna Marina. They then advanced to Cortes with great reſpect, and informed him that a ſervant of their ſovereign Montezuma had ſent them to wait upon him, to know who we were, what our buſineſs was, and if we were in want of any thing, in which caſe they had orders to ſupply us. Cortes thanked them, and having made them a preſent of ſome cut glaſs, ordered an entertainment to be ſerved up, after which he declared that the object of his viſit was, to ſee and treat with the people of thoſe countries; that no one ſhould ſuſtain any injury by him, and that he hoped they would have cauſe to be ſatisfied with his arrival there.

Where at present stands the City of New Vera Cruz.

On Good Friday we diſembarked the cavalry, infantry, and artillery, on the ſand hills of which that coaſt is compoſed; and having poſted our artillery, and raiſed an altar, we conſtructed temporary barracks. On the enſuing day we were viſited by many of the natives, who brought hatchets wherewith they proceeded to work in making the huts, that of Cortes eſpecially, more convenient; they alſo brought mantles to guard us from the ſun, and a preſent of gold, fowls, bread, and plumbs. Thoſe who brought them informed Cortes, that on the next day the governor of the province intended to wait upon him.

At

Ta-toaw, toani or toiani. may be derived from the Scythian word. toigon or toion
of which is itself derived from the Sanscreet or of the same origin. toigon
the latter being applied to the Divinity in the sense of "Lord"—

Tendile - properly Teuchtli - which means Lord - or as we should say my Lord. from the same root with the Abyssinian Tecla —

V. P. 56

See repl
page.
& page
141.

Note. Garuda or Gauna is a rational Eagle or fabulous bird in Hindoo Mythology
& Fabulous Queen in Persian and Irish History. Monac in the first, Mocha mongrua
the second. both words mean "bird of Paradise" Spicaflor —
Huitzilton - translated "humming bird" Solom. Huitzilopoxtli - his left leg was
worshipped in feathers of the Huitzilton - which must have been the
bird of paradise. Sleeps 6 months & wakes up - visible to the mysteries of Ad
Hom — sacred — sacred tree. Lotos tree — leaves of
knowledge — Hom, Oom, — Oghus, — Ooghus, Oohus, sacred —
The Valkyrs fable seems related to this. Bird of the great Hiawa
Monmongwaddo — Irish — seem all of Persic origin
Valkyr. Their sister the most beautiful bird of them

At the appointed time, on the day of the feaſt of the reſurrection, a nobleman named Tendile who was the governor ſpoken of, accompanied by Pitalpitoque afterwards called Ovandillo, and attended by a great train of followers bearing various articles of proviſion, with much reſpect and ceremony, advanced, and made three reverences to Cortes and the ſoldiers who were about him. Cortes went to meet and bid the two chiefs welcome: he then cauſed maſs to be ſaid, after which the tables were placed, and he together with certain of his captains and the two Mexican lords, ſat down to dinner. Their repaſt ended, and having withdrawn together he informed them, that he was the vaſſal of the greateſt prince in the world, who had ſent us thither, to wait upon the king of thoſe countries, whoſe fame had reached him, in order to contract a treaty of peace and amity, and to tell many things to him of the greateſt import to be known. To this Tendile ſomewhat haughtily replied, ſaying, "How is this? You are but juſt arrived, and you talk "of ſeeing our monarch: receive this preſent which he ſends you, and "it is time enough to think of other things afterwards." He then took out of a cheſt many pieces of gold well wrought, which he preſented to Cortes, together with ten loads of fine mantles of white cotton adorned with plumage; and many other things, which, it being ſo long ago, I do not recollect. After theſe followed an abundant ſupply of proviſions, ſuch as fowls, fruit, and roaſted fiſh. Cortes in return preſented them with artificial diamonds, and requeſted that they would encourage the natives to come and barter with us, which they promiſed to do. We afterwards learned that theſe noble Mexicans were the governors of the provinces named Cotaſtlan, Tuſtepeque, Guazpaltepeque, Tlatalteclo, and other diſtricts which had been lately reduced to ſubjection under their monarch. Cortes then produced as a preſent for the great Montezuma, an arm-chair elegantly carved and painted, ſome artificial jewels called margajitas envelloped in perfumed cotton, a ſtring of artificial diamonds, and a crimſon cap with a gold medal whereon was repreſented St. George killing the dragon. Theſe he deſired Tendile to preſent to his maſter in the name of our ſovereign, and to ſignify to him at the ſame time, his requeſt to know when he might be permitted to wait

Cuitlalpitoc

Tendile or Teuhtli resided at Cuitlachtlan

wait upon him. To this the Mexican nobleman replied, that his monarch would be happy to hold an intercourſe with our emperor, and that the application ſhould be immediately made, and an anſwer tranſmitted.

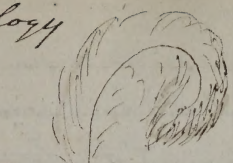
With this embaſſy ſome of the ableſt painters of Mexico had been ſent, who drew repreſentations to the life, of the countenance of Cortes, the other captains and ſoldiers, Donna Marina, Aguilar, and even the greyhounds, guns, and balls. Cortes perceiving this, in order to impreſs the people and their monarch with a formidable idea of our power, cauſed the guns to be loaded with a high charge of powder, and mounting his horſe, ordered the cavalry down to the wet ſands, which were hard, to exerciſe under the command of P. de Alvarado. He took care to call the attention, as it were by accident, of the ambaſſadors at the moment that the guns were fired, and as the air was calm, the exploſion, and noiſe of the balls through the trees, ſtruck the natives with aſtoniſhment, and theſe circumſtances were immediately repreſented in the painted cloths.

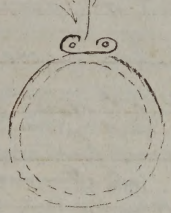
Tendile who was the moſt acute of the two in appearance, remarked at this time a partly-gilt helmet with one of our ſoldiers, and obſerved that it reſembled one which had belonged to their anceſtors, and which was placed on the head of their god Huitzilopochtli; he therefore expreſſed a wiſh to carry it to Montezuma. Cortes immediately preſented it to him, ſaying at the ſame time, that in order to aſcertain what reſemblance exiſted between the gold of the two countries, it would not be amiſs to return it filled with grains of that metal, as a fit preſent for our Emperor. Tendile now took his leave, aſſuring Cortes that he would ſpeedily return with the anſwer to his requeſt. The intelligence of what had paſſed, together with our prefents, was rapidly conveyed to Montezuma by this officer, who was as eminent for his ſwiftneſs of foot, as for his rank. That Monarch was moſt particularly ſtruck with the ſight of the helmet; and it impreſſed ſtrongly on his mind the idea, that we were the men deſtined by heaven to rule thoſe countries.

The

Jewa has a blue neck
& red locks

Indian Mythology





a blue mark round the Eyes more the Sanctum of Chamaleon is this of Isis to Cover the blue nymphea the Egyptian Lotus N. C. Jones

see the description of the idol - infra

Description of the town of Mexi poetlan and probably the head of the idol Huitzilopochtli. See its description — the livid ink across the face. Huitzilopochtli, i.e. Signification of this name
1. left foot deemed as feathers of the humming bird or d of paradise called in India the bird of Heaven. 2. or the vegetable saved
feast in Rome, the boy who
vis the bow has one foot, unshod, this mysterious circumstance may relate to some
ication. V. Portland vase, the foot of Paris is the ground —

See the account of this idol. infra. — The small bird - if this is the Huitzilotzin
described blue yellow & green —

The bird of paradise India. Query? — But of small birds there are various kinds as
uaraci or fruit of —
uaraci - tree - covering of — } the sun — in the antilles it is called the avis
uaraci or tree of —
ueken bird — & they say it sleepeth six months & birth other six months.
i the finest bird that can bee imagined — it hath a cap on his head, to which
proper colour can be given — for on whatsoever side we look on it — it shee
h red, greene blacke, & more colours, all very fine, and shining,
the breast is so pacie that on whatsoever side ye take it, it sheweth all
colours, especially, a yellow more finer than gold — The bodie is grey
th a very long bille — and the tongue twice the length of the bille — they
very swift in flight: and in their flight they make a noise like
ee, and they rather seem bees in their swiftness than birds — V
they never light, to feed
B. Guiana — seems to relate to yellow or golden

V. Acosta for this bird

a plate of Gold. &c. A Culvan Calendar or Almanac, wrought on solid gold silver, and such as is now used in Birmah. Cyclography was the favorite study of the Culvans as it was, and is to this day, of the Scythians, the graphic art was limited, the former was universal, and their accounts for its having reached the new world unaccompanied by the other. The constant recurrence of religious ceremonies caused a universal attention also to it. The Culvan was founded on the same principles with little difference as those of the Chinese and other nations of the old world by mysterious Cycles — the small cycle of Egypt was 12 the number of their Gods. that of Culva was 13. their number of their's. the Culvan Cycle was the more complicated. The Asiatic was of five periods of twelve years. making sixty. that of America of four periods of 13 making 52. Two of these made their grand age of 104. years. like the asiatic they expected the dissolution of Nature at each grand Conjunction of the planets.

According to the Culvan system each year of their age was noted by a Mathematical figure & of which latter there were four — The Thibetians also mark their years only through the four divisions the Culvans had the whole age as is seen here.

Year of the Chinese	Thibetian	Culvan. Cycle.
1. mouse	Rat	1 house. o
2. ox	ox	2 Reed oo
3. tiger	beast	3. flint ooo
4. Hare	bat	4. Rabbit oooo
5. Crocodile	Lightning	1 house ooooo
6. Snake	Snake	2. Reed oooooo
7. Horse	Horse	3 flint ooooooo
8. Lamb	Ram	4 Rabbit oooooooo
9. Ape	Ape	1 House ooooo ooooo
10. Hen	Cock	2. Reed oooooooooo
11. dog	dog	3. Flint ooooo ooooo
12. Hog	Hog	4 Rabbit ooooo ooooo oo
13		House ooooo.ooooo.ooo

Thus the first year of the Culvan Cycle is. House 1. and the 14 is reed. 1. — & thus in succession through the fifty two to the termination of which it reverts to House. 1. —

The Cyclography of the ancient Buddoists of Hindustan which is that now in use in the Burmah Nation bears the nearest relation of any existing in the old world

The other lord, Pitalpitoque, eſtabliſhed his reſidence in a temporary building, at a little diſtance from our camp, his people ſupplying the table of Cortes with proviſions, and the ſoldiers ſubſiſting by barter. Thus ſix or ſeven days paſſed, at the expiration of which time, we one morning perceived Tendile approaching, followed by upwards of a hundred men bearing preſents. With him came alſo a great Mexican lord, who in countenance, feature, and perſon, ſtrongly reſembled Cortes; and the reaſon of his being joined in the embaſſy was, that when the paintings were exhibited at the court, every one was immediately ſtruck with the reſemblance which the portrait of Cortes bore to this lord, who was named Quintalbor. The likeneſs was ſo ſtrong, that whilſt he remained among us in camp, we in ſpeaking of them uſed to ſay, this, and the other Cortes.

On the arrival of the ambaſſadors in the preſence of Cortes, they touched the ground with their hands and kiſſed them, and with their veſſels of incenſe fumigated him and the reſt. After ſome converſation, mats and mantles being ſpread out, the preſents were diſplayed upon them. The firſt was a plate of gold of the ſize of the wheel of a carriage, repreſenting the ſun, admirably wrought, and ſaid to be worth upwards of twenty thouſand crowns; a larger one, equally wrought, of ſilver, repreſenting the moon; the helmet already mentioned filled with gold in its native ſtate to the amount of three thouſand crowns, but the information we hereby obtained of the value of the mines we eſtimated at more than thirty thouſand; thirty pieces of wrought gold repreſenting ducks, very well executed, others in the forms of deer, dogs, lions, tygers, and apes; twelve arrows; a bow with the cord; two rods like thoſe borne by officers of juſtice, five palms long; ten collars, and many other ornaments, all of fine gold, and caſt, or moulded work. After theſe were produced plumes of feathers repreſented in gold, others of ſilver, together with fans of the ſame materials, beautiful penaches of green feathers, thirty loads of the fineſt cotton cloth, with many other things which I cannot now recollect.

A liſt of the preſents in the interleaves, before this book

The Lunar Calender viz. Called Tonalemath or book of the Moon

All theſe being laid before Cortes, the ambaſſadors made a ſpeech, wherein they told him that with the ſame good will that their monarch ſent the preſent, it was hoped he would receive it, and divide it as he thought beſt among the Teules with him. They alſo communicated to him a meſſage from the great Montezuma to this effect; "That he re-"joiced in the arrival of ſuch brave men in his country as the accounts "he had received proved us to be; that he much wiſhed to ſee our "great emperor, and to communicate by a reciprocation of preſents "with him; and that he was ready to render us any ſervices; but that "as to viſits to his court, they were attended with many difficulties, "and he did not wiſh for them." Cortes received this meſſage with apparent good humour, and preſented each of the ambaſſadors with holland ſhirts and other articles of ſmall value, but replied by obſerving, that after having croſſed ſuch a vaſt ſpace of ſea, he could not return without executing the miſſion which he had been ſent upon, which was, to ſee and ſpeak to the Emperor Montezuma in perſon, ſuch being the orders of our great monarch, which he was compelled and determined to obey. The ambaſſadors replied that they would convey his meſſage, but gave no hopes of a favorable anſwer. Out of our poor means Cortes contrived to ſend by them a ſecond preſent; it conſiſted of a glaſs cup of Venetian manufacture, curiouſly gilt and wrought with figures, three holland ſhirts, and ſome other articles. With theſe the two ambaſſadors returned to Mexico, leaving Pitalpitoque to take the charge of proviſioning our camp.

Cortes ſeeing that theſe uninhabited ſand banks infeſted by moſquitos were diſadvantageous for a ſettlement, ordered Franciſco de Montejo, with two ſmall ſhips, to proceed along the coaſt for the ſpace of ten days ſail, in ſearch of a port in a better ſituation. Montejo advanced as far as the great river of Panuco, which he could not paſs on account of the violence of the currents. He accordingly returned without being able to report any information, except that twelve leagues from this place, he had ſeen a town or fortreſs named Quiabuiſtlan, and near it a harbour which appeared to the pilot to be ſecure to the north.

It

to that of the Calvans. Their year commences on the 10th of April. making 365 days to the year. They have also a lunar year of 12 months. the first of 30 days - the rest of 29. alternately. to make the commencement of the two years coincide they call their year inter ie a Moon. According to the modern computation the period of Cyclus a renovation of Nature is to have every 12,000 years.

The sexagenary cycle of China commenced 2272 years A.C. 722 revolutions of the Moon & 22 lunations added make the lunar period and the solar cycle. each year as in Calvan is marked by a collation of figures. from one column of 10. the other of 12 figures then there is the luni solar cycle of 19 years at the expiration of which the Sun and Moon are to the same relative station from which they set out with a difference of one hour & a half.

The modern Tartar year commences with April. but the ancient Tartar year commenced in January like that of Ancient Egypt, and like that too the Calvan year commenced on the 1st of that Month.

Little trace of lunar observations is found among the Calvans. but Meth in Moon signifies a Month. The Hindoos divided the path of the Sun into 12 Houses it is said 4600 years A.C. The Chinese & Persians give it 24— But probably the most ancient computation is that of Industan & China of 354 lunar Months. 15 days with the same number of the Moon. reckoning from the winter solstice. The regulation to adapt the Cycles of the Sun the lunar Year was probably the first effort of Astronomy.

The Calvans counted 10 months of 20 days, added, at the end of the Year five days, and every fourth year intercalated one more. or 13 at the end of their age of 52 years. The Calvan Almanack has a sign for every day of the month. Their month like ours was of 4 weeks — each five days.

The Shepherds of Scythia the earliest astronomers who in the long nights and clear atmosphere of that elevated region first studied the movements of the Spheres, conveyed or copied their ideas before the art of writing was made use of by the most simple emblems.

The Astronomer Bailly saw reason to be convinced the ancient calculations were made in Latitude 49 North. if so probably in the Country of Bactria

that of Zoroaster. The Scythian astronomer represented the sun and as circle of bark from the birch tree. - to represent the moon a pointed segment of this orb is represented by the Hindus by a Rabbit / We recognize also in the ancient signs the distinctive forms of the horns of the ram the bull and the goat. Gemini, two parallel lines and Libra both equinoctial signifies meaning equation first were appropriated to the Equinoxes. Aries and Taurus from the season of lambing and calving. Cancer, or the beetle was the Egyptian emblem of the sun. Whichever of the two was the real, or whatever of the ascribed reasons led to it, it properly marked the summer solstice. The Goat which annually was seen moving to the west being Pan or the symbol of creation properly noted the commencement of the Sun's climbing the heavenly sphere as also from the nature of the animal. Aquarius falls in the same month in the Scythio-American calendar (atemoztli) as in that of the old world & is marked by the same figure. in ours by undulated lines, in the other by water falling down steps. To the rude emblems of the Scythian shepherd which fixed in a cord of hair constituted their astronomical apparatus succeeded the massive plates of gold and silver of Mexico and Birmah. In South Siberia round bars, of these but of small size, native metal are found. The Samoiedes, who are Finns from West Tartary are at this day universally studious of Cyclography. Each draw makes his almanac on wood or horn. Olaus Rudbeck found the rudiments of spherical computation among them. they are closely connected with the origin of The sun in ancient astronomy was symbolized both by the Serpent and Phoenix. N. American antiquities. The obliquity motion of the celestial sign denotes the sun's progress through the heavenly houses. F. B. K. Dupuis thinks the Goat introduced from his tendency to climb eminences A. A. C. 400 the sun was in conjunction with Aries at the vernal equinox Virgo, the feminine quality, the symbol of production, as Pan is of creation was justly placed in harvest. August. The Egyptians had a similar idea. the ear of corn in her hand alludes to the same. Pisces may allude to the ascending of fishes up rivers to spawn, and the Lion, the archer and the Scorpion had their meaning tho' now lost in obscurity.

The computation of time in ordinary use thro' the year with the Celtic was in periods of 12 days — N.B. The Greeks say astronomical observations were made in

It was afterwards called Puerto del Nombre Feo from its reſemblance to one of that name in Old Spain. In this expedition Montejo employed ten or twelve days, during which time the Mexican lord who was intruſted with the care of our proviſions, relaxed ſo much, that we began to experience great diſtreſs; our bread grew rotten, and unleſs we were ſucceſsful in fiſhing we might ſtarve, for the few Indians who occaſionally brought fowls valued them much higher than they had done at firſt.

After waiting for ſome time very impatiently, the Mexican ambaſſador Tendile returned, with a preſent of ten loads of the fineſt mantles of cotton and feathers. Montezuma alſo ſent four jewels called calchihuis, reſembling emeralds, moſt highly valued by the Mexicans, and various articles of gold, to the amount of three thouſand crowns. The two noblemen, Tendile and Pitalpitoque, for the third who reſembled Cortes had fallen ill on the road, informed our general that the great Montezuma had received his preſent with much ſatisfaction, but that as to the interview, he could not permit any more to be ſaid on the ſubject. That theſe rich jewels each of which exceeded in value a load of gold were intended for our emperor, and that herewith all farther intercourſe with Mexico was precluded. Cortes, though greatly mortified, thanked them politely, and turning to ſome of us who were preſent ſaid, "Truly "this is a great monarch, and rich: with the permiſſion of God we "muſt ſee him." To which all the ſoldiers replied, that they were ready to march. At this moment the bell tolled for the Ave Maria, and all of us fell on our knees, before the holy croſs.

The Mexican noblemen being very inquiſitive to know the meaning of this, Cortes hinted to the Rev. Father Bartholome the the propriety of a ſermon, ſuch as ſhould convey to them the truths of our holy faith. Fra. Bartholome accordingly preached, like an excellent theologian which he was, explaining the myſteries of the croſs, at the ſight of which the evil beings they worſhipped as gods fled away. Theſe ſubjects and much more he dilated upon, and it was perfectly ex-

plained to, and underſtood by the Mexicans, who promiſed that they would relate all they had ſeen and heard to their ſovereign. He alſo declared to them, that amongſt the principal objects of our miſſion thither, were, thoſe of putting a ſtop to human ſacrifices, injuſtices, and idolatrous worſhip; and then, preſenting them with an image of our Holy Virgin with her ſon in her arms, he deſired them to take it with them, to venerate it, and to plant croſſes ſimilar to that before them in their temples.

A number of articles of gold were now brought in order to barter by the natives, and with this we paid for the proviſions, principally fiſh, which we could procure; this was our only preſent reſource againſt abſolute want; we were moſtly provided with thoſe toys which were in requeſt among the Indians, and with them we procured the gold, which as ſoon as obtained was paid to our fiſhermen, who were chiefly the mariners of the fleet. Cortes well knew of this private trade, nor did it afford him diſſatisfaction, as he conſidered it a furtherance of his views, though he concealed his mind upon the ſubject.

The partizans of Velaſquez however began now to grow jealous at this practice, and demanded Cortes to make ſuch regulations as ſhould bring all the gold which had been, or was in future to be purchaſed, into one common ſtock, under the care of a treaſurer. To this Cortes conſented, and named for the purpoſe one Gonzalo Mexia. He then turned to thoſe who had made the application and with an angry countenance ſaid, " Look you gentlemen! Our companions ſuffer under " want; I therefore thought it prudent to connive at what was doing; " all they obtained amounts to a mere trifle, with the bleſſing of God " we have great and ſplendid proſpects before us; it is now proclaimed, " as you have deſired; ſee if the ſoldiers will in future be able to pro- " cure food." It is upon this tranſaction that Gomara relates, that it was done as a piece of art by Cortes, to induce Montezuma to think that gold was no object with the Spaniards; but the application for the caſque

the Mexicayons reckon their time by years commencing with May or frog-month
- egg-month - July moulting-month, august fledging-month - September
ing of horns - October rutting-month - November hoar-frost - December Ice - January
d. - February cold - Mauds Eagle - April goose - months -

The Celtans had a religious an astronomical and a civil Cycle.

B. The cap of mourning which is seen on their calendars agrees with that of the ancient Asia
& Egyptians & with that in the painting in the British Museum.

The cutting Ogies into 26 parts relate to the division of the ancient year. The division
iods of 14 days, leaves but one ~~day~~ unappropriated day in the 365.

cilly deduces & proves ancient Asiatic astronomy's derivation from Lat 49 Latitude
Pretania

But the cleft of the Vitre appears in those of the Lamas and in the sacred Stones of Japan
uanies is represented in the simple emblems of the Lunar Houses by the Celtans and Euro
s by nearly the same figure. —

The Celtans noted months by painting round their calendars as the years they counted

Their year began 26. Feb.y & was of 10 months of 29 days & 5.
per menem. ann. The Peruvian ancient year began in January, but lately
they reformed it to the winter Solstice.

The Celtans reckoned four ages of the world. 1. that of water
~~ended~~ terminated by a universal deluge. 2d. Tal-Conatich / sun / that of
th, terminated by the destruction of the Giants in an Earthquake. 3d The Conatich
r of air, terminated by the destruction of the world as now in great whirlwinds, 4th
Conatich, age of fire, to be terminated by fire, at the Conclusion of one of their ages
52 or 64 years.

They reckoned their years by the collation of a number and a figure
numbers extended to 13. that of their Hebdomas. the figures were. Rabbit
d, flint, & House. 4 times 13. 52. years in their lesser age,
4. in their great age. each year had a distinction mark by the ~~same~~ concurrence
of figure & number. — the year was of 10. months of 20 days

Entered

by [illegible] 2000 years before Alexander.

360. and five, called, uselos, because no labour was performed on them —
1. Tattli. rabbit. 1. of their Century.
Every 4 years they anticipated a day. corresponding with our bissextile
Each Century began with the 26. of February.
But their ordinary computation was by periods of 13 days. marked by the
occurrence of a figure (7 a day,) & no number —
they had also a division of four days.
Grand age. 104. years, consisted of two ages of 52. or 4 times 13.
N. B. 13. & 4 were the favorite numbers
W. months of 20. days in the year. (Meztli, moon, months)
a smaller cycle of 13 days running through the year
a smaller division of four the of months or 5. days.
Thus like that of china their cyclography consisted of inclusive
cycle. the grand age of China being 60 years.
The Toltecans had, we find, a religious ~~& astronomical~~ cyclography.
They intercalated 13. days every 52. years
Though their lunar or astronomical month was not in use they called the di
visions of time related to it Metzli, or Moon, and the Lunar peri
was divided into two parts named by them the watch & sleep of
the Moon, and it is there also denominated in Vindobona. The
is every appearance that it had once existed in their cyclography
but had fallen into disuse.
They had no use of a designation to distinguish one century from another but the
chiefly proves that there had not been a long accumulation of centuries
in their Chronology —
Their calendar consisted frequently of inclusive circles, the outside for
Century, next the year & the inner the months.
The Geographers are said to have had a year of 13 months

See next page —

caſque to be returned filled with gold, and other previous circumſtances muſt have fully convinced him to the contrary.

One morning at this time, we were diſagreeably ſurpriſed by perceiving that all our Mexican neighbours had quitted us without taking leave. This we afterwards learned was done by the order of Montezuma, who was determined to permit no more conferences. It ſeems this monarch was greatly bigotted to the worſhip of his idols, to which he every day ſacrificed boys, in order to obtain directions how to act. Their commands were, that he ſhould hold no farther intercourſe with us, and they forbid the reception of the crucifix in Mexico. This was the cauſe of the flight of our former neighbours, which gave us an alarm and we prepared for hoſtilities.

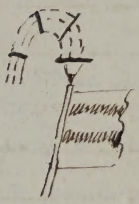
One day whilſt I and another ſoldier were centinels upon the ſands at ſome diſtance from our poſt, we remarked the approach of five natives, whom, in order not to create an unneceſſary alarm in the camp, we ſuffered to come up cloſe to us. Theſe men ſaluted us in a friendly manner, and by ſigns deſired to be brought to our camp. I therefore left my comrade at the out-poſt, and attended them thither, for I then had the full uſe of my limbs, far otherwiſe than at preſent that I am worn down and old. When I had brought them to Cortes they ſaluted him with great reverence, addreſſing him with the title of Lopelucio, or lord, which is the ſignification of the word in the Totonaquean language. Theſe Indians were very different in their appearance from the Mexicans, and they wore in their ears large rings of ſtone painted blue, and very fine leaves of gold in their lips. As their language was unintelligible to our interpreters, Donna Marina aſked in the Mexican if any of them could ſpeak in that dialect; to which two of them anſwered in the affirmative, and immediately proceeded to ſay, that their lord of Cempoal. had ſent them to congratulate us on our arrival; that he would be proud to ſerve ſuch brave men as he had heard we were, and would have waited upon us before, but from dread of the people of Culchua, who were with us. In the courſe of converſation Cortes was pleaſed to find

that

that Montezuma had enemies in the country; he diſmiſſed theſe men with preſents, and deſired them to aſſure their chief, that he would ſhortly pay him an amicable viſit. Theſe people were ever after named the Lopelucios.

The ſands we had remained on during this time, were infeſted by the ſmall moſquito, which is much the moſt troubleſome of all, and under whoſe attacks it is impoſſibe to ſleep; our bread was rotten, and we had hardly any thing elſe to eat. The faction of Velaſquez, and thoſe who had good plantations in Cuba therefore began to be very tired of our preſent ſituation, which indeed required ſome change, and Cortes prepared to proceed to the fortified town named Quiabuiſtlan. Upon this the perſons I have alluded to grew more querulous than before; they complained that they ſhould be worn down by the attacks of the natives of this vaſt country, having already loſt above thirty-five of our number, and that it was preferable to return and report to Velaſquez what we had done. To theſe remonſtrances Cortes replied, that hitherto we had no cauſe to complain of fortune; that death was the fate of war, and it was our faults if we wanted while we lived in a plentiful land; that it was impoſſible to quit this country without ſeeing more of it, and he truſted in God's aſſiſtance. This in ſome degree calmed, but by no means extinguiſhed the ſpirit of the party which had formed itſelf.

Cortes had now obtained from Puertocarrero, Alvarado and his four brothers, De Oli, De Avila, Eſcalante, De Lugo, and myſelf, together with other officers and cavaliers, promiſes of our ſupport in appointing him to an independent command, and this was ſuſpected by Montejo who cloſely watched all our motions. One night very late, Puertocarrero, Eſcalante, and De Lugo who was a diſtant relation of mine came to my hut, and ſaid to me, "Senior del Caſtillo get your arms and join us to attend Cortes who is going his rounds." I accordingly did ſo, and as ſoon as we had quitted the hut, they told that they wanted ſome converſation with me, which it was not proper for my comrades, who were of the faction of Velaſquez, to hear. One of them



this standard was the designation of their monthly calendar.

A Mexican calendar. The 4 rings designate the 4 points, and also the division of the age of 52 years into 4 periods of 13. — In the outer circle, the rays being that of the year & the inner that of the month. The figures of the sun or moon in the centre.

The moon was represented in the annual cycle while there had existed lunar regulations of the year, the sun was in the calendar of the age of 52 years.

2nd page
Volume Calendars & Notices

Astronomy is not subject to change of systems like other sciences being all the result of observation.

Cultus annual calendar & festival.

Secular designation

1. Tochtli. rabbit
2. Acatl. reed
3d Tecpatl. flint
4th Calli house.

Feb. 4. names. 13 numbers. 13th year was Tochtli, 4. Acatl.

Year. 1. Tochtli. 1st of an Age.

Fi. B. commencing 2 b. Feb. 4

1st Month — ~~Tlacaxipehualiztli~~ ~~Ma~~ Atlacahualco.

Signification
{ Ceasing of water. or Quauhuitl
= huia budding of trees.
figure water

Secular festivals of Talotecuhtli. &c

2d Tlacaxipehualiztli. Sig. Skinning of men. F. a Skin

Festivals of Gods Chicomacatl, Tlequihliquiahuatl.

Chacco

3d Tozozontli. Figure. a bird on a Lancet

Water Gods. & Coatlicue

4th Huei tozoztli. F a temple & sword grass. ie. shows of penance

Cuahuitl. &c

5th Toxcatl. F Wreaths of Maize

Tezcatlipoca Huitzilopochtli

6th Etzalcualiztli. F Maiz gruel

Gods of water

7th Tecuilhuitontli. F dances & sacrifices

Huei tozoztli

8th Huei tecuilhuitl. the same

Cuahuitl. sacrifice of a female victim. & of Mamiltochtli

9th Tlaxochimaco. Miccailhuitl. festival of the dead

figure of mother pig

Of Mamiltepactli, Huitzilopochtli & Jacatecuhtli

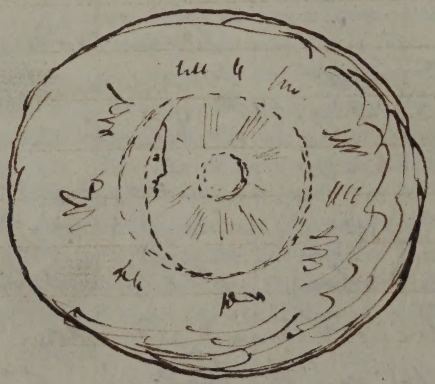
Observe the painting in the British museum

them then addreſſed me as follows; " Senior del Caſtillo it is now the " third time that you have viſited this country to your coſt and loſs; " Cortes has deceived us; he ſaid in Cuba that he had powers to " eſtabliſh a colony, whereas they went no farther as at preſent appears " than to traffic, and now we are to return to Cuba and aſſign all our " wealth over to Velaſquez. Here are many of us determined to take " poſſeſſion of this country under Cortes in his Majeſty's name, and " until his royal pleaſure is known: Cortes ſhall be elected our general, " and we expect you will give him your vote." To all this I moſt heartily and immediately aſſented, and we went through the different huts thus canvaſſing for Cortes. The affair was ſoon known to the party of Velaſquez which was much more numerous than ours; they immediately went to Cortes, and haughtily deſired him to deſiſt from theſe underhand proceedings; they told him that it was his duty now to return to Velaſquez who had ſent him, and that we were not by any means provided for the eſtabliſhment of a colony. To this Cortes mildly replied, that as in duty bound he would inſtantly return; but we who were of the other party now exclaimed againſt him for having deceived us in aſſerting that he had a commiſſion to colonize, whereas it appeared that it went no farther than barter; adding, that we demanded a fulfilment of his original engagement with us, as neceſſary for the ſervice of God and his Majeſty. That once we were ſettled more ſoldiers would join us, and that Velaſquez had drawn us to our ruin, by inducing us to come here in hopes of a ſettlement, and diſappointing us; and we concluded by ſaying, that thoſe who choſe to return to Cuba were welcome to do ſo.

We then inſiſted on Cortes accepting the command of us who were determined to try our fortunes in this new country, for the ſervice of God and his Majeſty: he for ſome time refuſed, but at length acceded, for as the proverb ſays, " You aſk me that, to which I have already got my own conſent," and thus he was appointed our captain general, and ſupreme magiſtrate. The worſt part of the buſineſs was, the power which we gave him, to draw for himſelf, one fifth of all the gold after

that

The Tlaxcallans called Atlacahualco, or March, Tlilomanilizth
or Oblation of maize, to obtain a good crop.
The second month they called Cuailhuitl, or Musical festival & represented
it by a Serpent wound round a pole & ajiacaxtli. The latter
signifying dances or festivals, & the Serpent their generality
say some, but more probably a Solar allusion
The sixth and tenth months, Mourning and great Mourning, or
Micailhuitl, & Huei Micailhuitl. festival & great festival in
honor of the dead. designated by the Mexicans by a cap and a
larger cap of Mourning, by the Tlaxcallans by Skulls & bones
the second being the larger.
This corresponds with the Asiatic September ritual
Tlaxochi 14th. month this word means the bird flamingo which
now resorts to the lakes.
Panquetzalizth, signifies the Mounting of the Standard
By the placing the moon in the manner below. it will be thought the Mexicans
knew the Moon derived her light from the Sun. ——



Entered

de Fonſeca, for ſo he was named, who wiſhed, throughout, to deſtroy us all.

The adherents of Velaſquez now declared, that they would not remain under the command of Cortes, but would return to the Iſland of Cuba; to which Cortes replied, that it was not his wiſh to detain any one contrary to his inclination, even though he ſhould remain alone. This pacified many, but Juan Velaſquez de Leon a relation of the Governor of Cuba, Diego de Ordas, Eſcobar who had been his page, Eſtudero, and others were not to be reconciled; ſo that Cortes was obliged to arreſt them, and keep them for a time in irons.

CHAPTER V.

The Spaniſh Army advances into the Country.

THE wants we experienced now required ſome relief, and Alvarado was accordingly ſent with a hundred ſoldiers principally of the party of Velaſquez, to ſearch the country, and procure maize, and other proviſions; for it was thought moſt politic, that the whole of thoſe who were friends to Cortes ſhould remain with him. It muſt be obſerved that this neighbourhood where the language of Culva was ſpoken, was dependent upon Mexico. Alvarado proceeding on his expedition, marched to ſome ſmall villages, dependencies of the diſtrict, named Coſtitlan, which the inhabitants had quitted a ſhort time before his arrival. In their temples he found the bodies of men and boys lately ſacrificed, the ſtones on which the horrid ceremony was performed, and the knives yet ſmoking; the limbs were ſevered from the bodies, and taken away, as our people were informed, to be eaten. Theſe ſhocking ſcenes aſtoniſhed our ſoldiers, but we every where as we proceeded through the country found ſimilar ones. In theſe villages they obtained abundance of proviſions, of which they ſtripped them, without doing further damage, by the ſtrict orders of Cortes, and returned with two priſoners to our quarters, where we rejoiced in the novelty of good fare: for, as the ſaying is, all hardſhips and misfortunes are ſupported with a hearty meal.

The addreſs and activity of Cortes made him daily acquire an intereſt amongſt the former adherents of Velaſquez, ſome with gold which breaks the ſolid rocks, and more with promiſes were ſucceſſively drawn over to him. He firſt brought his priſoners from the ſhips where they had been in confinement, and in a few days releaſed them entirely,

Cipactli

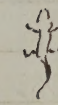
Ehecatl

+ Langstaff -

+

Calli. a house. Calla. Italian. Casa. Sp. Casa

Calli



Cuetzpalin

Coatl

Miquiztli

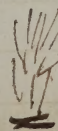
Mazatl

Tochtli

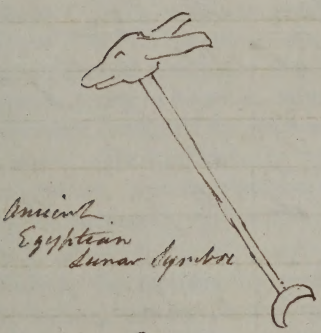
Atl.

Itzcuintli

Ozomatli

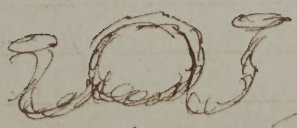


Malinalli



Ancient Egyptian Lunar Symbol

Razor probably



Ancient Egypt

Calendar rep. leaf

Half a days journey from Vera Cruz towards Mexico is Rinconado a place where is a great peninsula of Lime and Stone set by a river side where the Indians were wont to offer their sacrifices to their Gods. — Rob.t Thomson a. 1555.

Vera Cruz — Almost all Authors have committed a mistake concerning the foundation of — as they say the first Colony was Antigua at the ancient settlement on the River of that name, and believe there were but two places of that name; viz.t, ancient Vera Cruz, and that Vera Cruz stood on the sands where Cortes disembarked — but there have been three places of that name — Viz.t — 1. that founded near Chiahuitzla — a 1519 — afterwards called Villa Rica — 2d — ancient Vera Cruz founded in 1523 or 4 — & thirdly, new Vera Cruz — which still preserves the name, founded by the Count de Monterey or Monterey — now the first of the 17th Century Villa Rica was the first Spanish Colony in America — it was in the Totonacas country in a plain at the foot of mount Quiahuiztlan 12 miles from Campoalla to the North & adjoining the new Harbour Antigua —

entirely, attaching them ſincerely to his intereſt, and all by the ſoftening effects of gold.

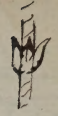
We now proceeded to the fortreſs of Quiabuiſtlan, and on our march thither along the coaſt, I recollect that we paſſed a great fiſh which was left behind by the tide. We then arrived at a river where the preſent town of Vera Cruz is built, and croſſed it to a village on the oppoſite ſide. The diſtrict was ſubject to the great town of Cempoal, to which the five Indians belonged who viſited us with golden ornaments in their under lips. In ſome temples we found the inſtruments and remains of human ſacrifices, much plumage of parrots, and books of the paper of the country, folded in the manner of cloth of Caſtille; but the natives had all fled, and no proviſions were to be found.

We now quitted the coaſt, and ſtruck into the country towards the weſt, where, in ſome large plains without any beaten track, we ſaw herds of deer feeding. Alvarado with his ſwift cheſnut mare gave chace to one of them, which he wounded with his lance, but the animal eſcaped from him into the woods. Juſt at this time twelve Indians came to us, bearing proviſions; they had been ſent by their chief with an invitation to go to his town, which was diſtant one day's journey. Cortes thanked them, and we proceeded on, to a town where we halted for the night. We found here the remains of human ſacrifices, both of men and women, with the repetition of the further details of which, I will not tire the reader.

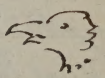
Early in the morning we proceeded under the conduct of our friendly Indians, and ſent forward to the chief of Cempoal to inform him of our approach. When we came within a league of the place, we were met by twenty principal perſons, who preſenting Cortes and the cavalry with very odoriferous flowers tied in bunches, told him, that they came with an excuſe on the part of their chief, who was ſo fat and unwieldy that he was not able to come out, but had ſent them to invite us to his town. Cortes thanked them, and we proceeded.

When we entered, we were ſurpriſed with the beauty of the buildings and ſituation, and the various plantations of trees. All the ſtreets as we paſſed were filled with men and women, attracted by curioſity. Our advanced guard having gone to the great ſquare, the buildings of which had been lately whitewaſhed and plaiſtered, in which art theſe people are very expert, one of our horſemen was ſo ſtruck with the ſplendor of their appearance in the ſun, that he came back in full ſpeed to Cortes, to tell him that the walls of the houſes were of ſilver. When we came to know the reality we all laughed heartily at him, and uſed in future to ſay that every thing that was white, was ſilver in his eyes. Theſe buildings were appointed for our lodgings, and large apartments aſſigned to us, which contained the whole; and here the fat cacique, for ſo I am in future to call him, came to pay his reſpects to Cortes. They had provided an entertainment for us, with baſkets of plums, and bread of maize. We were well pleaſed with our ſituation, and named the town Villa Vicioſa; though ſome called it Seville. Cortes ordered that the ſoldiers ſhould give no umbrage to the inhabitants, and that we ſhould for that reaſon remain in our quarters.

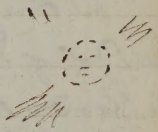
As ſoon as the fat cacique underſtood that we had dined, he ſignified to Cortes his intention of waiting on him, which he ſhortly after did, attended by many of the principal inhabitants, dreſſed in rich mantles, and ornamented with gold. Cortes went out to meet them with great ceremony, and having embraced the fat cacique, the latter ordered a preſent to be brought, compoſed of gold and mantles, but of little value, which he offered to Cortes, ſaying, "Great lord, receive "this preſent kindly, for if I had more it ſhould be yours." Cortes anſwered that he would repay it with good works, and deſired to know what ſervices he could render him, having been ſent by the emperor whoſe vaſſal he was, to redreſs wrongs, puniſh the wicked, and prevent the ſacrifice of human ſouls. He then ſaid many things to him concerning our holy faith. As ſoon as the fat cacique had heard them out, giving a deep ſigh, he complained bitterly of Montezuma and his officers, ſaying, that having lately been compelled to ſubmit to the yoke

Acatl 

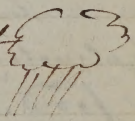
Ocelotl

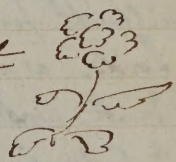
Quauhtli 

Cozcaquauhtli

Olin 

Tecpatl

Quiahuitl 

Xochitl 

Cyclography.

Of this festiv. the concurrence of the year with the day of the rabbit was observed the most so.

The rabbit seems to recur more frequently. it was the symbol of the moon in the old world.

Tezcatlipoca - i.e. little looth. because the priests watched all night the next month was called Huei tozoztli because priests nobility and commons kept watch.

Toxcatl. drought — penance flagellation & avert their misfortunes. a deified victim sacrificed the personification of Tezcatlipoca

In this month also was the 3d festival of Huitzilopochtli an idol of man's stature, of paste, bones of wood Mizquitl. — a bloody sacrificial knife of flint — an umbrella, — bones figured on the garment — — priests in red feathers — the victim or living personification of Huitzilopochtli was adorned with the feathers of the Eagle and carried a net on his back. — he chose the time of his own sacrifice — all the children then underwent super. incision —

Ehecatlcuilitli so called from the rain then used by the priests for food. they then drowned victims in a sacred Lake.

Tecuilhuitl festival of the Lords, or Tecuilhuitontli small festival of the Lords. a month of feasts &c. beginning 26. of June.

8th Month. worship of Centeotl. Xilonen (so called) or milky corn — 16. July begins — month called Huei tecuilhuitl. or great festival of the Lords.

9th Month Tlaxochimaco. from the garlands of flowers used to ornament the Idols (9th & 10th month micailhuitl & Huei micailhuitl — festival and festival of the dead —

10th 25. Aug. Xocohuetzi (so called) maturity of the fruit sacrifice to Huehueteotl. or Xiuhtecutli. priests &c painted red — victims half burnt & then sacrificed in the ordinary way

yoke of that monarch, he had ſeized all his gold, and now held him completely enthralled.

Cortes promiſed that he would ſoon take ſuch meaſures as ſhould free him from the tyranny he complained of. The cacique then made a very diſcreet anſwer, and they parted for the preſent. On the enſuing day we quitted this place attended by above four hundred Indians to carry our baggage. Theſe perſons are called Tamenes: they carry a burthen of about fifty pounds for the ſpace of five leagues, where they are relieved; and we underſtood that in peaceable and orderly times, in theſe countries, each cacique was obliged, on demand, to provide them through his diſtrict. At night we arrived at a village hard by the town of Quiaviſtlan, where we found a good ſupper provided for us by the care of the fat cacique.

At ten o'clock in the forenoon of the enſuing day, we entered the fortified town of Quiaviſtlan, ſituated upon a rock of very difficult aſcent, with our artillery in the front. Though I may be charged with breaking in upon my narrative to relate old ſtories, I muſt mention, that as we were marching up to this place, Captain A. de Avila, an ill-tempered man, being angry with a ſoldier named Villanueva for breaking his rank, gave him a thruſt of his lance in the arm which lamed him ever after; he was therefore in future called Villa nueva el Manquillo. We advanced to the middle of the city without any reſiſtance, or even meeting an individual; but on approaching the temples, which were upon the principal ſquare, we ſaw fifteen perſons dreſſed in rich mantles, who approaching Cortes preſented him with incenſe, and apologizing for the abſence of the people, through fear, invited us to repoſe ourſelves, and promiſed that before night the inhabitants ſhould return. Cortes informed them of that which related to our miſſion, in the ſervice of our great emperor, and holy faith, and preſenting them with ſome trinkets, deſired that they would ſend us a ſupply of proviſions, which they inſtantly did.

Cortes

Cortes was now informed of the approach of the fat cacique, who ſhortly appeared, borne in a litter by his principal nobility; and on his arrival, he immediately joined with the chiefs of this place, in bitter complaints of the tyranny of Montezuma; one of the heavieſt articles of which was, his demand of their children for the purpoſes of ſacrifice, or ſlavery; and they aſſerted that this was the practice, with many other acts of outrage committed by his officers, through the whole of the country where the language of Totonaque was ſpoken; a tract which contained above thirty towns. Cortes conſoled them, promiſing redreſs, and whilſt they were thus converſing a perſon came to inform the chiefs, that there were juſt then arrived five Mexican officers, or collectors of tribute. This intelligence drove the colour from the cheeks of all the natives, and they went trembling, to receive them, leaving Cortes quite alone.

For theſe officers lodgings were prepared with the greateſt diſpatch, and chocolate got ready for their refreſhment. As they went to their apartments they paſſed us by with great ſtate, not deigning to caſt a look upon Cortes. They were dreſſed in mantles elegantly wrought, and drawers of the ſame; their hair ſhining, and as it were tied at the top of the head, and each of them had in his hand a bunch of roſes, which he occaſionally ſmelt to. They were attended by ſervants who fanned them, and each of whom carried a cord and a hooked ſtick. They were alſo attended by a numerous company of the principal perſons, who did not quit them until they had taken their refreſhment, after which they ſent for the fat cacique, and thoſe of this place, and gave them a ſevere reprimand for receiving and entertaining us, contrary to the will of their ſovereign, Montezuma; and having uſed many threats of puniſhment, they concluded with a demand of twenty men and women to ſacrifice to their gods, in order to expiate the offence.

This being made known to our general he acquainted the caciques, that in conformity to his duty, he deemed it proper to ſeize the perſons of theſe officers, until their lord, Montezuma, ſhould be informed of the tyrannies

They stupified the victims with powder of Yaupon — a plant
the stem is of 4 Cubits' length — leaves like the willow but dentated — flowers
yellow, roots thin — taste of the anise. Query is this the ashicha of
Texas?

11th Nov. 14. Sept. Ochpaniztli a sweeping
12th 14th Octr. Teoleco. arrival of all the Gods.
13. 24th Octr. Tepeilhuitl — festival of the mountains — Hecatombs
— to the Dactyli of the winds — Theatl. Eolus.
14th 13. Nov. — Quecholli sacrifice to Diana. — offerings to
manes of Ancestors — preparations of arms, —
15th Nov. 3d Decr. — acacia wood bones of Huitzilopochtli
eating the statue of Huitzilopochtli ~~pierced with a dart by the~~
was pierced through the heart with a spear — woman
ill at table they saved food. — Nemontemi the Hundred while
the name of this month —
16. Nov. — 23d Decr. eating of Dogs of paste, avertive of evil —
17. Nov. 12. Jan.y
18. — 1. Feb.y

all the years of the Rabbit were divine years — the rabbit is symbolical of the Moon
They had a game similar to the Roman Lupercalia
Huitzilopochtli personification was not adored as Tezcatlipoca's was —
At the end of each age they renewed all fires from the sacred fire — and they
so expected at each such period a dissolution of Nature.

The pipe used by the Mexican priests to give the signals in their
ritual was probably like that of Boston at present made of the
mens tibia — so we find that they took the thigh bones of those
victims which they skinned —

Cyclography. Arabualle, cessation of waters does not agree with the climate of Arabia, but does with the north of the world.

Leanhuittle Lud, budding of trees. Kinath. Hebrew. Job 14th month. Tchitt cold, constriction — wouldst thou break the cords of Kesil? Job. Kesil torpor.

Eclipses marked in the Cyclography of the old world by the head and tail of a dragon.

The Egyptians had not adopted any intercalary space to adjust the year to the course of the sun.

In Cyclus Capallan whoever that was, the Tolteans adjusted the solar to the civil year by the use of intercalary days to make up for the excess of the six hours of the solar over the latter —

A reason may be found for those Nations Asiatic as well as American whose Cyclography exceeded their other science — their long Nights in the winter of the high latitudes — and their ignorance of artificial light would give them a tendency to this study in preference.

The Siamites have the Cycle of 60 years. each of 12 months of 20. & 29 days alternately. every third year they intercalate 13 months.

Their Cycle is of 5 periods of 12. as follows 6 small serpent —

1. mouse 2 Cow 3 Tyger 4 Hare 5 great serpent
7 Horse 8 Ram 9 monkey 10 Chicken 11 dog. 12 Swine.

Sunday. waw Adit / probably adit / Sun.
Monday — Sun. Tuesday — Ang-kaun — Mars
Wednesday — Poot. Thursday — Prahat / translated hard days probably from the symbol of power
Friday — Sook / translated day of rest — Sooca. Venus
Saturday — Sau. translated day of attraction —

Entered

At this time, it appears, the great Montezuma received intelligence of the manner in which his officers had been treated, and of the rebellion of the provinces. He was much enraged with Cortes, and had ordered two armies to march, one to puniſh his refractory ſubjects, the other againſt us, but when they were ready to ſet out, the arrival of the two officers whom Cortes had releaſed, and the account of the manner in which they had been treated while in our power, aſſuaged his anger, and induced him to ſend us a peaceable meſſage. For this purpoſe he ſelected two of his nephews, whom he ſent to us under the care of four old noblemen of the firſt rank about his court, with a preſent of gold, and mantles, worth two thouſand crowns, and alſo to return his thanks to Cortes, for the civility ſhewn to his officers; but adding a complaint of his having inſtigated theſe people to throw off their allegiance, for which he would at a future opportunity puniſh them, though he refrained from doing ſo at the preſent, on account of our being amongſt them; becauſe he was convinced that we were thoſe of whom the ancient prophecies had ſpoken, and that we were of the ſame anceſtors with himſelf. Cortes informed the ambaſſadors, that he and all of us were the moſt humble ſervants of the great Montezuma, for whom we had taken care of thoſe officers, three of whom were now on board of our ſhips, and theſe he ordered to be immediately brought and delivered to their friends.

Cortes then complained of Montezuma, and the uncivil flight of his officer the governor, ſaying, that was the reaſon of his now coming to this country, where he had received much kindneſs; hoping what had paſſed would be pardoned, and that as to tribute, it was not poſſible to ſerve two maſters, and the people of theſe provinces were now the vaſſals of our lord the emperor; but that he expected ſoon to wait on the great Montezuma, and then every thing ſhould be done to his ſatisfaction by us. He preſented the young princes with glaſs diamonds and beads, and treated them with much honor, ordering the cavalry out to exerciſe in their preſence, a ſight which afforded them great ſa-

tisfaction;

tisfaction; after which they returned to Mexico, very well contented with their viſit.

Cortes at this time loſt his horſe, whoſe place he ſupplied by that called El Harriero: he was a dark cheſnut and one of the beſt that were brought to New Spain. The embaſſy ſent by Montezuma had the greateſt effect on the people of thoſe countries, for ſaid they how formidable muſt thoſe Teules be, whom even the great Montezuma fears!!

The fat cacique now waited on Cortes, to complain of the outrages committed by a garriſon of Mexican troops which occupied a town called Cingapacinga, nine leagues diſtant from the place where we were. After ſome conſideration, Cortes laughing ſaid to thoſe about him, "Gentlemen you ſee that theſe people eſteem us to be a ſuperior "race of beings, let us encourage the prejudice, and impreſs them "with the idea that one of us is enough to drive an army before him. "For this purpoſe I will ſend old Heredia the Biſcayan muſketeer, "whoſe fierce and ſcarred face, great beard, one eye, and lame leg, "will terrify them." This man had been a ſoldier in Italy. Cortes told him when he had got as far as the river to fire a muſket as a ſignal, for he did this only to try how far the credulity of the Indians in our favor would carry them. Heredia being preſent, he called to the caciques ſaying, "Go with this Teule, whom I ſend to kill or make pri-"ſoners all your enemies." The caciques ſet out with their party accordingly, being headed by the old ſoldier, who went firing his muſket before them out of the town. As ſoon as he arrived at the river he gave the ſignal, and Cortes ſent to ſtop them, having ſufficiently tried their faith, and when they returned he informed them that it was his intention to proceed againſt their enemies with his whole force.

When the ſoldiers were warned for this duty, thoſe of the party of Velaſquez refuſed to obey orders, ſaying, that they would go on no expedition, but inſiſted on returning to the Iſland of Cuba. The number of mutineers who openly declared themſelves was ſeven; when theſe were

the Pacique. This word is Mexican & does not belong to the continent. tzani. teuctli
illi are the denominations of rank & all signify - Lord - hereditary aristocracy prevail
in all american nations and tribes & is a proof of an order of government of a more
or system once existing. All the Culhuan governments had for their basis, an aristocracy
with the priesthood connected, and which possessed or disposed of the landed
property. The people being in slavery or villenage. From this body, aristo-
cracy was chosen the King, when that office was forced hereditary. and
it also all the great offices of the state. The lands were either of the crown
the church, of the aristocracy, or of communities, which last paid rent. — the
latter could not alienate their lands out of their body. commoners could inherit
— different properties were marked in their maps, which in the Spanish courts
admitted as proofs, by distinctive colours.
lands of the crown. Tec-pan calli. held by a male quit rent — daughters did
inherit universally. Altepetlalli. the lands of towns or communities.

were brought before Cortes and aſked by him how they could behave ſo ill, they inſolently replied, that they wondered at his idea of colonizing amongſt ſuch numbers of the natives; that for their parts they were tired of being dragged about, and would go to their plantations in Cuba. Cortes replied that he would not oppoſe their going, though he diſapproved of their conduct; accordingly they embarked, and brought their proviſions of bread, oil, and vegetables, on board, and one of them named Moron ſold a good horſe to one Juan Ruano, who was to pay for it by an aſſignment of certain articles of his property in Cuba.

Juſt as the veſſel was ready to ſail, the ſoldiers, headed by the alcaldes, and other civil officers of the ſettlement, waited on Cortes with a requeſt that he would permit no perſons whatever to quit their colours, a crime for which thoſe who committed it deſerved to ſuffer death. Cortes for ſome time appeared to be unwilling to withdraw the permiſſion, but at length ſuffered himſelf to be perſuaded, and the ſeven malcontents were obliged to come back to us and ſuſtain the ridicule their conduct brought on them; Moron alſo loſt his horſe, which the other kept, referring him for the payment, to his aſſignment on his property in the Iſland of Cuba.

Our internal troubles being appeaſed for the preſent, Cortes ſet out upon his expedition with four hundred ſoldiers, being joined at Cempoal by a thouſand of our allies divided into four companies. The firſt days march was five leagues, and on the enſuing day we reached the outſkirts of the town of Cingapacinga, which was built among ſteep and difficult rocks. When the inhabitants heard of our approach, a deputation of eight of their chieftains was ſent to Cortes, and being brought into his preſence, theſe perſons with tears in their eyes aſked him why he came to deſtroy them, who had given no occaſion for ſuch an aggreſſion, adding that this ſurpriſed them the more from the celebrity of our juſtice, which had reached them; and as to our allies of Cempoal, their malevolence againſt them was founded upon an old diſpute about boundaries, and now they took advantage of our ſupport

life; this ſoldier was afterwards killed in an action at a rock in Guatimala. I mention the circumſtance as a proof of the ſtrictneſs with which Cortes enforced diſcipline.

Proceeding from the place where this happened, we arrived at ſome huts where we found the fat cacique waiting for us with refreſhments and proviſions. Our conduct on this expedition made the natives hold us in higher eſtimation than before; for although untaught, they could ſee that juſtice is holy and good, and that the behaviour of Cortes was conformable to what he profeſſed, when he declared that he came to redreſs and prevent tyranny. Here we reſted for the night, and on the enſuing day all the caciques attended us to our lodgings in their town.

of Tempoal.

They were doubly intereſted now to retain us amongſt them, for they were in great dread of the vengeance of Montezuma; they therefore in order to fix us propoſed an intermarriage, and for that purpoſe offered to us eight ladies, all of the firſt families, who were introduced richly dreſſed, and ornamented with gold collars and ear rings, and attended by a number of female ſlaves. The fat cacique then ſaid to Cortes, "Teele or lord, theſe ſeven young women are for the cap-" tains of your army, and this my niece who is proprietor of towns " and vaſſals, I beg leave to preſent to you." Cortes received the offer as it merited, but took the opportunity to obſerve, that in order to ſtrengthen the friendſhip with us, it was neceſſary that they ſhould firſt renounce their idolatrous worſhip, the abominable cuſtom of male youths appearing in women's dreſs, and their human ſacrifices; for every day our ſight was offended by the repetition of four or five of theſe horrid murders, the unfortunate victims being cut up and their limbs ſold in the public markets, as beef is in the towns of Old Caſtille. He alſo added, that before we could accept their propoſal relative to theſe ladies, it was neceſſary that they ſhould undergo the ceremony of baptiſm.

The chiefs and prieſts replied, that they could not think of renouncing

nouncing the worſhip of their gods in any reſpect: but as to the other evil practice a ſtop ſhould be put to it. This anſwer however did not by any means ſatisfy us, and Cortes ſtrongly repreſented the neceſſity of ſuppreſſing by force their idolatrous worſhip, and his determination, though it coſt the lives of all, on that very day to proſtrate their falſe gods. For this purpoſe we therefore immediately got under arms, and then Cortes declared his intention to the chiefs. As ſoon as the fat cacique heard it, he ordered the people to arm and aſſemble in defence of their temple, and they all appeared greatly agitated; but when they ſaw that we were preparing to aſcend the great flight of ſteps, the chief abovementioned came up to Cortes and expoſtulated with him, aſking him why he proceeded upon a meaſure whereby he would bring deſtruction upon them and us alſo. Cortes anſwered that he was determined ſince they paid no regard to what he ſaid, to hurl their pretended gods down the ſteps. The chiefs replied, that they were unworthy to approach them, but if we were reſolved on doing what we ſaid, they could not help themſelves. Accordingly, they had hardly ſaid this, when fifty of us going up for the purpoſe, threw down and broke to pieces the enormous idols which we found within the temple, ſome in the form of dragons, others of half human ſhape, and others like dogs. At this ſight the chiefs and prieſts wept and prayed for pardon, but the warriors prepared to attack us with their arrows. Perceiving their intention, we immediately ſeized the fat cacique and ſix more chiefs and prieſts, Cortes exclaiming, that if any outrage was attempted, they ſhould every man die that moment. The fat cacique then called to his warriors to deſiſt, and matters being ſoon brought to a ſtate of quiet, Cortes took an opportunity of haranguing the people upon the ſubject of religion.

He next ordered that the fragments of the idols ſhould be burned, and immediately eight prieſts who uſed to have the care of them came, and collecting them together, brought them into the temple, where they were conſumed.

Theſe

From the new Colonie called Villa Rica nyne myles distaunt there
is a towne of 15,000 howses whych thinhabitauntes cauld (emodal)
owre men named it Sybilla. The Kynge of this towne had fyve men
he he reserved to be sacrifised. whom whon owre men wolde have delyv
the Kynge made humble request to them saying that if they todue away
as were consecrated to his Goddes they should bryng utter destruction on
and all hys kyngdom. Owre men pensavyng his earnestnes herein
ht it best to chose the leaste evyl pensavyng it was not no tyme to
uyet thayr myndes & therefore suffred them to practise thayr ancestors
eremonies. And although thayr priestes promesse them immortal
eternal felicitie, and perpetuall glory with the Goddes after the ende
of thys lyfe, yet do they with heavy countenances give eare to thes
nises and had rather be sette at liberty. When the tyme doth
fourth the eare they destinate they destinate to thayr Zeemes
olye such bondmen as they have boughte or stole as they have
en in the warres which they sacrifyce after they have made them
chier and decked them in precious apparell and before they
rifyce these poore wretches they leade them aboute the towne
yle all the people salute them humbly & reverently affyrm
e that in short space they shall be in the company of the
ddes.

They use another straunge kynde of devotion for they let
rselves bludde in the tonge lyppes, eares &c whyche they
e in thayr hands & heave it uppe towardes heaven, soo
d wyth the fume thereof the pavement is all sparkled with
dde whereby they thynke their goddes are well pleased.
eyr priestes lead a pure & chaste lyfe and are honoured
e people with feare & reverence. They make pagotes of the
of thayr enemies and hang up the same at the feete of
r Zeemes addyng unthin tytles & superscriptions
itimonies of the same — This is straunge and

practice &c. prostitutions was part of the Solar ritual. The Cyprens were priest
esses of temples on the coast of Greece where the sun was worshipped with hu
sacrifice and prostitution. The Laestrigons (probably Lamia & Trigon or Pos
and connected with the Thibetian "La" Bhoodh = were Cannibals of ancient Gre
This word Cannibal may be derived Ciesi Xan-bal. Lord Sun - as th
Solarites were addicted to the practice. Remark. Lamia, a queen of Lyb
who devoured Children. Lamia a priestess of the Sun - Lamas, a
priest of Lam or the Sun,
The seeds of the cotton plant intoxicate. The ancient Greeks crown
their temples with skulls
Grecian architecture as adopted by the moderns has a remnant of this
practice. →

and worthy to be noted that when theyr Chyldren are a yeare old
the preestes in theyr temples with diuers ceremonies and m
anoynge wordes poure water in forme of a croise aps
theyr heads with a Cruct wherby they seem to baptize
them. Neyther do they as the Jewes and Turkes think
theyr temples polluted if any of a Straunge relygyon be
present at theyre sacrifyces & other solemnities →

Theſe prieſts were dreſſed in long black mantles like ſheets with hoods reſembling thoſe of our canons hanging to the ſhoulders, their robes reached to the feet, and they had a ſmaller hood like the dominicans. Their long hair was matted together with clotted blood; with ſome it reached to the waiſt, and with others to the feet, their ears were torn and cut, and they ſmelt horribly, as it were of ſulphur, and putrid fleſh. They were ſaid to be all of noble families, and they were addicted to the evil practice of the country. On certain days they faſted: I have ſeen them make food of the ſeeds or kernels of the cotton plant, what elſe they might have uſed at other times I cannot ſay.

Cortes then harangued the people, ſaying that now we were really brothers, Montezuma ſhould no longer oppreſs them, and he would place them under the protection of the great Lady whom we adore, the mother of Chriſt, with many other good and holy reaſons and arguments, which could not be better expreſſed by any one, and all which the people liſtened to with great attention. He then cauſed a number of Indian maſons to be collected, with lime, which abounded in that place, and had the walls cleared of blood, and new plaiſtered. He alſo conſtructed an altar which he hung round with rich mantles, and adorned with wreaths of roſes. The temple being thus purified and cleaned, he commanded four prieſts to cut off their hair, and change their black garments for white ones, and entruſted them with the care of the altar, and he placed an old ſoldier named Juan de Torres de Cordova, who was lame, as a hermit to reſide in the temple. He alſo planted a croſs againſt a column of timber, and on the next day maſs was ſaid there by F. Bart. de Olmedo. We likewiſe taught the natives to make candles of wax, and they were enjoined to keep them always burning before the holy altar.

The principal perſons of this and the neighbouring diſtricts attended at divine ſervice, and the eight ladies were at this time baptized and inſtructed in our holy faith. The niece of the fat cacique was named Donna Catalina; ſhe was as ugly as poſſible, but the general received

ceived her by the hand affectionately. Puertocarrero was more fortunate; his lady was for an Indian very handſome; ſhe was the daughter of a great cacique named Cueſco, and was called Donna Franciſca. The alliance conſolidated the friendſhip between us and this people, of whom we now took our leave, and returned to Villa Rica.

On our arrival we found a veſſel from Cuba in the harbour, commanded by one Franciſco Saucedo, called el Pulido on account of his affectation of finery and manners. Luis Marin a very able officer, and ten ſoldiers with two horſes were on board. We learned by theſe people that Velaſquez had received from Old Spain his authority to barter and colonize. This, with his appointment to the commiſſion of adelantado of Cuba, put his friends in our army in very great ſpirits.

The works of our town were nearly finiſhed, and many of us now grew anxious to pay a viſit to the great Montezuma, and expreſſed to Cortes our wiſh to try our fortune. Conſultations being held hereon, it was determined in the firſt place to ſend a deputation to his Majeſty, with an account of what we had done, and alſo with the gold and other articles of value which had been obtained. This determination was agreed to by Cortes, and was immediately carried into effect, and Diego de Ordas, and Franciſco de Montejo, two men of buſineſs, going through the whole of the officers and ſoldiers, and repreſenting to them, that, although to ſuch as claimed their ſhare it ſhould not be denied, yet it was for the general intereſt that the whole of the treaſure ſhould be ſent to his Majeſty, all our companions gave their conſent, and renounced their claim to a partition. Alonzo Hernandez Puertocarrero, and Franciſco de Montejo were named as our agents, the laſt mentioned of whom Cortes had already ſecured in his own intereſt by a gift of two thouſand crowns. By theſe gentlemen Cortes wrote his private letters, the contents of which we never knew. The council alſo wrote conjointly with thoſe of the ſoldiers who were moſt ſolicitous for the eſtabliſhment of the colony, and the election of Cortes as captain general. In this letter nothing was omitted that could ſerve

our

our cauſe; my hand was to it with the reſt: and beſides theſe, a letter to the following purport was written in the name of the whole army.

Beginning with the expreſſions of reſpect due to ſo great a monarch, it proceeded to inform him of the events which had occurred during our expedition, to the period of our election of Cortes, until his Majeſty's pleaſure on the ſubject ſhould be known; with our engagement to yield him a fifth of all treaſure, after the deduction for his Majeſty. It alſo contained an account of our diſcovery of the two Spaniards in this country, and our war in Tabaſco, until we brought thoſe people to ſubmiſſion to his Majeſty, and to embrace our holy faith, of our obtaining two excellent linguiſts, of our arrival at St. Juan de Ulua, and our interviews with the ambaſſadors of Montezuma; our ſubſequent march into the country, and our alliance with the people here, who had in conſequence renounced obedience to the Mexican monarch, of the expedition to Cingapacinga, the conſtruction of our fortreſs, and our preſent determination to advance into the country, to the court of the great Montezuma. The letter alſo gave an account of the military and religious cuſtoms of the inhabitants, of the former expeditions of our countrymen, and an enumeration of the various articles of treaſure which we ſent by our agents, and how we alſo ſent by the ſame opportunity, four natives, whom we reſcued out of the cages of Cempoal, where they were fattening for victims. After theſe accounts we further ſtated, how we were at preſent four hundred and fifty ſoldiers, ſurrounded by hoſts of enemies, and ready to lay down our lives for the ſervice of God, and his Majeſty, and we ſupplicated, that his Majeſty would be pleaſed not to beſtow the government of ſo great and rich a country, which deſerved to be ruled by a great prince or lord, on any unworthy perſon. We alſo ſtated to his Majeſty our apprehenſion, that the Governor of Cuba might be attempted to be put in upon us, through the intereſt of his patron the Biſhop of Burgos, whom he had attached to him by the aſſignment of valuable eſtates in that Iſland, in which he failed in his duty to his Majeſty, who was by right entitled to them. That theſe things we were bound to repreſent, and await the

return of his gracious anſwer proſtrate on the ground; and that if the Biſhop of Burgos ſent any perſon over us, we ſhould ſuſpend our obedience, until his Majeſty's pleaſure was known, and that in the mean time, we remained under the command of his Majeſty's faithful ſervant Cortes, whoſe merits we exalted to the ſkies.

This being all drawn up in due form, our general deſired to be permitted to read it, and on the peruſal he expreſſed his higheſt ſatisfaction thereat. The only two articles he excepted to were, the mention of his ſhare of the treaſure, and of the names of the preceding diſcoverers; for it ſeems that he had in his private letter aſcribed all the honor and merit to himſelf. Theſe parts he deſired to ſuppreſs, but there were not wanting thoſe who told him, that his Majeſty was to know, not only the truth, but the whole truth. This buſineſs completed, the letters were intruſted to our agents, with ſtrict injunctions by no means to touch at the Havannah, nor at the port of El Marien, as we wiſhed to keep the affair from the knowledge of Velaſquez.

After maſs on the twenty-ſixth of July 1519 our agents ſailed, and arrived ſafely at the Havannah, in direct oppoſition to our inſtructions, for, Puertocarrero being ſick, Montejo compelled the pilot Alaminos into his views, on the pretence of getting proviſions from his eſtate at El Marien. As ſoon as the ſhip caſt anchor, Montejo ſent a ſailor on ſhore with letters and advices to the Governor Velaſquez, and this man as he went through the Iſland proclaimed the news of all that had happened in the army under Cortes.

Velaſquez on receiving the intelligence communicated by Montejo, as is ſaid, heartily curſed Cortes, his ſecretary, and the contador, by whoſe advice he had choſen him. He immediately ſent two veſſels armed in ſearch of our ſhip, of which the unwelcome intelligence was ſoon received, that ſhe was by that time conſiderably advanced towards Europe; and with this news his veſſels returned to St. Jago, making Velaſquez more diſconſolate than ever. He lodged a complaint before the

the Biſhop of Burgos, and the court of royal audience in St. Domingo, but the reverend fathers ſent him back an anſwer highly favorable to us, whoſe ſervices they were by this time made acquainted with. This anſwer, which was brought by a licentiate named Zuazo, or arrived about the ſame time with him, vexed the governor ſo much, that from being very fat, he grew quite lean. He now made the utmoſt exertions to collect a powerful armament in order to overwhelm us, on which buſineſs he went in perſon, and by the fury and determination he exhibited, he induced moſt of the ſettlers of Cuba to take part in the expedition, and prepared a fleet of eighteen ſail great and ſmall, under the command of Pamphilo de Narvaez.

Our agents paſſing the canal of Bahama, under the guidance of Alaminos, the firſt pilot who ever navigated through it, proceeded to the Iſlands of Terceras, and from thence to Seville; and in a few days arrived at the court, which was then at Valladolid; the Biſhop of Burgos being preſident of the royal council of the Indies. Our agents went to wait on him in great ſpirits, expecting a gracious reception, but having preſented their letters and requeſted a ſpeedy tranſmiſſion of them and their preſent, to his Majeſty, who was then in Flanders, the biſhop returned a very repulſive and haughty anſwer, ſaying, that he would make his own repreſentations of our conduct, in having thrown off our obedience to the governor of Cuba. The arrival of Benito Martinez the chaplain of Velaſquez at this time, contributed much to ſet our affairs in an unfavorable ſituation, and the biſhop in conſequence of a remonſtrance which was made to him by A. H. Puertocarrero, one of thoſe employed by us, and a cavalier of rank, cauſed him to be thrown into priſon, on a pretended miſdemeanor, in carrying away with him to the Indies a woman of Medellin, named Maria Rodriquez. All this it was neceſſary, according to the dictates of prudence, to keep ſilence upon, until the proper time and place.

The biſhop now wrote to his Majeſty, repreſenting the tranſactions in the moſt favorable light for Velaſquez, and the moſt oppoſite

one for us, and entirely ſuppreſſed all mention of our letters, or preſents, of which he appropriated a great part to his own uſe. Our agents then, in concert with Martin Cortes father to the general, and the licentiate Nunez, relator of his Majeſty's royal council and a near relation to Cortes, with the countenance of ſome noblemen their friends, and others who were jealous of the haughty manners of the biſhop, reſolved to ſend the duplicates of our letters to his Majeſty, and alſo others, complaining of the partiality of this prelate. It was the will of God that the ſaid accounts ſhould reach his Majeſty's hands, and that he ſhould be well pleaſed with them, inſomuch that, for many days, nothing was talked of but the ſervices of Cortes, and us his ſoldiers. The Emperor was ever after diſſatisfied with the Biſhop of Burgos for the part he had acted. When he heard the turn our affairs had taken at court he was more furious againſt Cortes and the reſt of us than ever, but it was the will of God that by the time two years more had elapſed, his courage ſhould be cooled, for he was cenſured, while we continued to be held in eſtimation as loyal ſubjects to his Majeſty, and the Emperor was pleaſed to ſay, that he would ſhortly come to Caſtille, and there attend to our memorials, and reward our ſervices.

In four days after the departure of our agents, a plot was formed by certain perſons who were enemies to Cortes on various accounts, ſuch as the return to Cuba being precluded to them, and their being deprived of a ſhare of the gold. Amongſt theſe conſpirators were one Eſcudero, and one Cermeno, Gonzalo de Umbria a pilot, Bernaldino de Coria, a clergyman named Juan Diaz, and certain ſailors who had been whipped in Cozumel. It was determined amongſt them to ſeize a veſſel and ſail for Cuba, there to give information to Velaſquez of the departure of our agents, and this plan was ſuggeſted by ſome perſons of conſequence. Their ſcheme was fruſtrated a few hours before they were to have ſailed, by the repentance and diſcovery of De Coria, who revealed it to Cortes. They were in conſequence ſeized, and being examined confeſſed the whole, and accuſed ſeveral others; but of theſe no farther notice was taken. The priſoners were all condemned except the prieſt, whoſe orders

orders protected him, but he got a great fright. Eſcudero and Cermeno were hanged, the pilot Umbria had his feet cut off, and each of the mariners received two hundred laſhes. I remember when Cortes was ratifying this ſentence, he gave a deep ſigh and exclaimed, "How "happy is he who is not able to write, and is thereby prevented from "ſigning the death warrants of men." It ſeems to me that this expreſſion is very frequently affected amongſt judges, and that it was borrowed from the cruel Nero at the time he counterfeited the appearance of being a good emperor. As ſoon as the ſentences were executed, Cortes poſted off at full ſpeed to Cempoal, commanding two hundred ſoldiers, and all the cavalry, as alſo a detachment which was out under Alvarado, to follow him.

In the conſultations which we held at Cempoal upon our intended expedition to Mexico, the friends of Cortes adviſed him to deſtroy the fleet, in order to prevent attempts ſimilar to that related in the laſt chapter, and alſo to obtain ſo conſiderable a reinforcement as the whole body of mariners, who amounted to above a hundred. It appeared to me that Cortes had already determined this in his own mind, but he preferred that it ſhould come as an application from us, in order that if damages were ſued for on account of the loſs incurred, we ſhould be all reſponſible as himſelf. Cortes therefore ordered his friend Juan de Eſcalante who bore a bitter enmity to Velaſquez on account of not being given a good diſtrict in Cuba, to diſmantle the ſhips, and then ſink them, retaining only the boats for the purpoſe of fiſhing. Eſcalante executed this ſervice, and returned to Cempoal with a company formed of the mariners, many of whom turned out very good ſoldiers. Cortes now ſummoned the chiefs of theſe people who had renounced their allegiance to Montezuma, and enjoined them to render all ſervices in their power to the party he left in Villa Rica, and to aſſiſt them in completing the town. Then taking Eſcalante by the hand he ſaid, "This is my brother: obey him in whatever he deſires you to do, and "if you require aſſiſtance or protection againſt your enemies, recur to "him, and he will give it to you." This the caciques all promiſed to

to perform, and I recollect they immediately hereupon began, much againſt his will and endeavours, to fumigate Eſcalante with their incenſe. This officer was placed here in order to repel any attempts which might be made by Velaſquez, as he was thoroughly attached to the intereſt of Cortes. Gomara here aſſerts that Cortes dared not publiſh to the ſoldiers his intention of marching to Mexico. I beg to be informed what is the diſpoſition of a Spaniard? Or when it ever happened that he was not ready to march forward? He alſo errs where he ſays Pedro de Ircio remained commandant in Vera Cruz. I ſay again that Juan de Eſcalante was captain, and alſo alguazil major. Pedro de Ircio was not fit to be a corporal, nor is it juſt to take from one what belongs to him, and give it to another.

After having rendered the veſſels unſerviceable, but not privately as Gomara aſſerts, being one morning aſſembled after maſs, and converſing on military affairs with Cortes, he deſired our attention, and addreſſed us, ſaying, "We now knew the buſineſs which was before "us; that with the aid of our Lord we ſhould conquer, and it was "neceſſary to do ſo, for in caſe of a defeat there was no eſcape; nor "had we any ſupport but in our valour, and the mercy of God." To this he added many compariſons of our ſituation with thoſe drawn from the hiſtory of the ancient Romans. We one and all replied, "That we "were prepared to obey him; that the lot was now caſt, let fortune "take what turn ſhe would, as Cæſar ſaid in paſſing the Rubicon, for "that all our ſervices were devoted to God and his Majeſty." Cortes then addreſſed us again in a very eloquent and impreſſive ſpeech, which having concluded, he called for the fat cacique, and having informed him of our determination, he injoined him to take care of our church, and holy croſs.

When we were juſt ready to depart, a ſoldier arrived with a letter to Cortes from Juan de Eſcalante, whereby he was informed that a ſtrange ſhip was then at anchor in a river three leagues diſtant from Villa Rica, and that he could not obtain any anſwer to his ſignals from

from thoſe on board. Upon this, Cortes appointed Alvarado, and Sandoval who already began to ſhew himſelf the officer he afterwards was, to take the command of the army in his abſence; (Avila being paſſed by, and Sandoval preferred on this occaſion, firſt cauſed a certain jealouſy on the part of the former;) he then ſet out with four of the cavalry to Villa Rica, ordering thirty of the lighteſt infantry to follow him thither, which number accordingly arrived there that night.

When we arrived at Villa Rica, Eſcalante offered to Cortes to go with twenty men to the veſſel, leſt ſhe ſhould make her eſcape, and that Cortes might take ſome repoſe; but Cortes replied, that he could not think of that, for "A lame goat took no afternoon's nap." Accordingly, without eating a morſel, we proceeded along the coaſt, and on our road fell in with four Spaniards, who were ſent to take poſſeſſion of the country, by Captain Alonzo Alvarez de Pineda. One of theſe, who was named Guillen de la Loa, was a notary, and the reſt attended him as witneſſes. Cortes having queſtioned theſe men as to what brought them there they replied, that Franciſco de Garay, governor of Jamaica, had obtained from the court, a commiſſion of adelantado and governor of ſuch diſtricts as he ſhould diſcover on that coaſt, northward, from the river of St. Peter and St. Paul, by virtue of which, he had ſent three ſhips, with two hundred and ſeventy ſoldiers, under the captain already named, who was then in the river Panuco. Cortes treated them with much kindneſs, and aſked them if they thought that we could get poſſeſſion of their ſhip; to which Guillen de la Loa replied that they would do their utmoſt to aſſiſt us, but no ſigns nor invitations that they made could induce thoſe on board to approach, and we were told by them that their captain was aware of our being on the coaſt, and they ſuppoſed, when the boat did not come off, that we had been diſcovered. Cortes now bethought himſelf of a ſtratagem, and it was this; he dreſſed four of his ſoldiers in the clothes of theſe men, and left them there upon the ſpot, tracing back the way that he had come along the ſhore, ſo that we might be obſerved from the ſhip. Thus we proceeded, until we were out of ſight of it, when we ſtruck

into

into the woods and made a ſtolen march back, reaching about midnight the rivulet where we had left our four companions. Here we concealed ourſelves, and early in the morning our ſoldiers who were in diſguiſe went down upon the ſhore, and made ſigns to thoſe on board the veſſel, in conſequence of which a boat put off with ſix ſailors, two of whom landed with caſks for water. Our four men pretended that they were waſhing their hands, and holding down their faces endeavoured to avoid being obſerved, but thoſe in the boat calling to them, one of ours replied, deſiring them to come on ſhore. The ſtrange voice gave an alarm, and ſuſpecting a trick they made off: we were going to fire upon them, but Cortes would not let us. Thus we obtained ſix men, and returned to Villa Rica, without having eaten a morſel during two entire nights and a day.

CHAPTER VI.

March of the Spaniſh Army for the City of Mexico. Wars in Tlaſcala. Submiſſion of that Nation.

BEING now ready to proceed to Mexico, our allies of Cempoal propoſed to us to march by the province of Tlaſcala, the people of which were their friends, and bitter enemies to the Mexicans. In compliance with our requiſition, fifty of their principal warriors attended us, and alſo two hundred men to draw our guns, and thus we ſet out from Cempoal, in the month of Auguſt 1519, our army in good order, and patroles of cavalry, and light infantry in front.

Our firſt day's march was to a town named Xalapa, and the ſecond was to Socochima, a place of difficult approach, abounding with vines. The people here were harangued through our interpreters, who informed them that we were vaſſals of the Emperor Don Carlos, who had ſent us to put a ſtop to human ſacrifices, and other abuſes. They alſo explained to them many things concerning our religion, and as theſe people were allies of Cempoal and independent of Montezuma, we found them very well diſpoſed to us. We here erected a croſs, explaining what it ſignified, and that it ſhould be held in veneration. Proceeding from this place, by a paſs among lofty mountains, we arrived at another named Texutla, the people of which we found equally well diſpoſed to us, and they alſo paid no tribute to the Mexican monarch. Continuing our march through deſert mountains, we that night experienced great cold and ſtorms of hail. On the next day we reached another paſs, where were ſome houſes and large temples, with great piles of wood for the ſervice of the idols. Proviſions were ſcarce with us for theſe two days, and we now approached the territory of

Xalapan, whence is chiefly procured the drug called jallap

Cocotlan. 13 temples — with its vassals 20,000 Mexican vassals and a power of 6000 Mexicans —

Mexico, at a place called Cocotlan, ſending forwards to inform the cacique.

Appearances demonſtrated that we had entered into a new country, for the temples were very lofty, and together with the terraced dwellings, and the houſe of the cacique, being plaiſtered and whitewaſhed, appeared very well, and reſembled ſome of our towns in Spain. We named this place Caſtel Blanco. In conſequence of our meſſage, the chief, and other principal perſons of the town came out to meet us, and took us to our quarters, where they gave us paltry and cold entertainment. After ſupper Cortes made enquiry relative to the military power of Montezuma. He was informed, how that monarch had under him great armies, and that the city of Mexico was of uncommon ſtrength, being founded in the water, and no paſſage from one houſe to another except by bridges or boats; that each houſe was terraced, and only required a parapet to be converted into a fortreſs; that the entrance to the city was by three cauſeways, in each of which were four or five apertures for the paſſage of the waters, and that on each of theſe apertures was a bridge of wood, which being raiſed, precluded the entrance into Mexico. We were alſo informed of the great wealth of Montezuma, in gold, ſilver, and jewels, the hearing of which filled us with aſtoniſhment, and ſuch is the nature of Spaniſh ſoldiers, that we were anxious to try our fortunes, although the accounts we had been given, made our hopes appear almoſt viſionary; and truly we found Mexico ſtronger than what it was now deſcribed to us. The cacique launched out alſo in the praiſes of his great lord, Montezuma, ſaying, that he ruled where ever it was his will to do ſo, and that he was apprehenſive of his diſſatisfaction at our being entertained in that place, without his licence. To all this Cortes replied ſaying, " That we came from a " diſtant country, by the orders of our ſovereign, to warn the great " Montezuma to deſiſt from human ſacrifices, and all outrages either " upon his own vaſſals, or his neighbours, and to require from him " ſubmiſſion to our monarch. And, " added Cortes, " I now require " you all who hear me, to renounce your human ſacrifices, cannibal " feaſts,

" feaſts, and other abominable practices, for ſuch is the command of " our Lord God, whom we adore and believe, who gives us life and " death, and who is to raiſe us up to heaven." All this the natives heard with a profound ſilence, and Cortes then turning to the ſoldiers, propoſed to them immediately to plant the holy croſs; but the Rev. Father Olmedo objected, upon the grounds of the ill will and ignorance of the people, which might induce them to commit ſome outrage or indignity againſt that holy ſymbol; he therefore recommended that it ſhould be deferred until a better opportunity.

We had with us a very large dog, the property of Franciſco de Lugo, which during the night uſed to bark, a thing that greatly ſurpriſed the natives, who aſked our allies if that fierce animal was a lion or tyger which we brought to kill them; they anſwered that he fell on, and tore to pieces any who offended us; they alſo told them that our guns ſent forth ſtones, which killed our enemies as we pleaſed to direct them, and that our horſes caught whoever we purſued: to which the others replied, that with ſuch powers we were really Teules. Our allies alſo warned them to take ſpecial care, for that we knew their moſt ſecret thoughts, and adviſed them to conciliate us by a preſent. Shortly after we received from them ſome gold in different articles but very much debaſed, four Indian women to make bread, and a load of mantles.

I remember a particular circumſtance of this place. Near ſome temples were laid numbers of human ſkeletons, ſo arranged that they could be counted with eaſe and certainty; I am convinced from my own obſervation that there were above a hundred thouſand; I repeat it, I am ſure there were more than a hundred thouſand. In another part of the ſquare, human bones were heaped up in ſuch quantities that they could not be counted. Numbers of ſkulls were alſo ſuſpended from beams, and all theſe were watched by three prieſts. The ſame thing was ſeen every where in ſome degree, as we paſſed through this country and that of Tlaſcala.

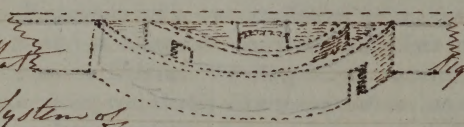
The cacique of the place where we were, being aſked by us relative to the road to Mexico, recommended that by Cholula; but our allies ſtrongly adviſed us againſt going that way, on account of the treacherous diſpoſition of the people, and that the town had always a Mexican garriſon in it. Cortes demanding twenty of the principal perſons to attend him from this place, we now quitted it in order to go to Tlaſcala, by advice of our allies, who promiſed us every advantage from that nation, and we proceeded thither, ſending meſſengers before us with a letter and alſo a preſent of a crimſon velvet cap. I muſt obſerve that although our letters were not legible to theſe people, they knew that ſuch a thing was as it were an authority, or ſanction of the meſſage that was to be delivered, and of the office of thoſe who brought it, and as ſuch it was ſent upon all occaſions.

Proceeding with our accuſtomed order, we arrived at a village in the country of Xalacingo, and from thence ſent two of our allies, with the letter, to Tlaſcala. At this place we received intelligence, that the whole nation was already in arms againſt us, on the ſuppoſition, from the number of perſons who attended us, of thoſe nations which were ſubject to Montezuma, that we were in alliance with the Mexican power, whoſe inveterate enemies they were. Having ſuſpicion of treachery from the Mexicans by theſe appearances, they inſtantly on their arrival ſeized our meſſengers, whoſe return we impatiently waited for during two days, which Cortes employed in exertions for the converſion of the Indians to our holy church, by his advice and exhortations. He alſo demanded the attendance of twenty principal inhabitants, who readily joined him, and we at the expiration of that time continued our march, during which we met the meſſengers whom we had ſent to Tlaſcala, and who had made their eſcape, owing to the negligence or connivance of their guards.

Sztacmaxtitlan city on a hill 6000. Inhabts villages in a valley for many miles

Theſe Indians had not yet recovered from the terror into which they were put by what they had ſeen and heard, for the people of Tlaſcala vowed deſtruction to us, and all our adherents. The ſtandard was

These works called barbacanas, being before the gate, as the head is to the mouth, are like the fettahs of Asia. Those of America were on the same construction as is at present used in China semicircular with a narrow passage between walls

The Native Canadians  the banquet within the
at the first discovery of that
country had the same System of
fortification in timber. They were in advancement in social life living in villages of fifty houses. the last about a hundred feet long & thirty broad, of timber. the villages were enclosed in lofty palisades with a stage on the inside supplied with stones for defence and one door

Remains of Fortifications are yet said to exist in Guatemozo & near Molexaca
Is this Molexaca in Quetzacoalco.? Near this Molexaca, (a village) is a mountain whose ascent or circuit, has four walls, one higher than the other like the palace of the ancient king of the Medes, with ruins of a fortress on its summit. near it are many smaller ruins of lime & stone, and on the top of a hill two miles off are ruins of what seems to have been a once populous city but of which no trace exists among historians

works &c — p. 93. this wall which extended between two mountains was six miles long, eight feet high, with a parapet above this height, & eighteen feet thick (in the probability of earth. but — observe — the custom of the old world to name these things

was now advanced to the front, and we all ſaid, "If it muſt be ſo, "forward in God's name." Our general then inſtructed the cavalry how to charge by threes in front, not halting to give thruſts with their lances, but pointing them at the height of the face; and he taught them how, if the enemy ſeized the lance, to wreſt it out of their hands by the action of the horſe, and holding the butt-end of the lance under the arm.

Having advanced about two leagues, we arrived at a kind of fortification built of lime and ſtone, and ſome cement of ſo ſtrong a nature that nothing but tools of iron could have any effect on it. It was alſo extremely well conſtructed for defence. We halted to examine this work, which the people informed us was built by the Tlaſcalans, on whoſe territory it ſtood, as a defence againſt the incurſions of the Mexicans. After pauſing ſome time in ſerious contemplation of this object, Cortes ordered us to march on, ſaying, "Gentlemen follow your ſtan- "dard the holy croſs, wherewith we ſhall conquer;" to which we one and all replied "That we were ready, for God was our true "ſupport."

After we had proceeded ſome diſtance, our advanced guard ſaw about thirty of the enemy, ſent out to obſerve us. Cortes ordered ſome of the cavalry to endeavour to take them priſoners, while we advanced at a quick ſtep to ſupport the advanced party. Our cavalry attacked them, but the enemy defended themſelves ſo well with their ſwords, wounding the horſes ſeverely, that our people were obliged to kill five, it being impoſſible to make them priſoners. A body of three thouſand warriors which had been placed in ambuſcade now ſallied out with great fury, and began to ſhoot at the cavalry, who were aſſembled in a body; but as we at this time brought our artillery and muſketry to bear upon them, they were after a time compelled to fall back, though regularly, and fighting during their retreat. They left ſeventeen dead on the field, and one of our ſoldiers died a few days after of his wounds. Evening was now drawing on, and we did not follow them, but purſuing

ſuing our march, quitted the hills for a flat country thickly ſet with farm houſes, in fields of maize and the maguey plant. We halted for the night near a brook, and dreſſed our wounds with the greaſe we took out of a fat Indian who was left on the field; and although the people had removed all their effects and proviſions, their dogs, which we caught when they returned to their habitations at night, afforded us a very good ſupper.

On the enſuing day, after having recommended ourſelves to our God, we marched out to meet the enemy. Both cavalry and infantry had been duly prepared with inſtructions how to act in the attack, the former to charge, and then clear themſelves of the enemy, the latter not to ſuffer their ranks to be broken. Proceeding on our march, we ſhortly met two bodies of Tlaſcalan warriors amounting to about ſix thouſand in number, who attacked us valiantly with their miſſile weapons, ſhouting, and ſounding their inſtruments. Cortes ordered a halt, and ſent to them three Indians whom we had made priſoners on the preceding day, directing them to require of their countrymen a peaceable and amicable intercourſe with us, who wiſhed to conſider them as brothers, and this notice and invitation he deſired Diego de Godoy a royal notary to witneſs officially. As ſoon as our meſſage was delivered, they attacked us more violently than before, inſomuch that it was impoſſible to endure it any longer, and Cortes therefore cried out, "St. Jago, and at them." We accordingly attacked, and made a conſiderable ſlaughter of them by the firſt diſcharges of our artillery, killing, amongſt others, three of their chiefs.

They now retreated towards ſome broken ground, where the whole army of Xicotenga the general in chief, amounting to upwards of forty thouſand men, was poſted under cover. In this ground the cavalry could not act, and we were forced to paſs it as well as we could in a compact column, much annoyed by the enemy, who ſtarted up, and taking the due diſtance, availed themſelves of the expertneſs of their archers. Theſe troops were all clad, and bore devices of white and red, which

1 wall for defense. V. accounts of Porphiry China & the remains of works
5 far anterior to the native that now occupy that country.

Yuatesco. or Lucachtoch Co. 25. Miles North of Cordova a fortress
walls of hard stone ascended to by stone stairs. — 2 numbers of statues
among these ruins.

The Armoury was over the principal gate of the quadrangle
in China.

which was the uniform of their general. Thoſe who were armed with lances cloſed upon us while we were embarraſſed in the broken ground, but as ſoon as we arrived on the plain with our cavalry and artillery, we made them ſmart for it. Notwithſtanding this they cloſed upon us on every ſide, inſomuch that we could not venture to move, and we were in the greateſt danger but that the hand of God aſſiſted us. Whilſt we were engaged as I have already related, a number of the ſtouteſt of thoſe warriors who carried the tremendous two-handed ſwords, aſſociated themſelves in order to ſeize one of our horſes; accordingly, as Pedro de Moron, an exceeding good horſeman, was charging amongſt them in company with three more, theſe warriors firſt ſeized his lance, and then wounding him dangerouſly, one of them with a blow of a two-handed ſword, cut through the neck of the mare he rode, ſo that ſhe fell inſtantly dead, and Moron was brought off with the greateſt difficulty; for it was utterly out of the power of us who formed the battalion to quit it, from fear that the enemy ſhould break into us completely. However on this occaſion we ſucceeded in reſcuing him out of the hands of the enemy, and we alſo cut the girths and brought off the ſaddle, but in ſo doing we had ten of our number wounded, and I believe that we then killed ten chiefs of the enemy, for we were fairly engaged with them foot to foot, and we uſed our ſwords to ſuch effect that they began to retire, taking with them the body of the mare, which they cut in pieces, and ſent all through the diſtricts of Tlaſcala. This mare was the property of Juan Sedeno, who was at that time ill of three wounds which he had received on the preceding day Moron died of his wounds, at leaſt I do not recollect having ever ſeen him afterwards. After being engaged with the enemy for above an hour, during which the artillery made great havoc in their thick and numerous bodies, all of us alſo fighting as we were compelled to do for our lives and his Majeſty's ſervice, they drew off regularly, and left the field to us, who were too much fatigued to follow them. We therefore remained in the next village, for that country was thickly inhabited, and they had ſubterraneous dwellings, in which numbers of people

Teoatzinco
Place of divine
water →

people lived. The name of this place is Tehuacingo, or Tehuacacingo, and the battle was fought on the ſecond day of September 1519.

The loſs of the enemy on this occaſion was very conſiderable, eight of their principal chiefs being amongſt the number. As ſoon as we found ourſelves clear of them we returned thanks to God for his mercy, and entering a ſtrong and ſpacious temple, we dreſſed our wounds with the fat of Indians. Of fifteen wounded men, only one died. We obtained a plentiful ſupper of the fowls and dogs which we found in the village, and reſted for the night under the protection of ſtrong guards. In this and all other battles, as ſoon as we wounded an enemy he was immediately carried off by his companions, ſo that we never could aſcertain the number of the dead. Fifteen of them were made priſoners by us, of whom two were chiefs.

After the fatigues ſuffered in the late battle we repoſed for one day, which was employed in repairing our croſs-bows, and making arrows. On the next, Cortes, not to give the enemy time to arrange new attacks, ſent out as many of the ſoldiers as were fit for ſervice, to ſcour the country, which is there very flat and well adapted for cavalry. Accordingly, ſeven of the cavalry, and two hundred infantry, attended by our allies, went out, and made priſoners twenty men and women, but without any harm whatever being done by the Spaniards. The ſame cannot be ſaid of our allies, who being cruel, made great deſtruction, and returned loaded with fowls and dogs. As ſoon as we returned Cortes releaſed the priſoners, and having given them food, and treated them kindly, he expoſtulated with them upon their madneſs in attempting to reſiſt us. He alſo at this time releaſed two of the chiefs whom we had taken in the late battle, and ſent them with a letter, and to inform their countrymen, that we only required an unmoleſted paſſage to Mexico. Theſe chiefs waited upon their General Xicotenga, who was poſted with his army at the diſtance of two leagues, at a place named to the beſt of my recollection Tehuacinpacingo, and delivering the meſſage with which they were intruſted, the reply of Xicotenga was,

was, " That we ſhould go to the head town of Tlaſcala, where peace " ſhould be made with us by devouring our bodies, and offering our " hearts and blood to their gods; and that on the next morning, he " would give us his anſwer in perſon." This language, after what we had experienced, it muſt be confeſſed ſounded moſt terribly in our ears. Cortes however did not ſuffer his apprehenſions to appear, and treated the meſſengers even more kindly than before, in order to induce them to go again. He then enquired relative to the power of Xicotenga and the nature of his command. They informed him, that the army now aſſembled conſiſted of the quotas brought by five chiefs, each of which was ten thouſand men. Theſe chiefs were, Xicotenga the elder, father of the general, Maxicatzin, Chichimecatecle, Tecapaneca cacique of Topeyanco, and a cacique named Guaxobcin. Thus fifty thouſand warriors were now ranged under the banner of Xicotenga, which was, a white bird with the wings ſpread reſembling an oſtrich. Each diviſion of the troops had alſo its own marks of diſtinction: this we found to be the caſe, and that each cacique bore them in the manner of our nobility in Caſtille, although when we were firſt informed of it by our priſoners we diſbelieved it. When all this was communicated to us, being but mortals, and like all others fearing death, we prepared for battle by confeſſing to our reverend fathers, who were occupied during the whole night in that holy office.

On the fifth of September 1519, having brought out our whole force not excepting the wounded, the croſs-bowmen and muſketeers being directed to fire alternately, ſo that there ſhould always be ſome of each loaded, the ſoldiers with ſword and buckler being ordered to uſe the points, paſſing them clear through the bodies of their opponents, and the cavalry being inſtructed to keep their ranks, and charge at half ſpeed, pointing their lances at the eyes of the enemy, and riding through them without halting to give thruſts, with our colours flying, and four of our companions as a guard upon them, we ſet out upon our march. We had not proceeded half a quarter of a league, when we ſaw the troops of the enemy covering the plains. Each body diſplayed its re-

 ſpective

ſpective device, and they advanced, ſounding all their warlike inſtruments.

Much might be written on the ſubject of this great, and long doubtful battle, where four hundred men ſtood oppoſed to hoſts, which ſurrounding them from all parts, filled theſe plains, extending in every direction for the ſpace of two leagues. Many of our ſmall number were ſick and wounded, and we knew that the enemy came upon us in a determination to ſweep us from the earth, and ſacrifice us to their idols. Their firſt diſcharges of arrows, ſtones, and two-headed darts which pierce any armour, and through the body where unprotected, covered the ground; and they continued advancing until they cloſed upon, and attacked us with their lances, and two-handed ſwords, fighting foot to foot, and encouraging each other by their cries and ſhouts. Our artillery, muſketry, and croſs-bows played on them, and the home thruſts our infantry made with their ſwords, prevented their cloſing upon us as much as they had done on the former occaſion. Our cavalry alſo charged with ſuch effect, that, next to God, it was to them we owed the victory. At one period I ſaw our battalion completely broken, nor could all the exertions of Cortes for a time rally it, ſuch was the preſſure of the enemy upon us. By the ſole effect of our ſwords, however, we at length forced them off from us, and were then enabled to cloſe and form. One circumſtance that preſerved us was the thickneſs of the enemy, whereby full play was given to our artillery. Another was, that they did not know how to bring up their forces upon us without confuſion, and ſome of the diviſions could not come to the attack at all. The one compoſed of the warriors of Guaxocingo, was prevented from engaging by Chichimecatecle, whom Xicotenga, the commander in chief, had provoked by ſome inſulting obſervation relative to the preceding battle. This circumſtance we were informed of afterwards. They were alſo apprehenſive by experience of our cavalry, our cannon, and other arms; but above all was the great mercy of God, who gave us force to ſuſtain their attacks. Two diviſions as I have obſerved ſtood aloof, from diſguſt at what Xicotenga had ſaid

relative

Commanded by Tlehuexolotzin—

and who now withdrew with his own troops & those of Xolotzin

relative to the conduct of the ſon of Chichimecatecle on the former occaſion: this being obſerved by the others, ſlackened their ardour, and the loſs of one of their greateſt chiefs killed, at length cauſed them to draw off their forces and retire, purſued by our cavalry, though but for a very little diſtance, owing to their exceſſive fatigue. Thus being again maſters of the field, we returned our thanks to God for his mercy. One of our ſoldiers was killed, above ſeventy and all the horſes were wounded. I received two wounds, one by a ſtone, the other by an arrow; but they were not ſuch as to prevent my doing duty; indeed if wounds had exempted us, few would have been fit for it.

We now returned to our former poſt, having buried our dead in one of the ſubterraneous dwellings already mentioned, filling and levelling it, that our loſs ſhould not be perceived by the enemy. How wretched and comfortleſs was our ſituation after our hardſhips and dangers! We could not procure even oil and ſalt; and the cutting winds of the Sierra Nevada, made us ſhiver again.

Cortes now ſent three of his priſoners, together with thoſe who had carried the former meſſage, to repeat his demand of a free paſſage to Mexico, with threats of deſtruction in caſe it was refuſed. When our meſſengers arrived at Tlaſcala, they found the chiefs of that nation much diſguſted with their misfortunes and loſſes; ſtill they heard our propoſals with a very unwilling ear, and ſent for their prieſts, and certain wizards who divine and foretell by caſting lots, in order to learn from them, if we were vincible, and which were the moſt likely means of ſucceeding againſt us; alſo, if we were ſupernatural beings, and what our food conſiſted of. It ſeems their wizards informed them, that we were human beings, and ſubſiſted as ſuch, not eating the hearts of thoſe we killed, as they had been told, and that though invincible by day, we were to be conquered by night, for that all our force was derived from the preſence of the ſun. This being believed, orders were immediately ſent to their General Xicotenga to make an attack upon us during the night. Accordingly, he marched againſt us with a force of ten

thouſand warriors, who attacked our poſt in three different bodies, but our out parties had kept too good a look out to be ſurpriſed, and a moment was ſufficient to put us under arms. They therefore met with ſuch a reception as ſoon cauſed them to turn their backs, being, as it was moonlight, purſued by our cavalry with a conſiderable loſs; and they returned to their poſt heartily ſick of a nocturnal attack. I have heard it ſaid, that finding themſelves deceived by their prieſts and wizards, they in revenge ſacrificed two of them. We had but one of our allies killed, and two Spaniards wounded in this action, and we made four priſoners; but on the enſuing day when we came to look into the ſituation of our army, it was far from conſolatory; we were dreadfully harraſſed, had loſt above fifty-five ſoldiers by battle, ſickneſs, and ſeverity of weather, and had ſeveral ſick; our general was ill of a fever, as was our Rev. Father Olmedo, and the expectation of reaching Mexico was now conſidered as a viſionary idea, after what we had experienced of the reſiſtance of the Tlaſcalans.

We had however in our army many cavaliers equally wiſe in council as they were brave in the field, with whom Cortes never omitted conſulting on important occaſions, notwithſtanding Gomara ſays that Cortes did this and that, as if he was the ſole actor, inſomuch that even if he had been made of iron, he could not have executed all which that hiſtorian aſcribes to him. Let it ſuffice that he did in every reſpect like a good captain which he was, and this I ſay, that in addition to his other mercies God was pleaſed to give us wiſdom to counſel and adviſe Cortes, upon all important occaſions, for the beſt, as the reſult proved. But to have done with praiſes, we waited on Cortes, and repreſented to him the favors which heaven had ſhewn to us, and how evidently they pointed out that we were reſerved for ſome great end, and now we adviſed him to releaſe his priſoners, and by them to make a ſecond offer of amity to theſe people. Donna Marina, whoſe ſpirit ſupported her in all dangers, and when ſhe knew that we were upon the brink of deſtruction, and were in momentary apprehenſion of being devoured, was at this time of moſt eſſential ſervice, for ſhe explained to

thoſe

thoſe we ſent, that it was our determination, if their countrymen did not immediately treat, to march againſt and deſtroy them and their town. With this reſolute meſſage they went once more to Tlaſcala.

Our meſſengers having arrived at Tlaſcala, waited on the chiefs, the principal of them bearing in one hand our letter, and in the other a dart. It was the will of heaven that the Tlaſcalans ſhould be now inclined to enter into terms of accommodation. The two chiefs named Maxicatzin, and Xicotenga the elder, immediately ſent to invite the reſt, and alſo the cacique of Guaxocingo their ally, and being all aſſembled, they repreſented to them, that their attacks had been ineffectual on us, and deſtructive to them, and that we were in hoſtility to their inveterate enemies the Mexicans, who had made war on them for upwards of a hundred years, by which they were now deprived of ſalt and cotton. They therefore propoſed, that their nation ſhould accept our alliance, and that, in order to perpetuate it, the daughters of their firſt families ſhould be offered to us as wives. To theſe propoſals they all agreed, and ſent notice thereof to their general. This chief was highly offended at it, and inſiſted on making another night attack upon us. The council of Tlaſcala being informed of this, ſent orders to ſuperſede him, but the captains and warriors refuſed to obey, and in conſequence of his violent conduct, four of their principal and moſt venerable chiefs, who were appointed to wait on, and invite us to their town, were intimidated, and prevented from executing their miſſion.

Having remained two days without doing any thing, we now propoſed to Cortes to march to a place called Zumpacingo, the chief town of the diſtrict, the people of which had been ſummoned, but had treated our meſſage with neglect. Accordingly, early in the morning we ſet out, under the command of Cortes who was not yet quite recovered. The morning was extremely cold, the wind affecting two of our horſes ſo much that we were afraid they would have died. Proceeding on our march, we arrived at the town before daybreak. The inſtant the natives heard of our approach, they fled from their houſes, crying, that the

ſoldiers who had exhibited more valour and perſeverance than ourſelves, and that it was neceſſary to continue to do ſo in order to ſave our lives. That with our courage he was well acquainted, as he alſo was with many other circumſtances which they had then mentioned. But, that as God had delivered us from thoſe great perils, he hoped the ſame mercy would be continued to us in future. He then appealed to them if he had ever ſhewn himſelf unwilling to ſhare dangers with us, which indeed he well might, for he was ever forward on thoſe occaſions, and continued his reply, adding, that as we had wherever we went preached to the ignorant natives the doctrines of our holy faith, he truſted we ſhould ſtill receive the divine aſſiſtance, and that of his patron St. Peter. That as to deſtroying our ſhips, it was done by good advice; "And," continued he, "Gentlemen, our fame will exceed "far that of the moſt illuſtrious of our predeceſſors, who never, as you "obſerve, dared to take ſuch a meaſure; and therefore it is better, in-"ſtead of repining, to look forward, and leave all to be guided by the "hand of God. As to our return, it is true the natives we had left "behind are now friendly, but if we ſeemed to retreat, the very ſtones "would riſe againſt us. Therefore gentlemen, thus it is; bad there, "worſe elſewhere, better ſtay as you are, here in a plentiful country, "and as to what you ſay of loſſes, deaths, and fatigues, ſuch is the "fortune of war, and we did not come here in ſearch of paſtimes and "amuſements. Therefore I beg of you, who are all cavaliers by your "ſtation authorized to ſet an example, that you no longer will think "of returning, but do your duty like the valiant ſoldiers I have always "found you to be."

The others replied deprecating ſtill the march to Mexico; he then cut them ſhort by ſaying, that according to the ſong, it was better to die at once than live diſhonored; and Cortes being ſupported in theſe ſentiments by all his friends, the complaints of theſe people were ſtifled for the preſent, for we all cried out that no more ſhould be ſaid upon the ſubject.

After

After four meſſages from the chiefs of Tlaſcala to their general, to ſend a peaceable embaſſy to us, that chief was obliged to comply. Accordingly forty Indians arrived at our quarters, ſent by him with fowls, bread, and fruit; they alſo brought with them four old women in wretched clothing, ſome incenſe, and a quantity of parrots feathers.

Having offered their incenſe to Cortes, one of the men addreſſed him as follows. "This preſent our General Xicotenga ſends you. If "you are, as it is ſaid, Teules, and deſire human ſacrifices, here are "theſe four women; take their hearts and blood for food; as we "knew not your pleaſure, we have not hitherto ſacrificed them to you, "now do as you chuſe with them. If you are men, here are fowls, "bread, and fruit; if you are benignant Teules, we offer to you this "incenſe and theſe parrots feathers." Cortes replied that he had already ſent to them requiring peace, as our object in coming was to make manifeſt the truths of our holy religion, and in the names of our God and Emperor, to prohibit human ſacrifices; that we were men like themſelves, but not accuſtomed to put any to death except in our own defence, and that they ſhould no longer continue their mad reſiſtance, but embrace peace when it was offered to them.

Theſe men it ſeems were ſpies; we were warned of this by our friends of Cempoal, who informed us likewiſe that the people of Cimpacingo had ſaid that Xicotenga meant to attack us. Cortes now made immediate inveſtigation, and cauſing four of theſe Indians to be ſeized, they confeſſed the whole, and that their general was waiting only for their report, to attack us on that very night. Cortes then cauſing ſeventeen of the Tlaſcalans to be arreſted, made their hands be ſtruck off, and alſo the thumbs of others, and in that condition ſent them to their chief, with an invitation to him to come and attack us; ſaying, that we would wait, for the ſpace of two days, and at the expiration of that time, if he heard no farther, would come and ſeek for him in his poſt. Xicotenga was prepared to march againſt us, when his ſpies rejoined him in that lamentable ſtate; but from the moment he ſaw them, he

l feathers - propitiatory. v. Mythology, infra
a. Brazil - an equatorial bird - redder than scarlet itself - the Indians greatly
the feathers - Purchas. v. 4. p. 1317 -

Eotomi, Otomi — According to the pragmatic preserved of Blas Valera the Jesuit he deduced the population of the isthmus of Panama and all from thence, and states it as a received opinion. The Nations of South America the Antes, as described differ no ways from the more ferocious North American tribes. warfare, treatment of prisoners, serpent worship, Ossuary of hospitality, the huaca, drowning parents, preserving their bones — unnatural practices in their temples, prisoning, ~~obsequies~~ sorcery — the language deficient in B. D. F. The Peruvians, date the establishment of their Empire about the year of Christ 1,100 — but the population must have been considerably anterior. The Children of the Sun and the tonsure ~~being on the top on the front of the head~~ and also of distinction round the h

he loſt his courage and haughtineſs. Alſo one of thoſe diviſions with the chiefs of which he had quarrelled, at this time quitted his army, as we were informed.

A vedette now, unexpectedly, announced the approach of a numerous train of Indians by the road of Tlaſcala, and his companion who had ſtayed to obſerve them, ſhortly after galloped in and informed us that they were hard by; we therefore conceived hopes of that which it turned out to be, an embaſſy of peace. Cortes ordered us all to our quarters, and on the arrival of the embaſſy, the four old men deputed for the purpoſe, advancing from the reſt, went to the place where our general was, and bowing their heads, touched the ground with their hands, and kiſſed them; making three more bows they then advanced, and having preſented their incenſe they ſaid, that they were ſent on the part of the people of Tlaſcala, to put themſelves under our protection; declaring that they never would have made war upon us, but for their belief that we were the allies of Montezuma, their mortal and ancient enemy. They added, that the firſt attack made upon us was by the Chontales Eſtomies, or mountaineers, (without their approbation,) who thought that they could eaſily bring our ſmall number to their lords the Tlaſcalans; they then ſaid, that they were come to ſolicit pardon for the offence, and that the general of their army and other chiefs ſhould ſhortly wait upon us. Having finiſhed, they bowed, touching the ground, and kiſſing their hands. Cortes, aſſuming a ſevere look, reproached them for the violence they had committed, but in conſideration of their wiſh to expiate their offences he told them, that he was now willing to accept their preſents and receive them into favor. He bid them immediately ſend their chiefs to him, as in caſe they failed to come he was determined to proceed in hoſtility againſt them, but that his wiſh was for peace; in token of which he made them a preſent of ſome artificial diamonds. The four ambaſſadors returned with this meſſage, leaving thoſe who had attended them with proviſions, in our quarters. We now were convinced of the ſincerity of their profeſſions,

which

Stone

At Huet
Huetzotzinco
Tumpaneco -
a deputation of
peace from the Tlax
callans - from
the Huetzotzincas
formerly vassals
of Mexico but now
become allies of
Xaxcalla and
now Prince Xatlil
chichitl brother of
Cacamatzin King of
Acolhuacan.
there a place calle
Teotlalpan who
now proposed to
Cortes an alliance
of war against
Montezuma
of all which this
author seems unin
formed.
Xatlilxochitl wished
to be placed on the
throne of Acolhua
can.

which came in very good time, for we were heartily tired of this ſevere and hopeleſs war.

The hiſtorian Gomara ſays, that Cortes aſcended a rock, in order to get a view of Zumpacingo. I ſay it was cloſe to our ſtation, and the man muſt have been blind indeed who could not have ſeen it from thence. He alſo talks of mutinies, and other things, of which he ſays that he was informed. I ſay that never was a captain in the world better obeyed than Cortes, and that no ſuch thought ever entered the mind of any of us, nor any thing that could be ſo conſtrued, except the affair of the ſands, and what I have lately related, which was only by way of advice, for the whole of our ſoldiers followed him moſt zealouſly, and it is no ſtrange thing that good ſoldiers ſhould occaſionally counſel their chief.

The news of the great victory which it had been the will of God to give to us flew through all parts, and ſoon reached the ears of the great Montezuma; inſomuch that this monarch, awed by the fame of our valour, ſent five of the principal noblemen of his court, to congratulate us upon our ſucceſſes. By them he ſent a preſent of various articles of wrought gold, to the amount of a thouſand crowns, and twenty loads of the richeſt mantles, with a declaration of his wiſh to become a vaſſal of our great monarch, to whom he offered to pay an annual tribute; adding, that from the eſteem in which he held our general, he much wiſhed to ſee him at his court in Mexico, but that he was obliged to deprive himſelf of that ſatisfaction, in conſequence of the poverty of the country and badneſs of the roads by which he was to paſs. Cortes expreſſed his obligation to this great monarch for the preſent, and his offer to pay tribute to our ſovereign; he requeſted the ambaſſadors to ſtay and accompany him to Tlaſcala, with which government he had not yet made his concluſive arrangements, and deſired that they would allow him to defer giving any farther anſwer on that day. He was now convaleſcent, and had taken as a medicine certain apples of great virtue, the produce of the Iſland of Cuba.

While

While Cortes was converſing with the ambaſſadors of Montezuma, Xicotenga and fifty of his principal warriors, all clothed in uniform habits of white and red, arrived and waited on him with great reſpect. Cortes received him with no leſs, and made him ſit down at his ſide. The chief then told him, that he came in the name of his father, and the reſt of the principal perſons of his nation, to ſolicit our friendſhip, to ſubmit to our monarch, and to apologize for having taken up arms againſt us, the reaſon of which was, the apprehenſion of the wiles of Montezuma. He added, that their country was very poor, producing neither gold, ſilver, jewels, cotton, nor even ſalt, which laſt article Montezuma prevented them from obtaining. He ſaid alſo, that what gold their anceſtors had collected, he had deprived them of, and that if they did not now bring ſatisfactory preſents, their poverty muſt plead their excuſe. He made many other complaints of Montezuma, and concluded by earneſtly ſoliciting our alliance. This chief was of tall ſtature, ſtrong, and well proportioned; his face broad, and ſomewhat wrinkled; of a grave aſpect, and aged about thirty-five years. Cortes treated him with every mark of friendſhip, and expreſſed his ſatisfaction at having been the means of inducing ſo reſpectable a nation to become vaſſals to our ſovereign, and allies to us. The Tlaſcalan chief then invited him to his city, which Cortes promiſed to viſit as ſoon as he had diſpatched his buſineſs with the ambaſſadors of Montezuma. At the concluſion of the converſation however, Cortes addreſſed a few words to them of a more ſerious nature, in reſpect to the offences which they had committed againſt us, warning them to take care of their conduct in future. They all promiſed the utmoſt fidelity, and this converſation having paſſed in the preſence of the ambaſſadors of Montezuma, they attempted to ridicule the credit which we gave to the aſſurances of the Tlaſcalans, which they aſſerted were ſo many deceptions, their intention being to fall on and murder us in their city. Cortes replied, that any ſuch attempt would bring with it its own puniſhment, and that he was determined to march to Tlaſcala, if it were only in order to aſcertain the ſincerity of the people. The ambaſſadors of Montezuma then requeſted a delay of ſix days, to obtain far-

farther inſtructions. This Cortes acceded to; for which he had two motives, firſt, his ſtate of health, ſecondly, becauſe the obſervations of the Mexican ambaſſadors afforded grounds for ſerious reflections. He now alſo ſent to Juan de Eſcalante, informing him of what had happened, and requiring ſome veſſels of ſacramental wine, which had been buried in a certain place, and alſo ſome conſecrated bread, that which we had brought with us being uſed. We at this time erected a ſumptuous and lofty croſs in our quarters, and Cortes ordered the people of Zumpacingo to purify and whitewaſh a temple, which they accordingly did.

Our friends of Tlaſcala brought us continually ample ſupplies of proviſions, ſuch as fowls, and tunas or Indian figs, and they repeated their invitations, which we could not as yet accede to, conſiſtently with the engagement which we had made to the Mexican ambaſſadors. At the expiration of the time which Cortes had given, ſix noblemen ſent by the great Montezuma arrived, with a preſent of various articles in gold to the value of three thouſand crowns, and two hundred rich mantles. They alſo brought a meſſage of a congratulatory nature, and containing the moſt earneſt requeſt and advice, by no means to go to, or truſt the people of Tlaſcala. Cortes received the preſent with every expreſſion of gratitude, aſſuring them that he would repay it in good works to their monarch, adding, that, as to the Tlaſcalans, he was thankful for the warning, and if they attempted any treachery, would make them pay for it with their lives. At this moment he received intelligence of the arrival of the Tlaſcalan chiefs; he therefore requeſted of the ambaſſadors a delay of three days, before he gave his anſwer to them.

The ancient chiefs of Tlaſcala, named Maxicatzin, and Xicotenga the elder, a blind man, together with Guaxolacima, Chichimecatecle, and Tecapaneca of Topeyanco, now arrived at our ſtation, borne on hammocks, in litters, and on men's backs, attended by a great train. Saluting Cortes with great reſpect, Xicotenga the blind chief addreſſed him

Mahatzin. the Tuloan and Koothan Languages have the same defficiency of pronunciation with the Chinese being unable to pronounce the R. and substituting the other liquid the L. The Tuloan and Koothan want the same Sounds. B. D. R. & Fr.

total population 150,000 Households. 20 villages

Tlaxcalla. a town of 600 households, Robert Thompson some time after the Conquest but this must mean of Spaniards. There were 16,000. Hawks's account. But there were in Tlaxcalla 200,000 Indians who paid tribute, viz. a Handful of Maiz each, amounting annually to 13,000 Fanegas as Faith appeared by the King's books. This light tribute is the reward of the Loyalty of Tlaxcallan, the ordinary tribute is for every individual above 14. years of age, an ounce of silver and a fanega of maize. — Relation of Henry Hawkes a Merchant, some time prisoner in Mexico, drawn up at the request of Richard Hakluyt, of Eiton Hall near Leominster in the County of Hereford anno 1572. — Chaplain to the British Embassy at Paris.

Tlaxcallan (the granary) was an Aristocratical republic. As was Arauca with an elective Imperator in war.

Tlaxcalla. 50,000 Houses 500,000 Inhabitants, Capital & dependancies, Cotes

him saying, that they had often sent to him, to request pardon for their hostilities, which they ascribed to the suspicion they entertained of our being allied to Montezuma. But now we know, said he, who, and what you are, we would go down to the coast to invite you from your ships, and sweep the roads before you; at present the utmost we can do is, to request your company in our city, where you shall be served in every manner that is in our power. We at the same time warn you, not to give credit to the misrepresentations of these Mexicans, who are influenced by the malice which they bear to us. Cortes returning many thanks to them, said, he would have visited them before that time, but that he wanted men to draw his cannon; upon which, in less than half an hour, above five hundred of the natives were assembled for the purpose, and early in the morning we set out upon our march, attended by the Mexican ambassadors, by the request of Cortes, who kept them near him, lest they should meet with any insult. Before I proceed, I must mention, that from this time the natives always addressed Cortes by the name of Malintzin; the reason of which was, that Donna Marina being our linguist, and interpreting to Cortes, they gave him the name of Marina's captain, which in their pronunciation was perverted to Malintzin. We entered the territory of Tlascala twenty-four days before our arrival at the chief city, which was on the twenty-third of September 1519.

Sept^r 23

As soon as the chiefs perceived that we were on our march, they went before us to provide our lodgings, and when we approached their city they came out to meet us, bringing their daughters and female relations; but each tribe, or division of inhabitants, distinct and separate; for it seems that of these there were four, exclusive of that under the government of Tecapaneca, lord of Topeyanco. Each of these tribes was distinguished by a different uniform, of cloth made of nequen, for cotton was a luxury not within their reach. The priests came with their incense pots, in loose white garments, with their long hair matted and clotted with blood which flowed from recent cuts in their ears, and the nails upon their fingers were remarkably long. They saluted Cortes

Shuckford describes the plant like laced savory. it was that which was used for the purpose of painting or, cotton being scarce. of which Doctor Robertson was not aware.

Cortes with reverence, and the people, when we entered the town, crowded upon us in ſuch numbers as to make the ſtreets hardly paſſable, preſenting to Cortes and the cavalry, garlands of beautiful and odoriferous flowers. When we arrived at ſome large courts, in the apartments about which we were to be lodged, the two chiefs taking Cortes by the hand, brought him to that which was intended for him, and every Spaniſh ſoldier was accommodated with a bed, compoſed of a mat, and clothes made of nequen. Our allies were lodged near us, and the ambaſſadors of Montezuma, by the deſire of Cortes, in the apartment next to his own. Although we had every confidence in the ſincerity of the Tlaſcalans, yet Cortes never permitted the leaſt relaxation in military duty; when the chiefs obſerved this, it gave them a jealouſy, as they thought it to indicate that we harboured ſuſpicions of them, and they ſpoke to Cortes on the ſubject in ſuch terms as convinced us all of their ſincerity. Cortes replied by aſſurances of his perfect reliance upon their truth, and alſo informed them, that it was merely a compliance with the cuſtom of our country.

As ſoon as an altar could be erected, Cortes ordered maſs to be ſaid by Fra. Juan Diaz, the Rev. Father Olmedo being ill of a fever. At this many of the native chiefs were preſent, and after it was ended Cortes took them with him to his apartment, attended by thoſe ſoldiers who uſually accompanied him. Xicotenga the elder then told him, that they had prepared a preſent of which they requeſted his acceptance. Accordingly, ſome pieces of gold, and of cloth were produced, not altogether worth twenty crowns. The chief then addreſſed him, expreſſing his fear that he would deſpiſe ſuch a paltry offer, but that their poverty, and the extortions of Montezuma, of whom they were obliged to purchaſe peace at the expence of all they poſſeſſed, were the cauſes of it. Cortes received their preſent with thanks, ſaying, that little as it was, he valued it more from them, as a teſtimony of friendſhip, than if others had given him a houſe full of gold. Xicotenga then propoſed to him an alliance between our two nations, and that we ſhould accept their daughters in marriage, making the offer of his own

to

to Cortes. Our general thanked him for theſe marks of good will, and the chiefs remained with him a whole day. Xicotenga who ſhewed particular attachment to Cortes, was blind; he was curious to examine with his hands, his head, features, and beard, which the general permitted him to do.

On the next day the chiefs brought five daughters of caciques, handſome in compariſon to the other women of the country, well dreſſed, and each attended by a female ſlave. Xicotenga then preſented his own daughter to Cortes, deſiring him to aſſign the reſt to his officers. Cortes thanked him, but obſerved, that for the preſent the ladies muſt remain with their parents. The chief aſking the reaſon why he would not receive them he replied, that it was neceſſary firſt to obey the mandates of our Lord God, and the will of our monarch who had ſent us thither, to put a ſtop to human ſacrifices, and other evil practices, and bring them to the true faith in the adoration of one God. He then ſhewed them a beauteous image of our Lady, with her precious ſon in her arms, and explained to them that it was the repreſentation of the holy Mary, who is in the heavens, and mother to our Lord, by the grace of the Holy Ghoſt, "Sine peccato concepta," and that ſhe is our mediatrix with her precious ſon, who is our Lord God; then, ſaid he, if you wiſh to be our brethren, and that we ſhould intermarry with you, renounce your idolatrous worſhip, and adore our God, the good effects of which you will ſoon perceive in your temporal concerns, and thereby, after this life, your ſouls ſhall be taken into heaven, there to enjoy eternal happineſs. Whereas, by perſiſting in the worſhip of your idols, which are devils, you will be drawn by them to their infernal pit, there to burn eternally in flames of fire. Cortes after an excellent harangue containing much more matter to the ſame effect, which was perfectly well explained by our interpreters, here ceaſed and waited their anſwer, which was given by the chiefs as follows. That they readily believed all that they had heard now, and before, of the excellence of our God, and his ſaints, and that they hoped in time to underſtand more upon the ſubject; that in regard to the renunciation of their ancient religion,

if

if they were to do it in their old age, in order to pleaſe us, what would their prieſts and the riſing generation think of them? They would raiſe an inſurrection; the more ſo, as the prieſts had already conſulted their gods, who had commanded them by no means to omit their human ſacrifices, and other ancient cuſtoms; as in caſe of failure in the obſervance of them, they would puniſh the country with famine, peſtilence, and war. They therefore requeſted to be no more ſpoken to on the ſubject, as they could not renounce their gods but with their lives.

When the Rev. Father Olmedo, who was a wiſe man and good theologian, heard this, he adviſed Cortes to urge it no farther at preſent, being adverſe to forced converſions, notwithſtanding it had been done in Cempoal. He alſo obſerved, that the deſtruction of their idols was a fruitleſs violence, if the principle was not eradicated from their minds by arguments, as they would find other idols to continue their worſhip to, elſewhere. Three other cavaliers, Alvarado, De Leon, and De Lugo, alſo ſpoke to Cortes to the ſame effect. We however got one of the temples cleared out, and erecting an altar, converted it into a chriſtian church, and here the ladies deſtined to be the brides of our officers were baptized. The daughter of Xicotenga received the name of Donna Louiſa, and was taken by the hand by Cortes, who preſented her to Alvarado, telling her father, that officer was his brother: at which the old chief expreſſed his entire ſatisfaction. The niece or daughter of Maxicatzin was given to Velaſquez de Leon, to the beſt of my recollection: ſhe was very handſome, and took the name of Donna Elvira; and the reſt whoſe names I do not now remember, but they were all Donnas, were aſſigned to De Oli, Sandoval, and Avila. After the ceremony, the reaſon of the erection of croſſes was explained to the natives, as being done in order to terrify and expel the evil ſpirits they worſhipped, to all which they liſtened with proper attention. Before I proceed farther I muſt mention, that almoſt the whole province of Tlaſcala paid homage and made preſents to Donna Louiſa: Alvarado had by her a ſon named Don Pedro, and a daughter named Donna Leonora, wife at preſent to D. Fra. de la Cueva, a good cavalier, couſin

to

The paintings of the Salvage nations were done with blue as is the usage of the Egyptians of Tartary & is said also Tartary.

to the Duke of Albuquerque, by whom ſhe has four or five ſons all worthy cavaliers; Donna Leonora herſelf being an excellent lady, the true deſcendant of ſuch a father, who was in right of Donna Louiſa, great lord, or as it were ſovereign, in Tlaſcala.

Cortes now obtained in a converſation with Xicotenga the elder and Maxicatzin, conſiderable information relative to Mexico. They told him, that Montezuma had an army of a hundred thouſand warriors; that the enmity between the Mexicans and Tlaſcalans had ſubſiſted above a hundred years, the latter having formed an alliance for mutual protection with the people of Guaxocingo, and that all the diſtricts which Montezuma had brought under his ſubjection were diſſatisfied with his tyranny, and inclined to favor his enemies. They ſaid that the people from whom the Tlaſcalans had ſuffered moſt, were thoſe of Cholula, from which city, the troops of Montezuma could come by ſurpriſe upon the Tlaſcalan territory; that the Mexican garriſons occupied all the cities of the neighbouring ſtates, who were obliged to pay tribute to their monarch, in gold, manufactures, and victims for ſacrifice; and in ſhort, that his wealth and power were immenſe. They informed him alſo of the great ſtrength of the city of Mexico, of the lake, and the cauſeways with their wooden drawbridges. They farther deſcribed that city as built principally in the water, ſo that there was no paſſing from one houſe to another except by drawbridges or in canoes, and that all the houſes were terraced at top, and defended by parapets. The arms of the Mexicans they deſcribed as conſiſting of double-headed darts thrown by a kind of ſling, lances with double-edged blades of an ell in length, made of ſtone, and ſharper than a razor, two-handed ſwords of the ſame material and conſtruction, and ſhields. The Tlaſcalan chiefs then produced for our inſpection large cloths of nequen, whereon were painted repreſentations of their various battles. The diſcourſe afterwards turned upon themſelves and their nation. They ſaid that their anceſtors had told them, that in former times the country was inhabited by men and women of great ſtature, and wicked manners, whom their anceſtors had at length extirpated; and in order that we

might judge of the bulk of these people, they brought us a bone which had belonged to one of them, so large, that when placed upright it was as high as a middling sized man; it was the bone between the knee and the hip; I stood by it, and it was of my height, though I am as tall as the generality of men. They brought also pieces of other bones of great size, but much consumed by time; but the one I have mentioned was entire; we were astonished at these remains, and thought that they certainly demonstrated the former existence of giants. This bone we sent to Castille for his Majesty's inspection, by the first persons who went on our affairs from hence. The chiefs also told us how their idols had predicted, that men should come from distant parts where the sun rises, to subjugate the country, and that they believed us to be those of whom their gods had spoken. Cortes replied that it certainly was the case, that we were sent by our monarch to cultivate friendship with them, and that he hoped we should be the instruments of their salvation, to which we one and all said, Amen.

By-this time the cavaliers my readers, are I fear tired of the conversation with the Tlascalans; I must however mention some other things which occurred here. There was a volcano near Guaxocingo, which at this time threw up great quantities of flames. Captain Diego de Ordas went to examine it, attended by two soldiers and some principal Indians. The natives were afraid to approach nearer to it than the temples of Popocatepeque, but De Ordas with his two companions proceeding, reached the summit, and looked down into the crater, which forms a circle of about a quarter of a league in diameter; from hence they also had the first view of the city of Mexico, at the distance of twelve or thirteen leagues. This was thought at the time a great achievement. When De Ordas went to Castille, he obtained permission from his Majesty, to bear the volcano of Guaxocingo in his coat of arms, and it is so borne by his nephew who lives in La Puebla. This mountain for several years, until 1530, did not throw out flames; but at that period it raged again violently.

In

The highest at least one of the highest mountains in America is Descabezado in Chile. 600 miles from the Sea. 3 miles perpendicular height above it. petrified Marine bodies on the summit

Inhabited

ness (the men of this Country of Peru) say that in old time there came by sea in
rafts) men so big that from the knee downward was as high as an ordinary man
whole body and that they made wells most deep in a quick rock which at this
e seen which at this time are seen very fresh and cold at the point of Santa Helena
t because they used most abominable sins for came from Heaven & consumed
ll and now are found in that situation exceeding great bones of men and pieces
of 14 ounces weight and in New Spain in the bounds of Tascalla are bones
of the like bigness. This Place is near the Equinoxial Paita & Tumbez. There
rings of liquid tar.—

Hortop saith that he was sent prisoner into Spain with Don Juan de Velasco
Varre. admiral & Gen.l of the Spanish fleet, who carried with him in his ship
e presented to the Spanish King the anatomie of a giant sent from China
Chiapa) to Mexico to the Vicroy Don Martin Henriquez. The skull of
head was near as big as half a bushel: his neck-bones, shoulder-plac
e-bones & all other lineaments huge & monstrous, the shanks of his
iull from the ancle to the knee was as long as from any man's
ole up to his waste and of bigness accordingly "This seems to
bear about 15 67

Skeleton

Pojuetecatl. the highest land in Anahuac, conical, covered with snow, seen
the distance of 150 miles from the coast. It is 90 miles east of Mexico
and Orizava, called by the Spaniards. smoked in 1545. & 20 years
Higher than Teneriffe. v. Lettres edifiantes.

Popocatepec & Ystaccihuatl are neighboring volcanos. the name of the
signifies burning mountain, of the second "White Lady." both mountain
with Snow

In this town of Tlaſcala we found wooden cages, where they confined and fattened their victims. Theſe we deſtroyed, releaſing the unfortunate priſoners, who remained with us, not daring to venture to their homes. Cortes ſpoke in very angry terms to the chiefs of Tlaſcala upon their perſeverance in this horrid cuſtom; they promiſed amendment, but what availed that, when, on our backs being turned, they immediately reverted to their old abominations!

CHAPTER VII.

The Spaniſh Army proceeds on its march to Mexico.

AFTER a repoſe of ſeventeen days in Tlaſcala, it was determined to proſecute our march to Mexico. Upon this ſubject much difference of opinion exiſted, the rich ſettlers of Cuba being very adverſe to it. The reſolution which we had taken grieved our friends of Tlaſcala, who earneſtly adviſed us by no means to truſt Montezuma or his people, nor their ſmooth and courteous words and manners; for that they were treacherous in the extreme, and would either retain us to breed men for Montezuma's ſervice, or in a favorable hour, would fall upon, and deſtroy us. But, in caſe of our having hoſtilities with them, they adviſed us to kill all, neither ſparing the riſing youth, nor the aged counſellor. Cortes thanked, and propoſed to them, an amicable treaty with their neighbours the Mexicans; but they would not hear of this, ſaying, they could not truſt thoſe, who would only under the veil of peace, better execute their treacherous deſigns. In regard to our road, the Mexican ambaſſadors earneſtly recommended that by Cholula; but our friends of Tlaſcala as ſtrongly adviſed us by no means to go that way, but by Guaxocingo. Nevertheleſs we determined to go by Cholula, intending to remain there, until we could by negociation obtain a peaceable entry into Mexico. Cortes therefore ſent meſſengers to that place, to inform the chiefs of his intention, and expreſſing his diſſatisfaction that they had not come to wait upon him.

At this time arrived four of the principal nobility of Mexico, with a rich preſent. It conſiſted of gold to the value of ten thouſand crowns, and ten bales of the fineſt mantles of feathers. Having ſaluted Cortes with the profoundeſt reſpect, the ambaſſadors delivered the meſſage of their

their monarch, which was to this effect. That he wondered at our ſtay amongſt a people ſo poor and baſe as the Tlaſcalans, who were robbers, and unfit even for ſlaves; and he earneſtly requeſted that we would immediately viſit his capital. Cortes replied aſſuring them that he would ſhortly pay his reſpects to the great Montezuma, requeſting their ſtay with him during the interval. He alſo determined to ſend two cavaliers as ambaſſadors, to wait on Montezuma, and view the city of Mexico. The perſons he pitched on were Pedro de Alvarado, and B. Vaſquez de Tapia. They ſet out on their journey, accompanying the former Mexican ambaſſadors who had hitherto continued with us. I was at this time ill of my wounds, and of a fever; and therefore incapable of obſerving exactly all that paſſed, but I know, that their going thither appeared to us a very unwiſe meaſure, and in conſequence of our remonſtrances, they were recalled.

The chiefs of Cholula now ſent us four men of low condition, with a very dry and uncourteous anſwer to our meſſage, and without any preſent whatever. This evidently appeared to be done in contempt, and Cortes ſent notice to them, that if their chiefs did not wait upon him in three days, they ſhould be conſidered as rebels; but that in caſe of their compliance, he would be happy to eſteem them as brothers, and had much to tell them of great importance. They then ſent word that they dared not to come amongſt their enemies the Tlaſcalans, who they knew had miſrepreſented them and the great Montezuma to us; but they requeſted that we would viſit their city, where they would give us an honorable reception. When the Tlaſcalans ſaw our determination to accept this propoſal they told us, that ſince we were reſolved to neglect their advice, they expected that we would take with us ten thouſand of their beſt warriors. This was thought two great a number for a peaceable viſit; we however agreed to take two thouſand, who were immediately ready to attend us.

Being well prepared againſt whatever might happen, we now ſet out on our march, and arrived in the evening at a river, diſtant a ſhort league

Cholula – 12 miles from Tlaxcallan. South – 60 East of Mexico – in a plain near the foot of the Mountains which enclose the vale of Mexico – 40,000 houses in the city & as many in its dependencies – Cortes –

league from Cholula, where a ſtone bridge is now built acroſs it. Here ſome of the chiefs of the city came to congratulate us on our arrival. Continuing our march on the next day, when we came near the city, we were met by the chiefs and prieſts in a body, all dreſſed in caſſocks of cotton, reſembling thoſe of the Zapotecans. The chiefs preſented their incenſe to Cortes, and after apologizing for not having gone to Tlaſcala, requeſted that he would not permit ſo large a body of their enemies to enter the city. This appearing reaſonable, Cortes ſent Alvarado and De Oli, to deſire our allies to hut themſelves in the field, and we then marched on, attended only by the Indians of Cempoal, and thoſe who drew the artillery. Before he entered the city he made known to theſe people the objects of his miſſion, as has been already frequently related. They replied without heſitation, that to our monarch they were perfectly ready to yield immediate obedience, which they did; but that as to abandoning their ancient religion, they could not comply with any ſuch demand. When we entered their city, we were conducted through an immenſe crowd which filled the ſtreets and terraces, to our quarters in ſome large apartments, which contained us, our allies of Cempoal, and thoſe who conveyed the artillery and baggage.

October 14.

During the time we ſtayed here, a plot was concerted by the ambaſſadors of Montezuma, for the entry of twenty thouſand of his troops into this city, to fall upon us; and ſeveral houſes were filled with the poles and leathern collars, in which they were to have brought us priſoners to Mexico, but that God was pleaſed to foil their deſigns.

For the firſt two days, we were entertained as well as we could wiſh, but on the third we received no proviſions, nor did either chief or prieſt make his appearance. The few inhabirants that we ſaw, alſo, withdrew from us with a myſterious kind of ſneer in their faces, and Cortes at this time applying to the ambaſſadors ro procure for us our proviſions as uſual, all that we obtained was a little wood and water, conveyed by ſome old men, who told us that no maize was to be had.

On

Tlaxcala contains 60,000 Indians and twelve Spaniards. Marks of bearing arms — ~~Cortes~~ Herera

On this day ambaſſadors arrived from Montezuma, who, in very diſreſpectful terms, forbid our approach to Mexico, and required an immediate anſwer. Cortes mildly expreſſed his ſurpriſe at this alteration; he made them a preſent, and requeſted a ſhort delay, which they acceded to. He then ſummoning his ſoldiers, warned us to be alert, for that he ſuſpected ſome great treachery. The chiefs having refuſed to attend him, he immediately ſent ſome ſoldiers to a great temple hard by our quarters, with orders to bring, as quietly as they could, two of the prieſts. In this they ſucceeded without any difficulty, and the prieſts being brought before the general, he made a preſent to each, and then enquired the reaſon of theſe extraordinary appearances. One of them was a perſon of rank, and authority over all the temples of the city, in the manner of a biſhop; this perſon aſſured him, that if he had an opportunity of ſpeaking to the chiefs, he could perſuade them to come; and being diſmiſſed for this purpoſe, he was as good as his word, for he ſoon returned accompanied by ſeveral of them. Cortes firſt aſked the cauſe of the change in their behaviour; he then demanded an immediate ſupply of proviſions, and alſo a number of their people for the enſuing day, to convey the baggage and artillery. The chiefs appeared confounded, but at length promiſed to ſend in proviſions; though they ſaid they had been forbidden by Montezuma, and that he was not ſatisfied that we ſhould go any farther. Juſt at this time three of our friends of Cempoal called out the general, and informed him, that they had diſcovered hard by our quarters, pitfalls covered with wood and earth, and that clearing away the earth, and looking into one of them, they had found it ſet with ſharp ſtakes; that the terraces of all the houſes were filled with ſtones and parapeted with ſods, and that they had ſeen a barricade of ſtrong timber in one of the ſtreets. At this inſtant arrived alſo eight Tlaſcalans, from their army which was lying in the field; they warned Cortes againſt the intended attack, for it had come to their knowledge, that the people of the place had, on the preceding night, ſacrificed to their war god ſeven victims, five of whom were children, and they had alſo obſerved, that they were withdrawing their women, children, and effects, from the place.

Hereupon

Hereupon Cortes ſent orders to the Tlaſcalans to hold themſelves in readineſs, and rejoining the chiefs and prieſts of the town, he deſired them to be under no apprehenſion, but warned them not to deviate from their obedience, on pain of inſtant puniſhment. He then demanded of them two thouſand of their warriors to accompany him on his march, on the enſuing day; this they readily promiſed, thinking that it would tend to facilitate their projects; they therefore took their leave very well contented, and ſent notice of our intentions to all thoſe concerned with them. Cortes then ſent Donna Marina to bring back the two prieſts whom he had before ſpoken to. In this ſhe ſucceeded, and Cortes obtained from them the following intelligence.

They told him, that Montezuma, on our approach to Mexico, had become very unſettled in his mind, ſometimes ordering that we ſhould be received with honor, and at other times that we ſhould not be permitted to paſs; but that having lately conſulted his gods, they had declared, that here in Cholula we were all to be put to death, or made priſoners, for which purpoſe he had ſent twenty thouſand of his troops, one half of which number was in the city, and the other concealed half a league from it. That the plan of their attack was ſettled, and that twenty of us were allotted to be ſacrificed to the gods of Cholula. Cortes rewarded them handſomely, and enjoining ſtrict ſecreſy, deſired them to bring to him all the chiefs, at the time he appointed. He then ſummoned a council of the ableſt and wiſeſt ſoldiers of his army, ſome of whom were for returning immediately, and others propoſed various meaſures, but at length all agreed in the neceſſity of ſeverely puniſhing this treachery, as an example to other places. It was therefore determined, that we ſhould carry on the appearance of our intended march, preparing our baggage, and concealing our other meaſures, and that within the high walls of the courts where we were quartered, puniſhment ſhould be inflicted on the Cholulans. With the ambaſſadors of Montezuma it was thought moſt prudent to diſſemble; we therefore told them of our having diſcovered the treaſon of the people, who had aſperſed Montezuma, as being the author of it; and we propoſed

to

The thong suspended from the left shoulder, & on which he bear the signal for attack was the badge of the general. as the nose jewel was the distinctive of Nobility, & that in the under lip of Royalty. & this last was also worn by a general in chief. The thong is thus used in the present day by the miserable natives of the Aleyutian archipelago

turn

to them, to have no more intercourſe with the inhabitants, but to retire to the apartment of Cortes. They ſolemnly declared their ignorance of the tranſaction, and contrary to their inclination we now put them under a good guard, for the night, during which our whole force remained under arms.

On this night, the wife of a cacique, an old woman, who was acquainted with the plot, came ſecretly to Donna Marina whoſe appearance had attracted her regard, and invited her to her own houſe, as a place of ſecurity from the danger which was ready to overwhelm us, making at the ſame time a propoſal to her, to accept as a huſband, her ſon, the brother of a boy who accompanied her. Donna Marina, with a profuſion of thanks, and with her uſual acuteneſs and preſence of mind, agreed to all that ſhe propoſed, but ſaid that ſhe wanted ſome one with whom to entruſt her effects. She then obtained information of every particular of the buſineſs, all which the old woman informed her ſhe had learned from her huſband, who was chief of one of the diviſions of the city, and was then with his warriors, giving directions for their junction with the Mexican forces. She added, that ſhe had known it three days before, in conſequence of preſents which had been ſent from Mexico to the different chiefs, her huſband having received at that time a golden drum.* Donna Marina, deſiring this woman and her ſon to remain where they were and take care of her effects, haſtened to Cortes, and informed him of all that had paſſed, and that the perſon from whom ſhe had the information was in her apartment; in conſequence of which, Cortes immediately ſent for her, and the woman on being brought into his preſence confirmed all that ſhe had ſaid to Donna Marina, and which exactly agreed with the other information he had received.

When day broke, the hurry of the chiefs, prieſts, and people, and the ſatisfaction which appeared in their countenances, were as great as

* A golden drum was borne by a general in chief. and is thus borne by the chiefs of the tribes in their hostile operations in the Mexican archipelago.

if they already had us in their cages. They brought many more of their warriors to attend us than we had required, insomuch that the courts, which remain at this day as a memorial of the event, large as they were, could not contain them. We were all prepared for what was to be done, the soldiers armed with sword and buckler were placed at the gate of the great court, in order to prevent any one from escaping, and our general was on horseback, attended by a strong guard. When he saw how the people crowded in he exclaimed, "How anxious are "these traitors to feast upon our flesh! But God will disappoint them." He sent directions to the two priests who had given the information, to go immediately to their houses, and this he did in order to save their lives; then, causing the rest of the priests, and all the chiefs to be brought to him, he calmly asked them what was their reason for plotting to destroy us, and what we had done, more than require them to abandon their abominable customs, and endeavour to instruct them in the articles of our holy faith; and that for these reasons only, they had made preparations to cut us all off. That their evil intentions appeared by their having withdrawn the women from the town, and that when we required the provisions which they withheld from us, they had insulted us by sending in wood and water. He said that he knew of the ambuscade that was placed upon the road which they expected us to go, and that the recompense which they intended for our holy and friendly services was, to kill and eat us, for which purpose the pots were already boiling, and prepared with salt, pepper, and tomatas. That if they were determined to attack us, it was better to do it in a manly way, as the Tlascalans did; he added, that he also knew that twenty of us were to be sacrificed to their idols, to whom they had made a propitiatory offering of seven of their brethren; but the victory the idols had promised them, it was not in their power to give, and the effects of their treason were now ready to fall on their own heads.

This being successively explained to the natives by Donna Marina, they confessed the whole of the charge, but said that it was planned entirely by the orders of Montezuma. Cortes replied, that such crimes were

ster of military command were.
- cohical-te catl.
nspanecatl.
huacatecatl.
Tilancalqui.
hree Military orders were. Princes, Eagles, and Tigers (this reminds us of the war
of China) they were distinguished by armour, helmets and strings, or tassels.
nies Nobility civil & Military are now distinguished by feathers pendent from the
nd this custom, is also that of the North West American Archipelago. & continent.

red pepper. Asiatic. Tangut. Ostiaks. this word bore the same meaning in the Caribean. aghi
e insular name. -

Eldoes
in the
English
W. I. Islands

were never ſuffered to paſs without puniſhment, and he then commanded a muſket to be fired, as the ſignal for ſlaughter, which was waited for by us, who were as I have related well prepared, and falling upon the multitude then incloſed within the courts, we executed their puniſhment on them in a manner that they will ever remember; for a number of them were killed by us inſtantly, and many afterwards burned alive, very contrary to the expectations they had formed from the promiſes of their gods.† Within two hours our allies the Tlaſcalans arrived, and made a deſperate ſlaughter of them in the ſtreets, and as ſoon as the Cholulans had ceaſed to make reſiſtance, the former ravaged the city, plundering and making them ſlaves without our having it in our power to prevent them; and on the day after, when the intelligence had reached Tlaſcala, freſh hordes crowded hither for the ſame purpoſe. It was now abſolutely neceſſary to reſtrain them at all riſks: Cortes therefore ordered the chiefs to withdraw their troops, which they immediately did, and ſoon after, ſome prieſts and chieftains who preſided over other parts of the town, which they alledged not to have been engaged in the conſpiracy, waited on us, and requeſted a remiſſion of puniſhment. The two prieſts formerly mentioned, and the old woman who was ſo anxious to be the mother-in-law of Donna Marina, came alſo, and petitioned to the ſame effect. Cortes appeared greatly enraged, and calling for the Mexican ambaſſadors, declared in their preſence, that if he did not deſtroy the whole city as it deſerved, it was out of reſpect to the great Montezuma, whoſe vaſſals the inhabitants were; but that for his ſake he pardoned them. He then commanded the Tlaſcalans to deliver up thoſe whom they had made priſoners: this, however unwillingly, they in a great meaſure complied with, many perſons being ſet at liberty, but after all they retained a good booty of gold, mantles, cotton, ſalt, and ſlaves. An amneſty for the paſt being proclaimed, and Cortes having reconciled the Tlaſcalans and Cholulans, the latter ſuggeſted that they were apprehenſive our general would appoint their new chief, the former one having been put to death. Cortes upon

 this

† Above ſix thouſand Cholulans were put to death on this occaſion.

this enquired who was the regular ſucceſſor, and being informed that it was the brother of the late head cacique, he appointed him to the chieftainry. As ſoon as the inhabitants had returned, and order was reſtored, he ſummoned together all the prieſts and chiefs, in order to exhort them upon the ſubject of religion, adviſing them to renounce their odious practices, and as an inſtance of the inefficacy of their idols, he reminded them of the manner in which they had been lately deceived by their falſe promiſes. He therefore propoſed that they ſhould be pulled down and broken to pieces, and an altar and croſs erected in their place. The latter was immediately done, but as to the proſtration of the idols, by the advice of the reverend father it was poſtponed for a time, from motives of prudence, and a juſt conſideration of the uncertainty of our ſituation.

The city of Cholula much reſembled Valladolid, being in a fertile plain, very thickly inhabited; it is ſurrounded by fields of maize, pepper, and maguey. They had an excellent manufacture of earthenware, of three colours, red, black, and white, painted in different patterns, with which Mexico and all the neighbouring countries were ſupplied, as Caſtille is by thoſe of Talavera and Plaſencia. The city had at that time above a hundred lofty white towers, which were the temples of their idols, one of which was held in peculiar veneration. The principal temple was higher than that of Mexico, and each of theſe buildings was placed in a ſpacious court.

Cortes in his letter to the Emperor aſſerts that he counted 400, and odd towers of temples in Cholula.

The Mexican troops which had been poſted in ambuſcade, with ramparts and trenches to oppoſe to the cavalry, hearing what had happened to their aſſociates, made a rapid retreat to their city, and carried the news to their monarch; but he had already heard his misfortune from two of his ambaſſadors who had been with us. It is ſaid that he immediately ordered a ſacrifice to his gods, and ſhut himſelf up at his devotions for two entire days, with ten of his chief prieſts, in order to obtain an anſwer from them, relative to his future deſtiny. The reply which they gave was to this effect; that he ſhould ſend an embaſſy to exculpate

The remains of the great temple of Cholula are half a mile round the
500 feet high

ge. pepper & Mezcal. pepper. Chia. is the native name, a
Pulque
uey. gives a fermented drink. pulq. or Chicha. a maguey plant will
s in six months 20 arobas or 600 pounds or pints. a plant gives
fruitful period 50 arobas. Spanish or 2000 pints. or pounds
74. The quantity of Pulque that paid duty in the [redacted] City was
lions of Gallons. — the revenue producing in that City only, 300,000
rs, at one real for every three gallons.

exculpate himſelf in regard to what had paſſed, and to invite us into Mexico, where, by cutting off the water, or raiſing the bridges, he could eaſily deſtroy us, or retain us for breed. The news of our late ſucceſſes ſpread rapidly, and the natives were more than ever convinced that we were beings poſſeſſed of a preternatural power and intelligence. My readers will be perhaps by this time as tired of the detail of the tranſaction of Cholula, as I am of writing it. I muſt however mention the cages full of men and boys fattening for ſacrifice, which were in this city. All theſe Cortes deſtroyed, and ſent the poor priſoners to their homes, giving poſitive orders to the prieſts to deſiſt from the practice in future, which they promiſed that they would, but what ſignified their promiſes!

This which I have related is the reality of the endleſs ſtory of the Lord Biſhop of Chiapa, F. Bart. de las Caſas, who ſays we put theſe people to death merely for paſtime; but I muſt obſerve, that certain reverend Franciſcans, after the conqueſt of Mexico, being ſome of the firſt his Majeſty ſent to New Spain, went to Cholula on purpoſe to make the ſtricteſt enquiry; the reſult of which was, that they found the affair to have happened exactly as I have related it. If this puniſhment had not taken place our lives would have been in the greateſt danger, and had we been deſtroyed this country of New Spain would not have been ſo eaſily gained, or a ſecond expedition attempted; or if it had, it might have failed of ſucceſs, as the natives would have defended their coaſts, and have thus remained for ever in their idolatry. I have heard a reverend Franciſcan named Fray Torribio de Motilinea ſay, that if the puniſhment could have been avoided, and that there had been no cauſe given for it, it would have been better; but that ſince it was done, good effects had reſulted, as the natives were thereby convinced of the falſehood and deception of their idols, which they in conſequence deſpiſed, as a proof of which they afterwards took down the principal one, putting another in its place.

Having now paſſed fourteen days in the city of Cholula, Cortes ſummoned

ſummoned a council compoſed of certain officers and ſoldiers, men of equal valour and wiſdom, and his particular friends, for without our advice he entered upon no meaſure of conſequence, and it was thereby determined, to ſend a reſpectful meſſage to the great Montezuma, and to inform him that in compliance with the orders of our king we were on our way to pay our reſpects to him in perſon. We then related the tranſaction of Cholula, where the treaſon which was meditated againſt us had come in ſufficient time to our knowledge, from which nothing that concerned us could be concealed, adding, that if we had not puniſhed it to the full extent, it was only out of reſpect to him, whoſe vaſſals the people of that city were; that the chiefs and prieſts had informed us, that what they did was at his inſtigation, which we could not believe of ſo great a prince, after the proffers of friendſhip which he had made to us, for that had he been inclined to hoſtility, he would have met us in the field, but that in the caſe of a battle, field or town, day or night, was alike to us.

The Mexican monarch was very doubtful and penſive, when he conſidered the events which had paſſed. After a variety of determinations he at length ſent to us ſix of his firſt nobility, with a preſent of gold to the value of two thouſand crowns, and ſeveral bales of fine mantles. When the ambaſſadors came into the preſence of Cortes, ſaluting him with profound reſpect, they delivered a meſſage from their monarch, wherein he laboured to exculpate himſelf in regard to what had happened in Cholula, and concluded by inviting us to his court. Cortes entertained theſe perſons with his uſual politeneſs, and retaining three of them to go with us as guides, ſent the others back to inform their monarch that he was ſetting out upon his march. When the Tlaſcalan chiefs heard our determination, they renewed to Cortes their warnings to beware of Mexican treachery, but added, that if he was determined to proceed, they would ſend with him ten thouſand of their warriors. Cortes thanking them obſerved, that ſuch a body would not accord well with an amicable viſit, but requeſted one thouſand men for the baggage and artillery, which number was inſtantly provided.

Our

The whole number however that attended the Spaniards was 7,000.

Our faithful allies of Cempoal being apprehenſive of the vengeance of the Mexicans, now petitioned for leave to return to their homes. Cortes diſmiſſed them with handſome preſents, and having written to Juan de Eſcalante, informing him of his determination, we ſet forward on our march.

We quitted Cholula in great regularity, ſending out our cavalry patroles to reconnoitre, ſupported by light infantry, our arms in order, and the cavalry by threes in front. Marching on thus, "With the "beard always upon the ſhoulder," we arrived at a little place called the hamlet of Iſcalpan, in a mountainous ridge in the diſtrict of Guaxocingo, four leagues diſtant from Cholula, where we were met by the chiefs, accompanied by others who inhabit the ſkirts of the volcano. They brought preſents of proviſions and gold, of trifling value, telling Cortes he ſhould receive it, not conſidering how much it was worth, but the inclination of thoſe who gave it. They adviſed us againſt going to Mexico, as being a very ſtrong city and the inhabitants warlike, and they alſo told us, that on aſcending the next mountain, we ſhould find two roads, very broad, one whereof went to a place called Chalco, the other to Talmanalco, both, places ſubject to the Mexicans. That the one road was very open and convenient, the other difficult, being obſtructed by large pine trees felled acroſs it, and that the firſt mentioned road, had an ambuſcade of Mexicans laid hard by it, among ſome rocks, in order to fall upon us as we paſſed; they therefore recommended us to go by that where the trees had been felled, offering to ſend a number of their people to clear it. Cortes expreſſed his gratitude for their advice, ſaying that by God's permiſſion he would purſue his route, accordingly.

Early on the morning of the next day we ſet forward on our march, and reached the ſummit of the ridge about twelve o'clock, where we found the roads as they had been deſcribed to us, ſome of the felled trees being to be ſeen at this day. Here we halted a little in order to conſider how we ſhould proceed, and Cortes calling upon the ambaſſadors

dors of the great Montezuma, enquired of them the meaning of these appearances. They replied, that we should take that road which led to Chalco, where we should be well received, and that the other road was longer and more difficult. Hereupon Cortes said, that he would notwithstanding prefer it, and our Indian allies clearing the way before us, we proceeded up the mountain, where the weather was exceedingly cold, and presently came a very heavy fall of snow, so that the whole country was covered with it. After some time we arrived at certain houses which are for the purpose of lodging travellers, where we halted, and found provisions in plenty. Having placed our guards, we rested for that night, and continued our march in the morning, and at the hour of high mass arrived at the town of Talmanalco, where we had an hospitable reception. The people of the neighbouring districts, that is to say of Chalco, Mecameca, and Acingo where the canoes are kept, waited on Cortes here with a present of gold worth about a hundred and fifty crowns, some mantles, and eight women. Cortes received them kindly, promising them his friendship, and a number of the natives being now collected, he desired the reverend father of the order of mercy to explain to them the doctrines of our holy faith, and require them to renounce their idolatrous worship; he also informed them of the great power of our monarch, and that we came in his name to redress wrongs. When the people heard this, they began to make secret complaints of the tyranny of Montezuma, who deprived them of their wives and daughters if handsome, and took the men to work like slaves, compelling them to convey for him, stones, timber, and corn, and seizing their lands for the service of his idols. Cortes condoled with them in kind words, desiring them to have patience for the present, and that they should soon be redressed. He then desired that some might go, and report to him the state of the road, but they told him there was no occasion, as it was perfectly clear.

Just as we were setting out attended by twenty Indians from this place, four of the principal nobility of Mexico arrived, and having paid their compliments, and delivered their presents, thus addressed Cortes.

Cortes. " Malintzin, this preſent our monarch ſends you, ſaying, " how grieved he is that you ſhould take ſo much trouble in coming " from a diſtant country to ſee him, and that he has already told you " he will give you gold, ſilver, and chalchihuis for your Teules, " on condition that you will not approach Mexico. He now repeats " his requeſt, and promiſes that he will ſend after you, a great treaſure " of gold, ſilver, and jewels, for your king, four loads of gold for " yourſelf, and a load for each of your brethren, on condition you " return immediately; for as to advancing to Mexico, that, you " cannot do, as the whole force of the Mexican warriors is in arms " againſt you: and moreover, there is no good road thither, nor are " proviſions to be had." Cortes embraced the ambaſſadors with much urbanity, and returned his thanks for the preſent, ſaying, that he was ſurpriſed to find the great Montezuma ſo variable in his mind. In regard to his offers of treaſure for the emperor, he thanked him, and for what had been received, ſaid he hoped to pay in future ſervices; but ſubmitted to him, how he could poſſibly turn back, when ſo near his royal reſidence, without taking that opportunity of paying his reſpects, and obeying his maſters orders; and begged him alſo to conſider, what opinion he would entertain of perſons he had ſent on ſimilar buſineſs, ſhould they act in the manner he required us to do. To his capital, our monarch expected we ſhould go, and therefore it was uſeleſs to ſend any more ſuch meſſages, for he muſt wait upon his Majeſty, and deliver his meſſage to him in perſon: and afterwards, if our remaining there was not agreeable, he would obey his orders, and return to the place from whence he came.

Having thus diſpatched Montezuma's ambaſſadors we continued our march. Our allies had informed us that Montezuma was to permit us to enter the city, and there put us all to death; this we well knew, and being like other mortals fond of our lives, it filled us with melancholy thoughts. Recommending our ſouls therefore to our Lord Jeſus Chriſt, who had brought us through our paſt dangers, we proceeded, and halted at a place called Iztapalatengo, one half of the houſes of

 which

Route by Ayotzinco on the South bank of the Lake of Chalco. — here Spanish Centinels & 15 Mexicans on the Right.

which is in the water, and the other half on firm ground, hard by a little ridge of hills, where there is now an inn.

Ayotzinco Clavigero

Early in the morning, when we were on the point of marching, a centinel came to inform us, that a great number of Mexicans, richly dreſſed, were upon the road. Cortes therefore ordered us to return into our quarters, and at that inſtant four of the principal courtiers of Mexico arrived, and waiting on Cortes with great reſpect informed him, that Cacamatzin lord of Tezcuco, the nephew of the great Montezuma, was approaching, and requeſted that he would wait to receive him. Cacamatzin followed in the greateſt pomp, carried in a magnificent litter adorned with green plumes, and enriched with jewels, ſet in the branched pillars of ſolid gold. He was borne by eight lords, who aſſiſted him out of the litter, and ſwept the way by which he was to paſs. When he came into the preſence of Cortes he ſaid to him, "Malintzin, here am I and thoſe lords to attend you to your reſidence "in our city, by order of the great Montezuma." Cortes embraced the prince, and preſented him with three jewels of that kind called margajitas, which are figured in different colours. We then ſet forward on the road to Mexico, which was crowded with multitudes of the natives, and arrived at the cauſeway of Iztapalapa, which leads to that capital. When we beheld the number of populous towns on the water and firm ground, and that broad cauſeway, running ſtraight and level to the city, we could compare it to nothing but the enchanted ſcenes we had read of in Amadis of Gaul, from the great towers and temples, and other edifices of lime and ſtone which ſeemed to riſe out of the water. To many of us it appeared doubtful whether we were aſleep or awake; nor is the manner in which I expreſs myſelf to be wondered at, for it muſt be conſidered, that never yet did man ſee, hear, or dream of any thing equal to the ſpectacle which appeared to our eyes on this day.

Route to Cuitlahuac on an island in the Lake of Chalco; this is probably what is called the pass of Chalco — infra

Iztapalapenco
Iztapallapan

two leagues in length

× 15,000 households

When we approached Iztapalapa, we were received by ſeveral great lords of that country, relations of Montezuma, who conducted us to our lodgings there, in palaces magnificently built of ſtone, and

among them Cuitlahuatzin, prince of Iztapallapan, in whose palace they were lodged and who succeeded the Montezuma as King of Mexico.

colous towns. of A-nahui=ac. or Anahuac." the five nations round the water "
Tlacattecatle - a man of Anahuac. cat signifying a man or person.
country was first occupied by two nations in a State of barbarism named, Otomi, Ze
nacatti. which names still subsist in Otompan, called Ottomba where the victory
tained and in the province of Xicallanco. (Xicallan - a cup.) The Culwan tribes
helled and succeeded them were these two enumerated.

Toltecatti - or Tolteccans. who considerably preceded the others. and were dispers
ed by a pestilence and famine. These events are marked in their record
the first by an infant with a putrid head which they could not bury
The second by a gloomy demon with long arms which embraced them
when met at a solemn festival. — It would be supposed this very
opposite emblem was in the mind of a modern writer when speaking
upon a similar subject he says (the famine in India) " The pale Spectre grasped in
embrace the whole extent of Hindostan." The word "Tolteatl" is said to
artizan, or more particularly "Mason." They were represented, in the ancient
gs, as men of tall stature, clothed in long white loose robes, unwanlike, tillers
and and builders of houses. Boturini saw the Tolteca records which
ir primary establishment in the north, but their route is unknown, except I
Tollan or Tula was built by them. Hence they removed to the borders of the
They described themselves like the other Culwans as a banished people.
There is an ancient town named Tula in South Iberia, and the River
Tola. Tollan (Culwan) means the places of Rushes. -

Chimecans - a hunting and not scientific tribe of Culwans nearly arrived in
Anahuac and there found the remains remains and records
of the Tolteccans with whom they incorporated themselves and
Tezcuco. the throne of which was occupied by Princes of Tolteccan
- the Chichimecans are described as clothed in skins and to
twenty years on their migrations. They settled themselves in Atona
an (here called Mexamica).

Mexicans, from Tez-a Culhuacan, next followed probably by invitation

leaving the parent colony, first a small body & then the whole tribe. This was one of the tribes
was possessed of sciences.

In and about the eleventh century a general movement seems to have taken place
their direction from the primary colony. in six tribes under these denominations

1. Xochimilcatli — Xochimilco
2. Colhuacatli — Colhuacan
3 Tepanecatli — settled in Eguapazalco
4 Chalquicatli — Chalco
5 Tlahuicatli — Texcallan

These five nations seem to have emi
in Mechuacan about the middle of the
12th century. There is some obscurity
erning these Tlahuicans.

6. Aztecatli — the Aztecans afterwards Mexicans did not emigrate until a
century after the others. They were the most inconsiderable and despis
able these tribes.

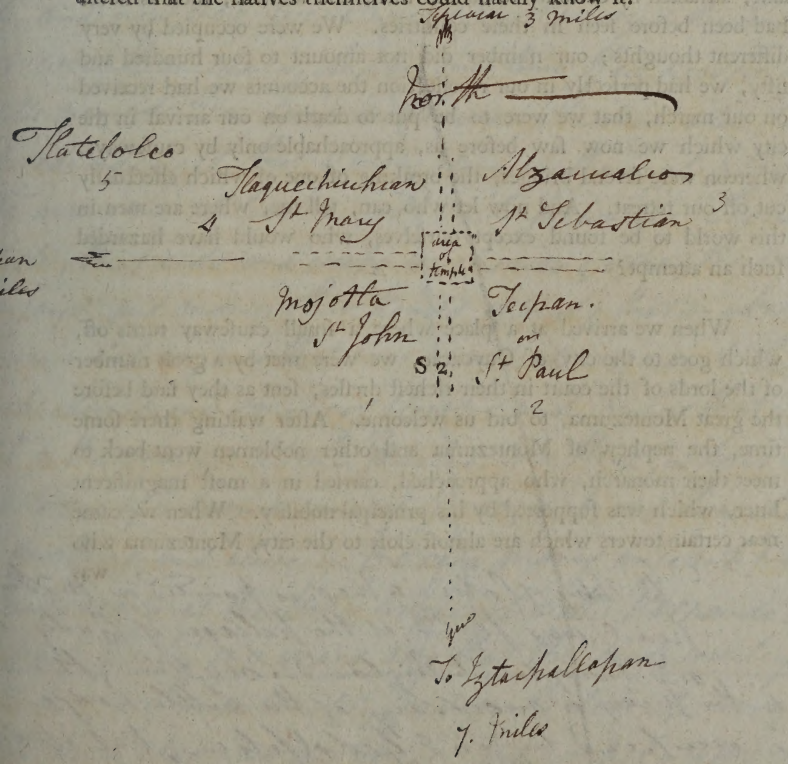
The Tlaxcallans settled between the Lake of Texcuco and the Atlantic
All these nations probably filled up their population with the Otomi and
Xicallanca nations.

Imaguacan was built by the Chichimecans
Tollantzinco probably by the Tolteccans.
The Tolteccans, Chichimecans and Acolhuans made one nation whose ch
settlement was in Tezcuco.

The modern Chepenecans, who are of the Chichimeca branch say they wer
seven years travelling by Land to their present situation, that they were
banished people. That their ancestors were expelled their country by a
cruel people. That they crossed a great Lake and sustained long
severe hardships from frosts and snows among desolate Islands.
this seems to point out their route & original site.

Iztac-palla-pan. (Espalta espaldas. palla. Iztac white. pan. Tenochtitlan. laid out
squares, intersected by roads & paths, planted with every description of tre
with various canals, through the principal roads entered from the lake
in the centre was a square fish pond each side 400 paces, with stone
all round, down to the bottom. N. Hernandez

the timber of which was cedar, with ſpacious courts, and apartments furniſhed with canopies of the fineſt cotton. After having contemplated theſe noble edifices we walked through the gardens, which were admirable to behold from the variety of beautiful and aromatic plants, and the numerous alleys filled with fruit trees, roſes, and various flowers. Here was alſo a lake of the cleareſt water, which communicated with the grand lake of Mexico by a channel cut for the purpoſe, and capable of admitting the largeſt canoes. The whole was ornamented with works of art, painted, and admirably plaiſtered and whitened, and it was rendered more delightful by numbers of beautiful birds. When I beheld the ſcenes that were around me, I thought within myſelf that this was the garden of the world! This place, was at the time of which I am ſpeaking, with one half of the houſes in the water, and the other half on dry land; but all is deſtroyed, and that which was a lake is now a tract of fields of Indian corn, and ſo entirely altered that the natives themſelves could hardly know it.



CHAPTER VIII.

Mexico, Nov. 8th, 1519. Description of that Court and City. Transactions and Occurrences there.

ON the next day we set out, accompanied as on the former one, and proceeded by the grand causeway, which is eight yards wide, and runs in a straight line to the city of Mexico. It was crowded with people, as were all the towers, temples, and causeways, in every part of the lake, attracted by curiosity to behold men, and animals, such as never had been before seen in these countries. We were occupied by very different thoughts; our number did not amount to four hundred and fifty, we had perfectly in our recollection the accounts we had received on our march, that we were to be put to death on our arrival in the city which we now saw before us, approachable only by causeways, whereon were several bridges, the breaking of one of which effectually cut off our retreat. And now let who can, tell me, where are men in this world to be found except ourselves, who would have hazarded such an attempt?

When we arrived at a place where a small causeway turns off, which goes to the city of Cuyoacan, we were met by a great number of the lords of the court in their richest dresses, sent as they said before the great Montezuma, to bid us welcome. After waiting there some time, the nephew of Montezuma and other noblemen went back to meet their monarch, who approached, carried in a most magnificent litter, which was supported by his principal nobility. When we came near certain towers which are almost close to the city, Montezuma who

anno. 1724. (a was seen here)

The entry of Cortes into Mexico painted another of great and undoubted performance of an Indian as thought worthy of being selected among the Spoils of Liz and brought to England where being to the Royal family, it was last known to have been put up in the privy of the Lodge at Windsor when Lord Godolphin was ranger. This relic of American art can probably be now traced. ~~Mariadadrinas hospitality~~

Mexico was in my time of not above 1,500 houseloads of the said cities dwelt about three
miards inhabiting there but of Indian people in the said suburbs
ied thousand and many more; in the middest of the city is a square place
good bow shot over from side to side and in the middest of the said place
high church very fair and well builded all through, at that time not
finished, and round about the said place are many fair houses built, on
one side are the houses where Montezuma the great King of Mexico that was
th, and now there lye always the Viceroys the King of Spain sendeth
ver every three years. And in my time there was for Viceroy a gentleman
title named Don Luis de Velasco. The said citie hath the streets made
broad and right that a man being at the high place at one ende of the
te may see at least a good mile forwards. The weather is there very
nate, the fields and woods are always greene, the woods are full of
injays and many other kinds of birds that make such an harmonie
inging and crying that any man will rejoice to heare it. In the fields
uch odoriferous smells of flowers and herbs that it will give great
ort to the senses. About Mexico, two, three, or foure leagues off are
s townes of Indians some of 4,000, or 6,000 households. In my time
e dwelling and alive in Mexico many ancient men that were of
Conquerors at the first conquest with Hernando Cortes for then it
about thirty six years ago that the said country was conquered.

be heard of, unfortunately, as it would clear up many disputed points.—
ich time also were destroyed the compilations of F. Blas ~~Valera~~
a jesuit who had finished in manuscript a copious history
of Peru

The Princes of the Islands of the South Seas are not permitted to touch the ground with their
feet. & thus mantles were laid before the K of Inca's
The canopy covering or umbella and golden sandals, the "peculia" of Majesty are
derived from Asia Minour however and the Scythian kings upheld it and
gave umbellas of honour to their distinguished Officers. The presence of
the King of Siam is at this day called the golden feet. The feet of the King
of Pegu at public audience were entirely covered with gold. The umbella is
sacred in Siam. & all presents peculiar to royalty in Africa — v. Japan
Golden sandals was the Regalia of the King of the Sophites in whose country
Alexander crossed the Indus. Golden is the epithet applied anciently to the sapphire
being & thence to Eastern Monarchs — Thus. Sree — scretch — (i.e. golden) —
Groon, moon (saint, sacred) narayan. (N. B. moon — unde Ammon)
Teshoo (i.e. Golden) Lama — Hence the Tungalian Tshigi moone
Tshaka moone — & Siamese Tshaka —
But at his inauguration the King of Inca's was invested with a robe
of blue and black, such as is worn by the Sophists of Thibet. it was
ornamented with embroidery of skulls and bones.
The antiquity of the umbella as part of regalia ~~of Asia~~ is evident from its appearing on the Medals of Bactria. (N. B.) Bauhus - from Bog - Bogh
unde Beg — Bey — Bouhus. Tentabouhus. meaning Lord, and by great Lord
inhancement by duplication according to the Eastern manner — Bog - bog
divinity of Korea. — It seems probable Bauhus is the Ham - Ham or
Great Conqueror of the east and one of the incarnations of Vishnoo
Brahma?
The regal ordinary dress of the Kings of Inca's was blue and white like
tiara or Cydaris of the Kings of Persia. ~~& Thibet~~
In ancient Egypt one City was appropriated to supply the Royal Sandals
The King of Inca's crown was of the mitre shape as used in the Solar attire
which must have been of great val
Frobisher's Esquimaux King was not permitted to touch the ground
his feet (he knows of the people of the South. It is explained by the ancient
in Thibet where a King treads the ground becomes his own & sacred. —
and in the Sandwich Isl. whatever covers the King's head.

was then there quitted his litter, and was borne in the arms of the princes of Tezcuco, Iztapalapa, Tacuba, and Cuyoacan, under a canopy of the richeſt materials, ornamented with green feathers, gold, and precious ſtones that hung in the manner of fringe; he was moſt richly dreſſed and adorned, and wore buſkins of pure gold ornamented with jewels. The princes who ſupported him were dreſſed in rich habits, different from thoſe in which they came to meet us, and others who preceded the monarch ſpread mantles on the ground, leſt his feet ſhould touch it. All who attended him, except the four princes, kept their eyes fixed upon the earth, not daring to look him in the face.

When Cortes was told that the great Montezuma approached, he diſmounted from his horſe, and advanced towards him with much reſpect; Montezuma bid him welcome, and Cortes replied with a compliment, and it appeared to me, that he offered to yield the right hand to Montezuma, who declined it, and put Cortes on his right. Our general then produced a collar of thoſe artificial jewels called margajitas, which are of various colours, ſet in gold, and threw it upon the neck of Montezuma; after which, he advanced to embrace him, but the lords who ſurrounded the monarch, taking him by the arm, prevented him, it appearing to them not ſufficiently reſpectful. Cortes then ſaid, that he rejoiced in having ſeen ſo great a monarch, and that he was highly honored by his coming out to meet him, as well as by the many other marks of his favor. To this Montezuma made a gracious reply, and gave orders to the princes of Tezcuco and Cuyoacan to attend us to our quarters. Attended by his nobility, he then returned to the city, all the people ſtanding cloſe to the walls, without daring to lift up their eyes, and thus we paſſed, without obſtruction from the crowd. Who could count the multitude of men, women, and children, which thronged the ſtreets, the canals, and terraces on the tops of the houſes, on that day! The whole of what I ſaw on this occaſion is ſo ſtrongly imprinted in my memory, that it appears to me as if it had happened only yeſterday: glory to our Lord Jeſus Chriſt, who gave us courage to venture upon ſuch dangers, and brought us ſafely through them!

And

And praiſed be he, that he has ſuffered me to live, to write this my true hiſtory, although not ſo fully and ſatisfactorily as the ſubject deſerves.

Our lodgings were provided in the buildings which had been inhabited by the father of Montezuma; here the monarch had the temples of his gods, and a ſecret treaſure of gold and valuables, which he had derived from his father Axayaca. We were lodged here, becauſe being conſidered as Teules, they thought we were in our proper place amongſt their idols. Be it how it may however, here they brought us to lodge in large apartments, a raiſed platform being aſſigned for our general, and mats for each of us, with little canopies over them, ſuch as are uſed in that country. The whole of this palace was very light, airy, clean, and pleaſant, the entry being through a great court. Montezuma here led Cortes by the hand to the apartment deſtined for him, and taking a large collar of gold, placed it round the general's neck. Cortes declared his gratitude for theſe favors, and Montezuma ſaid, "Malintzin, "here you and your friends are at home; now repoſe yourſelves." With theſe words he departed. We were allotted to our quarters by companies, our artillery was poſted in a convenient place, and all was arranged in ſuch a manner as to be prepared for any contingency; a very ſumptuous entertainment was provided for us, which we ſat down to with great ſatisfaction, and here ends the true and full account of our adventurous and magnanimous entry into Mexico, on the eighth day of November, in the year of our Lord 1519. Glory be to Jeſus Chriſt for all!

When the great Montezuma had made his repaſt, and underſtood that we had done the ſame, attended by a great body of his nobility he came to our apartments. Cortes went out to the middle of the hall to receive him, where Montezuma took him by the hand, and ſeats richly ornamented being brought, they both ſat down, by the deſire of the king, who then began a very pertinent ſpeech, wherein he obſerved, that he rejoiced to have in his dominions captains ſo brave as Cortes and his

ther of Montezuma. The Mexican Monarchy was founded in 1352. until that period
tezcan tribe of the Culwan Nation was governed by an Oligarchy of twenty hereditary
of that period. (i.e. A. 1352) this body of nobles elected a King. their choice fell on
apitzin — son of — Opochtli Azotli — son of Huitzilhuitli — son of Chalcatzi Zin
=pantzin — who was one of the principal of their aristocracy in the year 1220

389. Huitzilhuitl. succeded his father Acamapitzin. His children were Matlalcihuat=
=zin mother of Nezualcojotl King of Acolhuacan or Tezcuco and
Montezuma afterwards King.

1409. Chimalpopoca (i.e. bright shield.) son of Acamapitzin succeded his brother.

1423. Itzcoatl. . . son of Acamapitzin, who married [redacted]
Matlat=zin, his brothers daughter, succeded his brother.

6. Montezuma the first (Mon=teuh=Zumatzin) angry Lord) son of Huitzilhuitl
succeded his uncle.

1. Axayacatl. Son of Tezozomoctzin (simia, simaco) or Tezozomoctli the
third son of Acamapitzin by his niece Matlatzin

7. Tizoc. son of Tizozomoctli — Tizoc had two daughters married to Neza
=alpilli King of Tezcuco or Acolhuacan who by them left four
princes named
Cacamatzin. (cuicuitlat=zin — Coanacotzin & Ixtlilxochitl

Ahuitzotl — son of Tizozomoctli — succeded his brother

2. Montezuma the second — Son of Axayacatl, succeded his uncle, he had
commanded the army and was at the head of the priesthood. He married his
niece Mehuaxochitl (xochitl — flower) blossom) daughter of Ixtlil=
=cuechahuatzin Prince of Tollan or Tula.

Cuitlahuatzin brother of Montezuma succeded him, on the expulsion of the
Spaniards. He died of the Small pox newly imported by Narvaez
and was succeded by

1. Quauhtimoc=tzin (screaming eagle, commonly called Guatimozin

who was dethroned by Cortes and afterwards by him put to death at
in the province of Acallan, on his way to Higueras in the year 1524 as w
hereafter be seen.

Above it is seen that in 1309. The Mexican State was consolidated under King Acam
-pitzin — The Historical events which preceded it, in their final settlement in M
-ico, were these. about the year
1320. They obtained their settlements in Anahuac. a marshy tract which
had two denominations Tenochchitlan. viz. the place of the Nopal-plant
and Taltelulco, the place of the sand-bank. both merged in the name of
Mexico, which signifies clan three Martis. the tribe having broken itself
into two divisions, the Tenochchitlans elected a King from among the body of
their Nobility. The Tatelulcans petioned for, and obtained a prince of
the Tepanecan, (Culuan) family by name Quauh quauh pitzahuat-zin
and thus the tribe continued until about the year 1350, when the Tat
-elucans being conquered their King lost his life and they were consolidated w
the Tenochchitlans
Something is doubtful here. — for if according to other interpretations, the Kings h
-ecited are only Kings of Tenochchitlan. Tatelulco was conquered by Mon
-ema the first.
V. Historical picture of the foundation of Mexico. The Eagle and Opuntia —
It appears that the Lord who is next to the Eagle was the first King — the
diagonal lines are the chains of the marsh. —
VI. Historical paintings in Panchas.

his aſſociates; that he had before heard of one who had arrived at Champoton, and alſo of another who had come with four ſhips in the preceding year; that he had been anxious to ſee them, but had been diſappointed: now however that we were arrived, he was happy to offer us all the favor he had in his power to beſtow, for we were undoubtedly thoſe who had been mentioned by his anceſtors, who had predicted, that there would come certain men, from that part where the ſun riſes, to govern theſe countries; and it could mean no other but us, who had fought ſo valiantly ſince our arrival in their country; a repreſentation of each of our battles having been ſent to him. Cortes replied, that he and all of us never could repay the great favors we every day received from his hands: that we certainly were thoſe of whom it had been prophecied, and that we were vaſſals of a potent monarch named Don Carlos, who had many and great princes ſubject to him, and had ſent us, hearing of the fame and grandeur of king Montezuma, to requeſt in his name, that the great Montezuma and his ſubjects would embrace the holy chriſtian faith, which is the faith profeſſed by our monarch, by doing which he would preſerve the ſouls of him, his family, and ſubjects; and that he ſhould in good time be informed of more particulars, ſuch as that we worſhipped the only true God, with many other things highly edifying to the hearers. This converſation being concluded, Montezuma preſented our general with a quantity of valuable ornaments of wrought gold; to each of the captains he made a preſent of ſome gold and three loads of mantles, and to each ſoldier of two loads of richly wrought mantles; and all this he did in the moſt free and gracious manner, or to ſpeak more properly, like a great monarch as he was. Montezuma then aſked Cortes if his ſoldiers were all brothers, and vaſſals of our emperor. To which Cortes replied, that we were all brothers in love and friendſhip, perſons of conſequence in our own country, and ſervants of our ſovereign lord the king. With mutual compliments Montezuma then departed, having given orders to his officers to provide us amply according to our demands, with corn, ſtone mills, and women to make bread, together with fowls, and fruit, and plenty of graſs for the horſes.

a necklace of gold ray-fish

The

The next day was fixed on by Cortes, for his viſit to Montezuma. Accordingly, attended by Captains Pedro de Alvarado, Juan Velaſquez de Leon, Diego de Ordas, Gonzalo de Sandoval, and five ſoldiers, he went to his palace, which as ſoon as Montezuma was informed of, he came as far as the middle of the hall to meet us, attended by his relations, no other perſons being allowed to enter where he was, except on moſt important buſineſs. With great ceremony on each ſide, the king took Cortes by the hand, and leading him to the elevated part of the ſaloon, placed him upon his right, and with much affability, deſired the reſt of us to be ſeated. Cortes then proceeded to ſay, that he came to him for the ſervice of the Lord God whom the chriſtians adored, who was named Jeſus Chriſt, and who ſuffered death for our ſakes. He alſo explained to him, that we adored the croſs as the emblem of the crucifixion for our ſalvation, whereby the human race was redeemed, and that our Lord on the third day roſe, and is in heaven, and that it is he who created heaven, and earth, and ſea, and is adored by us as our Creator; but that thoſe things which he held to be gods, were not ſuch, but devils, which are very bad things, of evil countenances, and worſe deeds; and that he might judge how wicked they were, and how little power they had, in as much as where ever we placed croſſes, they dare not ſhew their faces. He therefore requeſted, that he would attend to what he had told him, which was, that we were all brothers, the children of Adam and Eve, and that as ſuch, our emperor lamenting the loſs of ſouls in ſuch numbers as thoſe which were brought by his idols into everlaſting flames, had ſent us to apply a remedy thereto, by putting an end to the worſhip of theſe falſe gods, to human ſacrifices, and all other crimes; and that he now came to notify his Majeſty's intentions, but our emperor would at a future period ſend holy men, fully capable of explaining them.

Here Cortes ſtopped, and Montezuma ſeemed to ſhew an inclination to reply, but Cortes obſerving that this was enough for the firſt time, propoſed to us to retire, and we were preparing to do ſo, when we were prevented by Montezuma who ſpoke to him as follows.

" Malintzin,

" Malintzin, I have already heard through my ambaſſadors of thoſe " things which you now mention, and to which hitherto we have " made no reply, becauſe we have from the firſt worſhipped the gods " we now do, and conſider them as juſt and good. So no doubt are " yours. In regard to the creation of the world, our beliefs are the " ſame, and we alſo believe you to be the people who were to come to " us from where the ſun riſes. To your great king I am indebted. " There have been already perſons on our coaſts, from your country; " I wiſh to know if you are all the ſame people." To which Cortes having replied that they were all ſubjects of the ſame prince, Montezuma ſaid, that from the firſt time he heard of them, it had been his wiſh to ſee them, which his gods had now granted him; that we ſhould therefore conſider ourſelves as at home, and if ever we were refuſed entrance into any of his cities, it was not his fault, but that of his ſubjects, who were terrified by the reports they heard of us, ſuch as that we carried with us thunder and lightning, that our horſes killed men, and that we were furious Teules, with other follies of that kind; adding, that he ſaw we were men, that we were valiant and wiſe, for which he eſteemed us, and would give us proofs thereof. For this condeſcenſion we all expreſſed our gratitude. He then addreſſed himſelf to Cortes in a laughing manner, for he was very gay in converſation when he was in his ſtate, ſaying, " Malintzin, the Tlaſcalans your " new friends have I know told you that I am like a god, and that " all about me is gold, and ſilver, and precious ſtones; but you now " ſee that I am mere fleſh and blood, and that my houſes are built like " other houſes, of lime and ſtone, and timber. It is true that I am a " great king, and inherit riches from my anceſtors; but for theſe " ridiculous falſehoods, you treat them with the ſame contempt, that " I do the ſtories I was told of your commanding the elements." To which Cortes good-humouredly replied, that the accounts of enemies were not to be relied on, paying him at the ſame time a handſome compliment, upon his power and grandeur. During this converſation Montezuma had made a ſign to one of his principal attendants, to order his officers to bring him certain pieces of gold, which he had laid apart

to give to Cortes, together with ten loads of fine ſtuffs, which he divided between Cortes and his captains, and to every ſoldier he gave two collars of gold, each worth ten crowns, and two loads of mantles. The gold amounted in value to upwards of a thouſand crowns; and he gave it with an affability, and indifference, which made him appear a truly magnificent prince. It being now paſt midday, Cortes took his leave, obſerving that it was his Majeſty's hour of dinner, and that he heaped obligations upon us; to which Montezuma replied, that on the contrary we had obliged him. We then retired, impreſſed with reſpect for the great Montezuma, from his princely manners and liberality.

The great Montezuma was at this time aged about forty years, of good ſtature, well proportioned, and thin: his complexion was much fairer than that of the Indians; he wore his hair ſhort, juſt covering his ears, with very little beard, well arranged, thin, and black. His face was rather long, with a pleaſant countenance, and good eyes; gravity and good humour were blended together when he ſpoke. He was very delicate and clean in his perſon, bathing himſelf every evening. He had a number of miſtreſſes, of the firſt families, and two princeſſes his lawful wives: when he viſited them, it was with ſuch ſecrecy, that none could know it except his own ſervants. He was clear of all ſuſpicion of unnatural vices. The clothes which he wore one day, he did not put on for four days after. He had two hundred of his nobility as a guard, in apartments adjoining his own. Of theſe, certain perſons only, could ſpeak to him, and when they went to wait upon him they took off their rich mantles, and put on others of leſs ornament, but clean. They entered his apartment barefooted, their eyes fixed on the ground, and making three inclinations of the body as they approached him. In addreſſing the king they ſaid, "Lord, my lord, great lord." When they had finiſhed he diſmiſſed them with a few words, and they retired, with their faces towards him, and their eyes fixed upon the ground. I alſo obſerved, that when great men came from a diſtance about buſineſs, they entered his palace barefooted, and in a plain habit; and

In Peru a greater humiliation was required - Calachima one of his first Officers waiting in Atahualpa's presence, took off his burthen and took a burthen on his back

If Groves devoted to Religion must be entered in humble habiliments. - Dushmanta.
See Sacontala

me remains of these Baths are said to be seen in existence.

usual dress was a blue and white mantle like the ancient Kings of Persia
ib[?] Pantii had a blue stripe across her Eyes — and the divinity of the Hindoos
is always represented blue. —

were approached bare footed. read the command to Moses. it is now the practice of the East.
ustom of pulling off a rich habit to approach a Superior prevails in Abyssinia
now &c. Their casts agreed with those of the ancient Iberi. 1st Royalty —
ility, and priesthood to which none but nobility were admissible. in both these
the order of priesthood had lands attached to it. 3dly Soldiers and farmers
tizens, plebeians & slaves or people in villeinage.
bility. Thalonii tenuitii, & pilli. Floridens. Toia.

When Vercingetorix or rie more properly, Chief of the Gaelic community called Celts surrendered to Cesar at [redacted] he made a circuit round him before he came into his presence. This most ancient custom was a refinement of respect & religious ceremony. And thus did the most Shaw Chief in approaching Capt. Cook's ship

Cannibalism was general through the old world in warfare at least. Before the Tartar conquest China was subject to cruel civil wars & the dead bodies were eaten & even sold in the markets as in America. In Somatra Criminals are now eaten. There are many traces of children having been used as food in China & Cochin China & in India It yet exists with the Brinocan Caribbs as with the New Zealanders.—

Took a circuit. The King of Siam on approaching the temple put off his shoes and walked nine round it—

The Ancient Mexicans like the present Nations of the Indian Canoes as were ignorant of the use of oily or sebaceous substances for artificial lights, as they were of the use of wax though it was an article of trade for the Spaniards found it in the Islands which did not produce it although the continent did in abundance. Montezuma's palace was lighted by the flame of dry oak bark or split fir. In this instance the Egyptian Coincidence corrected Hero's knowledge & it affords presumption of their derivation from an inland nation. The use of screens as articles of household ornament was as general as in Japan & China by this account they were painted in the same manner. — Lat. 37½ North. on the West coast of America, "Kallaow tiradoles unos biombos se hacen de La China they found screens such as are brought from China. Ulloa's voyage. anno 15[illegible]

The Hieroglyphics of the Chinese dragons are painted on their boats by the Modern Hottentots and also, Vaucham says the harp, but it does not seem that instrument is either in China or America it is therefore more probable the Syrinx

China.

Women &c — The ancient Kings of India were served by women, &c

and alſo, that they did not enter the gate directly, but took a circuit in going towards it.

His cooks had upwards of thirty different ways of dreſſing meats, and they had earthen veſſels ſo contrived as to keep them always hot. For the table of Montezuma himſelf, above three hundred diſhes were dreſſed, and for his guards, above a thouſand. Before dinner, Montezuma would ſometimes go out and inſpect the preparations, and his officers would point out to him which were the beſt, and explained of what birds and fleſh they were compoſed; and of thoſe he would eat. But this was more for amuſement than any thing elſe. It is ſaid that at times the fleſh of young children was dreſſed for him; but the ordinary meats were, domeſtic fowls, pheaſants, geeſe, partridges, quails, veniſon, Indian hogs, pigeons, hares, and rabbits, with many other animals and birds peculiar to the country. This is certain; that after Cortes had ſpoken to him relative to the dreſſing human fleſh, it was not practiſed in his palace. At his meals, in the cold weather, a number of torches of the bark of a wood which makes no ſmoke and has an aromatic ſmell, were lighted, and that they ſhould not throw too much heat, ſcreens, ornamented with gold, and painted with figures of idols, were placed before them. Montezuma was ſeated on a low throne, or chair, at a table proportioned to the height of his ſeat. The table was covered with white cloths and napkins, and four beautiful women preſented him with water for his hands, in veſſels which they call Xicales, with other veſſels under them like plates, to catch the water; they alſo preſented him with towels. Then, two other women brought ſmall cakes of bread, and when the king began to eat, a large ſcreen of wood, gilt, was placed before him, ſo that people ſhould not during that time ſee him. The women having retired to a little diſtance, four ancient lords ſtood by the throne, to whom Montezuma from time to time ſpoke or addreſſed queſtions, and as a mark of particular favor, gave to each of them a plate of that which he was eating. I was told that theſe old lords, who were his near relations, were alſo counſellors and judges. The plates which Montezuma preſented to them, they

Montezuma a table of honour in Japan

xicales. xicalli. xicaras named by the Spaniards, whence comes the Italian word chichera

as is the case in China at present

 received

The chief of these lords, who was also judges was the Cihuacoatl — answering to our Lord Chancellor

received with high reſpect, eating what was in them without taking their eyes off the ground. He was ſerved on earthenware of Cholula, red and black. While the king was at table, no one of his guards, or in the vicinity of his apartment, dared for their lives make any noiſe. Fruit of all the kinds that the country produced was laid before him; he eat very little, but from time to time, a liquor prepared from cocoa, and of a ſtimulative, or corroborative quality, as we were told, was preſented to him in golden cups. We could not at that time ſee if he drank it or not, but I obſerved a number of jars, above fifty, brought in, filled with foaming chocolate, of which he took ſome, which the women preſented to him. At different intervals during the time of dinner, there entered certain Indians, hump-backed, very deformed, and ugly, who played tricks of buffoonery, and others who they ſaid were jeſters. There was alſo a company of ſingers and dancers, who afforded Montezuma much entertaiment. To theſe he ordered the vaſes of chocolate to be diſtributed. The four female attendants then took away the cloths, and again with much reſpect preſented him with water to waſh his hands, during which time Montezuma converſed with the four old noblemen formerly mentioned, after which they took their leave with many ceremonies. One thing I forgot, and no wonder, to mention in its place, and that is, that during the time Montezuma was at dinner, two very beautiful women were buſily employed making ſmall cakes with eggs and other things mixed therein. Theſe were delicately white, and when made they preſented them to him on plates covered with napkins. Alſo another kind of bread was brought to him in long loaves, and plates of cakes reſembling wafers. After he had dined, they preſented to him three little canes highly ornamented, containing liquid amber, mixed with an herb they call tobacco; and when he had ſufficiently viewed and heard the ſingers, dancers, and buffoons, he took a little of the ſmoke of one of theſe canes, and then laid himſelf down to ſleep; and thus his principal meal concluded. After this was over, all his guards and domeſtics ſat down to dinner, and as near as I could judge, above a thouſand plates of thoſe eatables that I have mentioned were laid before them, with veſſels of foaming chocolate

they say the use of tobacco did not reach Europe un. til 1504. but it is of very ancient use in China. and is probably what is meant by Herodotus in his descrip of the Scythians —

Money was not owed on vessels of gold or silver because no one was permitted to touch
use the King had used. and this the Japanese customs — they were broken after once

violate. they put to it Hil zochitt or vanigliæ

2. "holy herb" — a supposed panacea —. Tabaco. Hayton. 2 Species. small or common
Cuban. large. grows to a tree, Quauhyetl. Cuban. differ in the flowers.
nico. this a word of the Antille Language and not Cuban. tambaco is in the Egyptian
Iran. Herodotus seems to allude to the use of this herb by the ancient Scythians where he says
vivicate themselves by the fumes of leaves thrown upon a hot brass vessel.
of tobacco is of time immemorial in India. Tabac. Malmsey. the same

Tyanchitty, or "the nose plant" was the true Caloan idioom —

The ancient Canadians at the first discovery of the Country were well acquainted by Heart-Say at least with the Mediterranean Empire. They took the Chain of our Captains Whistle which was of Silver and the dagger-Sy of one of our fellow Mariners being of yellow Copper gilt and shewed us that such stuff came from the said river (very remote) and that the be "agiocenda" That is as much as to say wil peoples who go all armed even to their finger's ends. Also they shewed us the manner and making of their Armour. They are made of cordes and wyre finely & cunningly wrought together. This agrees only with the Mexican armour. They gave us also to understand that these agiocenda continually war against each other.

Anapaira ponoto. is most faire. red, green, yellow, black, blue, grey. — The aouenda, or Macbas, is very faire, and of their feathers the Indeans make their diadems & pictures —

Bird in N. A. called the bird of the Great Spirit (God) a Species of the bird paradise. it has a beautiful shape & is as large as a swallow, its neck is light green & 4 or 5 feathers, 3 times the length of the body, variegated with gold & purple colored from its tail.

The Colibri, Trochilus Mellifugus, humming bird. the beauty of its shape is beyond discription the Species has a crest upon its head of the most splendid colours, its breast red & belly white, the back wings & tail of the richest light green which intermixed with tints of gold covers the rest of the body. It flies like a bee among the flowers & sucks their honey which is its only food.

Like a Skin- our word Kiss.

chocolate, and fruit in an immenſe quantity. For his women and various inferior ſervants, his eſtabliſhment was of a prodigious expence; and we were aſtoniſhed, amidſt ſuch a profuſion, at the vaſt regularity that prevailed. His major domo was at this time a prince named Tapiea; he kept the accounts of Montezuma's rents, in books which occupied an entire houſe. Montezuma had two buildings filled with every kind of arms, richly ornamented with gold and jewels, ſuch as ſhields large and ſmall, clubs like two-handed ſwords, and lances much larger than ours, with blades ſix feet in length, ſo ſtrong that if they fix in a ſhield they do not break, and ſharp enough to uſe as razors. There was alſo an immenſe quantity of bows and arrows, and darts, together with ſlings, and ſhields which roll up into a ſmall compaſs, and in action are let fall and thereby cover the whole body. He had alſo much defenſive armour of quilted cotton ornamented with feathers in different devices, and caſques for the head, made of wood and bone, with plumes of feathers, and many other articles too tedious to mention.

In this palace was a moſt magnificent aviary, which contained every deſcription of birds that continent afforded, namely, royal eagles, and a ſmaller ſpecies, with many other birds, down to the ſmalleſt parroquets, of beautiful colours. It was here that the ornaments of green feathers were fabricated. The feathers were taken from birds which are of the ſize of our pyes in Spain, and which they call here Quetzales, and other birds, whoſe plumage is of five different colours, green, red, white, yellow, and blue. The name of this ſpecies of bird I do not know. Here was alſo an immenſity of parrots, and certain geeſe of fine plumage, and a ſpecies which reſembled geeſe. All theſe bred here, and were ſtripped of their feathers every year at the proper ſeaſon. Here was a large pond of clear running water, where were a number of great birds, entirely red, with very long legs; there are ſome like them in the Iſland of Cuba, which they call Ipiris. There was alſo a ſpecies which lives entirely in the water.

We

We likewiſe ſaw another great building, which was a temple, and which contained thoſe which were called the valiant or fighting gods, and here were many kinds of furious beaſts, tygers, and lions of two ſpecies, one of which reſembles a wolf, called here Adive. Alſo foxes, and other ſmaller animals, but all carnivorous. Moſt of theſe were bred in the place, being fed with game, fowls, dogs, and as I have heard the bodies of Indians who were ſacrificed, the manner of which as I have been informed is this. They open the body of the victim while living, with large knives of ſtone; they take out his heart, and blood, which they offer to their gods, and then they cut off the limbs, and the head, upon which they feaſt, giving the body to be devoured by the wild beaſts, and the ſkulls they hang up in their temples. In this accurſed place were many vipers, and poiſonous ſerpents which have in their tails ſomewhat that ſounds like caſtanets; theſe are the moſt dangerous of all, and were kept in veſſels filled with feathers, where they reared their young, and were fed with the fleſh of human beings, and dogs; and I have been aſſured, that after our expulſion from Mexico, all theſe animals lived for many days upon the bodies of our comrades who were killed on that occaſion. Theſe beaſts and horrid reptiles were retained to keep company with their infernal gods, and when theſe animals yelled and hiſſed, the palace ſeemed like hell itſelf.

The place where the artiſts principally reſided was named Eſcapuzalco, and was at the diſtance of about a league from the city. Here were the ſhops and manufactories of all their gold and ſilver ſmiths, whoſe works in theſe metals, and in jewellery, when they were brought to Spain, ſurpriſed our ableſt artiſts. Their painters we may alſo judge of by what we now ſee, for there are three Indians in Mexico, who are named, Marcos de Aquino, Juan de la Cruz, and Creſpillo, who, if they had lived with Apelles in ancient times, or were compared with Michael Angelo or Berruguete in modern times, would not be held inferior to them. Their fine manufactures of cotton and feathers, were principally brought from the province of Coſtitlan. The women of the

the Ant-hill. co. or koo. meaning enclosure. Thus "kiao" Chinese, is the same
and "ki," Keltic, the symbols ~~[illegible]~~ whereof is ~~[illegible]~~ a nut.
only remain of ancient American handicraft worth mentioning to the gold cup in the
coin of Lord Archer mentioned by Robertson but all relative to it is conjecture

The wives and women were kept in confinement, & seclusion as in Asia —

Matachini – dances in masks or visors. Their fondness for the interest in the dance characteristics. The modern Kookians pass their lives in this way. The S. Sea Isla have the same predilection. They excel in the fabrication of these visors and fond of the pantomimic dance. That of China is usually baiting some wild b such were the amusements of Montezumas court. The dance entered into every cere or amusement or festival. Their dances were sacred or solemn historical or pantomimic Their sacred dance was derived from the ancient Solar worship of Asia where Suns Chi representing the planets danced round the personification of the Sun. Sacred dance now in use in Bhootan. Those performed by women are similar to the Otaheitean In Siberia the women dance in a ring always following the Sun's course. The Ind made their prisoners dance with a fan before their War-God. In their solemn dan their gravest and most exalted characters partook. The Grand circular dance in honour of the Sun was very majestic. Gage describes their dances. "They practice the great dance (Teontico) at their religious festivals making preparations for months before during which the silence of the night is enquicted w their singing, with their Lollowing, with their beating on the shells of fishes, w their wrists and with their pipling. This dance is then performed. T Indians about forty in number are clothed in white their doubles their linen drawers their sclates or towels which on one side hang almost to the ground. On their backs they hang long tufts of feathers of all colours whic a glue are fastened into a little frame gilded this frame they tie wit ribbands about their shoulders that it fall not, nor slacken with the mo of their bodies On their heads they wear another less tuft of feathers some gilded or painted head piece or helmet. In their hands they a fan of feathers and on their feet most use feathers bound to like short wings of birds and thus from top to toe they are al covered with various coloured feathers. Their Viva or Lute dame is only what is made with a hollow stock of a tree rounded and well pared within and without very smooth & shining some times thicker than our viols with two or three long digs on the upp and some holes at the end which they call Tefonabaz (tehonaby

the family of the great Montezuma alſo, of all ranks, were extremely ingenious in theſe works, and conſtantly employed; as was a certain deſcription of females who lived together in the manner of nuns.

One part of the city was entirely occupied by Montezuma's dancers, of different kinds, ſome of whom bore a ſtick on their feet, others flew in the air, and ſome danced like thoſe in Italy called by us Matachines. He had alſo a number of carpenters and handicraft men conſtantly in his employ. His gardens, which were of great extent, were irrigated by canals of running water, and ſhaded with every variety of trees. In them were baths of cut ſtone, pavilions for feaſting or retirement, and theatres for ſhows, and for the dancers and ſingers; all which were kept in the moſt exact order, by a number of labourers conſtantly employed.

When we had been four days in Mexico, Cortes wiſhed to take a view of the city, and in conſequence ſent to requeſt the permiſſion of his Majeſty. Accordingly, Aguilar, Donna Marina, and a little page of our general's called Orteguilla, who already underſtood ſomething of the language, went to the palace for that purpoſe. Montezuma was pleaſed immediately to accede, but being apprehenſive that we might offer ſome inſult to his temple, he determined to go thither in perſon, which he accordingly did, in the ſame form, and with the ſame retinue, as when he firſt came out to meet us, but that he was on this occaſion preceded by two lords bearing ſceptres in their hands, which they carried on high, as a ſignal of the king's approach. Montezuma, in his litter, with a ſmall rod in his hand, one half of which was gold, and the other half wood, and which he bore elevated like a rod of juſtice, for ſuch it was, approached the temple, and there quitted his litter and mounted the ſteps, attended by a number of prieſts, and offering incenſe, with many ceremonies, to his war gods. Cortes at the head of his cavalry, and the principal part of our ſoldiers under arms, marched to the grand ſquare, attended by many noblemen of the court. When we arrived there, we were aſtoniſhed at the crowds of people, and the regularity

feathers. The dress of the N. A. tribes no way differed — they wore the tied by the women over one shoulder. this mantle was made ey's = feathers woven in with the thread of wild hemp —

regularity which prevailed, as well as at the vaſt quantities of merchandiſe, which thoſe who attended us were aſſiduous in pointing out. Each kind had its particular place, which was diſtinguiſhed by a ſign. The articles conſiſted of gold, ſilver, jewels, feathers, mantles, chocolate, ſkins dreſſed and undreſſed, ſandals, and other manufactures of the roots and fibres of nequen, and great numbers of male and female ſlaves, ſome of whom were faſtened by the neck, in collars, to long poles. The meat market was ſtocked with fowls, game, and dogs. Vegetables, fruits, articles of food ready dreſſed, ſalt, bread, honey, and ſweet paſtry made in various ways, were alſo ſold here. Other places in the ſquare were appointed to the ſale of earthenware, wooden houſehold furniture ſuch as tables and benches, firewood, paper, ſweet canes filled with tobacco mixed with liquid amber, copper axes and working tools, and wooden veſſels highly painted. Numbers of women ſold fiſh, and little loaves made of a certain mud which they find in the lake, and which reſembles cheeſe. The makers of ſtone blades were buſily employed ſhaping them out of the rough material, and the merchants who dealt in gold, had the metal in grains as it came from the mines, in tranſparent tubes, ſo that they could be reckoned, and the gold was valued at ſo many mantles, or ſo many xiquipils of cocoa, according to the ſize of the quills. The entire ſquare was incloſed in piazzas, under which great quantities of grain were ſtored, and where were alſo ſhops for various kinds of goods. I muſt apologize for adding, that boat loads of human ordure were on the borders of the adjoining canals, for the purpoſe of tanning leather, which they ſaid could not be done without it. Some may laugh at this, but I aſſert the fact is as I have ſtated it, and moreover, upon all the public roads, places for paſſengers to reſort to, were built of canes, and thatched with ſtraw or graſs, in order to collect this material.

Tlatzontecojan. i.e. of judgment.

The courts of juſtice, where three judges ſat, occupied a part of the ſquare, their under officers being in the market, inſpecting the merchandiſe.

From

the tributary princes or Lords had residences in Mexico which were built by labor of
servitude. as the castles were anciently in England. Property was in four great
s. the Crown, the Church, the Nobility and communities which were marked by
tive colours in their Crests which the Spanish courts admitted as proofs. and the
contribution of the labourer of the soil was paid chiefly in produce or in labor. Slavery
isted either by engagement, conquest or the adjudication of the Law but it was
reditary. It was confined to personal service. A slave might have slaves and
ster had no power over them. If a master of a female slave lost her in child-
by a freeman he could take the latter in her place. They usually ended their
on the altar. Thus in the South Sea islands the human victim is usually
struggling unfriended wretch. Private property in these countries descended
ly or to the next in blood.

o speaks of cakes made of the spawn of aquatic flies. But there is in the salt lake
Lucatia a white earth found which is eaten as bread, and the same
Chaina in Catalonia where the earth is strongly impregnated & is many
principally composed of saline matter as was the case about the flies—
bogmen eat a substance like clay.

sh flies, Ajajatt, pounded made into rolls in maize leaves & boiled in nitre & water
their eggs they made caviare. — Mud, said by Pr. Brinton's translator to
the lakes called Temiltatt. were made of stones.

organization. The Chinancatt decided finally & without appeal.
Cacatecatt's court consisted of three judges and was civil and criminal
which was under the direction of a Teuctli who was responsible & had under
s messengers &c.

nonatztli. or this stock which is placed in the middle of the Indians the
of the dance beats with two sticks and with this instrument which sounds
a dull and heavy sound but somewhat loud he gives the dancers
ered tunes and changes and signs of the motions of their bodies
trait or bowing and gives them warning what and when they are
Thus they dance in compass and circle round that instrument

Nieremberg gives an account of the great temple of Mexico which from Hernando who was physician to Philip the second.—

A — instrument one following another sometimes shall sometimes turning about sometimes turning half way sometimes bending their bodies with the feathers / fans / in their hands almost touching the ground. All this dancing is but a kind of walking round which they will continue two or three hours together. This was the dance they used before they knew christianity except that then they sung the praises of their heathen Gods. They have another dance much used which is a kind of hunting out some wild beast which in the time of heathenism was to be sacrificed to their Gods. This dance has much variety of tunes with a small tepanezzli and many shells of tortoise and pots covered with leather on which they strike and with the sound of pipes. In this dance they use much hollowing and noise and sing one to another and speaking by way of stage play some relating one thing some another concerning the beast they hunt after. These dancers are clothed like beasts with painted skins of lions, tigers, wolves, etc on their heads such head pieces as may represent the heads of such beasts. Others wear painted heads of eagles, or fowls of rapine and others in their

Mexico had 60,000 houses great and small. [x] 90,000 large sized. Mexico was little less and eighty towns of four to 10,000 houses surrounded the lake when the Spaniards entered the country a century from which period the population was reduced nine tenths. — 60,000 houses in Mexico which pay tribute to the King. Vide accounts of English prisoners not long subsequent to the conquest. — It is said this tax was twelve reals of silver and a fanega or bushel and a half of corn, per head for each individual above fifteen years of age.

Mexico hath more than 50,000 households; the building of the Indians is somewhat beautiful outwardly with very small windows, and within full of small chambers. Henry Hawks. The walls of the Indians are but plain but the stones are laid so close that you shall not well perceive the joyn

From the ſquare we proceeded to the great temple, but before we entered it we made a circuit through a number of large courts, the ſmalleſt of which appeared to me to contain more ground than the great ſquare in Salamanca, with double incloſures built of lime and ſtone, and the courts paved with large white cut ſtone, very clean; or where not paved, they were plaiſtered and poliſhed. When we approached the gate of the great temple, to which the aſcent was by a hundred and fourteen ſteps, and before we had mounted one of them, Montezuma ſent down to us ſix prieſts, and two of his noblemen, to carry Cortes up, as they had done their ſovereign, which he politely declined. When we had aſcended to the ſummit of the temple, we obſerved on the platform as we paſſed, the large ſtones whereon were placed the victims who were to be ſacrificed. Here was a great figure which reſembled a dragon, and much blood freſh ſpilt. Montezuma came out from an adoratory in which his accurſed idols were placed, attended by two prieſts, and addreſſing himſelf to Cortes, expreſſed his apprehenſion that he was fatigued; to which Cortes replied, that fatigue was unknown to us.

Montezuma then took him by the hand, and pointed out to him the different parts of the city, and its vicinity, all of which were commanded from that place. Here we had a clear proſpect of the three cauſeways by which Mexico communicated with the land, and of the aqueduct of Chapultepeque, which ſupplied the city with the fineſt water. We were ſtruck with the numbers of canoes, paſſing to and from the main land, loaded with proviſions and merchandiſe, and we could now perceive, that in this great city, and all the others of that neighbourhood which were built in the water, the houſes ſtood ſeparate from each other, communicating only by ſmall drawbridges, and by boats, and that they were built with terraced tops. We obſerved alſo the temples and adoratories of the adjacent cities, built in the form of towers and fortreſſes, and others on the cauſeway, all whitewaſhed, and wonderfully brilliant. The noiſe and buſtle of the market-place below us could be heard almoſt a league off, and thoſe who had been

at Rome and at Conſtantinople ſaid, that for convenience, regularity, and population, they had never ſeen the like. Cortes now propoſed to Fra. Bartholome to apply to Montezuma for permiſſion to conſtruct our church here, to which the father for the preſent objected, thinking it ill-timed. Cortes then addreſſing himſelf to Montezuma, requeſted that he would do him the favour to ſhew us his gods. Montezuma having firſt conſulted his prieſts, led us into a tower where was a kind of ſaloon. Here were two altars highly adorned, with richly wrought timbers on the roof, and over the altars, gigantic figures reſembling very fat men. The one on the right was Huitzilopochtli their war god, with a great face and terrible eyes; this figure was entirely covered with gold and jewels, and his body bound with golden ſerpents; in his right hand he held a bow, and in his left a bundle of arrows. The little idol which ſtood by him repreſented his page, and bore a lance and target richly ornamented with gold and jewels. The great idol had round his neck the figures of human heads and hearts, made of pure gold and ſilver, ornamented with precious ſtones of a blue colour. Before the idol was a pan of incenſe, with three hearts of human victims which were then burning, mixed with copal. The whole of that apartment, both walls and floor, was ſtained with human blood in ſuch quantity as to give a very offenſive ſmell. On the left was the other great figure, with a countenance like a bear, and great ſhining eyes, of the poliſhed ſubſtance whereof their mirrors are made. The body of this idol was alſo covered with jewels. Theſe two deities, it was ſaid, were brothers; the name of this laſt was Tezcatepuca, and he was the god of the infernal regions. He preſided, according to their notions, over the ſouls of men. His body was covered with figures repreſenting little devils with tails of ſerpents, and the walls and pavement of this temple were ſo beſmeared with blood that they ſtunk worſe than all the ſlaughter-houſes of Caſtille. An offering lay before him of five human hearts. In the ſummit of the temple, and in a receſs the timber of which was moſt highly ornamented, we ſaw a figure half human and the other half reſembling an alligator, inlaid with jewels, and partly covered with a mantle. This idol was ſaid to contain the

germ

Note. B. oppoſite Page 148.

Tezcatlipoca Knight Mirror. a mirror is placed in the Sinto temples of Japan.

in one stone and another they are so finely cut and by means that the stones are so
nely done, and finely joyned together, there is some beautie in their walls. They
vellous small and light as pomice stones, they make their doors very little so that
go in but one man at a time. Their windows and rooms within their houses are
and one room they have reserved for their friends when they come to talk one with
, and that is alwaies kept fayre matted and marvellous clean, and hanged
images and chains standing there to sit on. They eat their meat upon the
and sleep upon the ground upon a mat. Edm. Job Hortop was prisoner
there some time. 1568. Each house had like the beavers two doors one to the Land the
to the water. in many respects this animal seems to have given them hints in their dealings
hands have painted staves, bills, swords and arrows wherewith they three
to kill that beast they hunt after. Thus instead of hunting after a beast
after a man as beasts in a wilderness should hunt after a man to kill him
man that is thus hunted after should be very nimble and agile as one
flying for his life and sticking here and there of the beasts for his de
, whom at last they catch and make a prey of. As the Tocantins consists
of walking and turning and lusciously bending their bodies so this dance
wholly consist in action running in a circle round sometimes out of the circle
ing & sticking with those tools they have in their hands. This is a very rude
and full of screeching and hideous noise wherein I never delighted.
the dance which doth most draw to it the peoples wondering is a tragedy
ey way of dance as the beheading of St John the Baptist. In this dance
a king Herod with his Queen. another is a long loose coat represents John
tist who while the rest dance walks among them with a book in his hand,
were saying his prayers. All the rest of the dancers are apparelled as
s and Soldiers with swords, dagges or halberts in their hands. They
t the sound of a small drum and fifes, sometimes round, sometimes
the forwards and use many speeches to the King and among themselves
ing the apprehending and executing the Saint. The King and Queen
etimes down to hear their pleading against the Saint and his
pleading for himself and sometimes they dance with the rest

and the end of their dance is to crucify St Peter with his head downwards
a cross or be head St John the baptist having in readiness a painted head
on a dish which they present to the King and Queen for joy whereof they
dance merrily and so conclude. The Indians that dance this dance most
them are superstitious for what they do judging as if it were real which
only done by way of dance, representing, when I lived among them he who
was to act St Peter or St John used to come first to confession saying it
necessary to be holy and pure like the saint he represented and so must
prepare himself to die. So likewise he that acts Herod and some of
the Soldiers that in the dance were to speak and curse the Saint would
afterwards come to confess of that sin and desire absolution as from
blood guiltiness "

Captain Cortlook saw these dramatic exhibitions on the North West coast of
America. Their head-pieces were carved so naturally he thought them
Spanish workmanship. They use them as decoys in hunting. They
in their dances the Calvas rattle, which is frequently in the form of a
These customs extend to the Fox Islands whose natives use ornamental
helmets blue stone in the under lip, and tataw.

The dress above described is that of the ancient Mexicans. which nearly also
resembles the ordinary one of India. The mantle was worn over the right sh
and under the left arm, the two ends of the waistcloth hanging down bef
and behind. Its way differed only in materials from that of the
modern Kootkan Chief. The dress of the latter is of vegetable fibres. o
not woven but knotted, of a very pliable & warm fabrication. they wear caps h
truncated cones, & the hair tied at the top of the head with tassels as the
new nations are represented. The Mexicans wove as the Scottish
now do with the hand and shuttle, passing each thread singly but
girl in Pinchard's painting seems to be using a stick with probably a
and a notch. not unlike the process of what is called tambour work.
A Kootkan dressed with ear rings nose rings & bracelets differs no
from an ancient Calvas. It is probable the feathered mantles of

germ, and origin of all created things, and was the god of harveſt, and fruits. The walls and altars were beſtained like the reſt, and ſo offenſive, that we thought we never could get out ſoon enough.

In this place they had a drum of moſt enormous ſize, the head of which was made of the ſkins of large ſerpents: this inſtrument when ſtruck reſounded with a noiſe that could be heard to the diſtance of two leagues, and ſo doleful that it deſerved to be named the muſic of the infernal regions; and with their horrible ſounding horns and trumpets, their great knives for ſacrifice, their human victims, and their blood beſprinkled altars, I devoted them, and all their wickedneſs to God's vengeance, and thought that the time would never arrive, that I ſhould eſcape from this ſcene of human butchery, horrible ſmells, and more deteſtable ſights.

Cortes, half in jeſt, addreſſing himſelf to Montezuma, expreſſed his wonder how ſo wiſe a prince could worſhip ſuch abſurd and wicked powers; and propoſed to him to place on the ſummit of that tower a croſs, and in theſe adoratories the image of the holy Virgin, and he aſſured him that he ſhould then be ſoon convinced of the vanity and deception of his idols. Montezuma ſhewed marks of diſpleaſure at theſe expreſſions, ſaying, that he would not have admitted us into the temple, had he thought that we would have inſulted their gods, who were kind to them, who gave them health and ſeaſonable rains, good harveſts, fine weather, victories and whatever elſe they deſired, and whom they were in duty, and in gratitude, bound to worſhip. Cortes dropped the diſcourſe, obſerving that it was time for us to go; and Montezuma aſſenting, ſaid, it was neceſſary for him to remain, to expiate by ſacrifice the ſin which he had committed, in admitting us there. Cortes then took leave, and thus we concluded our viſit to the great temple of Mexico, deſcending the ſteps with much pain to our invalids.

I will now proceed to relate other matters, in which, if I am not ſo correct as I ought to be, let it be remembered that my ſituation was

that of a ſoldier, who was obliged to be more attentive to the orders of his officer, than to the objects of curioſity around him. The ground whereon this temple ſtood, was as much as ſix of the largeſt buildings of this country occupy. From the baſe it diminiſhed to the ſummit, whereon was a tower, in which the idols were placed, and from the middle of the aſcent, to the top, were five concavities, like barbicans, but without parapets. However there are many paintings of temples in the poſſeſſion of the conquerors, one whereof I have, and thoſe who have ſeen them will eaſily form an idea of the outſide of this temple. I have heard that at the time they laid the foundations of it, the natives of all that country made offerings of their gold, ſilver, and jewels, of the ſeeds of the earth, and of priſoners, all which were buried in the foundations of the building. The inquiſitive reader will naturally aſk, how I came to know any thing of this, which happened upwards of a thouſand years ago. I will inform him. When we got poſſeſſion of this great city, and that it was to be built upon a new plan, it was determined to place the church of St. Jago on the ground where this temple ſtood; and in ſinking the foundations, we found great quantities of gold, ſilver, and other valuables, and a Mexican who obtained part of the ſame ground, diſcovered more treaſure, about which there was a law-ſuit in ſupport of his Majeſty's right, the reſult of which I am ignorant of. The account was alſo confirmed by Guatimotzin who was then alive, and who ſaid that the tranſaction was recorded in their ancient hiſtorical paintings. The church which now ſtands here is called St. Jago el Taltelulco. This temple I have before obſerved, was ſurrounded by courts as large as the ſquare of Salamanca, inſide of a double incloſure of lime and ſtone. At a little diſtance from it ſtood a tower, a true hell or habitation for demons, with a mouth reſembling that of an enormous monſter, wide open, and ready as it were to devour thoſe who entered. At the door ſtood frightful idols; by it was a place for ſacrifice, and within, boilers, and pots full of water, to dreſs the fleſh of the victims, which was eaten by the prieſts. The idols were like ſerpents and devils, and before them were tables and knives for ſacrifice, the place being covered with the blood which was ſpilt

differed no way from those of the Sandwich Islanders. even the patterns such as are
them in the ancient paintings agree. The masks of Oonalashka have not
American feature but all their Customs are Asiatic.

Northern chief in approaching Capt Cooks ship first took a pipe. He then performed a
warlike dance. This last ceremony Koenpfer and the Dutch ambassadors were obliged
through at the Court of Japan. (Danes see page 502

the note "on their feet most use feathers &c" this was some religious mystery.
great Ancestor Fog hog, the most mighty, Mepitti or Mars, he was also named
Idopoctli, which is compounded of two words. left leg and humming bird
and abounds in the hott west of America. This idol was on the left leg worked
ornaments of the plumage of the humming bird —

A. Both small pox & Lues and the method of healing them are ancient in India
Islanders pointed out the Guaiacum to the Europeans. "The Spaniards appeared
the time to have the jaundice, and connecting with the native women a disease
broke out unknown (in such virulence certainly) to either Spaniards
Indians. Tubercles appeared on their bodies with great pain (bubas is
old Spanish word) it was contagious and without remedy they dying
ng, till a woman shewed them the Guaiacum. Many of those infected
ined to Europe hoping to recover by change of air. It was not known
North American tribes. Magellan found it very strong in the S. Indian antipodes

Tezcatlipoca. (page 146.) this is the proper word. This idol had
ings in his ears and silver rings in his lips. His decorations were inlaid
emeralds and embroidered with blue and green feathers of the tail of some sort
golden fillet and from his ear depended a golden flag with smoke depicted
which last signified the ascent of sacrificial petitions. The same
was represented in ancient Egypt by a chain depending from the
[illegible] this the style
[illegible]. His body was painted black and the cloth on

Architecture this hereafter

the door of Willenawish, a Northern chief's house was made in the
of a month.

Cashmir are above seven hundred temples dedicated to Serpents
Raja. King of Serpents is an epithet of the Deity in India

which he said was embroidered with figures of skulls and bones. "Inter gemmas aureas magna vis clenodiorum conspicitur" "a collo clenodium totum pectus tegens suspensum erat." He had bracelets on his arms - a star in his ma

The Egyptian Jupiter was a [redacted] navel [redacted] containing and emeralds. The navel is probably taken for a shrine, and [redacted] contained in a dish. a mirror like a round shield in his left hand adorned with emeralds and on which were fixed four rolled feathers, or more properly perhaps arrows (as some say) the very other accounts. This mystic shield seems to have had four darts and four plumes or five plumes or tufts of cotton on it, and this seems the most correct. it is to be presumed the wrong thing had its meaning. In his right hand he held one, and according others four darts to punish the wicked. Tezcatlipoca was the personification of the Sun. and the great Divinity of the Solaites. to this worship belongs that of Volcanos in the Kangara Country of Asia where temples are erected to them as were in America to the Volcano of Popocatepec. The serpent was adopted as the Symbol of the sun, from its annual renovation. in Kashmir are 70 temples to Serpents. Coattitlan, the Aztec word means the temples of the serpents. they was also worshipped living. The serpent was the emblem of the Sun in his personification as Esculapius or the God of health, and the Eleusinian mysteries it conveyed the same idea.

In America the Solar worship was observed in the erection of temples on high places to the divinities of nature, like those of the old world. (see the note on architecture) in his personification, in the preservation of the perpetual fire, by dances, music, lacerations and human sacrifices. The name given to the personification of the Sun was Tezcatlipoca - which signifies "bright mirror" The great temple of the Solar worship in Mexico was at Teotihuacan (i.e. the place of the great God. The images were of gigantic size and of a black shining basaltic stone. [redacted] it is surprising to have been wrought without tools of iron. The image of the Sun had a polished golden mirror in the breast. There was also the image of the moon. In Persia the Image of the Sun is also thus represented a man [redacted] ebin with a mirror in the hand and on the head. indicative that all that passes on earth is represented above. next to the Solar or

ſpilt on thoſe occaſions. The furniture was like that of a butcher's ſtall, and I never gave this accurſed building any name except that of hell. Having paſſed this, we ſaw great piles of wood, and a reſervoir of water, ſupplied by a pipe from the great aqueduct; and croſſing a court, we came to another temple, wherein were the tombs of the Mexican nobility; it was begrimed with ſoot and blood. Next to this was another, full of ſkeletons, and piles of bones, each kept apart, but regularly arranged. In each temple were idols, and each had alſo its particular prieſts, who wore long veſtments of black, ſomewhat between the dreſs of the dominicans and our canons; their long hair was clotted together, and their ears lacerated in honor of their gods.

At a certain diſtance from the buildings of which I have laſt ſpoken were others, the idols of which were, as they ſaid, the advocates, or ſuperintendent deities of human marriages, and all round the great court were many houſes, which were not very lofty, and wherein reſided the prieſts, and others who had charge of the idols. Here was alſo a great reſervoir of water, ſupplied with pipes, excluſively for the ſervice of the two idols Huitzilopochtli and Tezcatepuca, and hard by, a large building, where were a number of the young Mexican women, who reſided there as in a nunnery, until they were married. They worſhipped two female deities, who preſided over marriages, and to them they offered ſacrifices, in order to obtain good huſbands. I have been thus diffuſe in my deſcription of this great temple, becauſe it was the moſt conſiderable in that city, amongſt the many ſumptuous buildings of that kind which it contained. The temple of Cholula however was higher than this, having a hundred and twenty ſteps; it was alſo held in great veneration, and was built on a plan different from that of Mexico. The temple at Tezcuco was very large, having a hundred and ſeventeen ſteps. All theſe were of different ſtructure, but agreed in having a number of outer courts, and a double incloſure. One ridiculous circumſtance is, that each province had its own peculiar gods, who were ſuppoſed to have no concern with any other; ſo that the idols were innumerable in this country. Having fatigued ourſelves with

with the examination of these scenes, so new to us, we retired to our quarters.

Cortes perceiving how adverse the king was to the conversion of his temple into a christian church, applied to one of the principal officers of his palace, for materials to construct a chapel and altar, within our quarters. His desire being made known to Montezuma, it was instantly complied with, and timber and workmen being provided, in three days we had it completed. Here we said mass every day; we had however to lament the total want of wine for the holy sacrament, it having been all used in the illness of Cortes, the reverend father, and others, during the wars in Tlascala. However we were constant in our devotions, as well on account of our duty, as in order to impress a proper idea of our holy religion, on the minds of Montezuma and the natives. Being employed in looking out for a proper place to fix the holy cross, one of our carpenters observed an appearance on the wall, as if a door had been there, and lately closed up. When this was made known to Cortes, it was privately opened, and on entering the apartment, they found riches without end! The secret soon transpired, and we went, all of us, to view them. I was then a young man, and I thought that if all the treasures of the earth had been brought into one place, they could not have amounted to so much. It was agreed to close up the door again, and we determined to conceal the knowledge of it until the proper time should offer.

A council was now called, composed of Cortes as president, with four captains, and twelve soldiers whereof I was one, and having duly considered how evidently the Lord guided us, and what wise and valiant captains and brave soldiers we had, as also the fickle disposition of the Indians, who though now kind to us, might change, there was no saying how soon, and that notwithstanding the hospitality with which Montezuma treated us, he might at any moment fall into an opposite line of conduct, we resolved to follow the opinion of Cortes, by adopting the most effectual measure, which was, to seize, and make that monarch

oral worship of the Jews personified by Tezcatlipoca. Was the martial, national or politi
ship of the national divinity Huitzilopochtli, or Mexitli. The first word being com
d of Huitzilton, humming bird, and opochtli, left; from whence ornaments of mystic mean
the Statue. Mexitli is derived from the name of the nation. This statue is described as
in wood, seated on a chair, in a litter, the handles of which were carved in
m of, and with heads of serpents; the chair was intended to indicate his raised
n heaven, "perpetuum idolo undique quaque lives cobras" livid pale stripes or spots
ed across the nose from ear to ear. Possibly this was to express his mortality
d was covered with a rich helmet like the head of a bird (an Eagle) with a
ow beak; (see the account of Cortes's first interview with Montezuma's Embassadors
the helmet) he bore in his left hand a shining target wherein were five feathers
cross-wise, and from the top of which rose a palm branch made of
by his side were four darts, which the Mexicans said were to punish their
with; and sent from heaven; in his right hand was a kind of trussel in
ape of a Serpent placed, richly carved and ornamented with blue stones.
accounts say a dwarfish page or arm-bearer was also at his side.
To these deities the hearts of human victims were presented in a golden spoon and
mouths anointed with the blood. { The old priest in the deification of Captain
Cook crammed food into his mouth.
deities as above described depicted under Chinese idols.

The minor divinities benevolent, & tutelary were propitiated by red
s; the malignant only by human sacrifice.
and green were sacred colours so red was propitiatory, perhaps from
ver it conveyed some mystical meaning as a substitution instead of
od of victim; however it is thus considered as well in the Hindoo as
erican worships or ritual. Aspersions of red powder are now used
Brahmins to honour strangers, and in those festivals of the Ancient Gods
s that were of a gay nature the young people are described as throw
powder upon each other; This practice prevails in India, and did
the ancient Persians at the vernal equinox. In India in the
month Vaisakha when sacrifices to the benign divinities are
bird of paradise called in India, God's bird

made, the people besprinkle each other in the streets with red powder, and the
banner of Rama-deo, the bonejin God or material deified of India is red.
From this origin is the predilection of the South Sea Islanders for red feathers
and thus the Purana Kalla says "let a figure be made of barley meal
"and coloured with red, with garlands of red flowers, and clad in red
"with red girdle and bound with red cords."

As in a nunnery p. 149 Note C. From Scythia they derived a
numerous aristocratical priesthood and monastic institutions male
and female. Where knowledge and science is intended to be confined
as a particular body a celibated institution is necessarily adopted by p
tical motives or the members of the community are classed as in India
Dalhai Lama's priests are celibated. In India and Egypt the sacred cast w
hereditary. The Culvans were of Tibetian derivation.

The temples of modern Burmah are as numerous as those of ancient Mexic
Their priesthood is equally numerous, they are monastic and they have n
gious houses for both sexes. These Samaneans are there called Tal
= poins from the ancient Balic, Thayn = pan.

+ Note. Zerdusht or Zoroaster instituted hereditary classes but in
western Scythia they had existed beyond memorial.

A numerous hierarchy subsisted in ancient Phrygia. The Indian Scy
Scythia rather resembled cities. The Tibetian priests in Marco Polo
time made themselves horrid by their filth and squalor. Buddha
Brama have endeavored to reform this by introducing the tonsure. Which
however only succeeded partially.

In their Retreat, they brought with them the Levite customs of ancient Indi
unmollified by the reformation of Vishnoo. As in the ancient world
the instruments of sacrifice was necessarily of flint. From the time
victim was devoted he became a portion of the divine essence, this is
ordinance of the Purana Kallas, and certain victims among the ancien
Celtans were worshipped and feasted for a year before sacrifice
And thus the ancient Iberi, or western Caucasians whose customs

monarch our priſoner; as we could not know at what moment we might be perhaps poiſoned in our food, and as no gift of his, nor all his father's treaſure, could make compenſation to us for the alarms, and diſtreſſing thoughts, which filled the minds of thoſe of any reflection. For theſe reaſons it was therefore agreed to adopt the meaſure without delay. The captains who were preſent propoſed, that Montezuma ſhould be induced by a plauſible pretext to come into our quarters, and when there, to ſeize him, and if he reſiſted, to make his perſon anſwer it: and they urged, that of the two great dangers, this was much the leaſt. It was then obſerved by ſome of our ſoldiers, that Montezuma's officers did not provide us ſo plentifully as at the firſt, and two of our Tlaſcalan allies had told our interpreter, Aguilar, in confidence, that they obſerved a bad diſpoſition on the part of the Mexicans towards us, for the two laſt days. This debate laſted a full hour; at length it was agreed to adjourn until the next day, and in the mean time we conſulted our reverend father of the order of mercy, praying to God to guide us in this difficulty. On the day after this debate, arrived two Indians of Tlaſcala very ſecretly, with letters from Villa Rica, whereby we were informed, that Juan de Eſcalante had fallen, together with ſix ſoldiers, in a battle with the Mexicans,* and that the inhabitants of the mountains and of Cempoal were in commotion, and refuſed to ſupply proviſions, or to work, ſo that the garriſon knew not what to do. Theſe letters added, that the opinion of the Indians were much altered ſince they found that the Spaniards could be killed like other men. God knows this intelligence afflicted us; it was the firſt defeat that we had experienced ſince we landed on that continent; and here let the reflecting reader ponder upon the changes which fate makes in the affairs of men. We who yeſterday were honored by Montezuma, in poſſeſſion of wealth, and conſidered invulnerable like demigods, to day found ourſelves lowered in the conſideration of the natives to a level with them in whoſe power we were. We now therefore

* Cortes received the intelligence of this event in Cholula.

therefore saw in a stronger point of view than ever, how necessary it was for our very existence to seize Montezuma, and that if we failed, we might as well perish in the attempt as meet our certain fate in any other way. But before I go farther I will give an account of the misfortune which befel Juan de Escalante.

I have already related, that in a town named Quiabuistlan, about thirty chiefs of the neighbouring districts had voluntarily come under our government. A Mexican garrison, it appears, attempted to levy contributions upon some of these people. When this was represented to Escalante the commandant in Villa Rica, he sent word to the officers of Montezuma to desist, threatening them in case they did not, but at the same time expressing his wishes to be on friendly terms with them. To this an abrupt reply was returned, that he should find them in the field. Escalante was a man who had blood in his eye, and on receiving this answer he immediately prepared forty of his own people, and two thousand of his allies, and put himself in march against the Mexicans, whom he met out upon a pillaging expedition, and attacked. Our allies who were always afraid of the Mexicans, fled at the first shower of arrows, and left the poor Spaniards to get out of the business as well as they could. With great difficulty they arrived at Almeria, where Escalante and six soldiers soon died of their wounds. One soldier they took alive; his name was Arguello, a native of Leon; this man had a large head, and thick curled beard, and was of great bodily strength. Such is the truth of the affair at Almeria, which is entirely different from the account of the historian Gomara, where he says that Pedro de Ircio went to colonize Panuco with a party of soldiers, at a time when we had not a sufficiency of men to keep up our guards. In many things which that historian relates concerning the seizure of Montezuma, he ought to have recollected that eye witnesses to that transaction were yet alive, to contradict him.

The Mexican captains reported the affair to Montezuma, and presented him with the head of the Spanish soldier, who died of his wounds.

nally diffused who worshipped the Sun, moon and Thor, or Jupiter, feasted the
for a year; then ornamented and perfumed, / a human victim / he was led to
e of sacrifice and his heart pierced with a sacred Spear. This victim was wor
d as the God during the year.

man sacrifice though most extensively used in America prevailed throughout
world. This ritual belonged to the Solar as well as the Serpent or Buddhist wor
To the Chaldean as well as Scythian adoration. Zendasht or Zoroaster endea
to reform it, but ineffectually in the first. It was suppressed or endeavored
in India at the last incarnation of Bhoodh. It seems very difficult to
ate.

ding to the life of Alexander the Antariates sacrificed three boys and three girls
battle. The Carthaginians sacrificed children to Saturn. The Egyptians
so. The Scandinavians sacrificed the aged to Saturn. and the Druids
ified human victims to the Sun and to Mars. Abraham's sacrifice is
first trace we meet of it in Scripture. Amasis king of Egypt endeavored
m it by the substitution of images of wax. The Sabeans were beginning to substitute deities
images of paste
ran balls / was used by the Windows and other nations of the old
. In Mexico, at the anniversary festival of Huitzilopochtli, an image
e representing the God was paraded and afterwards, the ceremony of
ing the heart with a golden Spear. / On account of Iboic, saprey being
through the body was divided into as many portions as there were ward
icts in the city, and each of these receiving a portion, this portion was again
ed or distributed to each man therein capable of bearing arms. The
ians made these meal figures for sacrifice, so did the ancient Per
so did the ancient Belgians. The Chinese make a cow of clay at the
festival, this they distribute to celebrate the departure & commence
of the year.
in which they coincide with the Burmahs

ll of the Sabean Mythology was cold, and placed in the North. Their
ise they placed in water. The Sumatrans have a sacred Lake
e South Sea Islanders and the ancient Californians. Thereforc
ning was considered the most honourable death. The Egyptians drowned

the sacred 02 The Scythians and Chinese consider death by shilling blood the least
able and sacred victims were anciently strangled as they are still in the South
Islands.

Brahminical Ritual

N. B. The human victim is made the sacerdotal victim
of Music in Tibet, as it was in Mexico. V. Clavijo
they perform nocturnal sacrifices with
this instrument & Boodh or as he is
called by them Fuka Moonee.
Gmelin Tartaria

Maaths.		
Aswina.	1	nocturnal worship by torch light of Kalee the black goddess and of ghosts of ancestors
Cartica	2	Worship of Beli
Margashirsa	3	of the sun with offerings of new grain to Sandra (the moon) to manes & ancestors
Pareshree	4	worship of manes of ancestors.
Magha	5.	The great Goddess. Maia protectress of arts &c.
Phalguna	6	To manes of Ancestors
Chitra	7	To Kama devi Cupid
Vaisacha	8	Offerings of Grain asperses in red powder.
Jyaischta	9	Festival of Venus
Devi	10.	Devi Goddess of Nature Cybele or Kibili-Kibiri
Saravina	11	To the Serpent Gods.
Badra.	12.	

Pareshree. N. B. Parez, Mewing Persians with the Greeks from Para, or Brass-serve Golden
Lord. An Assyrian, Son in law to Belus or Hercules, his wife being Astarte or Ashtaroth
Goddess of the Sidonians. V. 1 Book of Kings. — Parez the Jew.

N. B. February the Spring is held sacred to Freya. Ie-worshipication- the Swedish peasants offer
Paste Typhon.

The different classes of the Caboon worship being not original but derived from
the Eastern Nations of the Old world, the accounts of the latter will shew how
they were related.

Worship on high places

" The nations served their Gods upon the hills and under every green tree"
" Ye shall overturn their altars and break their pillars and burn their groves
" The priests of Baal (Bel) leaped upon the altar, and cried aloud and cut
themselves with knives and lancets till the blood gushed out

wounds, as they were bringing him priſoner. It is ſaid that Montezuma trembled when he beheld it, and ordered it to be ſent elſewhere. He aſked his captains why, being ſo numerous, they had not conquered ſuch a handful of men; they replied, that the reaſon was, becauſe they beheld a ſupernatural being, who encouraged the Spaniards, and ſtruck terror into their people; and this Montezuma believed could be no other than the holy Virgin Mary, with her ſon in her arms, as we had explained to him that ſhe was our patroneſs. This I cannot teſtify to, not having been there myſelf, but ſome of thoſe who were there aſſured me of the truth of it, and it was the univerſal belief amongſt us. Would to God that it were ſo! Certain however it is, that the divine mercy was with us throughout, for which praiſed be God!

It having been decided that we ſhould ſeize the perſon of the king, we paſſed the whole of the preceding night in praying to our Lord, that he would be pleaſed to guide us ſo that what we were about to do ſhould redound to his holy ſervice, and in the morning* we proceeded to arrange the manner in which our determination was to be carried into effect. Our cavalry and infantry were as uſual in readineſs to turn out if called upon, and as it was always our cuſtom to go fully armed, the appearance in that manner gave no ſuſpicion. Cortes having left our whole force in readineſs, proceeded to the palace, attended by the captains, P. de Alvarado, Gonzalo de Sandoval, J. V. de Leon, Fra. de Lugo, and A. de Avila, with the interpreters Donna Marina and Aguilar; ſending before him to acquaint the king, that he was on his way to pay him a viſit. This he did in order to prevent any effect ariſing from an unexpected appearance. The king concluded that it was on account of the affair of Almeria, and that Cortes was enraged about that which in reality he did not care the value of a cheſnut for, and ſent back word to Cortes that he was welcome. Accordingly, our

* Eight days after the arrival of the Spaniards in Mexico.

general, and we who attended him, having entered into the preſence of Montezuma, after paying him his reſpects, he addreſſed the king through his interpreters, ſaying, he was aſtoniſhed that a monarch who was ſo brave, and who had ſhewn himſelf ſo friendly to us, ſhould have given orders to his troops in Tuzapan to attack the Spaniards, kill one of them, and his horſe, and pillage and deſtroy our allies. Cortes wiſhed to conceal the death of Eſcalante and the ſix others. He then charged the king with the treacherous attempt againſt us in Cholula, which he ſaid he had hitherto been deterred from ſpeaking of, by motives of eſteem and regard; but that now, in addition to theſe provocations, his officers were plotting our immediate deſtruction, and he concluded by ſaying, that, in order to prevent the ruin of the city, it was neceſſary that his Majeſty ſhould, peaceably, and without making any oppoſition or remonſtrance, immediately go with us to our quarters, where he ſhould be treated with the greateſt reſpect; but that if he ſaid one word, or gave the leaſt alarm, the five captains then preſent would inſtantly put him to death. On hearing this Montezuma was at firſt ſo terrified that he appeared to have loſt all ſenſation. Having recovered himſelf a little, he denied his having ever given any order to his troops to attack our countrymen, and taking from his wriſt the ſignet of Huitzilopochtli with which he was uſed to confirm any order of great importance, he cauſed the officer of whom complaint had been made, to be ſent for. He then replied to the propoſal of leaving his palace, and ſummoning up his dignity ſaid, that he was not the perſon to be forced to take ſuch a ſtep, contrary to his inclination. The converſation was prolonged, Cortes giving him good reaſons for what he propoſed, and the king replying to him with better, inſomuch that above half an hour had now elapſed. The captains who were ſtanding by began at laſt to grow very impatient, and J. V. de Leon cried out to Cortes in his rough voice, "Why Sir do you waſte ſo many words? "Let him yield himſelf our priſoner, or we will this inſtant plunge "our ſwords into his body. Tell him this, and alſo, that if he ſays a "word, he dies for it. Better for us to aſſure our lives now, or periſh at "once." The manner in which this was ſpoken ſtruck the king, and he aſked

ich broke Moses's serpent to which the Children of Israel offered incense but manasseh
the high places, reared up the altars to Baal, made a grove and worshipped the host
n and made his son pass through the fire
ich put down the idolatrous priests who burned incense to Baal, & to the Sun Moon and
and all the host of heaven and defiled Topheth that no man should make his son pass
h the fire to Molech. — he spoiled the sepulchres that were in the mounts.
Thou Jerusalem hast sacrificed thy children to be devoured — and delivered them
through the fire — N. B. Moloch — alias Saturn of the Greeks
This was the religion of the patriarchs Chaldeans and Cathites. The Baalic,
n, Mithric and Solarite.
The perpetual fire was a part of this worship, v. Herodotus on the Hyperboreans.
Persians sacrificed on hills to the host of heaven. Assyria blended with it the
Venus Anaitis.

Sun is personified as Osiris, Adonis, Tammuz and Balder. Attys adet.
Apollo. — Mithras. The Serpent is the symbol of the Sun, as is Pegasus
and the Dragon — Esculapius are allegories or personifications. The descent of
in search of Proserpine &c, is an allegory — the basket, a symbol of the Sun —
Eleusinian Mysteries contained the pure Solar allegory & ritual. Orpheus re-
al instructed mankind in them. He was the teacher of Museus his Lyre is
blem of moral or social harmony. Adonis was worshipped in Phrygia &
rties. The Celts worshipped Bel or Apollo, Ranma Diana, Teutateth.
Dagon (Foigon) Vishnoo Sreeshna — Other symbol, a winged globe with a
the year) is rising from it. Osiris is depicted with a bull's and a
head,
Shaman — which signifies the Moon.
The professors of the pure Solar worship (separated from Buddoeism) in
are considered Heretics they are dressed in blue and black
ourt of Montezuma) Shamans (the word) Sanscrit Moon, and Sanscrit
Egyptian —
s Ouranos, Kawn Cres Kronos or Saturn. Time Pluto, the father
Gods, Dagon, Seeva. Horus is said to be the Son of Osiris the Sun
creatives matter or nature was young or reproducing. His staff had

head of the bird Upupa, said to indicate the variety of nature. Some say it
hawk's head. His musical instrument signifies the harmony of nature
gnomon to signify regulation. The triangle is the emblem of the female
productive faculty. Isis (Iana) is female or productive nature her attri
ne breasts and a cornucopia; a cow black and white, or with a triangle a
the forehead. Pan is the creative faculty. { as was the Phallus and Horlon the bull the head his symbols —
Typhon (Tew-phon) the boar or Hippopotamus is the destroyer of Admir
ll the Egyptian ceremonies & rites relate to the powers of Nature —
The great gods of Egypt were originally eight, afterwards twelve — Menes or Menes was their pri
ing and legislator. It is China they had their feast of Lanthorns. In Egypt and all its dom
occasion was used which did not reach India
reasons against the de Guignes supposition that Diana came to China from Egypt. beca
the Meteorosychosis was of recent importation there from India nor is there in Chin
the abhorrence of dogs flesh, or circumcision.
Of the Secrete worship — in the Old world. { Seeva is the Sun & of that Gothic whose name was Lord —
This is the ritual of the ancient Scythians. The divinity is worshipped as
male and female. In the primitive character this divinity is the conqueror or destroy
in the mystic or refined one, the divisor from the process of nature of regeneration
from dissolution.
Seeva is Mars. Kallee is Diana, Proserpine, Bellona and Venus, Astaroth
Isani, Juno, Minerva, Atergatis, Dorga, or Maguey, Astarte, Devi, Bhaw
Bhawanie means voyage. the black goddess of Scythia. — called also Bhesha and Parvate —
Pallas was the Persian Diana held in such high veneration. Her sacred virgins were marked
the figure of a lighted torch. She was worshipped at Acia Scelis Bambyce or Edessa Com
from the Euphrates as Atergatis Dorga or Maguey. The Roman worship of this God
was derived from Cappadocia. Plutarch does not understand if she is the Moon
Minerva or Bellona (radically all the three)
The Persian Kalla of India says "By a human sacrifice Devi is pleased a
seven years — Hail Kallee! Goddess of thunder, how sceptred (Sheeha is pow
cost) Wrang — Wring (in the bell of Shulick Karan) Horrid toothed Goddess
eath, eat destroy the malignant (enemies) eat, bind, seize, drink blo
secure — nocturnal worship invocation and imprecation + Secc. one + Do
Isani is represented like Pan. bi-sexual.

aſked Donna Marina the meaning of it. She with her uſual readineſs anſwered by requeſting that he would immediately conſent to what was propoſed to him, and go where he ſhould meet all reſpect and honor, as ſhe perceived that if he heſitated, they were reſolved to put him to inſtant death. He then addreſſed Cortes and ſaid, "I have a legitimate "ſon, and two legitimate daughters; take them as hoſtages for me, "but do not expoſe me as a priſoner to my own people." Cortes however replied ſaying nothing but what was originally propoſed could do, and that remonſtrances were unavailing. At length he was forced conſent, upon which our captains addreſſed him with every declaration of eſteem and reſpect, earneſtly deſiring that he would not be offended at what had paſſed, and that he would tell his officers and guards that he went by his own free will, and by the advice of his gods and prieſts. His magnificent ſtate litters were now brought, and attended by his uſual guards he proceeded to our quarters, where our poſts and centinels being duly placed, he was received and entertained with every mark of reſpect. He was ſoon waited on by the princes of his family and the chief nobility of Mexico, who came to know the cauſe of the ſtep that he had taken, and alſo if it was his wiſh that they ſhould attack us; but he replied, that it was his intention to ſtay with us for a few days, and that whatever further commands he had for them, he would ſignify in due time; but charged them to do nothing to diſturb the city.

Thus was the ſeizure of the great Montezuma effected. He was attended while with us in the ſame manner as in his own palace, his wives, family, and officers, were with him, and he bathed every day: he appeared calm and reſigned, and had always in his preſence twenty counſellors or chiefs. Ambaſſadors came to him on affairs of importance from diſtant countries, either to deliver tribute, or with buſineſs which he diſpatched. I recollect that however great the prince or chief might be, before he entered the king's preſence he took of his rich dreſs, and put on a plain one of the coarſe manufacture of nequen, and in this habit, and barefooted, approached the royal apartments, which

which he entered, not directly, but making a circuit by the wall: and having come, with his eyes caſt down upon the ground, into the preſence of the king, he made three profound bows, and addreſſed him, calling him, "Lord, my lord, great lord." He then diſplayed before him a cloth, whereon was painted and repreſented the buſineſs on which he came, the particulars of which he pointed out to him with little rods, or wands, delicately wrought and poliſhed. During this time two old lords ſtood by the king, and as ſoon as they had attentively conſidered all the particulars, they gave their opinions upon it to Montezuma, who diſpatched the affair with a few words. The perſon who had brought it, then, without making any reply, withdrew from the king's preſence, making three profound bows, and keeping his face towards the throne till out of ſight; and as ſoon as he was out of the royal apartments, he put on his rich dreſs, and walked about the city.

The meſſengers, who, as it has been mentioned, were diſpatched with the royal ſignet, to arreſt and bring to Mexico the officers of whom our general had complained, ſoon returned with them. On their arrival and being brought into their monarch's preſence, I do not know what paſſed, but he immediately ſent them to Cortes to do with them as he thought fit. Being examined when the king was not by, they avowed all that had happened, and ſaid they did it by the orders of Montezuma, which were, that they ſhould if neceſſary recur to force, to obtain the tribute due, and attack the Spaniards if they appeared in ſupport of his refractory ſubjects. Montezuma being charged by Cortes with this which now appeared, he endeavoured to exculpate himſelf as well as he could; but Cortes told him, that although his participation in the guilt of his officers was evident, and although the orders of our monarch were to puniſh with death all who inflicted death, yet ſuch was his regard for him, that he would ſooner loſe his own life than do his Majeſty an injury. All theſe aſſurances however could not remove the fears of Montezuma.

As to the officers, Cortes ſentenced them to be burnt alive in front of

Of the Second Region —

Indean divinities are manied, the female seems the Ministerial or effective effort of
of the male. The Aztecs enjoin human sacrifice thus Kallee says. "Let a victim be
d at a place of holy worship, or at a cemetery the cemetery represents me, the victim
be of good appearance, and prepared by ablutions and by consecrated food, and
with flowers and perfumes, Let worship be paid to the victim" the sacrificer
addresses the victim as the divinity for the evidence he is about to commit against him.
The Makratas now offer human sacrifice to Secoar this nation began to rise into note
during Saibs time. — The Purana Kalla says "blood drawn from the cheeks
and between the eye brows, and from the lobes of the ears may be presented
offers the blood of his body & his own flesh & drinks his urine.
the third of the Hindoo triad. He has the brahmonical and Egyptian symbol of creation
ne, in his attributes of reproduction. Pan is represented partaking of both sexes. His

ngers of state bore as far as the reign of Offis. It was a division & station of importance &
in the S. Sea Islands. Ermes was a messenger in the reign of his predecessor
enger of State in Ancient Egypt is designated by a wing.
B. + Thus is also Jani — In Egypt the Male faculty is represented by a Tau the
ce by a triangle supposed to signify Osiris Isis & Horus, who as reproduc
is were Young.
B. Delhai Lama. The Ancient Veii (Hybeus) were of his Sect. The
e of this divine pontificate was on a mountain which in the time of
ecoar was called Ke-ghai — the great castle, palace or dwelling
hen or considered as sacred, sacred, with a perpetual incarnation
e deified reports give its word animates the Existing women
+
he Galvans marked the dead across the face from ear to ear
the blood of the sacrificed — To the Jaw of Uitzilopochtli is
ed to be marked — some have translated it "blue", livid is the
ce the head of Uuitzilopochtli.

emblem is a goat. The Sphinxes of Egypt are represented in the same manner with Pan — Seva is called Eashwer and Iswara — Lord. (vide Siberian Medal.) and Maha Deva. His emblems are a bull and a trident. Ganesa (or Minerva is his first born) His wife's name Kalee signifies "time" Thursdays were worshipped with the Manes of ancestors in the September moon.

The Scythic worship was subordinate to the Solar which is probably corrupted of which Zoroaster endeavored to reform.

Vide Zoroaster's mission to Iranen. Called in Zend Eiranica. Aoertavirica. Armen. The Devil personified as the Serpent — Man placed over the Subhates or ans. in the beg. -ning of time (sacred character of the o.e.) — Zoroaster is to purge the world of magicians devils and all evil. Ormuzd commands him to undertake the mission — Ormuzd is the divinity — The Zend works of Zoroaster are the ritual of the Parsis signifies pure — as does "Iranon" — Ahreimanes is the evil spirit — Zoroaster taught a future state — Iranvedi or vedj — Kaptchanda, the seven indies of which Kashmir was one.

The divine word by which man was created is represented by a two edged ponia which cleaves the earth out of which start men and animals — This was done by Jemo 4th King of the first dynasty of the Parsees — 2. what mistake is here? (Jemo alias Djemshied) and Thor or Jove, who strikes with his club the evil spirit — 2. is he not the builder of the bridge from earth to heaven?

Mithra is the God of fertility — The Parsees gave a dog to the dead — probably for the same reason with the Chinese and Calvans — their ritual abounds with defilements and purifications — the Priests wore a sacred belt like the String of the Brahmins — Purification with an ox's urine — like the cow dung of the Hindoos — dog and cocks are sacred as the guardians of cattle (appearance of the dog thus!) — security of prosperity commencing! The ox is worshipped as the emblem of the angel Tashtar the distributor of rain which is drawn from the rivers Euphrates (Kher-at) and Dankast the sun's spring like a horse from the Mountain of Mt. Albordj fertilizes the earth (Pegasus) — Mount Albordj is at the head of the Euphrates This Mount Albordj is the residence of Rom Jsed (Jesd Lord) a sovereign beneficent and glorious king who destroyed the two footed ser

of the palace of their king; this was immediately proceeded upon, and during the time of its taking place, and in order to prevent any impediment occurring, he also ordered that Montezuma should be put in irons. When this was doing, the unfortunate king could no longer suppress his emotions at the indignity, but wept aloud. In this situation he remained until the execution was over, at which time Cortes, attended by his five captains, went to his apartment, and with his own hands freed him from the irons, assuring him that he was dearer to him than even a brother, and that he trusted soon to be able to make his dominions exceed double their present extent; and also, that if he wished to go to his palace, he was at perfect liberty to do so. Montezuma's spirit was now broke, and the tears ran down his cheeks while Cortes was speaking; he declined the offer with thanks, knowing well the emptiness of his words, and added, that he considered it most prudent to remain where he was, in order to prevent disturbance and insurrection in the city. What we understood and certainly was the case, was, that Cortes had caused the interpreters to say that though he was inclined to release him, the other officers never would allow it. As soon as Montezuma had given his answer, Cortes threw his arms round his neck, and protested that he loved him as himself. The king then asked of him his page Orteguilla, a youth who had already learned the language, and Cortes immediately complied with his request, whereby Orteguilla afterwards remained about the person of the king, a circumstance very useful both to him and to us. Montezuma was very partial to the youth, from whom he was constantly used to enquire particulars relative to Europe, and Orteguilla from his knowledge of the language, was able to communicate to us whatever he observed, that was of importance for us to know. Thus Montezuma remained amongst us, treated with the greatest respect, no officer or soldier, nor even Cortes himself, coming into his presence, or passing him, without pulling off his helmet, and he always treated us most kindly and courteously.

The officers of Montezuma who were publicly executed as I have related,

related, were four in number.† Their names were Quetzalpopoca who was the principal, Coatl, Quiabuitle, and another whom I have forgotten, nor is it of much importance. As soon as this chastisement was known through the different provinces of New Spain, it struck universal terror, and the people on the coast returned to their submission. Now let the curious consider upon our heroic actions; first, in destroying our ships and therewith all hope of retreat, secondly, in entering the city of Mexico after the alarming warnings that we had received, thirdly, in daring to make prisoner the great Montezuma king of all that country, in his own capital, and in the centre of his own palace, surrounded by his numerous guards, and fourthly, in publicly burning his officers in front of his palace, and putting the king in irons during the execution. Now that I am old, I frequently revolve, and reflect upon the events of that day, which appear to me as fresh as if they had just passed, such is the impression they have made upon my mind. I say, that it was not we who did these things, but that all was guided by the hand of God, for what men on earth would otherwise have ventured, their numbers not amounting to four hundred and fifty, to have seized and put in irons a mighty monarch, and publicly burned his officers for obeying his orders, in a city larger than Venice, and at a distance of a thousand and five hundred leagues from their native country!!! There is much matter for reflection in this, and it merits to be detailed otherwise than in the dry manner in which I relate it.

Cortes now thought it necessary to appoint a commandant at Villa Rica. For this purpose he chose Alonzo de Grado, an indifferent soldier, but a person of good understanding, who spoke well, and was of a handsome appearance; he was also a musician, and an excellent penman. He was always in opposition to Cortes relative to our advance to Mexico, and was the principal orator on those occasions. Cortes when

† They were seventeen in all: Quetzalpopoca lord of Nauhtlan, his son, and fifteen other noblemen.

reated the bird that gathers and scatters the seed of the tree Hom — King Hom Yesht
the Land is Sercetch (Golden — understood?) Hom Yesht was Contemporary with the
of the first Pasis dynasty, He brought the sacred girdle from heaven and promulgate
which was not written. He was the Imitator of the Ancients of Zoroaster and his father
esp — Zoroaster adopted the written Laws of this great Legislator and composed his work in
d Persic dynasty. (Assyrian
chasp, the Hero who slew the Serpent is the Son of Saman. (Schamian Modern Seythian Conquerer)
oroaster recommends the marriage of cousin-germans — His castes are, priests,
s, husbandmen, Artizans. The Pure or sacred ass has a horn of Gold — he stands
Euphrates — connects with creation — N. B. Silenus came into Egypt on an Ass
ingel Meher, Targues Mithras is the Minister of the Sun — wine is mentioned in Zoroas
hes — the four Ages — Mosaic history of creation — Celestial bird of Hindostan
ras rain — Ormuzd is, Light, Ahrimanes, darkness, Predicts destruction
comet getting below the Moon — Speaks of the Splendor of the palace of
ian Cain King of Albordj — or Mount Asaak at the head of the Euphrates,
e dedicates his cosmogony (Boundsheesh) from a cold frozen mountainous
try, His work is called the Sad-der — (100 doors for chapters)
of Bactra is now Zoroaster who was king of Bactra in Asia
end or Balek — of Badakshan — Persia was killed by Ninus, son or grandson of Belus
or Semiramides, King of Babylon
ords is the diversity of the ancient Seythians, derivations from Mars or Saturn
mediate Vicegerent of God on earth, and Interpreter to Hindostan
e in the Seythian Mountains means generally a preternatural being or Hobgoblin
th, means one possessed, Phuca tells down word Puck upon
down rock —
don, Vodin, Odin, was his name among the Scandinavians (after their

proper names of the Saloons were taken from animals, flowers &c. this is
Chinese custom, and that of the modern Indians who to make their
ture draw the representation of what they are named after.

mata — Saturn with the principal great Dragon twins
s in Constantinople with Dread a Serpent of the Wood
tus. He to the Westward to the Mountains of his Genii
his Children, North & Sophia, South the snowy mountains

arrival in the Gulf of Bothnia (probably at Bhoorh.) in the seventh century or thereabouts. They called it Schoen Haf — fine haven —

Bout. is the name given in Russian to any idol of Worship.

Bhoordh is the divinity of Indostan

Boot. is the ancient Balic — Bod. Booda — St Jerome

Boota — in Sanscreet — Tshigi moonie — Mongou

Bud — Kochin China — La — Thibet.

Fo — in China — Cadmus (Goudma) Phenicia

Wud. in Arabic

Po — in Siamese

Dagon in Scripture (and at Azotus — Ezdod — one of the 5 satrapies of Philistia under the Persians worshipped under a human form

Mercury — in Greek. (Chamosh a Jew. was the name of the Abomination of Moab & this word is Malay

Teutaith — Celtic

Thoth — Egyptian — and Anubis. Hermes Trismegistus.

Tsopho-maou-kaun-Scham-boo — bar — mountains of Scythia

Tshoo-ma-doo-praw — Goudma — Burmese — Mull, the inventor of Letters — wherever they were found — wednesday is named from him here his Temple is called Tshoo-Dagon —

Somonocodom.

Soombhoordh. Buddha. where in his temple here supposed to be worshipped

According to Fisher in the mountains of Scythia a boy is dressed in the attributes of Bhoordh, and setting out, with bow and arrow shoots at all he meets, those shot by his hand are considered sent to Heaven — they suppose the transmigration of souls Persons undergoing purgation in the forms of mean animals —

The modern Burmahs received Buddhism from Ceylon the language of which they speak, it came to the last place and Pegu from Ceylon in which place it was probably planted by Rama-Rama or Bacchus, who brought it from the Indian Caucasus of which the modern Burmahs have a tradition — Like the Celtic the Hell of the Burmese Mythology is cold.

The last appearance of Bhoordh in India as Siddhoma, was to reform ancient religious worship of that divinity (Bhoordh) and to establish that which now is. It reached China about the Christian aera —

when he gave him the appointment good-humouredly ſaid to him, "Now Senior de Grado, go and poſſeſs your wiſhes; you are commandant of Villa Rica, and ſee that you fortify it well; and mind I charge you on no account to go out and fight the wicked Indians, nor let them kill you as they did Juan de Eſcalante." This Cortes ſaid ironically, knowing the condition of the man, and that all the world could not have got him to put his noſe out of the town. We who were liſtening to this, and perceived his drift, could hardly forbear laughing aloud. He then gave him his inſtructions to behave kindly to his Indian neighbours, and not permit them to be robbed or oppreſſed: he alſo deſired him to cauſe the ſmiths who were in that ſettlement to make two large chains, out of the old iron of the ſhips, and ſend them to him immediately, and to loſe no time in proceeding with the conſtruction of the wooden fort. When De Grado arrived at his government, he affected to carry on buſineſs with a lofty demeanour, and ſent to the neighbouring Indians who were at peace with us, requiring them to give him gold, and female ſlaves; paying no attention whatever to the fortifications, but paſſing his time in feaſting and play. What was worſe, he combined with the adherents of Velaſquez, offering to put him in poſſeſſion of the poſt he was entruſted with. Theſe things being ſoon communicated to Cortes, he repented of his imprudent ſtep in appointing to ſuch a place a man whoſe bad diſpoſition he well knew: he alſo foreſaw that Velaſquez muſt ſooner or later find out that he had ſent agents to Old Caſtille, and would probably ſend a force againſt us. For theſe reaſons it was neceſſary that he ſhould have a perſon of confidence in the command at Villa Rica; he therefore ſent Sandoval, who was now alguazil mayor, with whom went Pedro de Ircio already mentioned, who gained the confidence of Sandoval, a goodnatured man, by diverting him with anecdotes of the families of the Count de Urena, and Don Pedro Giron, in which he had ſerved. De Ircio by theſe means gained his favor ſo completely, that he never ceaſed promoting him, till he had got him the rank of captain: inſtead of which promotion, for the licenſes he gave his tongue, and for which Sandoval at times reprehended him, he deſerved

to

to have been well puniſhed. Sandoval on his arrival at Villa Rica immediately arreſted De Grado and ſent him priſoner to Mexico, under a guard of Indians, according to the orders of Cortes. The new governor ſoon made himſelf very popular amongſt the natives by his affability and humanity, and he immediately began to put the fort into proper repair. Cortes would not ſee De Grado on his arrival, but confined him in the ſtocks, where he remained two days. I recollect that the timber whereof theſe were made has a ſtrong ſmell of garlic. De Grado, who was a man of great plauſibility at laſt made his peace, and was employed, not in a military capacity, but in one conformable to his talents, being given the office of contador, which had been held by Avila, who was ſent as procurador to the Iſland of St. Domingo. Sandoval had orders to ſend the iron-work neceſſary for the conſtruction of two veſſels, which he punctually executed, and the various articles arrived ſafely in Mexico.

Cortes, regularly every day after maſs, went to wait on Montezuma, attended by all his officers, and aſked him what he would be pleaſed to order that they could execute; to which the king uſed to anſwer, thanking him, that he found himſelf perfectly to his ſatisfaction. Thus, from one ſubject to another they uſually fell into diſcourſe about our holy faith, and the power of our emperor. At other times, Montezuma and Cortes uſed to play at a certain game which they call Totoloque, in which they take aim with golden balls at certain objects made alſo of gold. I remember once in particular, when Cortes and Alvarado were playing againſt Montezuma and his nephew, Montezuma jocularly ſaid that he would not allow Tonatiu, meaning Alvarado, ſo called on account of his handſome perſon, that word meaning the ſun, to mark, expreſſing himſelf in ſuch a manner as to imply, that Alvarado did not ſay that which was true; at which we all burſt out laughing, becauſe Alvarado was a little addicted to exaggeration. When Cortes gained, he gave his winnings to thoſe about Montezuma, and when the king gained he did the ſame to our ſoldiers of the guard. Indeed he never let a day paſs, without making preſents of ſome kind

The Spaniards call it Bodoque.

to

worship of Bhoordh subsisted under its ancient form in Kashmir until about the [illegible]
— The creative symbol was given by the Pelasgi & their Mercury or Bhoordh.

~~The Icelandic chronicles commence with Odin or Bhoordh.~~

2. b. The Celtic divinities are. Teutaith . Woden. Mercury. conductor of the Dead. Greek

Eartha, or Rybele also called Cuena - or some such epithet approaching in sound to the Greek word. ge - tena

Andraste . Freya. Pallas. Proserpine &c
Taranis - Thor. Brahma. Jupiter. Serapis
Hesus . Mars. Teeoa. - Agysa. Lord —

The Celts drowned as an honourable death. So did the Egyptians.

3. P. Andrada is the first who mentions Dal-hai La-ma - about a. 1624
ars before the embassy of Lomais in wch Shamanism, the Brahminical persecuted & expelled religion
on is interpreted - hermit - V. La Croze —

Of the Scandinavian Budsoism

Iceland in Annales commence with Odin or Bhoodh.

The Edda is a concise history of the migration of the Scythians who conquered
ulf of Bothnia. Their Lord, Odin, remains in the South. — Speaks of the
or of these Colonists or migrators, and of the court of their great King in the
at Asgard (Agysa Scythian, Lord - gard - castle or enclosure) beyond the
ian mountains (which are not mountains)
ese Scythians awed the poor Finns by their splendor and ferocity - (the
ne of the Hermion branch) this colony of Woden was nearly allied to the
ri, or Cimbri who invaded Italy about the same time.
has upwards of forty names expressive of his different qualities, and of
as many personifications. — His first is Allfauter - father of
Gods) — (as Rybele, Rebeia or Cybele was the mother) & his wife —
so, Neptune, the thunderer, the destroyer, and selector of those Odin
is third consists of himself, Har - (expressive, hero, and Hafw = har - wor
al to Har. Woden also equalis —

Woden travels northwards with a great retinue, (a. 700) and is
, and those with him (his Agysee Lords Scythians) as being more
ods than men. His approach being known by Gylfi, King
nia (Query Swabia or Sweden?) he invites Odin and his Lords to his
court

Thence Odin continuing his course Northwards, intending to travel over the world arrives on the Ocean where washing one of his Sons / Se = Ming / King of Norway, Odin returns to his Castle or Palace of As = gard beyond the Riphean or Typhonic or Mountains at the Sources of the Tanais or Don. The Asæ, Odins Lords are all divinities. / N. B. Land. Grand. Hensonel. a mountain /

Gods of the Gothes

Thor — is the first he is drawn by the goats Tangrioster and Tangrisner in a Chariot and blasts a dyke and rion gauntlets to destroy giants /

Balder / Bel / Apollo — most beneficent, fair, eloquent, munificent

Niord. Neptune, Proteus, Pluto, Eolus, Elisha, Platus.

N. B. Thor is the name of the divinity with the Voguleits & Wantahans and Ugrians. — Tangara — the Divinity. Kaktuti {Apollo, Phoebus or Sun (Adonis, a for a suicide. Thor is phœnician for a Lucifer.

Tongri — heaven — Kalmucs

His daughter is Freya / Frau, / mother-die, genetrix / Hera, called Thius / Venus & all the other personifications, who divides the Plain with Odin.

Niord is married to the daughter of ~~Typhon~~ Thyeus / probably Typhon / the giant. Her name is Skada. Skada and her father inhabited the mountains, Niord preferred the Sea coasts. Skada however quits her husband and putting her snow shoes goes out with bow and arrows to the chace on the mountains. Niord is at length persuaded by his wife and father in law to ascend the mountains with them "nine nights did he pass on those of Thrymheim / Home of Thor, Tanais, now Dronheim / three at Noatun, returning thence he thus bewails himself in song "painful to me is the sojourn on the mountains, long did I grieve thereat."

Lok the evil genius / the Typhon or Hippopotamus of Egypt & boar of Greece / instigates the death of Balder who like the Son of Thetis has but one vulnerable point, Odin's son, descends to bring Balder from Hell but is unsuccessful — Surtur / Swart, a sword / the black genius leads the genii & dies the world with fire ~~and blood~~

The Gothic mythology or romance at least is full of imagery of dragons, giants &c, which they could not have seen in the low Valley they then lived. N. Trajans Pillar the Dragon of China on the Standards of

to all of us, but more particularly to Velaſquez de Leon who was the captain of his guard, and always paid him great attention. One night a ſoldier named Truxillo, was guilty of a certain piece of diſreſpect within his hearing, at which Montezuma was highly offended, and enquired of the page who the perſon was. The page told him that he was a man of low birth, who knew no better. He then proceeded to tell him of our different ranks and qualities, about which he was very curious. On the next day he ordered Truxillo to be brought into his preſence, and after having reproved him, he made him a preſent worth about five crowns. The words of Montezuma made leſs impreſſion on the ſoldier than his gold, and on the next night the fellow was guilty of the ſame piece of impoliteneſs, in order to get more. Of this Montezuma complained to Velaſquez, who ordered the man to be relieved, and ſeverely reprimanded him. Another ſoldier one night complained that he was ill, curſing this dog of an Indian, meaning Montezuma, who gave them ſo much trouble. This being overheard by the king, who diſcovered what he had ſaid, he complained thereof to Cortes, by whoſe command the man was immediately whipped, notwithſtanding he was a very good ſoldier; his name was Pedro Lopez. After this example ſtrict diſcipline and ſilence were kept by the guard, to the great ſatisfaction of the king, who was very kind to us, knew us all, and ſpoke to us by our names. I was at this time a ſtripling, and always behaved to him with great reſpect; his page had told him that I had been twice upon his coaſts before the arrival of Cortes, and I had deſired the page to mention to him, that inſtead of gold or mantles, he would oblige by giving me a handſome Indian girl. This requeſt he graciouſly complied with, calling me to him and ſaying, "Bernal "Diaz del Caſtillo, the young woman I preſent to you is the daughter "of one of my principal nobility; treat her well, and her friends will "give you gold and mantles, as much as you can deſire." I kiſſed his Majeſty's hand, thanking him for his favors, and praying God to proſper him; to which Montezuma replied ſaying, "It ſeems to me "that Del Caſtillo is of noble condition." Wherewith he ordered me three plates of gold, and two loads of mantles.

I will now relate ſome more particulars of his courſe of life. In the morning, having paid his devotions, he eat a ſlight breakfaſt, not of meats but vegetables, ſuch as agi or pepper, and then remained a full hour hearing buſineſs, in the manner I have already deſcribed. The number of judges or counſellors who attended upon him at thoſe times amounted to twenty. His numerous miſtreſſes he uſed to marry to his officers and particular friends; ſome of them fell to our lot; mine was called Donna Franciſca; a lady of high birth, as ſhe ſhewed by her manners. Thus ſometimes amuſing himſelf, and ſometimes meditating on his ſituation, the great Montezuma paſſed the days of his confinement amongſt us.

The materials being arrived, Cortes requeſted that the king would give him permiſſion to conſtruct two veſſels, for the purpoſe of amuſing himſelf upon the water, and alſo that he would order his carpenters to aſſiſt. The oak timber was only at the diſtance of about four leagues, and Montezuma having given his conſent, the work went on ſo expeditiouſly, by the number of Indian carpenters, and was ſo ably conducted by our principal builder Martin Lopez, that in a very ſhort ſpace of time, they were built, launched, and rigged, with an awning over each.

Montezuma at this time requeſted permiſſion from Cortes to pay his devotions, and perform ſacrifices, in order that his friends and ſubjects might ſee that he lived among us by the order of his gods, and his own choice. Cortes returned for anſwer, that in ſo doing, it was his buſineſs to beware how he did any thing whereby to loſe his life; for that he would ſend a guard of officers and ſoldiers with him, giving them ſtrict orders to kill him inſtantly in caſe there appeared any thing like a commotion. With this caution he gave him his permiſſion to viſit his temple. It was alſo at the ſame time ſignified to him, that no human ſacrifice would be permitted; to which Montezuma having agreed, he ſet out in his uſual pomp, and accompanied by four of our captains, Velaſquez de Leon, Alvarado, Avila, and De Lugo, with a hundred

Saxons, Danes or Danks — as on the fishing boats of Northabound. —

The religious worship of America partook of the solar, the Secrite
part of the Buddsoic ritual, untouched by Brahminicism, The Brahmins how
ever persecuted the old religion.

Of the Brahminical reformation.

Brahminism is grafted on Buddsoism, the two great Hindoo sects are now Vishnu & Buddh
turn over

The King had three councils, namely, of War, government, and revenue. the two great
Officers of state were. the "Hue (great) = Cal pixe ci, or treasurer & Hue = jamingui
which we would call "Grand chancellor".

Note. on last page manuscript. The Germans honoured Mars & Hercules
Apollo, Mercury. v. Tacitus. The Gauls & Germans honoured Isis. Sol,
Minerva & Eortha. Rybele. The Celts called Hercules ogmius — Zeus word ogham
Celtic — title Scythic. Perseus & Andromeda. Mithra & Typhon. v. the
Sun attacking the creative faculty of the
Moon. They tied the hair at the top of the head, used human sacrifice
to Rybele or Eortha whose chariot was drawn by cows, those who offered
human sacrifice were drowned in a sacred lake, as were the priests in Egypt
Rybele was called Eortha, and Goya, (Greek γε,) and Asiagoode (Astarte
in the Gothic Mythology — Their Sceptar (Saturn) is derived from the same root
Saturn — time. — Manmus is the creature, he has three Sons.

Solar worship — Isis is called 26 pieces by typhon — creative faculty
covered (v. again, crab & bull with Mithras) — The ancient Egyptians
personified the Moon by the Ape which is said to rejoice at and deplore her rising
(v. Calmet's painting) but the Hindoos symbolize the Moon as a hare
as that animal appears and disappears above and below the earth.
The Adonis of the Ancients seems to be the Year. Adonis conjunctively signified the year
Baal Saldan (Lord
Scripture & memorials relate to the sun. — a bark with seven sailors. The
Lord Baal Saldan Adonis conjunctively signified the year
monument called "Sippos" a sacred shrine near Mount Taygetus
ended by seven stones — they included the Moon among the primary

second Buddh contains the greatest portion of the Scythian ritual or is most activated by the
of it. they are distinguished by lineal incisions made in the forehead, a practice als
Africa as ancient as the Lemonian race there. Vishnooism is the reformation of the ancie
ritual of Buddoism and the adaptation of it to peaceable social life, conformable to
temper of the natives of Hindostan. This they date and derive from the last incarnation
the divinity, or appearance of Vishnoo, 6000 years before the Christian aera. From the
the Chinese got it, 550 years B.C. or later according to some but subsequent to the da
of Confucius. or Fo-hi. whose religion is Sintoism, which was more ancient in Ind
than Buddoism, being the religion of the Magi and Schamanians, who abhorred pop
theism which grows out of the personification of attributes, moral, physical or honorary
and but that the Chinese
retain part of the Solar worship. The Manicheans are a branch of Sintoism, and pr
serve the perpetual fire, in fact somewhat of this ritual prevails in all the religion
of and derived from the east. It still subsists, and as heretofore observed was the
persecuted, among the Tartars. its professors, (Schamans) are of most retired
abstemious lives, they are few and considered as heretics, not worshipping
Idols. A great hierarchy existed anciently through all the Indian Caucasus,
the borders of the Caspian. The Hyperboreans preserved the perpetual fire, and
from their celebated priesthood who abstained from animal food one of who
a Goetan, Pythagoras entertained in his house has come down the ancient
of the connection of their political and religious regulation which then existed
now under that of Dalhai La-ma, namely the co-existence of the divine
royal natures by a successive and perpetual incarnation of the divine
(but not directly lineal, tho' here dietary) Semper aliquis reperto cui ita ex
animatus et a Goetis Deus nominaretur. His residence in the mountain
and the river which ran by it were both held sacred. The name of the
First is in Scythian Ko-ghai (Ko-dautham, ghai, great)

The Egyptians held the Manichean, or good and evil principle, Ormuzd
and Ahrimanes of Zoroaster, the most ancient, Their first was a triad co
posed of Osiris (the Sun) Isis (Laws Nature) Orus, time Saturn the offsp
of both. Typhon (Sen phon) was the evil principle, Hence their first

hundred and fifty ſoldiers. Our reverend father of the order of mercy alſo attended for the purpoſe of preventing human ſacrifice. Montezuma on his arrival near the temple came out of his litter, and was ſupported up to it as uſual, being met by a number of prieſts. They had on the preceding night ſacrificed four Indians, nor could all our endeavours prevent that inhuman practice, which we were for the preſent obliged to connive at, fearing to do any thing which would cauſe an inſurrection. After Montezuma had ſtaid a ſhort time at his devotions he came down from the temple, and returned to our quarters in great good humour, making preſents to all of us who attended him upon the occaſion.

The veſſels were now afloat upon the lake, fully equipped, and manned with expert ſailors, and they obeyed both ſail and oar, ſo as to anſwer our utmoſt expedition. When Montezuma was informed of it, he requeſted Cortes to permit him to go hunting in a certain diſtrict, which was prohibited to all others on pain of death. Cortes aſſented, warning him that his life paid the forfeit of any attempt at a reſcue, and he offered him the uſe of his ſhips to go there, which Montezuma was greatly pleaſed with, and accepted.

The ſwifteſt ſailing veſſel conveyed the king and his ſuite, the other was occupied by his ſon and a number of the nobility. They were attended alſo by a vaſt number of boats, great and ſmall. Cortes ordered out a party compoſed of Velaſquez de Leon, Alvarado, De Oli, and Avila, all men who had blood in their eyes, and two hundred ſoldiers, giving them orders to be very watchful over Montezuma: four braſs guns with their ammunition and artillery-men, were alſo embarked.

The wind blew very freſh, our ſailors took delight in exhibiting their ſkill, and the ſhips ſeemed to fly acroſs the lake, leaving the veſſels of the natives far behind. Montezuma being arrived where he was to hunt, landed for that purpoſe, and as the place abounded with game,

he had ſoon killed a great quantity of various kinds, ſuch as deer, hares, and rabbits. After having amuſed himſelf for ſome time in this manner, he returned on board the veſſel, and ſet ſail for Mexico. We diſcharged our artillery during the voyage, which afforded him amuſement and ſatisfaction, and he delighted us all by his affable and friendly behaviour; nor is it poſſible to deſcribe, how noble he was in every thing he did, nor the reſpect in which he was held by every one about him. One day, three of our captains were in his preſence when a hawk entered the apartments purſuing a quail, which kind of birds, as well as doves, bred in and about the palaces. As our officers and ſoldiers were admiring the beauty and flight of the hawk, and talking upon the ſubject in general, Montezuma was curious to know what we were ſaying, which being explained to him, and alſo how we could tame hawks and fly them from our hands, Montezuma ſaid that he would order the bird to be caught for us, and giving immediate directions to that purpoſe, by the next morning his hunters had caught and brought to us the identical bird.

Cacamatzin the king's nephew, and prince of the city of Tezcuco, the largeſt next to Mexico in the empire, having received information that the king had been now many days kept priſoner by the Spaniards, and that they had alſo opened the treaſury of his anceſtors, in order to ſecure it by a timely effort, convoked his vaſſals, and alſo the neighbouring princes. Amongſt them was the lord of Matalcingo, a great warrior, and near relation of Montezuma, who was ſaid to have pretenſion to the throne. Theſe princes and chiefs he ſummoned, in order to induce them to aſſemble their forces, and fall upon us in a body. When they were met in conſultation upon this propoſition, the prince whom I before mentioned to have had pretenſions to the throne, made the ſupport of them the condition of his entering into the confederacy. Cacamatzin then brought forward a ſimilar claim, declaring that he would go through the buſineſs with his own force, for which purpoſe he made arrangements with his friends in the city of Mexico. This coming to the knowledge of Montezuma, he immediately forbid any ſuch

King was the theocratical legislator of Egypt, some suppose him personified as Osiris
Jus and it may be his King who is represented on the walls of the temple of Thebes or Thebais
the Post of Osiris may be in the ancient Scarabeus scarlet, golden &c. all carte-de-Nations ascribe
a derivation to their monarchical families. The Egyptians maintained the immor-
ty of the soul, offered prayer to the Sun, the first they derived from Assyria, it is admitted
a shift of the cow did not originate in Egypt. The bull Apis was sacred to the Sun, the

We meet Apis as a name of the divinities. Venus was called by the Scythians Apia

The Mexican Kings were as fond of the Chace and maintained as grand establishments for this
use as those of ancient Scythia. Marco Polo who was in Tartary in 1260 when the Emper-
ors reigned in Constantinople describes those of the Tartarian monarchs as having for
their ~~enclosures~~ inclosed lakes abounding with black and white swans and
various kinds of Cranes. A large valley was appropriated to land birds, where the
bridges and quails were tended during winter in houses and the tables of the Kans was
ever supplied with game from thence by post at his capital many hundred miles distant.
Lucas. Morse or Imlay says there is not a Lion in North America. yet they are mentioned by the first discoverers

Cremation. Calvon. Dan-ta-zin. Chinese. Lord. Tzin. King or Lion
Convert. Persia Hindoo and Siamese. Calvan & Mexican express themselves with
a difference, a proof of the immediate derivation of the former from China. Lion is
a symbol of Conquest or Might. Thus in the Ancient sculptures of Egypt Ramses
Conqueror of Scythia is designated by a Lion at his side. Ta is the article in Calvon
& in Chinese. Sin in Japanese is applied in the same sense to the divinity

Tezucos. There dwell in Tezucos 60,000 Indians which pay tribute to the
King. John Chilton. a. 1566. the period at which this History was written.
Lake is 15 miles distant across the Lake from Mexico.

Egypt

Brahminists ascribe the low fruitfulness to the Moon, respective productive faculty. The star and triangle were each a symbol of the a sacred fountain / the Semathians have now a sacred Lake /. N. B. In ancient Scythia, as in China, it being considered the most honorable death that the body should go entire to the grave, the royal family when any of them were condemned to die were put to death by tossing.

Intercourse existed direct from India to ancient Thebes prior to Moses. The Egyptians had three castes. The sun was symbolized by an Emerald. In Brahminism the incarnations of Bhoodh are the same with the Sabeic of Chaldea and Sephiroth of the Hebrews.

N. B. If Saturn is the father of the Gods, and is the Moses of Egypt, he is the Bhood of Scythia and the son of the Sun, and Nature, as well as the divine agent. He is also Pluto. Kibir or Cybele is their other. —

Of the incarnations of Brahminism. — Bhoodh is incarnate

1st. at the deluge in the form of a Sword-fish towing the ark by a serpent as a cable the ark contains seven persons / Noah &c. Deucalion / saved from the waters. Here he appears as divine interposition. (Bhoodh is the agent or ark of Sun, moon = Nara (Gooroo Saint) the divine will — tusk

2d. As a boar. the Symbol of Strength raising the earth out of the waters by his

3d. As a tortoise the symbol of Stability, afterwards changed to Atlas supporting the Earth. — These three first avatars all relate to the deluge.

4th. As Brahma recovering the Vedas stolen by Typhon and reforming mankind. The vedas / derived as the Gothic from the sanscrit which signifies "to know" are ascribed to Brahma. They are 4 books. 1. Rig. 2. Sam. 3 Yehor. 4th. apocryphal & thereon. Brah-Ina. / Great Lo

The Brahminical triad is composed of three hero mystifications. Brahma, creator, Seeva avenger and destroyer, Vishnoo or Creeshna preserver & regenerator. The second consists of Brahma, Sewevati / Minerva / and the Snake Letchimeeva. Nature / Maia, or Maha, produces an egg, whence springs Kamma deo, who is or divine love and also the material / Lapid. This divinity is slumbering for ages on a lotos / kernel, or pedma / till roused by Brahma at the divine will of Narayan, / Vinamaly, Peitamber, Pedmanaba, wife of Brahma is Sivevati ~~Universal Nature~~ divine wisdom. N.B. Vide James Pittons, Isty-sweata - Sani, Crivsvata Child of the Sun.

such steps being taken, and communicated to Cortes the information which he had received. The transaction was already in a certain degree known to us, but not to the full extent. Cortes in consequence thereof proposed to take with him a body of Mexicans to attack and destroy the city of Tezcuco, but this determination not being satisfactory to Montezuma, Cortes sent to Cacamatzin, desiring him to desist from his warlike preparations, as he wished him for his friend. Cacamatzin replied that he was not to be duped like others by plausible words; that he expected soon to see us, and then we might say to him what we would. Cortes once again sent to Cacamatzin warning him not to proceed to hostilities, the consequence of which would be the loss of the king's life; to which this chief returned for answer, that neither the king nor Cortes were of any consequence to him, for that he was determined to persevere in his intentions.

He had at this time a brother in Mexico, who had been obliged to fly thither on account of a family quarrel. This being known to us, our general proposed to Montezuma to call the reigning prince to his court, where we could seize on and detain him until he became more amenable, or if we thought proper elevate the brother now in Mexico to his place. Montezuma agreed to send for him, adding, that if he refused to come, he would give directions for having him brought by force. For this Cortes returned him thanks with many professions of sincere regard, assuring him that he staid by him entirely for his protection, and that for his part he should be happy to accompany him to his palace, but that he could not get his captains to consent to it. The king thanked him, and said that he would immediately send to inform Cacamatzin of his true situation, and how it was adopted of his own free will, and by the advice of his gods; for Montezuma was perfectly well acquainted with the dissimulation practised by Cortes, and that it was only done in order to sound him. Montezuma according to his promise sent a message to the prince, who perfectly understood the manner in which it was obtained, and declared his determination to attack us in four days, saying, that his uncle the king was a pitiful monarch,

Brahminis are considered quite distinct personages. Bauhus is supposed the Prajapati Goddess Lord of the Hindoos. Dionysus of Greece. his country was that of the ancient Gandarides at the heads of the Ganges which Alexander did not invade. Hercules by some identified with Osiris, distinctions should be made between titles and proper names, those given the great in ancient times were titles as "great" "Sun", "child of the sun" &c. This mother was the Great goddess of women the Bona dea whose name was not to be spoken, her worship was brought

The Mexican empire at this time extended from Lat. 14 to Lat 21. and from Long 271 to Long. 283. consisting to the East of the Provinces of Tepeyacac — Popolocan — Totonacan — Goatzacoalco — Cuetlachtlan — or Cotasta — West. Colimam — Zacatollan — Tototepec — Tecuantepec — Xicoman North — Tollan, or Tula — Nilotepec — Otomi — South. Mallachtlinco — Cuitlan — Cohuixca — Mixtecan — Zapotecan Guaxaca — Zacatlan — Zoque. Quiche — Chinontan —

To the North of the Otomi Nation for 1000 miles were roving tribes of Chichemecan hunters, or poorer Savages. Peru which seems totally unknown to them was advancing in population until its civil wars ruined it. South. and Michoacan now Tarasca was a civilized nation on the North west. Tlaxcallans an anti toltecal republic which was left in exist from contempt opened the door to the destruction of this people.

Guaxaca otherwise Antequera was pacified. (another word for conquered) & taken possession of 1 by Juan Nuñez de Mercado. a. 15-22 —

The village of the Holy Ghost, (Quatzcalco, or Tuscacoalco, one five Sandoval a. 15-22

Colima is 60 Leagues S. W. of Michoacan —

1519

Vera Cruz founded N. I. de la Victoria, where was Tobasco. & also Segura de la Fro afterwards abandoned, after the retreat from Mexico.

Medellin was built or founded by Sandoval near the river of St Juan de Ulua

geographic continued page 173

tinued ſtill paying our court to Montezuma, in the manner ſo great and generous a prince deſerved, never ſitting down, not even Cortes himſelf, in his preſence, until the king commanded it. The converſation frequently turned upon our holy religion, and the truths thereof ſeemed to be every day making more impreſſion upon the king's mind.

Cortes now entered again upon the ſubject of Montezuma's acknowledging the ſovereignty of our Emperor, to which Montezuma replied, that he would ſummon the princes his vaſſals, which he accordingly did, and nearly the whole of them attended within the ſpace of ten days. Among the few who abſented themſelves was that relation of Montezuma's already ſpoken of, as of extraordinary proweſs in war, who returned for anſwer, that he would neither come, or pay any more tribute. The king was incenſed at this, and ſent officers to apprehend him, but without ſucceſs. The princes being aſſembled and the little page preſent, Montezuma reminded them of the ancient prophecies, whereby they were told that from thoſe parts where the ſun riſes, men were to come to rule the country, and that with their arrival ſhould ceaſe the empire of the Mexicans. The king added, that for his part he believed we were the people ſpoken of; that he had ſacrificed to his gods, requeſting in vain an anſwer from them, but they referred him to the former ones, and commanded him to aſk no more, whereby he concluded their will to be that obedience ſhould be yielded to the king of Caſtille, to whom theſe ſtrangers were vaſſals. "I "now," continued he, "beſeech you to give them ſome token of "ſubmiſſion; they require it of me, let no one refuſe. For eighteen "years that I have reigned, I have been a kind monarch to you, you "have been faithful ſubjects to me; ſince my gods will have it ſo, "indulge me by this one inſtance of obedience." The princes, with many ſighs and tears, promiſed Montezuma, who was ſtill more affected than them, that they would do whatever he deſired. He then ſent a meſſage to Cortes, telling him, that on the enſuing day, he and his princes would tender their allegiance to his Majeſty our Emperor. This they accordingly did at the time appointed, in the preſence of all

our

our officers, and many of our ſoldiers, not one of whom could refrain from weeping, in beholding the agitation and diſtreſs of the great and generous Montezuma.

Cortes and his captains being in the preſence of Montezuma, converſing about indifferent ſubjects, the general took an opportunity to aſk ſome queſtions relative to the gold mines. Montezuma told him that the richeſt were in the province of Zacatula, and he gave an account of the manner in which the gold was obtained, which was, by waſhing the earth, the ſmall grains of metal ſinking to the bottom. He alſo informed Cortes that they obtained it in two rivers in the province of Guztepeque, where the natives did not obey him, but that if Cortes would ſend ſome troops thither, he would order his officers to conduct them. Cortes thanked the king, and pitched upon the pilot Umbria, and two ſoldiers to examine the mines of Zacatula. To thoſe in the Chinantecan and Zapotecan territories he ſent a captain named Pizarro, a young man, his relation; but at that time the names of Pizarro and Peru were equally unknown. The latter took with him four ſoldiers uſed to mining, and four noble Mexicans. Montezuma then preſented Cortes with a map, admirably painted on cloth, of the whole northern coaſt as far as Tabaſco, an extent of a hundred and forty leagues. Among the rivers was that of Guacacualco, which Cortes determined to have examined, and Diego de Ordas offering himſelf, was accepted by Cortes contrary to his own inclination, as he was a perſon from whoſe advice and judgement he derived great advantage. Montezuma told De Ordas on his departure, that his power did not extend where he was going, but that if he wiſhed for the aſſiſtance of his frontier garriſons, he was welcome to take them.

The firſt who returned was Gonzalo de Umbria. He brought with him gold to the value of three hundred crowns, and reported that the mines would be very valuable, if they were as expert at the buſineſs there, as in St. Domingo or Cuba. Two principal perſons of that country alſo attended him to Mexico, and brought a preſent of gold of about

Kami is the generic name for divinities in Japan — note. Kama - Hindoo - Eros or Cupid - & Camadeo, the Camadeo Peru

Asia. Bauhuns introduced the tonsure. The country of this King was the ancient Magadha
Med Nerg.— [illegible] affinity subsists between the history of Sesothis & Bauhuns.—

incarnation. as Vishnoo on the plains of Matra, antecedently to the Kallee yug or bra
age when virtue and vice are balanced. By Indian chronology 4700 years ago, by
Gyk 454 from the foundation of the Indian Empire.

The division of mundane aera into 4 ages was an idea also of the ancient
reans of Asiatic origin. according to whom the duration of the world was to be eight
nd cycles. The asiatic ages are 1. Sotze yug — or Golden age, 2. dwapar yug or
ver age when virtue and vice are balanced. 3d Kalee yug when evil preponderates
noo was born in the dwapar yug & disappeared a little before the Kalee yug
h began 4884 years ago according to some computations that would be 747
s before the flood and according to Bailli 454. after the foundation of the
ian Empire.

× But three ages, and the most remote antiquity admits of but three seasons of the year.

. Ghreeta is supposed to be the composition of Vishnoo
Cheerra, radiated disk, a weapon of Vishnoo. / the crown of the Persian King
ished the Greeks with the fable of Apollo & Hyacinthus — as Ecos or the
probably did of Narcissus.

incarnation as Bhoodh. to reform the Vidas, forbid human sacrifice
purge worship of the grosser rites. a. c. 1000 —

which is to be, in Kallee to punish the wicked.
The Indians believe all the incarnations to relate to Jesus.

The Japanese had seven primitive Gods. to whom they
equally added five (note the general adoption of these additions
or Amida, the Japanese triad is a Scythian divinity the Kalmuc
ip Xaca- Mooni who they say was a [illegible] in India 1000 years ago
a even so or brought Lamaism to Tangut according to them.
tars also venerate a tutelar god named Hatchi dai or Chai who has
wife & children.

and to whom they offer food.
The Sikes of the present day are the protestants of India their founder N
=nou, a native of Lahore lived in the latter part of the 15th century
Note on Samanaeism, Saman, Samhuin. Rhuin - Scythic & ancient Kaelic the Moon
Saman Scythic a hermit &c. ancient Bosteans / eternal fire of Samhuin - Kaelic - the
fire was preserved by the virgins - their Kaelic / creed maintained transmigration
Hercules, was represented as an old man leading a multitude by chains from his
to their Ears. Beal the sun presided over the Summer Solstice, his festival was on
-day. Samhain the moon over the winter Solstice, festival first of November. and
Offerings to the moon. all fires were extinguished & renewed from the sacred
at these festivals
note Eothas. Kybele, there seems an identification of epithets of two divinities in Dian
Orythia or Eothas
Note on the Kaelic worship - Like the Assyrians the Kaelic had "the harlot of the
-ple, a ritual of the Solar worship -
Note upon the Gothes. Suionia. the Danish Islands and Peninsula called Scania b
Ptolomy was occupied previous to the invasion of the Children of Odin. The
Suiones were a nautical people. the invaders were literate their history is in the
Edda which consists of five Runic poems. / the Runic / like the Ogham / has
letters / taken from figures of trees. - The Scandinavians began to shew themse
generally about the beginning of the 9th century when they first invaded Engl
The children of Odin ascended the Don. then striking to the left above the Gulp
Bothnia Finland, crossed that of Bothnia. There route is traceable through
onia above lake Vener in the Edda.
Note upon Suionia. Had they received their ritual from Egypt there would also have
brought thither, the Metempsychosis, circumcision, abhorrence of Swine's flesh
and the tonsure none of which the Suiones had.
N. B. The ancient Struggle for the dominion of the world was between Egypt A
Assyria Hindostan & Bactriana which was once tributary to Thebes. on the
walls of the temples of which are reindeer drawn Chariots. Zoroaster also was

about a hundred crowns value, offering to become his Majeſty's ſubjects. The having aſcertained the ſituation of the mines was matter of great ſatisfaction to Cortes. Umbria deſcribed the country in which he had been as very rich and populous, and indeed he and his companions ſeemed to have returned no way the worſe for their journey, and Cortes intended that it ſhould be ſo, in order to make up their former differences.

Diego de Ordas reported that he had paſſed through very populous diſtricts, and had been univerſally well received; that he had met with bodies of the troops of Montezuma on the frontiers, of whoſe outrages the inhabitants made heavy complaints, for which De Ordas ſeverely reprehended the military chiefs, threatening them with the puniſhment of the lord of Nauhtlan. Proceeding towards the river he was hoſpitably received, by the caciques and inhabitants of the neighbouring country. On ſounding the mouth of the river they found three fathom water at low-tide, in the ſhalloweſt part, and within the bar, water ſufficient for large ſhips, it ſtill deepening as they went higher up. He alſo found a place fit for a naval eſtabliſhment, where the natives came to him, and offered themſelves as vaſſals to his Majeſty, complaining bitterly of Montezuma and his officers; they alſo pointed out to our people the place, where, in a late action they had killed many of his troops, and which they had in conſequence named "Cuilonemequi," that is to ſay the place of the ſlaughter of the Mexicans, giving them a moſt opprobrious epithet. He further repreſented the ſoil of the country as fit for cattle and tillage, and the port as well ſituated for trade with Cuba, St. Domingo, and Jamaica, but diſadvantageous in regard to its diſtance from Mexico, and the Moraſſes in its neighbourhood. Pizarro returned from Tuſtepeque with gold in grains to the value of a thouſand crowns. He related how he aſcended into the mountains inhabited by the Chinantecans, who ſallied out under arms, and refuſed to ſuffer the Mexicans to come among them, vowing that they would kill them all if they attempted it; but our people were admitted willingly, and they there obtained gold in its native ſtate with a rough ſurface. Pizarro

brought with him certain of the chiefs of the country, who wiſhed to renounce the Mexican yoke, and become ſubjects of his Majeſty. Theſe Cortes received moſt kindly, and diſmiſſed to their homes with a promiſe of ſupport and protection. He then enquired for the other ſoldiers; to which Pizarro replied that the country being rich, and the people well inclined to us, he had left them to make a plantation of cocoa and to collect ſtock and birds; as alſo for the purpoſe of exploring the rivers and mines. Cortes ſaid nothing at the time, but ſeverely reprimanded him in private, for going beyond his orders, and employing the ſoldiers in ſuch ridiculous purſuits. He alſo immediately ſent off a meſſenger, with orders to them to return to their head quarters.

Cortes now demanded of Montezuma a general contribution of gold to be made through the whole extent of his territories, to our emperor, and alſo that the king ſhould deliver to us his treaſure for the ſame purpoſe. Montezuma immediately ſent officers to thoſe diſtricts where the mines were, requiring a quantity of plates of gold, of the uſual ſize paid in tribute, two of theſe being ſent as a ſtandard. He at this time however remarked to Cortes, that from many of his diſtricts gold was not to be expected in any conſiderable quantity, the people only poſſeſſing ſuch toys as had been tranſmitted to them from their anceſtors. Much gold was immediately tranſmitted from the rich provinces, but when the order was received by the refractory lord who was nearly related to Montezuma, the anſwer which he returned was, that he would pay no tribute, for that he had as good a right to the throne of Mexico as Montezuma himſelf. This greatly enraged the king, who immediately ſending truſty officers with his token, the ſeal, they apprehended and brought this chief to Mexico. When he came into the preſence of the king he behaved with ſuch inſolence to him as appeared to border upon madneſs, and Cortes learning theſe particulars, and alſo that Montezuma had ordered him to be put to death, interceded in his favor, and obtained leave to keep him in his cuſtody. As ſoon as he had an interview, he addreſſed this chief very kindly,

and

Upon King Prathaut. (by some hen Estes, Prapositus) Prahout or Prahlaeta. Jupiter
father of King Bali. (in the water he appears as Jupiter (Narasinga)) who founded
Bali pore on the Coast of Coromandel. The Stories of the incarnations seem ill and
worn by the Brahmins from whom Kircher got them.

3. Upon Rama Rama. (the Greater) Bel Rama (Great Lord) Brama Three Goddess
(Dionysius God of Nyssa, Nagara Nergy, Bacchus (Bacchus was Rajah
of Odra and Sovereign of Pallebothra or Patna and the Country of the Gan-
des at the heads of the Ganges whom Alexander did not venture to invade. Some collate his aera
with Ninrod's (he is the 5th & 6th incarnation of the Avatars). The Rama Rama
Avatars and Thor of the Edda agree in all circumstances.

Four great conquerors appear in the History of the Old World. Ninrod the
Nimus or Orion who destroyed the Bactrian Empire. His descendant Belus the Great
Gen. Bacchus who extended his conquests to westwards to Thessaly. Rama
or Bacchus King of Nyssa who conquered from the Don to Ceylon, and Par-
otherwise Pharaoh Sesostris (Ramesis King of Egypt, subsequent to Belus
Heleus?) the subverter of his Empire and who married his grand daughter Scythea
extended his conquests to Scythia. a. 3. 300.

Bacchus introduced the tonsure, and licentious use of wine. The Persians before his
were an abstemious people but subsequently addicted to excess. He was
particularly venerated by the Scythians & Arabs.

Pallebothra or Patna is the capital of the ancient Palli whose empire extended
the Indus to Siam of which last Country their language is now the sacred text.
called the Pahlavi, was the language of the Parsees, And its alphabet is the
of the Zend, Pahlavi Zend or Zendaveста of Zoroaster, but the languages differ
guage of the Zend, which has no proper alphabet, and is harsher and more
ering the Northern languages in sound having been communicated to the
by Zerdusht. — The language of the Vidas the cryptographic text of
hmins is thus called Deva Nagari, from the City Nagara or Nerg
the two, with the Tamulic which wants the B, Chaldean, Parsic, Chinese
most particularly deficient in the soft sounding consonants which
Scythians have, & which had become unintelligible to them in the

tome of Herodotus, Thibetian, Tartarian, Malay and Abyssinian [illegible]
linked with the Sanscreet or ancient Kashmerian the purest remain
Antediluvian Language. — How Rom it has been observed is incarnate as
Saviour. —

Icelandic. Thorr was a great King — His name is there is a Rune — the P. b
lapsing into th. (which (theta) came into the English thro' the Dani
it may be derived from Braud. — For is Thor. — probably father of the Gods
Freya. Niordr, who may be Kirkonos, or Neptune or Woden — He has other Sons
also Beiter & Beiter, sunde Beit to Lad, a Labourer & Loc, a Daughter — the
Son of Loas (who may be Edder) was Eng[illegible]ines King of Suecia or Suione
a. a. C. 24. at the arrival of Odin, otherwise called Lucas. A.S. (Lord Sy
His son, alias Se: oming — is here called He-ming. Lucy? King —
The Icelanders preserved the perpetual fire, and showed human victims. & wo
. Tophetth of the Jews — a human body with a King crowned (Mani the Moon and
the head of a calf. Dagon. heavenly host
Tophetth this word probably a bull. too signifies a throne —

This blow cane is of ancient use in India. and is now used by the Seneka tribe
of North America. it is six feet long.

Religion — continued from top — The Cubans had their Hermits or virg
who lived secluded lives —

At the feast of Huitzilopochtli in May — young people of both Sexes dressed themselves in red f
a kind of ale seeds was delivered in to the temples to make images of paste — these w
also moulded as the bones of Huitzilopochtli — & communicated to ale, to eat
note the custom ascribed to the Scythians of eating the bones of their ancestors
Those who kiss the hands to the Sun and Moon. Job. This was the practice in Mexi
Odin was the Standard bearer of the Northern Migrations. Solar
Norroe. Niordr &c under Norroway.
Porre or Thor. Jupiter. both of Iceland Disan (Dis) Icelandic Goddess of Fates.
An ancient sculpture in Iceland relative to Frithna & Freyer. as is also probab
its original those that are called St George & the Dragon —
The Algonquins name the divinity Manni Tuck. asiatic words — to
Ja-Maha, is from the same asiatic root

and endeavoured to make a friend of him, offering him his liberty, which however Montezuma would not accede to, but deſired he ſhould be put in chains as the others had been.

In twenty days from the time of the orders being iſſued, the tribute was collected. The king then ſummoned Cortes, with the captains and ſoldiers who uſually formed his guard, and addreſſed us ſaying, "Know, that I am indebted to your great king, and eſteem him, for "having ſent an embaſſy to me from ſuch a diſtance, and alſo becauſe "I am convinced that according to what we have heard from our an- "ceſtors, he is to rule us; a prophecy which is confirmed by the de- "clarations of our gods. Take this gold, which is all that could be "collected on ſo ſhort a notice, and alſo the treaſure which I derive "from my anceſtors, and which I know you have ſeen; ſend it to "your monarch, and let it be recorded in your annals, that this was "the tribute of his vaſſal Montezuma. I will give you for your "emperor ſome moſt valuable jewels named calchihuis, each of which "is worth two loads of gold; I will alſo ſend three tubes uſed for "ſhooting darts or pellets, ſo richly adorned with jewels that he will "be pleaſed to ſee them, and this which I now give is the laſt of the "treaſure which has remained with me." We all took off our helmets, and returned thanks to the great Montezuma for his liberality and mu- nificence, which Cortes promiſed that he would repreſent in the ſtrongeſt terms to his Majeſty.

After ſome more converſation, Montezuma commanded his officers to deliver to us the treaſure which was in the concealed apartment. This was accordingly done, and we were for the ſpace of three days conſtantly employed in taking it to pieces, from the various manners in which it was worked up; in this we were alſo aſſiſted by the royal goldſmiths from Eſcapuzalco. When thus ſeparated, the articles of gold were formed in three heaps, weighing upwards of ſix hundred thouſand crowns, excluſive of the various other valuables, the gold in plates and bars, and the metal in its rough ſtate from the mines. The

goldſmiths melted down the metal which was in the heaps, and ran it into bars of the breadth of three fingers. When this was done, another preſent was received from Montezuma, ſo rich that it was worthy of admiration, excluſive of the jewels called calchihuis, the ornamented tubes covered with jewels and pearls, the beautiful embroideries of pearls and feathers, and the penaches, and plumage, a recital whereof would be endleſs. The bars of gold were ſtamped with the imperial arms by the approbation of us all, and as to the rich ornaments, it was judged beſt that they ſhould not be taken to pieces. We alſo cauſed weights to be made of iron for the purpoſe of aſcertaining the quantity of gold in the bars. They were not perfectly exact, but perhaps an ounce more or leſs, being arrobas, half arrobas, and down to four ounces. The officers of his Majeſty valued the gold, altogether, and excluſive of ſilver and ornaments, at ſix hundred thouſand crowns; but ſome ſaid that it amounted to more. Nothing farther was then thought neceſſary, than to deduct his Majeſty's fifth, and diſtribute the ſhares to the officers and ſoldiers; Cortes however propoſed that the diviſion ſhould be poſtponed until more treaſure was brought in, and more exact weights made, but the ſoldiers were clamorous for an immediate diviſion, for they perceived that ſince the various articles had been taken to pieces, above a third part was already gone; for Cortes, the captains, and others, were conveying it off and concealing it. At length it was determined to weigh it, and to poſtpone the diviſion until the enſuing day. It was accordingly ſo done, and excluſive of the ornaments and plates of gold, it was found to amount to upwards of ſix hundred thouſand crowns. I will now relate how it was divided, and how the moſt of it remained with Cortes and certain others.

In the partition of the treaſure Cortes firſt laid aſide his Majeſty's fifth; ſecondly, for himſelf, another fifth; thirdly, a portion of the gold to reimburſe the expences in the Iſland of Cuba, and alſo for the naval expenditure incurred by Velaſquez, and the deſtruction of the ſhips; fourthly, for the expences of our agents in Spain; fifthly, for our ſoldiers in Villa Rica; ſixthly, for the loſs of killed horſes; ſeventhly,

Idol worn of Bootan

Identity with Seeva

Seeva

ERLIK KAWN. Moongela. Seeva, or Kiaw
pron a Siberian Medal Ang: Kawn

Weights — an anoba is 25 lbs. of 12 oz or 64 marks to the lb.
100 cattellanos, or 130 ducats and a fraction go to a lb. of Gold.

Religion

Roman High priest, or King of the Groves, a fugitive priest who
d his office by killing his predecessor — he was high priest of
ana — observed the Sulvan Custom the victim who was pred
y killing an assailant —

In the Bagvat Ghee a Kreeshna says "Holy Men depart
i life in the shining light of day, within the six months of the Sun's
course &c &c go direct to Brahma. a corroboration of this may be
ginating in a northern country, and where could the Idea of
Mad Mankind

Geographic—
Gabriel De Rojas / this name is celebrated in Peru. founds
Gracias a Dios. a. 15-30- (or 30)-
St Gil is the Haven of Truxillo founded by Las Casas. 15-24
Comayagua.
Olancho or S. George de Olancho. 40 leagues from thence
Puerto Caballos 4 leagues thence.
Triumpho de la Cruz at cape 3 Points founded 1524
St. Maria de Darien founded by Enciso 15-09-

Religion (continued — Osiris — Egyptian Mythology. they learnt from S.
the deification of their King. Diod. Sic. / — Eight primitive Gods. (Herodotus / Sun. osiris, M
Isis. Jupiter, vivification, Vulcan fire. Ceres production. Neptune Ocean Minerva air, Pan Nature
A second Osiris, a Son of the Sun. identified with Bacchus. born at Nyssa in arabia felix,
great Conqueror in Ethiopia & elsewhere, a cultivator, a civilizer, introductor of arts &
enes.— if S. Bacchus of Greece and Ramman of Asia were an Egyptian King —
Hermes Mercury Cadmus Laudma, introductor of Literature and elegant arts
his Minister—

Query. may not the tradition of the benefactorial couple, who
appear by the side of the Lake. which exists in Peru / seems to ha
been deduced from Scythia or the Old world where it exists
relate to the deluge? this couple collected, organised & civilized

venthly, for the reverend father and the captains; eighthly, double ſhares for the cavalry, muſketeers, and croſsbow-men. Thus by the time all theſe drafts were made, what remained for each ſoldier was hardly worth ſtooping for!! Many refuſed to take their ſhares, and the whole, nearly, remained with Cortes. We were obliged to be ſilent, for to whom could we appeal for juſtice? Some at length took their ſhares at a hundred crowns, and then cried out for more; theſe men's mouths Cortes ſtopped, giving privately a little to one, and a little to another, with promiſes in abundance on condition that they kept themſelves quiet. That which was allotted to the ſoldiers in Villa Rica went no better, as ſhall be related in its place, and ſuch was the reſult of the diviſion of Montezuma's treaſure.

Our captains got chains of gold made for them by the king's workmen; Cortes had alſo ſimilar works executed for him, together with a ſervice of plate. Many of our ſoldiers who had lined their pockets well did the ſame, and deep gaming went on, day and night, with cards made out of the heads of drums; and thus we paſſed our time in Mexico.

Quitting for the preſent the ſubject of Montezuma's gold, badly divided, and worſe employed, I will relate what happened to a poor fellow, one Cardenas a pilot and a native of Triana. He had a wife and children, and like many others of us little or nothing to give them. When he perceived that all this immenſe treaſure of Montezuma's had dwindled into a ſhare of a hundred crowns, and that he, after all his battles, had nothing to expect in future but hard blows, it made ſuch an impreſſion on him, and he expreſſed himſelf ſo loudly, that it could not but come to the ears of Cortes. Accordingly when he heard all that, and much more, which had been ſaid, he called us together, and in a long ſet ſpeech gave us a great many honied words, which he had an extraordinary facility of doing, wondering how we could be ſo ſolicitous about a little paltry gold, when the whole country would ſoon be ours, with all its rich mines, wherewith there was enough to make

us

us great lords and princes and I know not what. To the more loud he gave ſome ſmall preſents, and to Cardenas, he ſecretly promiſed to ſend three hundred crowns for his wife and children. This Cardenas was afterwards very troubleſome to him.

As all men are avaricious, as with moſt the deſire of acquiring increaſes with what they poſſeſs, and as it was well known that a great quantity of valuable pieces of gold was taken out of the treaſury, ſuſpicion naturally fell on ſeveral. Juan Velaſquez de Leon had then ſome large chains of gold, and trinkets and ornaments of that metal, in the hands of the king's workmen, and the treaſurer Mexia knowing of it, and alſo how he had procured the gold, laid claim to them; but De Leon reſiſted, ſaying it had been given him by Cortes, before it was ran into bars; to which the treaſurer replied, that Cortes had concealed enough, and taken enough from his ſoldiers already, without giving him ſo great a quantity. The quarrel roſe ſo high between them, being both valiant men, that they drew their ſwords, and before they could be parted each had received two wounds. Cortes on hearing it ordered them to be put in arreſt, and in chains; this he did to keep up appearances, having privately ſpoken to De Leon who was his particular friend, and deſired him to ſubmit quietly; and the other he releaſed in conſideration of his office as treaſurer. Velaſquez was a ſtrong man, and uſed to walk much backwards and forwards in the apartment where he was confined. Montezuma hearing the rattling of his chains, enquired who it was; and being told, he interceded with Cortes for him, on the firſt opportunity. Cortes laughing replied that Velaſquez was a mad fellow, who if he did not keep him confined, would go up and down the country robbing his majeſty's ſubjects of their gold. The good king ſaid, if it was only on that account he was detained, he would ſupply his wants, and begged that he might be releaſed. Cortes affected to make a favor of it, but at length agreed, declaring that he would baniſh him from head quarters. Accordingly he went as far as Cholula, but in ſix days returned, richer, by the king's gold, than when he went. After this Cortes and Mexia were never great friends.

The

From a Chinese painting. A Menerie a
ew. Spectators in a summer house, and a band of Musici
d others baiting the Animal

Additional on religion

Culhuas creed. Transmigration. Mictlan. Hell, or Hell
Their Hebrew in 13 chapter
How created man was nourished with the milk of the Tuna. the Tuna
humming bird's food is drawn from the Tuna
Mexitli. the Teocalli.
Temples of Teotihuacan described in Sahagun
Tzatzitepec. the hill of shouting near Tula. like the Cave of Dunbyshire
A considerable affinity between the fable of Saturn & Quetzalcoatl. p. 1. 240
he retired to the imaginary Tlapallan. / Thus Tlapallan: the name of the
general state whenever that was. Tlapallan. the great exalted Saturn
Quetzal coatl means either "feathered" or "green" serpent God.

Veneration for green gems.
Crosses. before the arrival of the Europeans. in Yucatan. Mexitli, Quet
=zalcoatl, Tepiqueq, Tlanquistepec. / discovered by Botturini.
Chilan Kan-bal. the name of the great Prophet of Yucatan.
A 40 days fast.
Paradise in water. like the S. S. Islanders. N. Egypt also other
ancient nations.
Tlaloc. the Jupiter Pluvius & Lord of Paradise. painted blue & green & holding
a zig-zag golden rod. Jupiter
Chalchihuitlicue. clothed in Green. the Atmosphere. Juno.
Xiuhtecutli. God of fire. Vesta. & products. Pluto.
Centeotl. Ceres. Goddess of Corn.
Huitzilopochtli. Huitzilin. (this is the orthography.) Mexitli. Mars.
born without a father in Coatepec. near Tula his mother Coatlicue.
Tezcatlipoca. Jupiter.
Mixcoatl Diana
Tezcatzoncatl Bacchus
Coatlicue. Flora or Ceres

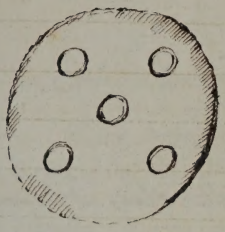
The king at this time made a propoſal of marriage to Cortes, offering him one of the princeſſes his daughters. This offer Cortes received as it merited, and ſuggeſted the propriety of her being previouſly initiated into the myſteries of our holy religion, by being baptized; to which the king who was on all occaſions compliant, immediately aſſented. He however continued as attached as ever to his worſhip and ſacrifices, which put Cortes and his captains to a dilemma; but it was thought moſt conſiſtent with their duties as chriſtians to incur the danger of inſurrection, and deſtroy the idols of the Mexicans, in order to plant the true croſs in their place, or if that was found impoſſible, we reſolved to content ourſelves for the preſent with making a chapel for the chriſtian worſhip in the temple. Seven officers and ſoldiers attended Cortes, when he waited on Montezuma to ſignify to him our reſolution. When it was made known to him, and he ſaw the violence with which the meaſure was determined to be carried into effect, he earneſtly begged permiſſion to conſult his prieſts, and Cortes appearing touched with his ſituation, made ſigns to the officers and ſoldiers to retire, and leave the king with him and the reverend father. He then told him, that in order to accommodate the matter more to his ſatisfaction, he would endeavour to prevail with his officers, for the preſent to offer no violence to the idols, provided a part of the great temple was appropriated to the purpoſe of a chapel, and an altar and crucifix allowed to be placed there; which being once done, his Majeſty would in a ſhort time be convinced of the errors and falſehood of his worſhip. To this Montezuma with much agitation, and the appearance of deep ſorrow, heavily conſented; and in conſequence, an altar and crucifix being erected, maſs was ſolemnly ſaid, and a perſon was appointed to take care of the chapel.

The time of our ſtay in this city was one ſeries of alarms, ſufficient in themſelves to have deſtroyed the lives of thoſe who were not ſupported by the divine interpoſition. It appeared, that in conſequence of our late meaſure, and the repreſentations of the prieſts acting upon the prejudices of the people, our dangers were now thickening on us.

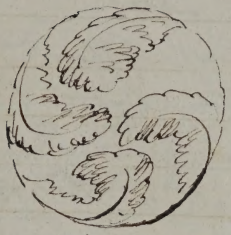
Their

Their gods threatened to leave them unleſs we were put to death, for having violated their temple, and it was the determination to obey their will. This reſolution was communicated to Montezuma by his prieſts, and all his chief warriors, who added to their religious ſubject of complaint, every other which they could collect, relative to our conduct ſince we arrived in Mexico. The page Orteguilla alſo at this time came to inform Cortes of ſome alarming circumſtances, ſuch as a number of ſecret conferences which he had obſerved, between Montezuma and his nobility and chiefs, the angry and melancholy countenance of the king, and other circumſtances highly important and intereſting to us. Cortes immediately on hearing this, taking with him five of his captains, and his interpreters, waited on Montezuma. The king ſeemed much diſtreſſed, and informed him, that he was grieved to have lately learned, that it was the determination of his gods that we ſhould all be put to death, or expelled from Mexico; he, therefore, being our ſincere friend, recommended to us on no account to run the riſk, but to ſave our lives, whilſt it could be done, by a ſpeedy retreat. Cortes and the reſt could not conceal their uneaſineſs on hearing this, and no wonder. The general, however, immediately replied, that he was on that occaſion much grieved at two things; one was, his not having veſſels ready for the purpoſe of returning, the other, that in caſe of his doing ſo, he ſhould be under the neceſſity of taking his Majeſty with him, in order to preſent him to his ſovereign the Emperor. He therefore intreated Montezuma, that he would reſtrain his prieſts and warriors, until he ſhould have time to build three ſhips, ſaying if this were not acceded to, we were all reſolved to die to the very laſt man; and as a proof of the ſincerity of his determination to depart, he declared, that he would immediately ſend his ſhipbuilders to fell wood and conſtruct the veſſels, on the coaſt. The determination of Cortes to bring Montezuma with him, made that monarch more diſtreſſed and dejected than ever; Cortes then repeated his aſſurance of no unneceſſary delay, and deſired the aſſiſtance of the king's carpenters in conſtructing the veſſels; at the ſame time requeſting his influence with the prieſts and nobility, to prevent any inſurrection in the city, and his endeavours

to



Japanese.



japanese

Chinese

Japanese
Became a Crest

note this
in
2d plate
of
fourteen of M

the triangle rare

a day

Note somewhere
a rose signifies a day - poetical

Tetrachtspeg

of the Nobleman, personified by
moral bearing - thus it would be
read in Tartary - V. Smith.

Skiold is added to
Swedish proper name
to signify "Gentility"

Religion Continued.

Tonantzin. our Mother. her temple at N.S. de Guadalupe.

Tepetaton. Dutchli. Lares

Tlauelcoteotl. rational owl. Typhon. The Evil Spirit

Mictlantecutli & Mictlancihuatl. Pluto & Proserpine

Tezcatlipoca. the Sun.

Omtecutli & omecihuatl. or Citlalatonac & Citlalicue. the stars or heavenly bo

Cihuacoatl. Eve.

Tonatiuh & Metztli. Sun & Moon.

Quetzalcoatl. God of the Golden age. Saturn / God of peace instru
in arts, morals &c. Didymus, opposite to Quetzalcoatl.

Tlaloc. & Chalchiuheje or Matlalcueje.

Xiuhtecutli

Centeotl.

Mictlantecutli & Mictlancihuatl. (Pluto & Proserpine.

Coatlicue Morpheus.

Coatlicue. Luna

Tonatiuh or Metztli Diana. Her attendants Tlauelcholes

Tlacahuepancuexotzin. & Panialton / speed. the first is deliberation

Yoatecutli. God of Merchants

Micquiotl. Diana

Opochtli. God of fishing. alias Amimitl

Mixcoatecihuatl. Goddess of Hell.

Tzapotlatenan. & Hygeia.

Tezcatzoncatl. Bacchus.

Xolotlan. Black faced. Esculapius.

Coatlicue. Flora or Maia. probably the Mother of Huitzilopochtli

Tlazolteotl. intercessor Hebe. expedition

Tzinacanehicuetzal. Venus Pronuba

Xipe (something relative to Skins) God of Goldsmiths

to appeaſe his gods, provided it were not by human ſacrifices.

Cortes immediately proceeded to execute his determination of building the three ſhips, contrary to what is related by Gomara, who ſays that the whole was a feint, in order to lull Montezuma and his ſubjects. But on the contrary, Martin Lopez, the principal carpenter, who is now living, has aſſured me that he really, and in good earneſt, did ſet about the work, and that the veſſels were actually on the ſtocks. During this time we remained very penſive and ſad, in the city of Mexico, from the precarioufneſs of our ſituation, expecting every moment to be attacked. Our apprehenſions were increaſed by the informations obtained by Donna Marina, and the terror and tears of the page, who, underſtanding the language, obtained hints which eſcaped our knowledge. We kept however good and conſtant watch on Montezuma, and guard on our quarters, never ſleeping out of our armour, and our horſes were conſtantly bridled and ſaddled all night.

Without meaning to boaſt I may ſay of myſelf, that my armour was to me as eaſy as the ſofteſt down, and ſuch is my cuſtom, that when I now go the rounds of my diſtrict, I never take a bed with me unleſs I happen indeed to be attended by ſtrange cavaliers, in which caſe I do it only in order to avoid the appearance of poverty, or pennrioufneſs, but by my faith, even when I have one I always throw myſelf on it in my clothes, ſuch it is to be a true ſoldier! another peculiarity I have is, that I cannot ſleep through the night, but always awaken and get up in order to contemplate the heavens and ſtars, and thus I amuſe myſelf, walking backwards and forwards, as I uſed to do when on guard, for a good ſpace of time, without hat or cap; and glory be to God, I never yet caught cold, nor was a jot the worſe for it. And this the reader muſt pardon me for mentioning, it not being from vanity, but that I wiſh him to know what kind of men we, the true bred ſoldiers, and real conquerors of Mexico were.

CHAPTER II.

Expedition of P. de Narvaez. His army defeated by Cortes at Cempoal, May 26th. 1520.—Return of the Spaniards to Mexico. War there. Death of Montezuma. Expulsion of the Spaniards, July 1st. Battle of Obtumba. Reception of the Spaniards in Tlascala, July 10th.

THE Bishop of Burgos who was at this time president of the Indies, bore unlimited sway in that department, during the absence of the Emperor in Flanders. He now sent out orders to Velasquez, to seize, and make us prisoners, at all events: in consequence of which the governor of Cuba fitted out a fleet of nineteen ships, and embarked therein an army of one thousand four hundred soldiers, and twenty pieces of cannon, with all necessary ammunition and appointments, eighty cavalry, and one hundred and sixty muskets and cross-bows, the whole being under the command of Pamphilo de Narvaez. Such were his exertions, and his animosity against Cortes and us, that he went for these purposes a journey of above seventy leagues from the Havannah. While he was thus occupied, it appears, that the court of royal audience of St. Domingo, and the brethren of the order of Jeronymites, got intelligence thereof. They, knowing our good intentions, and great exertions for the service of God and his Majesty, and considering also how injurious to the interests thereof, the meditated expedition of Velasquez was likely to be, sent the oydor Lucas Vasquez de Aillon to Cuba, with orders to put a positive stop to the sailing of it. But whatever orders, opposition, or menaces he could make use of for the purpose were of no avail, Velasquez confident of the support of the Bishop of Burgos, and having also expended all his property in the equipment,

1 Peruvian Image

Dis — Dison is the ancient Icelandic name of the Goddess of Fate
the names of this divinity — Hallee
The Mass of the Ancient Latins was named Sattisubsalus the devar
See Scandinavian Mythology

Celtic religion
Hephaestus or rather Vahni Tenthi.
Death God of festivity
Torentius

The likeness of Suvra & Erlich Kawa

Vulvan religion continued.
Teoteoinan. Cybele.
Itama leuthi. old woman.
Tepeticton Deatyte. besides these and more. were 260 Gods. to
so many days of their Calendar were consecrated.
Huytzico was an idol called heart of the people. in emerald & snakes by th
on which were engraved a bird encircled by a Snake

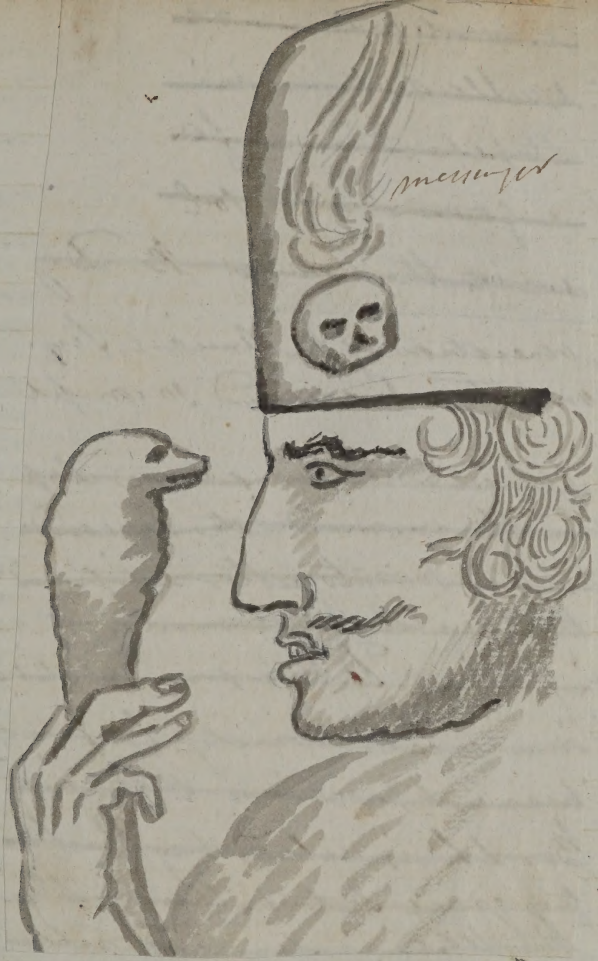
equipment, was more bent on it than ever, and held the oydor and his authorities in defiance. When the oydor therefore ſaw that his endeavours to prevent the armament from ſailing were in vain, he thought it moſt prudent under all the circumſtances to embark with it, in order to mediate, and prevent any injury to the public ſervice, or, if neceſſary, by virtue of his office as oydor, to take poſſeſſion of the country, in the name of his Majeſty the Emperor.

The fleet fitted out by Velaſquez and under the command of Narvaez, arrived at the port of St. Juan de Ulua without any accident, except the loſs of one ſmall veſſel. The whole compoſed a formidable and reſpectable force, conſidering that it was entirely created in the Iſland of Cuba. On its arrival, the ſoldiers who had been ſent in queſt of the mines in that country, as has been before related, went on board, and it is ſaid that on ſo doing, they returned thanks to God for their delivery from the command of Cortes, and the dangers of the city of Mexico. Narvaez finding them ſo open, ordered that they ſhould be plentifully ſupplied with wine, to render them more communicative, in which he effectually ſucceeded. Cervantes the jeſter, under colour of facetiouſneſs, expoſed to him all the diſcontents of our people relative to the partition of the treaſure, and alſo the quantity that was obtained; giving Narvaez in many points, much more intelligence than he wiſhed to hear. They alſo informed him of the bad ſtate of the garriſon commanded by Sandoval in Villa Rica. The news of the arrival of the fleet was ſoon communicated to Montezuma, who kept his knowledge of it from Cortes, and at the ſame time ordered liberal gifts to be preſented to Narvaez, whereby a private correſpondence was opened between them, to the diſadvantage of the former, of whom Narvaez told the king every thing that was bad, ſaying we were all outcaſts and robbers, and that the Emperor hearing of our bad conduct, and of our having detained the great Montezuma in cuſtody, had ſent that force to liberate him, and puniſh us, by putting us all to death. This intelligence gave the king great ſatisfaction, for from the account of their force which was accurately repreſented to him in painting, he thought us loſt. He ſent

more magnificent preſents to Narvaez, and could not conceal the ſatisfaction which he felt. It was now three days ſince he had received this intelligence, without communicating it to Cortes, who obſerved and was ſurpriſed at the alteration which he perceived in him. At the expiration of that time however, being, from the circumſtance of Cortes having paid him two viſits in the courſe of the day, apprehenſive of the general having obtained the knowledge of it through ſome other channel, he told him the news, ſaying, that he had juſt that moment received it. Cortes demonſtrated the greateſt joy, and after Montezuma had ſhewn him the repreſentations of it which had been tranſmitted to him, whereby Cortes learned all that it is was neceſſary for him to know, he took his leave, and communicated it to his troops, who inſtantly got under arms, and fired vollies. We ſoon however perceived that Cortes when by himſelf was very penſive, and ſhortly calling us together, he explained to us the evident deſtination of this armament, that it was meant againſt us, and he now, by gifts, as well as promiſes, as if what we received was his private bounty, inſtead of our fair right, made intereſt with us, to continue firm and ſteady to him in the conteſt which was to take place.

From the repreſentation of our deſerters, Narvaez was induced to ſend to the governor of Villa Rica, demanding of him to ſurrender his command. He entruſted this buſineſs to three perſons, Guevara a man of talents and a clergyman, a relation of Velaſquez named Amarga, and one Vergara a ſcrivener, who accordingly ſet out for Villa Rica. Sandoval had received information of the arrival of an armament, and gueſſing its object, prepared againſt an attack. He ſent off all his invalids to an Indian village at ſome diſtance, and having exhorted his ſoldiers to ſtand by him, he cauſed a gibbet to be erected, and placed a guard on the road of Cempoal. When the deputation from Narvaez arrived at Villa Rica, they did not meet a perſon except Indians, for Sandoval had given orders to the Spaniards not to appear, and remained at home himſelf. They were perplexed how to proceed, but gueſſing by the appearance of the houſe that it muſt be the governors, after

going



Religion

e door of the temple of Zuctzalcoatl Calmecac was the mouth of a

A

gure of a Star was represented on a pillar, for the Planet Venus which

worshipped & sacrificed to.

There is no trace of Buddhism among the Sulvans so far as

to allow incarnation of the divinity but the names of

, among the Chiapanecas, the first of their heroes and

whom they name the first Month of the Sulvan

dar and who they say was reckoned of their great Saint

uild the tower to heaven, is very like it

Religion — Huitzilopochtli

The personification of Quetzalcoatl, bow, arrow. Quetzal is the cord of fibre
grass — Huitzilopochtli with their ancestor — his attributes and emb
atical of his mortality — the statue of Coatlicue was commemorative
of having eaten his bones after cremation according to the
Tartar custom.

Mexicans is the Mesquitzli wood of
which the bones were made — The Ibis shared a visitation
the God for a year, treated him as such then transfixed him
by a dart in sacrifice to the God he personified Huabo

— odensee. Boden Lee, Bothnia — Bhoodh.

Portland Vase. Adonis.

Shintoism of Japan. antecedent to the introduction of Budsoism. it had no
the bloody ritual of Mexico — variety of Gods of elements local Gods ex
a divine incarnation in the monarch — ~~Izanami & Izanagi~~
Izanagi & Izanami God & Goddess — & bird Vicitadauki ×

~~Mr Off &c~~. Posts are of very ancient establishment in Tartary. They were under the
most exact regulation in the Persian dominions. The business was done by running
footmen. They carried a weight each not exceeding 20 pounds.

× Acacia arrow — ~~ivory~~ & utile — trees —

× Vicitadauki — birds

going to maſs they proceeded thither. On entering, Guevara ſaluted Sandoval, and immediately began a converſation, the purport of which was, the great force Velaſquez had ſent, and the expence he had been at, for the purpoſe of arreſting Cortes, and all with him as traitors; and he concluded by ſummoning Sandoval to ſurrender himſelf and his poſt, to General Pamphilo de Narvaez. The expreſſions uſed by this churchman greatly diſpleaſed Sandoval, who told him, that if it was not for the protection his holy profeſſion afforded him, he ſhould be puniſhed for his inſolence, in uſing the word traitors to thoſe who were more faithful ſubjects to his Majeſty than either Narvaez or Velaſquez; and as to his demands, he referred him to Cortes, telling him to go to Mexico and ſettle his buſineſs with him there. Guevara inſiſting on executing his miſſion, called to the notary Vergara to take out his authorities, which he was preparing to do, but Sandoval ſtopped him, ſaying, "Look you Vergara; your papers are nothing to me; I know not "if they are true or falſe, originals or copies; but I forbid you to read "them here, and by heaven if you attempt it, I will this inſtant give "you a hundred laſhes." At this Guevara cried out, "Why do you "mind theſe traitors, read the commiſſion." Sandoval then calling him a lying knave ordered them all to be ſeized; whereon, a number of Indians who were employed to work about the fortreſs, having been prepared for the purpoſe, threw trammels over them like ſo many damned ſouls, and making them faſt, inſtantly ſet off with them on their backs, for Mexico; they hardly knowing if they were dead or alive, or if it was not all enchantment, when they travelled in ſuch a manner, poſt haſte, by freſh relays of Indians, which were in waiting, and ſaw the large and populous towns, which they paſſed through with a rapidity that ſtupified them. Thus they were carried, day and night, till they were ſafely depoſited in Mexico. Sandoval ſent to conduct them, Pedro de Solis, now firnamed De atras La Puerta, by whom he wrote a line in haſte to Cortes, informing him of the particulars. As ſoon as the general got intelligence of their arrival, he ordered us out under arms, and received them with the greateſt honor, looſening them from their trammels, and apologizing for the rudeneſs of

of his officer, whom he highly blamed. He gave them the moſt hoſpitable entertainment, and treated them with the greateſt reſpect; and having pretty well lined their pockets with gold, he in a few days ſent back, as tractable as lambs, thoſe who had ſet out againſt him like furious lions.

As our general was one of thoſe whoſe reſources never are exhauſted, ſo alſo it is hardly neceſſary to dwell upon the merits of thoſe valiant officers and ſoldiers, who accompanied him, and by our valour in the field, and wiſdom in counſel, ſupported him through all his difficulties. On this occaſion it was determined by us, as moſt expedient, to ſend letters to Narvaez and others, which ſhould come to hand previous to the arrival of Guevara. In this we moſt earneſtly requeſted, that no ſtep might be taken which would endanger our general intereſts, or encourage the Indians to riſe upon us, and we alſo held out every inducement that friendſhip or intereſt could ſuggeſt, to bring them over to us. At the ſame time, under theſe general offers of kindneſs, we did not forget ſecretly to treat with ſuch as we thought likely to be wrought upon, for Guevara and Vergara had both informed Cortes that Narvaez was not well with his captains, and that gold would do wonders with them. Cortes adjured Narvaez in his letters, by their former intimacy, not to give cauſe by his conduct for the Mexicans to riſe and deſtroy them all, aſſuring him that they were ready to do any thing to liberate Montezuma, whoſe diſpoſition had alſo greatly altered ſince the time that Narvaez had begun to correſpond with him; adding, that he was convinced, that what was alledged to have been ſaid by him never could have come from ſo wiſe a man, but was the fabrication of ſuch wretches as Cervantes the buffoon, and the others, who had miſled and miſrepreſented him. He at the ſame time offered an unlimited ſubmiſſion to whatever Narvaez would order. Cortes alſo determined to write to the Secretary Andres de Duero, and the Oydor Lucas Vaſquez, and took care that the letters ſhould be well accompanied with preſents. When Narvaez received the firſt letter he turned it into ridicule, handing it about among his officers, calling us traitors, and ſaying

ing

B.C. 536. Cambyses. whose Nation first found the true Solar ritual corrupted and dispersed its Priesthood. which affords a plausible epoch for the dissemination of the Egyptian Superstitions.

N. B. The Phuts [illegible] of Siam so pronounced like the Arabic, - (Mencius Bhoodh) is represented with hair & features —

The Festivals of Sintoism

Monthly. 1st. day. 2d new. 3d full 4th last day of old moon.

Yearly. 1. new years day - 2d. 3d day. 3d month Goddess of Riches — 3d relates the Submersion of Peirenan. 3th day of 5th month.

6th on 7th day of 7th month. 5th 9th day 9th month God of hunting — Festivals of Dai Sin & 16th de of 8th Month. D Sin Great God of Heaven — Four Gods of Merchants — a variety more of monthly & yearly festivals but the above tends to shew the affinity so far as the Calvan ritual — besides these they had their pic images to temples mountains & woods &c.

Budha was 1000 years B.C. certainly Budhism never reached America it reached China however early so as the year 500 B.C. —

The igneous worship of the Calvans was derived from the Scythic. M. Bailly on the said worship with that people according to him it Originated in north Scythia —

Divine influence of the two Great Planets. the Sun and Moon the Bagvat Geeta. Holy Men departing this life in the shining light of day the light season of the Moon in the six months of the Sun's northern course go to Brahma. Those who depart in the smoaky dark season, and while the Sun in his southern path of his journey & went for a while into the regions of the Moon return again to Earth. These two light and darkness are esteemed the world's ways he who walketh in the former path returneth not while he walketh in the latter cometh again upon Earth —

Religion.
Adhee-Bhoot. is the destroyer. Karma the active regenerator of Nature —
Bagvat Geeta

Crishna the pioneer says to his pupil Arjoon "I am the sacrifice, the worship, the Spices, the invocation, the ceremony to the Manes / Mantra / of ancestors; I am the provisions, I am the fire, and I am the victim! ——— I am the mystic syllable Om I am generation and dissolution the place where all things are deposited and the inexhaustible seed of all Nature."

"Those who worship the Devatas go unto the Devatas, the worshippers of the Pitrees Pectrees or Patriarchs go unto the Patriarchs the servants of the Bhoots or Spirits go unto them."

"Among Immoveables I am the Mountain Himalaya" among horses I am Oochisrava who arose with Amreeta out of the Ocean" among the Spirits I am Prahlad." among cows I am Surya the daughter of Jah-hoo. Among birds I am the prophet Oosana." OOSANA
adhee-Atma the ruling Spirit — athem Germ. afflatus — breath
Greek Dæmones — Brahma on the Lotus. Shakra a weapon
Myrmidons killed by Apollos dirt. & Prometheus.
Grian wisdom. Sanscrit a-gnan ignorance. Lat. Eno — Moha. folly
The horse is produced by Neptune in Mythology. & Mantra producing the Horse in the Hindu Mythology the horse is preceded by Soora Devee Goddess of Grapes.

Seer at the command of Brahma swallows a fatal dose in consequence of which his blood remains black.

The fish Macca, the sword fish, & Sisumara Chakra or it is represented as a fish with a long snout — a very objectionable character.

Karee Sanscr. One of the names of the Divinity Language
Kamac the Peruvian Creator is so named from Kama, the soul or animal
The Ancient Peruvians had a cross of polished Jasper, about two feet high made to be worn

ing that he would put us all to death; and as to Cortes, he would cut off his ears, and broil and eat them, with a great deal of ſuch abſurdity. Of courſe he ſent no reply whatever. Juſt at this time, Guevara and his aſſociates arrived, and they immediately launched out in the praiſes of Cortes, declaring the expreſſions of reſpect he had made uſe of relative to Narvaez, the ſervices that he had rendered, and the advantages that would reſult from a junction of their forces. This put Narvaez in ſuch a rage that he would neither ſee nor hear any of them again. They then began to converſe with their comrades, and when the latter perceived how well furniſhed they had returned, they already wiſhed themſelves amongſt us. At this time alſo, arrived the reverend father of the order of mercy, and brought with him the private letters and preſents; he went firſt to kiſs the hands of Narvaez, and to tell him how anxious Cortes was to ſerve under his command, but Narvaez would not ſee him, except to revile and abuſe him. The reverend father therefore gave up that part of his commiſſion, and applied himſelf to the diſtribution of the preſents, with ſuch effect, that in a ſhort time all the principal officers of the army of Narvaez were in our intereſts.

If the oydor was originally inclined to favour Cortes, he was now much more ſo ſince he ſaw the magnificent preſents which had been ſo liberally diſtributed. This was ſtrongly contraſted by the miſerable avarice of Narvaez, who uſed to ſay in his lofty tones to his major domo, "Take heed that not a mantle is miſſing, as I have duly entered down "every article." This penurioufneſs put his officers in an uproar of exclamation againſt him, all which he attributed to the intrigues of the oydor Vaſquez. There was alſo a difference between them owing to his not keeping due accounts with the oydor, as was his duty, relative to the proviſions ſent in by order of Montezuma; and Narvaez being encouraged by the favour and patronage of the Biſhop of Burgos, now ſeized the oydor, and ſent him as a priſoner to the Iſland of Cuba, or Old Spain, and a gentleman of the name of Oblanco, a man of conſideration, remonſtrating with Narvaez upon this, and ſaying a good deal upon the merits of Cortes and his aſſociates, was alſo arreſted by him, and

and thrown into priſon, which he took ſo much to heart that in three days he died. The oydor Vaſquez, during the voyage, prevailed on the captain of the ſhip to land him in St. Domingo, where, waiting on the officers of the royal court of audience, and the Jeronymite brothers, they were highly offended at the treatment their officer had received, and made complaints upon the ſubject to his Majeſty's council in Caſtille, without any effect however, owing to the influence of the Biſhop of Burgos.

The troops ſent by Velaſquez now quitting the coaſt, advanced to Cempoal. The firſt thing that Narvaez did upon his arrival there, was, to take forcibly from the fat cacique, all the gold and mantles, and alſo the young Indian women who had been given to Cortes and his officers by their parents, and had been left in his care on our march to Mexico. The fat cacique complained to him of this, and alſo of the robberies committed by his ſoldiers, ſaying, that it was otherwiſe when Cortes and his men were there; upon which Salvatierra, a very impudent boaſting fellow exclaimed, "See what fear theſe Indians have of this inſig-" nificant Cortes." And yet I proteſt, that this man who was ſo ready with his tongue on all occaſions, when we came to attack Narvaez and his army, was the moſt deſpicable cowardly wretch I ever beheld. Narvaez at this time tranſmitted a copy of the commiſſion which he held under the government of Cuba, the farther particulars relative to which I will mention in their place. Our general received conſtant intelligence of whatever occurred, from his friends in the army of Narvaez, and alſo from Sandoval, who now informed him that he entertained five perſons of conſideration who had quitted Narvaez, aſſigning as a reaſon for it, that when they ſaw he did not reſpect his Majeſty's oydor, ſtill leſs had they any hopes of good treatment from him, being the oydor's relations. From theſe perſons he had got information of the reſolution of Narvaez, to come immediately and ſeek us out in Mexico.

This being made known to ſuch of us as Cortes was in the habit of adviſing with, he agreed with us in a general determination, to march againſt

Religion.

The Sulvans had all the principles and rituals of the
Bonzes —

Queen Vomais. The Chinese have a female Idol bearing in her head five birds
long tails.

The Egyptian Kneph. The Divinity is painted blue.
taboo - king's eldest wife sacrificed at his death. Relations children
sacrificed that he might recover
sacrifice, fingers are cut off. — the idea is that the strength of the person
ied is transferred to the Sick (Scythians) — two sons sacrificed.

The number of Morais in decay. — they are let go to decay from a
It is an invasion of the Sanctity of the place to repair it.
blue & green beads is required.
human sacrifice, at the inauguration of the King, the Eye of the victim is
him, he being with his mouth open figuratively to signify
fer, and his anticipation of what is most valuable. the victims
sacrifice devolving to him to whom it is offered
They are acquainted with most of what is called Greek astronomy —
ing the Gemini by an assimilated denomination. They have their
& Pollux designated according to that of Greece
They have the Triune Godhead father, son, and Spirit
wise Bird. —

The Hebridians worshipped Taramis (Taranis) the thunderer
Belus, or Whose anniversary, the first of May (doubtful) the fires were
guished tithes paid, and fires rekindled. They burned Malefac
devised two fires (the children drawn through the fire to Insure
comes their modern proverb that a man in a strait is between
fires of Bel. Antient buildings 1st (vulgarly called forts) of large
of a round (circular) form, tapering, three stories (stages) high
double wall and passage round the wall." 2. Ly Cairns or
of smaller stones. 3 dly Single stones. one called the Hermitage
20 feet high and nearly as thick. 4th ly at Clavernis are

Art. Religion

"thirty nine Stones erected, 6 or 7 feet high, two in breadth each, placed in form of an avenue, eight feet broad, & the distance between each stone six. one stone at the Entrance of this avenue (eastwardly from the north) and at the south end of it is a circle of twelve stones of the same distance and height with the other thirty nine and in the centre of this circle is one stone of thirteen feet high shaped like the rudder of a ship; without this circle are found stones of the same height and distance on the east west and south side. The inhabitants say this was a heathen temple &c.

See a description of the western Islands of Scotland By Mr. Martin Printed for A Bell 1703. 8vo.

The Druids were succeeded by the Bards who used a rhetorical ornament & also subsequently fell to decay. habit of composing lying on their backs in the dark, & stones upon their bellies & their heads wrapped up in a plaid their dark & mysterious versification. They take their names from the colours of the Sky, rainbow clouds &c.

Chinese depict the Moon as a Hare or rabbit pounding rice in a mortar & the Sun by inscribing the figure of a cock within a circle.

Students dress in China like Monks of a Calvanist priest is blue black

Lambeth Sea Chinese Chart

Coincidence - the Calvans placed their Hell in the North & in Ireland at this day. they will not bury on the North side of a Church.

Note - for the tracing of the origin of the Americans what can be found in the old world relative to the metempsychosis & the immortality of the soul. both articles of the American creed.

Note on the Ingreaan Ritual from S. W. J.

The Danians retained a veneration for the Sun the planets & fire resembling the Hindoo Sects called Saivas & Sagnicas the sun

againſt Narvaez and his forces, leaving Alvarado in the command of the city. With him remained all thoſe who were not inclined to go with us, and alſo all thoſe who we thought would be better from us, as having an inclination towards Narvaez or Velaſquez. We alſo left a ſufficiency of proviſions, which was the more neceſſary as the harveſt had been deficient, owing to a want of rain. We ſtrengthened our quarters by a good palliſade, leaving eighty three ſoldiers, with four large guns, twenty four muſquets and croſs-bows and ſeven horſes, to keep in awe, the populous city of Mexico.

Cortes having waited on Montezuma previous to our march, the king queſtioned him relative to his intention of marching againſt Narvaez, both being of the ſame country, and vaſſals of the ſame monarch. He alſo requeſted to know if he could be of any ſervice, expreſſing his apprehenſion, from what he had heard of their ſuperior numbers; and he alſo aſked of Cortes, an explanation relative to the charges brought by the new comers againſt him and us, that we were outcaſts and traitors, and that the others were ſent to bring us to puniſhment. Cortes chearfully replied, that he had not before ſpoken to him on the ſubject of his departure, becauſe he was convinced it would give his majeſty concern; that it was true we were all vaſſals of the ſame monarch, but utterly falſe that we were traitors and fugitives, for on the contrary, we had come fully authoriſed. That as for their deſtroying us by their ſuperior numbers, it did not depend upon them, but upon our Lord Jeſus Chriſt, and his bleſſed mother, who would ſupport us; and he alſo added, that as our monarch ruled many different countries, the inhabitants of ſome were more brave than thoſe of others, and that we were all natives of Old Caſtille, and called true Caſtillians; whereas our opponents were commanded by a Biſcayan; and that his majeſty ſhould ſoon ſee the difference between us, as he hoped with the bleſſing of God, to bring them back with him priſoners, and that our going ſhould not therefore give his majeſty any uneaſineſs. He alſo expreſſed his hope, that Montezuma would to his utmoſt endeavour, prevent any inſurrection in the city, as he certainly would, on his return, make thoſe who be-

haved ill in his abſence, dearly anſwer for it. Cortes then took his leave, embracing Montezuma twice, which the king returned, and Donna Marina acquitted herſelf ſo well in her office, that ſhe made the ſeparation a very melancholy one. Montezuma promiſed to do all that Cortes deſired him, and offered to aſſiſt him with five thouſand troops; an offer which Cortès, knowing indeed that he had them not to ſend, declined, by ſaying, that he required no aid but that of our Lord Jeſus Chriſt; but he requeſted that the king would cauſe due attention to be given to that part of the temple which was conſecrated to our holy religion. Having parted from Montezuma, he ſummoned Alvarado and the garriſon of Mexico, and addreſſing them in a body, he charged them to watch well, and not ſuffer the king to eſcape from them, promiſing, at his return, if they did their duty properly, to make them all rich. The clergyman Juan Diaz, and certain other ſuſpected perſons, he left with Alvarado.

We then ſet out on our march by the city of Cholula, from whence we ſent to the chiefs of the Tlaſcalans, requiring them to aſſiſt us with a force of four thouſand warriors. They replied, that if it was againſt Indians, they were very ready to go; but if againſt our countrymen, they begged to be excuſed. They ſent us however twenty loads of fowls. Cortes alſo wrote to Sandoval to join him, with all his force, at a place called Tampinequeta, or Mitalaquita, twelve leagues from Cempoal. We marched without baggage, in regular order, and with two confidential men, foot ſoldiers, a days journey before us; they did not keep the direct road, but went by thoſe where cavalry could not paſs, enquiring for intelligence concerning the army of Narvaez.

When we had proceeded ſome diſtance upon our march, one of our advanced parties met with four Spaniards, who turned out to be thoſe of Narvaez, with the proofs of his commiſſion of captain general. On our coming to where they were, they ſaluted Cortes with great reſpect, and he immediately diſmounted, in order to confer with them.

Alonzo

ids is very numerous at Banares where many agnihotras are
ually blazing and where the Sagnicas when they enter or leave their
botal Office kindle with two pieces of the hard wood Semi a fire
they keep lighted through their lives for their mystical ceremony the
moned of Solomon sacrifices the Obsequies of departed Ancestors & their own
al pile. With the Religion of the Old Persians their Philosophy was intimately
ted for they were assiduous observers of the luminaries which they
d and established a number of artificial cycles with distinct names.

Three religions successively prevailed in ancient Iran
ely - The pure, or primitive natural religion of one God, the
or venerated in his visible works - 2.ly Brahmanism. part of
h consisted in a classification of Society - and third ly Sabaism
all these, Cyclography and the Igneous worship probably
a part. and Besides these were, Budsoism, or an
rional incarnation / with the Hindoos / and Lamaism
perpetual incarnation of the Divinity with the Scythi
the Scythians / of the Divinity —

In America we find the Solar ritual, Cyclography,
hamanism, Sabaism & the igneous worship - but
ther the pure primitive worship, Budsoism nor Lamaism.
dasses their Migration with that of the Hindoos who
ded the igneous worship, as it now exists, with Brah
is now to India. —

Powdered Sandal wood is sprinkled on my limbs / 2.ly red powder / mot
thers - O God of love mistake me not for Kishadevas —
Indian History of the 5 Shafted deity who subdues Iracas the Lord

1208. Vyasa wrote or collected the Vedas in Chaldea. 1000 a. C. Sesac
a great Egyptian conqueror imported Budsoism or the
formation into India.

2.ly Thunder or Hurricane

Religion

The Greek Jupiter is nursed by a Goat and in Gratitude apotheosizes her horn. The Gothic Jupiter is seated in a chariot / o. Icelandic mythology / drawn by Goats the names are Tangara and Tangrisner - look in the Scythic Language we find Tangara the name for Heaven.

Jupiter in the Giants war has his bolts brought to him, Thrym in the same / Nordic / has his hammer stolen - Indra in the Hindoo deposits his bow aside.

Jupiter calls up a mortal - Hercules - Indra calls up mortal Dushmanta.

Thrym disguises himself as a beautiful woman to deceive the Giants, and one of the incarnations of Bhoodh is in like manner and for the same purpose.

"The Sons of God saw that the daughters of men were fair and they took them wives of all that they chose"

"There were giants in the earth in those days, and also "after that when the Sons of God came in unto the daughters "of men and they bare children unto them - the same became "mighty men which were of old men of renown.

And God saw that the wickedness of man was great" and the Lord said I will destroy man"

Genesis Chap. 6

note - the Vedas are lost at the deluge.

Tho' nestorian Christianity found its way to America it does not follow that it was brought by the first Christians

Alonzo de Mata the principal perſon, was then proceeding to read the documents; but Cortes cut him ſhort, by aſking him if he was a royal notary, adding, that on producing his commiſſion he ſhould be obeyed, but if he had it not, he could not be permitted to read any ſuppoſed orders; that thoſe of his Majeſty he ſubmitted to, proſtrate on the ground, but deſired to ſee the original. Mata, frightened, and holding in reality no office under the crown, did not know what to ſay; but Cortes relieved him from his embarraſment, and he halted here, to give them time to refreſh themſelves. Cortes told them our deſtination, and that he was ready to receive any meſſage from their general, of whom he never uſed a diſreſpectful expreſſion; but he talked privately with theſe perſons, and uſed arguments of ſo convincing a nature, that before they ſeparated, he made them completely his friends. On their return, they were loud in their praiſes of Cortes, and his generoſity; and of the magnificence of our appearance; for many of our ſoldiers bore ornaments of gold, upon their arms, and chains and collars of the ſame about their necks. Sandoval and his party joined us on the next day, at the rendezvouz; they were in all about ſeventy. With them came the five who had quitted Narvaez, and who were moſt graciouſly received by Cortes. Sandoval told him, that he had ſome time before ſent two ſoldiers, diſguiſed like Indians, into the quarters of Narvaez; their complexions reſembled the natives, and each brought a load of fruit to ſell. They went directly to the habitation of the brave Salvatierra, who bought their fruit for a ſtring of yellow beads; he then ſent them to get graſs for his horſe, on the banks of a little river; they brought the laſt load about the hour of veſpers, and having fed the horſe, they ſat there till night, during which time they heard Salvatierra obſerve to ſome of his aſſociates, what a lucky moment they had come at, to get the ſeven hundred thouſand crowns, from that traitor Cortes. As ſoon as it was dark, our ſoldiers got out of the houſe unobſerved, taking with them the horſe, ſaddle and bridle, and on their way they met with another horſe which was lame, and which they alſo ſeized and brought off. Cortes laughed heartily when he heard it, and we afterwards learned that Salvatierra had diverted all the army of Narvaez

with his abſurdities, when he found the trick that had been played upon him. After that time they kept a better watch.

It was determined now by us, to ſend the reverend father of the order of mercy, with a letter to Narvaez, the contents of which were to this purpoſe. That we had rejoiced on hearing of ſo noble a perſon's arrival in this country, as expecting material advantage therefrom, both to our holy religion, and his Majeſty's ſervice; but that contrary to our expectations he had reviled us, and cauſed the whole country to revolt. That our general had ſent, offering to reſign to him whatever territories or provinces he choſe to occupy, and to engage in new expeditions. That if he came by virtue of a commiſſion from his Majeſty, we demanded a ſight of the original, within the ſpace of three days, for which purpoſe, and to obey it proſtrate on the earth, we had now advanced hither; but if no ſuch authority was in his poſſeſſion, he ſhould return to the Iſland of Cuba, and not do any thing here that would throw the country into a diſturbance, which if he attempted, we would as in duty bound make him priſoner, and ſend him to be dealt with according to his Majeſty's pleaſure. That he was anſwerable for all the lamentable conſequences that would enſue, and that this letter was thus ſent, becauſe no royal notary dare undertake to deliver one, as according to due form ought to be done, after the violence committed againſt his Majeſty's officer, the oydor, a crime Læſæ Majeſtatis, the perpetrator of which Cortes was in duty bound to apprehend and bring to juſtice, and for which he thereby cited him to appear and anſwer, calling God to witneſs the juſtneſs of his conduct. This letter concluding with expreſſions of great reſpect, was ſigned by Cortes, the captains, and ſeveral ſoldiers, and ſent by the Reverend Father Olmedo, and by a ſoldier of the name of Ulagre, whoſe brother came over with Narvaez as the commander of his artillery.

Olmedo on his arrival waited in Narvaez with great reſpect, and alſo proceeded to execute the reſt of his miſſion, in bringing together certain officers of that army, amongſt whom were Rodorigo Mira and Ulagre

Ulagre of the artillery. To theſe he liberally diſtributed his gold, and alſo, more privately, to Andres de Duero, with an earneſt invitation to him to viſit Cortes. Narvaez ſoon began to ſuſpect what was the real object of Olmedo, and was inclined to ſeize and make him priſoner; which being known to Duero, who had great influence with Narvaez, not only on account of his ſituation, but alſo from their being ſome way related, he repreſented to him the impropriety of committing ſuch an outrage againſt a perſon of a holy function. He alſo ſurmiſed to him the great probability that the ſoldiers of Cortes might be eaſily won over to him by a little attention and policy. Having by theſe arguments and other ſimilar ones appeaſed Narvaez for the preſent, he took his leave, and informed Olmedo of what had paſſed. Narvaez ſhortly after ſent for Olmedo, who waited on him, and deſired permiſſion to ſpeak to him in private, and there in a laughing manner began to tell him how he knew that he had given orders to take him priſoner, whereas there was not a perſon exiſting more devoted to his ſervice, and that he knew to a certainty many perſons in the army of Cortes would be very glad to ſee him delivered into the hands of his excellency; indeed he would venture to ſay our whole army was of that opinion, and as a proof of it, he aſſured him, that he poſſeſſed a letter full of abſurdities, which Cortes had written by the perſuaſion of thoſe who wiſhed to deliver him up, and which was indeed ſuch ridiculous ſtuff that he had been once or twice inclined to throw it away, but would with his permiſſion now bring it to him. He accordingly went, as he ſaid, for the letter, pretending he had left it in his baggage, but in reality to call to Duero and others, to deſire them to be preſent as witneſſes at the delivery of it.

Duero, in order to carry on his plan of getting an interview with Cortes, then propoſed, that ſteps ſhould be taken to open a communication between them and him, to which Auguſtin Bermudez a ſecret friend of Cortes added, that Duero and Salvatierra ſhould be ſent upon the buſineſs; this he did knowing the character of Salvatierra, who was not at all diſpoſed to the expedition. It was at laſt ſettled, that Duero ſhould wait on Cortes to invite him to a meeting for the purpoſe of accommodation

commodation, and the arrangement of their future meaſures, at a place which lay at a convenient diſtance between the quarters of the two armies, and that there Narvaez was to ſeize and make him priſoner, for which purpoſe he prepared twenty of his ſoldiers in whom he placed moſt confidence. Intelligence of all this was immediately conveyed to Cortes. The reverend father remained at the quarters of Narvaez, having made out a relationſhip to Salvatierra, with whom he dined every day.

Our general, on firſt hearing of the arrival of Narvaez, ſent a ſoldier who had ſerved in Italy and underſtood perfectly the management of the lance, to the province of the Chinantans, who had ſhortly before entered into alliance with us. They uſed lances much longer than ours, with blades of ſharpened ſtone. This ſoldier, named Barrientos, was ſent for the purpoſe of obtaining from them three hundred of their lances, and as there was plenty of copper in that province, he gave him directions to get two heads made of this metal, for each lance. Theſe were accordingly done, being executed with ſuch ingenuity that they exceeded the pattern. He alſo obtained the aſſiſtance of two thouſand warriors of this nation, who were to rendezvouz at our quarters, armed in the ſame manner. Having done this he returned, with two hundred Indians, bringing with them the lances which he had procured for us, and which we found on handling to be extraordinarily good, and we were immediately exerciſed with them. A muſter was alſo taken of our army, which amounted to two hundred and ſix, * including fife and drum, with five mounted cavalry, two artillery men, few croſs-bow-men, and fewer muſqueteers. And this was the force, and ſuch the weapons, with which we marched againſt, and were to encounter and defeat the army of Narvaez.

I muſt recall the recollection of my reader to that part of my narrative, wherein I related how Andres de Duero, and the Contador de Lares,

* Excluſive of the garriſon of Villa Rica.

Lares, negociated the appointment of Cortes to the ſtation of captain general. Alſo that they were to make an equal partition of all the treaſure that ſhould be acquired by him. Duero now therefore ſeeing Cortes ſo wealthy, under colour to Narvaez of a treaty whereby to get Cortes in his power, waited on the latter, in order to obtain from him his ſhare of the riches, for the third partner, De Lares, was ſometime dead. This Cortes not only acceded to, but moreover promiſed him equal command with himſelf, and an equal ſhare of territory when the conqueſt of the country ſhould be effected; ſo that it was agreed between them, together with Auguſtin Bermudez, Alguazil major of the army of Narvaez, and many others whom I will not now name, to get rid of the command of Narvaez altogether. Cortes to confirm theſe, and bring over others, was more liberal than ever in his preſents, with which he loaded the two Indians of Duero. On one of theſe days of intercourſe, after they had been a conſiderable time together privately, and had dined, Duero having mounted his horſe, aſked Cortes if he had any commands for him; to which Cortes replied, that he wiſhed to remind him not to deviate from what they had now ſettled, for that if he did, by his conſcience, which was his uſual oath, he would be in his quarters within three days, and that he ſhould be the very firſt perſon at whom he would throw his lance; and ſaying this, he bid him farewell. Duero turned off laughing, and ſaid that he would not fail. On his arrival at the quarters of Narvaez, he is ſaid to have told him, that Cortes and all with him were ready to range themſelves under his command.

Cortes now ſent for Juan Velaſquez de Leon, a perſon of much conſideration, and who had always been his particular friend, though a near relation of the governor of Cuba, and on his coming to him told him, in that ſmooth and perſuaſive manner that he could put on when ever he pleaſed, " Senior Velaſquez de Leon, Duero has informed me, " that Narvaez is anxious to ſee you in his camp, and that it is report- " ed if you go thither I am an undone man. Now my worthy friend " mount your grey mare, put on your fanfarona, (gold chain,) take with " you all your valuables, and more ſtill, which I will give you, and

go

" and fix yourſelf with Narvaez immediately, and diſtribute the gold " I give you according to my directions." Velaſquez replied, that he would willingly obey his orders in every thing but one, which was that of taking his treaſure with him. To which Cortes anſwered that he believed as much, but that he did not wiſh him to go on other terms than what he had mentioned. De Leon ſtill however continued firm in what he had ſaid, and after a ſecret conference ſet out for Cempoal. In about two hours after the departure of Velaſquez, Cortes ordered the drum to be beat to arms, whereon our little army aſſembled, and we ſet forward on our march. On our way we killed two wild hogs, which our ſoldiers ſaid was a good omen. We ſlept all that night by the ſide of a rivulet, according to cuſtom the ground our bed and ſtones our pillows, and next day arrived at the river and place where the city of Vera Cruz is now built, but which was at that time an Indian village, and planted with trees. As it was about midday and the weather very ſultry, we repoſed here for the preſent, being much fatigued by the weight of our arms and lances.

Captain de Leon arrived by day break at the town of Cempoal. The Indians were overjoyed to ſee him and circulated the news of his arrival, ſo that Narvaez heard of it, and immediately thereon came out to embrace him. Velaſquez having paid his compliments ſaid, that he only came in the hopes of making an amicable arrangement between him and Cortes; upon which Narvaez taking him aſide, aſked him how he could talk of treating with any ſuch traitor. Velaſquez replied, that Cortes was a faithful and zealous officer of his majeſty, and deſired that no ſuch epithet ſhould be applied to him in his preſence. Narvaez however perſiſted, offering, if he would renounce Cortes, to make him the ſecond in command; to which Velaſquez replied that he ſhould be unpardonable in quitting one who had done ſo much for the ſervice of his God and king. By this time all the principal officers had arrived to ſalute Velaſquez, who was a favorite amongſt them, being a very polite and well bred gentleman, of a fine figure and perſon, and he now wore a great gold chain which made

made two returns over his ſhoulders, and round his body, ſo that he gave the idea of a truly gallant ſoldier, and impreſſed all who beheld him with reſpect. The Alguazil Bermudez, and Andres de Duero, wiſhed particularly to communicate with him in private, but juſt at this moment arrived a Captain Gamarra, together with one Juan Yuſte, Juan Buono, and Salvatierra the braggart. Theſe perſons, determined Narvaez to make him priſoner, for the freedom with which he had ſpoken in favour of Cortes, and Narvaez had in conſequence given privately an order for the purpoſe, which coming to the knowledge of thoſe already ſpoken of, as having embarked in the intereſts of Cortes, they immediately repreſented to him the impropriety of ſuch a violent proceeding, and how impolitic it would be. Hereupon Narvaez again addreſſed him in a very friendly manner, requeſting his aſſiſtance to bring Cortes and the reſt of us into their power, and invited him to dine with him the next day. Velaſquez promiſed aſſiſtance to his deſign, but repreſenting Cortes as determined and head ſtrong, he recommended a diviſion of the country, and that each ſhould take ſeparate provinces. At this time Olmedo getting within hearing of Velaſquez, and ſpeaking in the manner of a perſon of truſt, addreſſing himſelf to Narvaez ſaid, "Let your excellency order out your troops under arms, "and ſhew him what your force is, that Cortes may know, and be "terrifyed at it." Narvaez agreeing to this, the troops were turned out in review order, and paſſed by them. Velaſquez complimenting Narvaez upon their number and appearance, and wiſhing him an increaſe of his power, the latter replied, ſaying, he believed Velaſquez was now convinced how effectually he could have cruſhed Cortes and all thoſe with him: to which Velaſquez only anſwered that he truſted they knew how to defend themſelves. On the next day he dined with Narvaez, and there was in company a nephew of the governor of Cuba, a captain in the army. The converſation turning on the recent events, this gentleman uſed very inſulting language in reſpect to Cortes; upon which, Velaſquez riſing up addreſſed himſelf to Narvaez and ſaid, "I have already requeſted, general, that you would not permit in my "preſence, diſreſpectful language of any of my friends, for we do not

" deſerve it." But the other gentleman, on this, launching out into ſtill greater liberty with Velaſquez himſelf, the latter inſtantly laid his hand on his ſword, deſiring Narvaez to permit him to puniſh him as a baſe liar; but the officers preſent interfering prevented miſchief, and it was recommended both to Velaſquez and Olmedo to quit the place. Velaſquez accordingly, on his excellent grey mare, armed in his helmet and coat of mail which he always wore, and his gold chain about his ſhoulders, went to take his leave of Narvaez, who returned his ſalute very coolly. The young man we have before ſpoken of was again very violent, but Velaſquez gave him no other reply than ſwearing by his beard, that he would in a few days ſee what materials he was made of: then, taking haſty leave of thoſe who were ſtanding by, he put ſpurs to his good grey mare, and was ſoon out of ſight, for he had got a hint or ſuſpicion that Narvaez would ſend after him, and ſaw ſome perſons on horſeback, apparently for the purpoſe; but he was too well mounted for them, and reached our camp in ſafety.

We were at that time repoſing by the ſide of the river, after the fatigues of ſo ſultry a march, when a report came from an outpoſt that horſemen were in ſight. On their arrival, what greeting, and embracing, and joy and congratulation! and how Cortes received them! and well he might, for they were eminently ſerviceable to him. We all got round to hear their narrative. Velaſquez told Cortes firſt how he had executed his commiſſion, and diſtributed his preſents. Then our merry droll friar took off Narvaez when he made him order out his troops in review, to laugh at him; and told us by what fineſſe he got him to read the letter; and how he had perſuaded the bragging fool Salvatierra that he was his couſin, the one being from Olmedo, and the other from Burgos; and of the ridiculous ſpeeches and geſtures the fellow made when he was talking how he would kill Cortes, and all of us, for the loſs of his horſe; mimicking him to admiration. Thus were we all together like ſo many brothers, rejoicing and laughing as if we had been at a wedding or a feaſt, knowing well that tomorrow was the day in which we were to conquer or die, oppoſed to five times

our

our number. Such is the fortune of war! We then proceeded on our march, and halted for the night by the river and bridge which is about a league diſtant from Cempoal; at preſent there is a dairy farm at that place.

After the departure of the reverend father and Juan Velaſquez from the quarters of Narvaez, it ſeems that certain of the officers gave advice to him of the ſecret practices which had been going on, and recommended to him to be well upon his guard, as Cortes had many friends amongſt his troops. The fat Cacique alſo, who was greatly in dread of being called to account by Cortes, for having delivered up the women and mantles with which he had been intruſted, was very vigilant in watching and obtaining intelligence of our motions, as he was directed by Narvaez to do.

Finding that we had now approached near to Cempoal, the fat Cacique thus addreſſed Narvaez. "What are you doing, and how "careleſs are you! do you think that Malintzin and his Teules are equal-"ly ſo? I tell you that when you leaſt expect it he will come upon "you and put you all to death." Although Narvaez laughed at this, he did not however reject the warning. The firſt thing he in conſequence did was, to declare war againſt us with fire, ſword, and free rope. This we learned from a ſoldier named El Galleguillo, who came over to us, or was ſent by Andres de Duero to Cortes. He then drew up his artillery, cavalry, and infantry, in a plain diſtant a quarter of a league from Cempoal, where he determined to wait for us. It happened to rain exceedingly heavy on that day, and as the troops of Narvaez were not accuſtomed to hardſhip, and moreover deſpiſed us, they grew reſtleſs and uneaſy in their ſituation, and the captains adviſed their chief to march them back to their quarters, which he accordingly did, forming his eighteen guns in a line, in front of the building in which he lodged. His officers alſo adviſed, that a grand guard of forty cavalry ſhould be poſted for the night on the road of Cempoal, and that ſome cavalry vedettes, and active foot ſoldiers, ſhould be placed to watch

the ford which we muſt paſs. Twenty of the cavalry were alſo to patrole during the whole night in and about the quarters of Narvaez. All this was done by the advice of his officers, who wiſhed to get back under ſhelter, and who deſpiſed Cortes, ſaying it was abſurd to ſuppoſe he would come to attack them with his pitiful handful of men, and that if he had advanced, it was only a mere oſtentation, in order to induce them to come into terms.

When Narvaez returned to his quarters, he promiſed publicly two thouſand crowns to whoever killed Cortes or Gonzalo de Sandoval. He placed as ſpies at the ford, one Gonzalo Carraſco who lives now in La Puebla, and another ſoldier of the name of Hurtado. He alſo filled his own quarters with Soldiers armed with muſquets, croſs-bows, and partizans, and did the ſame by thoſe of the Veedor Salvatierra, Gamarra, and Juan Buono.

As ſoon as we had arrived at the river which runs through the fertile meadows at about a leagues diſtance from Cempoal, truſty perſons being ſelected and ſent to the outpoſts, our Cortes ſummoned us all, officers and ſoldiers, around him, where he was on horſeback, and earneſtly enjoining ſilence, addreſſed us as follows. " Gentlemen, it is well " known to you that D. Velaſquez governor of Cuba ſelected me for " your captain general, not that your number did not contain many " equally worthy; and you alſo recollect how it was believed by us, and " publicly proclaimed, that we came to colonize, when in reality our " inſtructions went no farther than to barter with the natives. You al- " ſo recollect my determination to return to Cuba, in order to give an " account of my miſſion to him by whom I was entruſted with it, but " that by your command I was required to ſtay and colonize in the " country for his Majeſty's ſervice, as, thanks to God, has been done, " and a wiſe determination it was. You alſo made me as you recollect " your captain general, and chief magiſtrate, until his Majeſty's plea- " ſure was known, and we have in conſequence rendered eſſential ſer- " vice to our God and Monarch. I muſt now remind you how we have

" have written to his Majeſty, giving a full account of theſe countries, " and requeſting that the government of them may not be beſtowed on any " unworthy perſon, and that we, fearing the effect of the arts and influ- " ence of the Biſhop of Burgos, and of the Governor of Cuba whom he " favors, had reſolved to maintain his Majeſty's government and " right in this country, until his royal mandate duly authenticated " ſhould be produced to us, which we would then as in duty bound, " obey, proſtrate upon the earth. You alſo recollect how we have ſent " the treaſure obtained by us to his Majeſty. Now therefore, advert- " ing to other matters, I muſt remind you how often you have all been " at the point of death in various wars and battles, how we have ſuf- " fered from fatigues, and rains, and winds, and hunger, ſleeping on " our arms, on the ground and in ſnow. Not to mention above fifty " of our countrymen dead, and your own wounds as yet unhealed, our " ſufferings by ſea and land, the perils of Tabaſco, Tlaſcala, and of " Cholula, where the veſſels were prepared in which we were to have " been boiled, and our perilous entry into Mexico. In addition there- " to many of you have been on expeditions of adventure antecedent " to this, and have riſqued and loſt your properties, and now gentle- " men, Narvaez comes, and maligns and aſperſes us with the great " Montezuma, and immediately on landing proclaims war againſt us, " with fire, ſword, and rope, as if we were infidel Moors." As ſoon as Cortes had concluded this he proceeded to exalt our perſons and valour to the ſkies, and after an abundance of the moſt flattering promiſes he concluded by obſerving, that Narvaez came to deprive us of our lives, and properties; that he had impriſoned his Majeſty's oydor, and that it was uncertain if he held his command by any more than the favor of the Biſhop of Burgos. It was therefore neceſſary, he ſaid, for us, as faith- ful ſubjects, to fight in defence of his Majeſty's rights, our lives, and properties, and he now demanded to hear our determination.

Our officers and ſoldiers all replied, that we were ready and deter- mined to conquer or die; and we warned him not to ſay any more about an accommodation, or partition of the country, for that if he did, we would

would plunge our ſwords in his body. Cortes on hearing this applauded our ſpirit, ſaying, that he expected no leſs, and adding a profuſion of promiſes, and aſſurances that he would make us all rich and proſperous. He then, adverting to our intended attack, earneſtly enjoined us to obſerve the ſtricteſt ſilence, ſaying, that to conquer in battle, prudence and ſilence were more neceſſary than exceſs of bravery; that he knew our ardour induced all to ſtrive who ſhould be moſt forward, and that it was neceſſary to diſtribute us by companies, and to appoint to each his diſtinct duty. Accordingly, he ordered that in the attack the firſt thing to be done ſhould be, to ſeize the artillery. For this duty he ſelected ſeventy ſoldiers, of which number I was one, and put us under the command of Pizarro, an active lad, whoſe name however was at that time as little known as that of Peru. He gave us alſo further orders, that as ſoon as we were maſters of the guns, we ſhould join and ſupport the detachment which was to attack the quarters of Narvaez. This laſt mentioned duty he aſſigned to Sandoval, with ſeventy ſelected men, and as this captain was alſo alguazil major, he gave him a warrant to arreſt Narvaez, drawn up as follows.

Gonzalo de Sandoval, alguazil major for his Majeſty in New Spain. You are hereby commanded, to ſeize the body of Pamphilo de Narvaez, and in caſe he makes reſiſtance, to put him to death; the ſame being neceſſary to the ſervice of God, and his Majeſty, whoſe officer he has impriſoned. Given under my hand, at head quarters,

Counter ſigned,
Pedro Hernandez, Secretary. } Hernando Cortes.

Cortes alſo promiſed to the firſt ſoldier who laid his hand on Narvaez, the ſum of three thouſand crowns, to the ſecond, two thouſand, and to the third, one thouſand, as he ſaid, to buy gloves. He appointed captain I. Velaſquez de Leon to ſeize his relation Diego Velaſquez, with whom he had the quarrel, and gave him a detachment of ſeventy ſoldiers, retaining twenty with himſelf, as a reſerve, to go wherever he ſaw moſt occaſion, and more particularly to ſupport the attack upon the quarters

quarters of Narvaez, and Salvatierra, in a lofty temple. Having thus arranged his troops and inſtructed his captains, he addreſſed us in a few words, ſaying, he well knew that the army of Narvaez was four times more numerous than ours, but that they were not accuſtomed to arms, and many of them were ill; he therefore truſted, that, attacking them thus unexpectedly, God would give the victory to us, who were his faithful ſervants, and that next to divine aſſiſtance, we were to rely on our own courage, and the ſtrength of our arms; that now was the hour of trial, and that at worſt it was preferable to die with glory.

One circumſtance has ſtruck me ſince, which is, that he never once ſaid or inſinuated to us that ſuch or ſuch perſons in the army of Narvaez were our friends; and in ſo doing he acted like a wiſe captain, making us rely entirely on our own exertions, and uſe them to the utmoſt, without expecting any other aſſiſtance or ſupport. Our three detachments were now formed, and the captains at the head of each, they and the ſoldiers mutually encouraging each other. Our captain, Pizarro, explained to us how we were to ruſh in upon the guns with our lances at the charge, and that immediately on getting them in our poſſeſſion, the artillery men who were attached to his company ſhould point and fire them againſt the quarters of Narvaez.

What would we not have given for defenſive armour on this night! A morion, a helmet, or a breaſtplate, would have fetched any money. Our counterſign was Spiritu ſanto, Spiritu ſanto. That of Narvaez was Santa Maria, Santa Maria.

As Captain Sandoval and I were always intimate friends, he at this time called me aſide, and made me promiſe him that after the capture of the guns if I remained alive, I would ſeek out and attach myſelf to him for the reſt of the engagement. Theſe things being arranged, we remained with empty ſtomachs, reflecting on what was before us, and waiting for the orders to march. I was ſtationed centinel at an advanced poſt, and had not been there long when a patrole came to me, and

aſked

aſked me if I had heard any thing. I replied that I had not. A corporal ſoon after came to our poſt and ſaid that Galleguillo the deſerter of Narvaez's army was miſſing, and that he had come amongſt us as a ſpy; in conſequence of which Cortes had given orders that we ſhould march inſtantly. Accordingly we heard our drum beat, and the captains calling over their companies.

We joined the column, and proceeding on our march, we found the ſoldier whom we had miſſed, ſleeping in the road under ſome mantles, for the poor fellow not being inured to hardſhips was fatigued. We continued our march at a quick pace, and in profound ſilence, and ſoon arrived at the river, where we ſurpriſed the two vedettes of the army of Narvaez, one of whom, by name Carraſco, we made priſoner, the other flying before us into the town, and giving the alarm. On account of the rain, we found the river deeper than uſual, and difficult to paſs, owing to the looſe ſtones under our feet, and the weight of our arms. I alſo recollect that the ſoldier whom we had made priſoner called to our general, " Senior Cortes do not advance, for I ſwear that Narvaez is " with his whole force drawn up to receive you." Cortes gave him in charge to his ſecretary, Hernandez, and we proceeded, and on coming into the town, heard the man who had eſcaped, giving the alarm, and Narvaez calling to his captains to turn out.

Our company which headed the column, charging our lances, ruſhed on, and cloſing up to the guns, made ourſelves maſters of them without giving the artillery men time to put the matches to more than four, of which one ſhot only took effect, killing three of our ſoldiers. Our whole force now advanced with drum beating, and falling upon the cavalry brought down ſix or ſeven of them, whilſt we who had got poſſeſſion of the guns could not quit them, becauſe the enemy kept up a heavy diſcharge of arrows and muſquetry from the quarters of Narvaez. Captain de Sandoval and his company coming forward, marched up the ſteps of the temple, notwithſtanding that he was ſtoutly reſiſted by the enemy with miſſile weapons, muſquetry, partizans, and lances, and then,

then, we who were in charge of the artillery, perceiving that there was no longer any danger to them, left them to our gunners, and proceeded with Captain Pizarro to ſupport the attack of Sandoval, who had been forced down ſix or ſeven of the ſteps. Supported by us they again advanced, making the enemy give ground in their turn, and juſt at that inſtant, if I do not miſtake, I heard the voice of Narvaez crying out, "Santa Maria aſſiſt me, for they have killed me, and ſtruck out one "of my eyes!" On this we all ſhouted out, "Victory! victory! for the "Eſpiritu Santo! Narvaez is dead."

Still we could not force our way into the temple, until Martin Lopez the ſhipwright, a very tall man, ſet fire to the thatch of the roof, and the fire ſpreading, forced thoſe who were inſide to ruſh out and come tumbling down the ſteps. P. Sanchez Farfan was the firſt who laid his hand on Narvaez; we brought him priſoner to Sandoval, together with ſeveral of his captains, and continued ſhouting, "Victory! "Live our King and Cortes! Narvaez is dead!"

During this time Cortes and the reſt of our army were engaged with thoſe of the troops of Narvaez who yet held out, in ſome lofty temples which we now battered with the artillery. As ſoon as our ſhouts were underſtood, and the cauſe of them, Cortes made proclamation that all who did not inſtantly ſubmit, and range themſelves under the ſtandards of his Majeſty, and the command of his officer Cortes, ſhould be put to death. This however had no effect on thoſe who occupied the lofty temples where Diego Velaſquez and Salvatierra were poſted, until Sandoval with one half of our body, and the guns, proceeded againſt them, and entering, made thoſe officers and the people with them priſoners. As ſoon as this was done, Sandoval returned to keep guard upon Narvaez, who was doubly ironed. We had alſo with him under our care, Salvatierra, D. Velaſquez, Gamarra, Juan Yuſte, Juan Buono Viſcaino, and many other principal perſons. Shortly after, Cortes came in unobſerved, fatigued, and the ſweat running down his face; and addreſſing Sandoval, without any congratulation or compli-

ment, told him that it was impoſſible to deſcribe what he had gone through. Then turning about he cried, " What is become of Narvaez? " how is Narvaez? Sandoval anſwered, "Here he is very ſafe. Cortes then " ſaid, "Son Sandoval keep good watch on him, and the other captains." After which he haſtened out to cauſe proclamation to be made, that all ſhould immediately lay down their arms and ſubmit.

All this paſſed during the night, ſhowers falling very frequently, and in the intervals the moon ſhone; but juſt at the moment of our attack it was extremely dark, and rained heavily, and a multitude of fire flies appearing at the ſame time, the ſoldiers of Narvaez thought that they were the lighted matches of our muſquetry.

Narvaez was very badly wounded, and his eye was beaten out; he therefore requeſted that his ſurgeon named Maeſtre Juan ſhould be ſent for. This being done, whilſt he was under the operation of having his eye dreſſed, Cortes entered the room unnoticed; but being ſoon obſerved, Narvaez addreſſing him ſaid, " Senior Captain Cortes, " appreciate as it deſerves your good fortune, in having defeated and " made me priſoner." Cortes replied that his thanks were due to God, and to his valiant officers and ſoldiers, but that it was the leaſt of our atchievements ſince our arrival in New Spain, and that for daring, he thought the arreſt of his Majeſty's officer much exceeded it. He then quitted the place, again warning Sandoval to keep good guard.

We ſoon after brought Narvaez and the reſt of the priſoners to another apartment, where a guard was placed upon them compoſed of our moſt truſty and confidential ſoldiers. To this duty I was appointed, and Sandoval before he left us called me aſide, and gave me a private order to permit no perſon whatever to ſpeak to Narvaez. We knew that forty of the cavalry were at an outpoſt on the river; it was therefore neceſſary to keep a good guard until this party was diſpoſed of, leſt they ſhould fall on us in order to reſcue their officers. Cortes now ſent to them Chriſtoval de Oli, and de Ordas, mounted on two of the horſes of Narvaez which we found tied in a ſmall wood cloſe to Cempoal, with unlimited offers

offers if they would come in and ſubmit. Our officers guided by one of Narvaez's ſoldiers arrived at the poſt of the cavalry, and by their promiſes and arguments won them over, and they all entered the town together.

By this time it was clear day. Cortes, ſeated in an arm chair, a mantle of orange colour thrown over his ſhoulders, his arms by his ſide, and ſurrounded by his officers and ſoldiers, received the ſalutations of the cavaliers who as they diſmounted came up to him to kiſs his hand. It was wonderful to ſee the affability, and the kindneſs with which he ſpoke to and embraced them, and the compliments which he made to them; amongſt the number were Auguſtin Bermudez, Andres de Duero, and many other friends of our general. Each, as he had paid his reſpects, took his leave, and went to the quarters aſſigned him. During all this time, and even before the arrival of the cavalry, the drums, fifes, and timbals of the army of Narvaez never ceaſed, having ſtruck up at day break in honor of Cortes, without being deſired or ſpoken to by any one of us. One of them a Negro and a comical fellow, danced and ſhouted for joy, crying, "Where are the Romans who with ſuch "ſmall numbers have ever atchieved ſuch a glorious victory?" Nor was it poſſible to ſilence him or the reſt, until Cortes was at laſt obliged to order one of them to be confined.

Our loſſes on each ſide on this occaſion were as follow. The enſign of Narvaez, named Fuertes, an Hidalgo of Seville. A captain of the ſame army named Roxas, of Old Caſtille, and two others killed, and many wounded. One alſo of the three who had antecedently deſerted from us to him was killed. Four of our ſoldiers were killed, and a number wounded. The fat Cacique on our approach had taken refuge in the quarters of Narvaez; he alſo received a wound: Cortes ordered him to his houſe, and to be there protected and taken care of. Of the two others who deſerted from us, each got his deſerts, Eſcalona being ſeverely wounded, and Cervantes well beaten.

As

As to the fierce Salvatierra, his ſoldiers declared that they never ſaw ſo pitiful a fellow, nor ſo terrified a being when he heard our drum beat; but when we ſhouted for victory, and cryed that Narvaez was dead, he told them that he had got a pain in his ſtomach, and could fight no more. Such was the reſult of his bravados. Captain Velaſquez de Leon took his relation Diego Velaſquez to his own quarters, where he had his wounds attended to, and treated him with the utmoſt diſtinction.

The reinforcement of the warriors of Chinanta, which Cortes had been promiſed, marched in ſhortly after the action was over, conducted by our ſoldier Barrientos, with great pomp and regularity, in two files, lanciers and archers alternately, and in this manner they came to the number of one thouſand five hundred, with colours, drums, and trumpets, ſhouting, and making ſuch a warlike appearance that it was glorious to behold. It afforded matter of aſtoniſhment to the army of Narvaez, for they appeared to be double their real number. Our general received them with infinite courteſy, and diſmiſſed them with thanks and handſome preſents.

Cortes now ſent Franciſco de Lugo to order all the captains and pilots of the fleet to come to him at Cempoal, or, in caſe they refuſed, to make them priſoners. He alſo gave directions that the ſhips ſhould be diſmantled, thereby cutting off all poſſibility of a communication with Cuba. Narvaez had confined one Barahona, a rich man, and afterwards an inhabitant of Guatimala; him Cortes ordered to be immediately releaſed, and kindly treated; I recollect when he joined us he appeared in a very weak and languid ſtate. The captains and pilots of the fleet immediately came to pay their reſpects to our general. He made them take an oath that they would not ſeparate from him, and would obey his orders; and he appointed one of them, Pedro Cavallero, his admiral of the whole fleet. Cortes warned him, that if, as he expected, more veſſels arrived from Cuba, he ſhould immediately diſmantle them, and ſend the captains and pilots to the head quarters.

Having

Having thus ſecured his port, he turned to other matters, and ordered Velaſquez de Leon with one hundred and twenty men upon an expedition to Panuco. One hundred of them were ſoldiers who had come with Narvaez; the other twenty were taken from amongſt ourſelves. This force was alſo to have two ſhips with it, for the purpoſe of extending our diſcoveries. He gave a command upon a ſimilar plan to Diego de Ordas, to eſtabliſh a colony at Guacacualco. Ordas was alſo to ſend to Jamaica for horſes and ſtock, to eſtabliſh an independent ſupply in the country, the province he went to being well adapted for breeding cattle. Cortes commanded all the priſoners to be releaſed, except Narvaez, and Salvatierra, who ſtill complained of the pain in his ſtomach. He alſo ordered all the horſes and arms which had been taken from the ſoldiers of Narvaez to be returned to them; this gave our people much diſcontent, but ſince the general would have it ſo, we were obliged to ſubmit, and I for my part, was obliged to ſurrender a good horſe which I had put in a ſafe place, with a ſaddle and bridle, two ſwords, three poinards, and a ſhield. Hereupon Captain Alonzo de Avila, and alſo our Reverend Father Olmedo, took an opportunity of ſpeaking to Cortes, and told him that they believed he had a mind to imitate Alexander of Macedon, who after his army had atchieved any glorious action, was more generous to the vanquiſhed, than to the conquerors; for that it was obſerved, that, all the gold and valuable preſents, as faſt as he received them, he gave to the captains of the other army, quite appearing to forget us, which was not well done on his part, we having made him what he was. To this Cortes replied by proteſting, that he, and all he had was entirely at our ſervice, and he would prove it by his future conduct; but that what he did was unavoidable for our common intereſt, we being ſo few, and the others ſo many. Avila in anſwer to this uſed ſome expreſſions of rather a lofty kind, upon which Cortes obſerved, that whoever did not wiſh to follow him might depart, that the women in Caſtille had bred good ſoldiers, and would continue to do ſo. Avila anſwered again in a ſtill more bold and imperious manner, and as Cortes could not at that time break with him, he was forced to diſſimulate, knowing him to be a brave and determined

ned man. He therefore pacified him with preſents, for he always apprehended ſome act of violence on his part, and for the future took care to employ him on buſineſs of importance at a diſtance, as in the Iſland of St. Domingo, and afterwards in Old Spain.

Narvaez brought with him a Negro who was in the ſmall pox; an unfortunate importation for that country, for the diſeaſe ſpread with inconceivable rapidity, and the Indians died by thouſands; for not knowing the nature of it, they brought it to a fatal iſſue by throwing themſelves into cold water in the heat of the diſorder. Thus black was the arrival of Narvaez, and blacker ſtill the death of ſuch multitudes of unfortunate ſouls, which were ſent into the other world, without having an opportunity of being admitted into the boſom of our holy church. At this time a claim was made on Cortes by ſuch of our ſoldiers as had been in diſtant garriſons, for their ſhare of the gold taken in Mexico. He, as well as I recollect, referred them to a place in Tlaſcala, deſiring that two perſons might be ſent thither to receive it. I will at a future period relate what happened hereupon; but I muſt at the preſent revert to other things.

The wheel of fortune making ſudden turns, evil follows cloſely upon good, as was our caſe at preſent, our late ſucceſſes being contraſted by melancholy news from Mexico. We now received intelligence by expreſs from that city, whereby we were informed, that an inſurrection had broken out, and that Alvarado was beſieged in his quarters, which they had ſet on fire, having killed ſeven of his men, and wounded many; for which reaſon he earneſtly called called for ſuccour and ſupport. When we received this news, God knows how it afflicted us! We ſet out by long marches for Mexico, leaving Narvaez and Salvatierra priſoners in Villa Rica, under the cuſtody of Rodorigo Rangel, who alſo had directions to collect all the ſtragglers, and to take care of the invalids, of whom there were many. At the moment we were ready to march, arrived four principal noblemen from the court of Montezuma, to lodge a formal complaint againſt Alvarado, for having aſſaulted them when

on the 13th of May.

originally Vera Cruz

when dancing at a ſolemn feſtival in honor of their gods, which he had permitted them to hold, whereby, in their own defence they had been forced to kill ſeven of his ſoldiers. Cortes replied to them in terms not the moſt pleaſing, ſaying he would ſoon be at Mexico, and put all in proper regulation; with which anſwer they returned, very little indeed to the ſatisfaction of Montezuma who felt the inſult ſtrongly, many of the natives being killed.

In conſequence of this intelligence, the detachments were countermanded, and Cortes exhorted the troops of Narvaez to forget paſt animoſities, and not to loſe this opportunity of ſerving his Majeſty and themſelves, expoſing to their view the riches they would acquire, ſo that they one and all declared their readineſs to proceed to Mexico, a reſolution they never would have taken, if they had known the force of that city. By very long marches we arrived at Tlaſcala, where we learned that until the time that Montezuma and the Mexicans got intelligence of the defeat of Narvaez, they had never ceaſed making attacks upon Alvarado; but when they heard of our ſucceſs they deſiſted, leaving the Spaniards greatly fatigued and diſtreſſed, by their continual exertions and want of water and proviſions. This information was conveyed by two Indian meſſengers who arrived at the moment we entered Tlaſcala. Here Cortes made an inſpection of our army, which now amounted to one thouſand three hundred men, nearly one hundred of whom were cavalry, and one hundred and ſixty were croſsbow-men and muſqueteers. Two thouſand warriors of the Tlaſcalans having joined us, we purſued our route by long marches to Teſcuco, where we were very ill received, and every thing bore the appearance of diſaffection.

On St. John's day in the month of June one thouſand five hundred and twenty, we arrived in the City of Mexico, meeting with a reception very different from our former one, for none of the nobility or chiefs of our acquaintance could be recogniſed, and the city ſeemed to be totally depopulated. When we entered our quarters, Montezuma came to embrace Cortes, and wiſh him joy of his victory, but the general would neither

June 24. with about 9000 men.

neither hear, nor ſpeak to him; whereon the King retired very melancholy, to his apartment. Cortes made inquiry into the circumſtances of the commotion, which evidently was not approved or inſtigated by Montezuma. Indeed if he had thought fit to act againſt our party, they could all have been deſtroyed, as eaſily as ſeven of them. By what Alvarado told Cortes it appeared, that a number of Indians, enraged at the detention of Montezuma, at the erection of the crucifix in their temple, and by the order of their gods as they ſaid, had gone thither to pull it down, but to their infinite aſtoniſhment, found all their ſtrength utterly unable to move it. This being repreſented to Montezuma, he deſired no attempt of the kind ſhould be made again. Alvarado added for his own exculpation, that the attack was made upon him by the friends and ſubjects of Montezuma, in order to liberate their monarch, at the time that they believed Narvaez had deſtroyed Cortes and his army. Cortes now aſked Alvarado for what reaſon he fell upon the Mexicans, while they were dancing and holding a feſtival in honour of their gods. To this Alvarado replied, that it was in order to be beforehand with them, having had intelligence of their hoſtile intentions againſt him from two of their own nobility and a prieſt. Cortes then aſked him if it was true that they had requeſted permiſſion of him to hold their feſtival, and the other hereupon replied that it was ſo, and that it was in order to take them by ſurpriſe, and to puniſh and terrify them, ſo as to prevent their making war upon the Spaniards, that he had determined to fall on them by anticipation. At hearing this avowal Cortes was highly enraged; he cenſured the conduct of Alvarado in the ſtrongeſt terms, and in this temper left him.

Alvarado farther ſaid, that one time when he was attacked by the Mexicans, he endeavoured to fire off one of his guns, and could not get the priming to light; but ſometime after, when they were in very great danger, and expected all to have been killed, the piece went off of itſelf, and made ſuch havock amongſt the enemy that they were completely driven back, and the Spaniards thus miraculouſly ſaved. I heard ſeveral other ſoldiers alſo mention this as a fact; it was alſo ſaid, by Alvarado

a annual festival. held there ~~that~~ that the King might be present at it. In two
e of these dances. women danced with the men in couples. the hands resting
. Men's shoulders.

Dance. men alone, women alone, & the boys danced, danced. the
mposed a part of all their festivals. They wore their richest ornaments
e shields - or fans of feathers, or rattles. made in shapes of heads
s and other things - which custom prevails in various branches of
man family. The little dance was formed in two parallel lines
ey at times faced each other, & others turned in file, two advanced
d in the centre while the others stood still.
ar dance was numerous & of exclusive circles. The musicians
tres. Buffoons & Jesters thrown as beasts to do, entertained in
e. The singing began low & slow & increased.

do only, that when the garriſon was in great want of water, they ſank a pit in the court, and immediately a ſpring of the ſweeteſt water broke forth. I can declare, to my own knowledge, that there was a ſpring in the city which very frequently threw up water tolerably freſh. Glory to God for all his mercies!

Some ſay that it was avarice tempted Alvarado to make this attack, in order to pillage the Indians of the golden ornaments which they wore at their feſtival. I never heard any juſt reaſons for the aſſertion, nor do I believe any ſuch thing, although it is ſo repreſented by Fra Bartholome de las Caſas; but for my part I am convinced, that his intention in falling on them at that time was, in order to ſtrike terror into them, and prevent their inſurrection, according to the ſaying, that, the firſt attack is half the battle. A very bad plan as appeared by the reſult, and it is certain, that after the affair at the temple, Montezuma did moſt earneſtly deſire that they ſhould not attack our people, but the Mexicans were ſo enraged that they could not be reſtrained.

Cortes during our march had expatiated to the new comers upon the power and influence he poſſeſſed, and the reſpect with which he was treated in Mexico, and had filled their minds and heightened their expectations, with promiſes and golden hopes. When on his return therefore he experienced the coldneſs and negligence of his reception in Tezcuco, and equal appearances thereof in Mexico, he grew very peeviſh and irritable; and the officers of Montezuma coming to wait upon him, expreſſing the wiſh of their Sovereign to ſee him, Cortes angrily exclaimed, "Away with him! The dog! why does he neglect to ſupply "us." When the captains De Leon, De Oli, and De Lugo, heard this expreſſion, they intreated him to be moderate, and reminded him of the former kindneſs and generoſity of the King. But this ſeemed to irritate Cortes the more, conſidering it a kind of cenſure, and he indignantly ſaid, "What compliment am I under to a dog who treated ſecretly with "Narvaez, and as we ſee neglects to ſend proviſions?" This the captains admitted ought to be done; and Cortes, confident in the great rein-

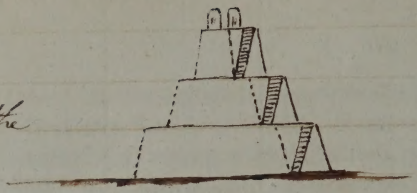
probably on the day after his arrival when assaults on the Spaniards commenced — markets — at the suggestion of Montezuma Quitlahuatzin his brother was released for this purpose, but the Mexicans first cutting off both hands & then their heads —

forcement of numbers he had obtained, continued a haughty demeanour. He in this manner now addreſſed the noblemen ſent to him by Montezuma, bidding them tell their maſter, immediately to cauſe markets to be held and proviſions ſupplied, and to beware of the conſequences of neglect. Theſe lords very well underſtood the purport of the injurious expreſſions which he had uſed, and on their return informed the King of what had paſſed. Whether it was from rage at the ſtory told by them, or the conſequence of a preconcerted plan to fall upon us, within a quarter of an hour after, a ſoldier entered our quarters, wounded dangerouſly, and in great hurry, and told us that the whole people were in arms. This man had been ſent by Cortes to bring to our quarters ſome Indian ladies, and amongſt them the daughter of Montezuma, whom Cortes, when he marched againſt Narvaez, had left in the care of their relation the Prince of Tacuba. He was on his return with them when he was attacked by the people who were aſſembled in great numbers, had broken a bridge upon the cauſeway of Tacuba, and had once had him in their hands and were hurrying him into a canoe to carry him off for ſacrifice, but that he extricated himſelf from them, with two dangerous wounds.

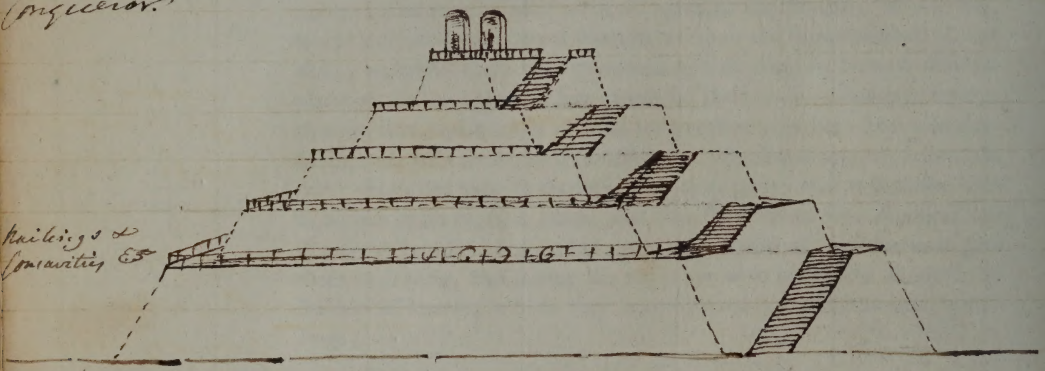
Cortes immediately on receiving the intelligence ordered out a party of four hundred men, under the command of Captain de Ordaz, to go and ſee what foundation there was for the account given by the ſoldier, and to endeavor if poſſible to pacify the minds of the people. De Ordaz had hardly proceeded the length of half a ſtreet, when he was attacked by immenſe numbers of Mexicans in the ſtreets, and on the terraces of the houſes, who by their firſt diſcharge killed eight ſoldiers on the ſpot, wounded moſt of the reſt, and De Ordaz himſelf in three places. Finding it therefore impoſſible to proceed, he retreated ſlowly to our quarters, in doing which he loſt another good ſoldier named Lezcano, who with a two handed ſword had performed many feats of great force and valour. Our quarters had been attacked by multitudes at the ſame moment; they poured in ſuch diſcharges of miſſile weapons upon us there that they immediately wounded upwards of forty ſix, twelve of whom

whom afterwards died. The ſtreets were ſo crowded, that De Ordas when he endeavored to reach us could not proceed, and was inceſſantly attacked in front, in rear, and from the roofs of the houſes. Neither our fire arms, nor our good fighting could prevent the enemy from cloſing in upon us for a length of time; however De Ordaz at laſt forced his way back, with the loſs of twenty three men. The enemy ſtill continued their attacks, but all we had hitherto ſuffered was nothing to that which ſucceeded. They ſet fire to various parts of the buildings which we occupied, thinking to burn us alive, or ſtifle us with the ſmoke; and we were obliged to ſtop it by tearing down the building, or by throwing earth upon it. All the courts and open ſpaces of our quarters were covered with their arrows and miſſile weapons, and in repelling their attacks, repairing the breaches which they had made in the walls, dreſſing our wounds, and preparing for enſuing engagements, we paſſed that day and night.

As ſoon as the next morning dawned we ſallied out with our whole force upon the enemy, being determined if we could not conquer, to make them fear us. The Mexicans came to meet us with their whole force, and both parties fought deſperately; but as the numbers of our opponents were ſo immenſe, and as they conſtantly brought up freſh troops, even if we had been ten thouſand Hectors of Troy, and as many Roldans, we could not have beaten them off; nor can I give any idea of the deſperation of this battle; for though in every charge we made upon them we brought down thirty and even forty, it was of no avail; they came on even with more ſpirit than at firſt, nor could we, by our cannon or fire arms, make any impreſſion on them. If at any time they appeared to give ground it was only to draw us from our quarters, in order to enſure our deſtruction. Then the ſtones and darts thrown on us from the terraces of the houſes were intolerable. But I deſcribe it faintly; for ſome of our ſoldiers who had been in Italy ſwore, that neither amongſt Chriſtians nor Turks, nor the artillery of the King of France, had they ever ſeen ſuch deſperation as was manifeſted in the attacks of thoſe Indians. We were at length forced to retreat to our quarters, which we reached with great difficulty.



This comes nearest the proportions of the anonymous Conqueror.



This is the principle of the Structure as given by the anonymous Conqueror and which is impossible could have been so, as far as relates to the Stairs. It is more probable there was little or no difference between the Temple of Mexico & the Japanese Temple of Zicune Wow. v. infra. — The situation or construction of the steps is not to be reconciled to the accounts of the religious ceremonies.

Temple of Zicune Wow. Page 361 →

This last agrees best with the drawing of Nieremberg or Hernandez →

At the same time the circuitous ascent is very conformable to their Ritual. →

utterly in vain to attempt; they all ſtood in the water, and only communicating by draw bridges, it was too dangerous to attempt to reach them by ſwimming, for they ſhowered ſtones from their ſlings, and maſſes of cut ſtone taken from the buildings, upon our heads, from the terraces of the houſes. Whenever we attempted to ſet fire to a houſe, it was an entire day before it took effect, and when it did, the flames could not ſpread to others, as they were ſeparated from it by the water, and alſo becauſe the roofs of them were terraced.

We at length arrived at the great temple, and immediately and inſtantly, above four thouſand Mexicans ruſhed up into it, without including in that number other bodies who occupied it before, and defended it againſt us with lances, ſtones, and darts. They thus prevented our aſcending for ſome time, neither turrets, nor muſquetry, nor cavalry availing, for although the latter body ſeveral times attempted to charge, the ſtone pavement of the courts of the temple was ſo ſmooth, that the horſes could not keep their feet, and fell. From the ſteps of the great temple they oppoſed us in front, and we were attacked by ſuch numbers on both ſides, that although our guns ſwept off ten or fifteen of them at each diſcharge, and that in each attack of our infantry we killed many with our ſwords, their numbers were ſuch that we could not make any effectual impreſſion, or aſcend the ſteps. We were then forced to abandon our turrets, which the enemy had deſtroyed, and with great concert, making an effort without them, we forced our way up. Here Cortes ſhewed himſelf the man that he really was. What a deſperate engagement we then had! every man of us was covered with blood, and above forty dead upon the ſpot. It was Gods will that we ſhould at length reach the place where we had put up the image of our Lady, but when we came there it was not to be found, and it ſeems that Montezuma, actuated either by fear or by devotion, had cauſed it to be removed. We ſet fire to the building, and burned a part of the temple of the gods Huitzilopochtli and Tezcatepuco. Here our Tlaſcalan allies ſerved us eſſentially. While thus engaged, ſome ſetting the temple on fire, others fighting, above three thouſand noble Mexicans with their prieſts

V. drawing of the temple of Iucatan Wou. P. 361

they rolled down beams of wood on fire.

the three upper ſtories which are of wood

prieſts were about us, and attacking us, drove us down ſix and even ten of the ſteps, while others who were in the corridores, or within ſide the railings and concavities of the great temple, ſhot ſuch clouds of arrows at us that we could not maintain our ground, when thus attacked from every part. We therefore began our retreat, every man of us being wounded, and forty ſix left dead upon the ſpot. We were purſued with a violence and deſperation which is not in my power to deſcribe, nor in that of any one to form an idea of who did not ſee it. During all this time alſo other bodies of the Mexicans had been continually attacking our quarters, and endeavoring to ſet fire to them. In this battle, we made priſoners two of the principal prieſts. I have often ſeen this engagement repreſented in the paintings of the natives, both of Mexico and Tlaſcala, and our aſcent into the great temple. In theſe our party is repreſented with many dead, and all wounded. The ſetting fire to the temple when ſo many warriors were defending it in the corridores, railings, and concavities, and other bodies of them on the plain ground, and filling the courts, and on the ſides, and our turrets demoliſhed, is conſidered by them as a moſt heroic action.

With great difficulty we reached our quarters, which we found the enemy almoſt in poſſeſſion of, as they had beaten down a part of the walls; but they deſiſted in a great meaſure from their attacks on our arrival, ſtill throwing in upon us however ſhowers of arrows, darts, and ſtones. The night was employed by us in repairing the breaches, in dreſſing our wounds, burying our dead, and conſulting upon our future meaſures. No gleam of hope could be now rationally formed by us, and we were utterly ſunk in deſpair. Thoſe who had come with Narvaez ſhowered maledictions upon Cortes, nor did they forget Velaſquez by whom they had been induced to quit their comfortable and peaceable habitations in the iſland of Cuba. It was determined to try if we could not procure from the enemy a ceſſation of hoſtilities, on condition of our quitting the city; but at day break they aſſembled round our quarters and attacked them with greater fury than ever, nor could our fire arms repel them, although they did conſiderable execution.

Cortes

Cortes perceiving how deſperate our ſituation was, determined that Montezuma ſhould addreſs his ſubjects from a terrace, and deſire them to deſiſt from their attacks, with an offer from us to evacuate Mexico. He accordingly ſent to the King to deſire him to do ſo. When this was made known to Montezuma, he burſt out into violent expreſſions of grief ſaying, "What does he want of me now? I neither "deſire to hear him, nor to live any longer, ſince my unhappy fate "has reduced me to this ſituation on his account." He therefore diſmiſſed thoſe ſent to him with a refuſal, adding as it is ſaid, that he wiſhed not to be troubled any more with the falſe words and promiſes of Cortes. Upon this the Reverend Father Fray Bartholome and Chriſtoval de Oli went to him, and addreſſed him with the moſt affectionate and perſuaſive language, to induce him to appear, to which he replied, that he did not believe that his doing ſo would be of any avail, that the people had already elected another ſovereign, and were determined never to permit one of us to quit the city alive. The enemy continued their attacks, and Montezuma was at length perſuaded. He accordingly came, and ſtood at the railing of a terraced roof, attended by many of our ſoldiers, and addreſſed the people below him, requeſting, in very affectionate language, a ceſſation of hoſtilities, in order that we might quit the city. The chiefs and nobility, as ſoon as they perceived him coming forward, called to their troops to deſiſt and be ſilent, and four of them approached, ſo as to be heard and ſpoken to by Montezuma. They then addreſſed him, lamenting the misfortunes of him, his children, and family, and alſo told him that they had raiſed Coadlavaca Prince of Iztapalapa to the throne, adding, that the war was drawing to a concluſion, and that they had promiſed to their gods never to deſiſt but with the total deſtruction of the Spaniards; that they every day offered up prayers for his perſonal ſafety, and as ſoon as they had reſcued him out of our hands, they would venerate him as before, and truſted that he would pardon them.

As they concluded their addreſs, a ſhower of arrows and ſtones fell about the ſpot where Montezuma ſtood, from which the Spaniards, interpoſing

terpoſing their bucklers, protected the King; but expecting that while ſpeaking to his people they would not make another attack, they unguarded him for an inſtant, and juſt then three ſtones and an arrow ſtruck him in the head, arm, and leg.

on the 30th of June three days after receiving the wound. in the 54 year of his age & 18th of his reign & on the 7th Month of his imprisonment

The King when thus wounded refuſed all aſſiſtance, and we were unexpectedly informed of his death. Cortes and our captains wept for him, and he was lamented by them and all the ſoldiers who had known him, as if he had been their father; nor is it to be wondered at, conſidering how good he was. It was ſaid that he had reigned ſeventeen years, and that he was the beſt King Mexico had ever been governed by. It was alſo ſaid that he had fought and conquered in three occaſions that he had been defied to the field, in the progreſs of ſubjugating different ſtates to his dominion.

All the endeavors of our Reverend Father Fray Bartholome, could not prevail on the King to embrace our faith, when he was told that his wounds were mortal, nor could he be induced to have them attended to. After the death of Montezuma, Cortes ſent two priſoners, a nobleman and a prieſt, to inform the new ſovereign, Coadlavaca, and his chiefs, of the event, and how it had happened by the hands of his own ſubjects. He directed them to expreſs our grief on the occaſion, and our wiſh that he ſhould be interred with the reſpect due to ſo great a monarch. Cortes farther ſignified to them, that he did not admit or acknowledge the right of the ſovereign that they had choſen, but that the throne ſhould be filled either by a ſon of the great Montezuma, or his couſin who was with us in our quarters. Alſo, that we deſired unmoleſted egreſs from the city, on condition of our committing no more acts of hoſtility by fire or ſword. Cortes then cauſed the body of the King to be borne out by ſix noblemen, attended by moſt of the prieſts whom we had taken priſoners, and expoſed it to public view. He alſo deſired them to obey the laſt injunctions of Montezuma, and to deliver his body to the Mexican chiefs. Theſe noblemen accordingly related the circumſtances of the King's death to Coadlavaca, and we could hear the

Montezuma according to the Custom of his nation had stepped to the throne from the
head of the army and supreme pontificate. The same system of collateral
succession prevailed among the Calvan nations as among the people of the South
The political government of Mexico was first ante-theocratic, afterwards
Filial, the King being elective, but the right to the throne was derived by descent
strictly and not lineally. So complicated a system could hardly have been
in a few centuries, on the contrary we find it like the rest of their customs
ancient Scythian. Thus Strabo speaking of the four Castes of the ancient
says " primum ex quo reges Eligunt, et ate semper maximum ex
Patricio cognatio. Proximo minor natus jus dicit exercitumque
deducit " which was precisely the procedure of Montezuma.
crown of Mexico in like manner did not go in filial descent but to the
collateral branch brother sister or nephew. To succeed to the crown the in
diate stile was the command of the army and supremacy of the priesthood which was in reality the Legislature.
astronomical regulations were made a branch of policy. The Age of Calvan
cycle was 52 years as that of China is 60. The government divided into
ds of the aristocracy, if the King died within the period as much blood
ually the case, until the commencement of the ensuing cycle of 52
Be it observed here, & remembered that Kien Long intended to, and did,

announce the crown of China in the completion of the Cycle of his reign. According to Chinese history their first eight Kings from Fo-Hi reigned each an age which from its sounding so, is considered by many as being fabulous, but it is not to be rejected as such, especially after the example of the late Emperor. In Scythia & in ancient Asia also, astronomy was the regulating principle which kept in order the political machine. These eight Kings of China were elective like those of Mexico it is impossible morally that their reigns should have been so long as to correspond so exactly, we may therefore justly infer without rejecting the whole as fabulous that one King was elected in each Cycle and after his demise the Regency devolved into other hands until the commencement of the ensuing one. When an age is spoken of, the idea of a hundred years presents itself but be it recollected that the age of China, the grand conjunction of planets whose the process of the universal system according to them commenced de novo, is a period of sixty years which reduces that part of Chinese chronology from eight hundred to four hundred and eighty years.

In the Mexican monarchy the number of electors was at first four it was subsequently increased to six. The functions of these electors ceased with the occasion. The office was hereditary in the Nobility & Priesthood which two classes were nearly identified. The electors were originally elected by the nobility to that office and supposed to be the deputies of that body in which the elective right resided. At the close of each election. the electors for the ensuing one when it was to take place were chosen. Four of these electors were of the Azteca nation and the Princes of Acolhuacan & Tlacopan or Tacuba were added to their number on the annexation of those states to the Mexican Empire. Except Tlaxcallan the other Colonies nations were hereditary Monarchies.

In this government the monarchical claim was in the family of Acamapitzin the son or child of the preceding King was excluded from the succession. Previous to monarchy the tribe was governed by an oligarchy of twenty Nobles. to these in whom was vested the elective right were also afterwards added the four Princes of incorporated states. The families of these

the exclamations of ſorrow which the people expreſſed at the ſight of his body. They now attacked us in our quarters with the greateſt violence, and threatened us that within the ſpace of two days we ſhould pay with our lives the death of their king, and the diſhonor of their gods, ſaying that they had choſen a ſovereign whom we could not deceive, as we had done the good Montezuma.

In conſequence of the ſituation to which we were reduced, Cortes determined to make on the enſuing day another ſally, and to march towards that part of the city which contained many houſes built on the firm ground, there to do all the injury we could, and that our cavalry taking advantage of the cauſeway, ſhould ride the enemy down; which he hoped would make them tired of hoſtility, and induce them to come into terms. We accordingly made our ſally, and proceeded to that part of the city, where, notwithſtanding the reſiſtance and inceſſant attacks of the enemy, we burned about twenty houſes, approaching very near the firm ground; but whatever injury we did them was dearly paid for by the loſs of twenty ſoldiers killed, nor could we get poſſeſſion of a ſingle bridge, all of them being partly broken, and the enemy had alſo made barricades and parapets to obſtruct the cavalry, in every part where they expected to be able to act. Thus our difficulties and troubles increaſed upon us. This ſally I recollect took place on a thurſday; Sandoval and many other good cavalry men were preſent at it; but thoſe of Narvaez not being uſed to ſervice, were timorous in compariſon to our veterans.

As our numbers diminiſhed every day, whilſt thoſe of the enemy increaſed, as alſo did the fury of their attacks, at the ſame time that we from our wounds were leſs able to make reſiſtance; our powder being almoſt exhauſted, our proviſions and water intercepted, our friend the good Montezuma dead, and our propoſals for peace rejected, the bridges by which we were to retreat broken down, and in fine, death before our eyes in every direction, it was determined by Cortes and all of the officers and ſoldiers, to quit the city during the night, as we hoped at

 that

that time to find the enemy leſs alert. In order to put them the more off their guard, we ſent a meſſage by a chief prieſt, informing them, that if we were permitted to quit the city unmoleſted within the ſpace of eight days, we would ſurrender all the gold which was in our poſſeſſion.

There was with us a ſoldier named Botello, of reſpectable demeanour, who ſpoke latin, had been at Rome, and was ſaid to be a necromancer; ſome ſaid he had a familiar, and others called him an aſtrologer. This Botello had diſcovered by his figures and aſtrologies, and had predicted four days before, that if we did not quit Mexico on this night, not one of us ſhould ever go out of it alive. He had alſo foretold that Cortes ſhould undergo great revolutions of fortune, be deprived of his property, and honours, and afterwards riſe to a greater ſtate than ever; with many other things of this kind.

Orders were now given to make a portable bridge of very ſtrong timber, to be thrown over the canals where the enemy had broken down the bridges, and for conveying, guarding, and placing this, were aſſigned, one hundred and fifty of our ſoldiers and four hundred of the allies. The advanced guard was compoſed of Sandoval, Azevido el Pulido, F. de Lugo, D. de Ordas, A. de Tapia, and eight more captains of thoſe who came with Narvaez, having under them one hundred picked ſoldiers, of the youngeſt and moſt active. The rear guard was compoſed of one hundred ſoldiers, moſtly thoſe of Narvaez, and many cavalry, under the command of Alvarado and Velaſquez de Leon. The priſoners, with Donna Marina and Donna Luiſa, were put under the care of thirty ſoldiers and three hundred Tlaſcalans; and Cortes, with A. de Avila, C. de Oli, Bernardino Vaſquez de Tapia and other officers, with fifty ſoldiers, compoſed a reſerve, to act wherever occaſion ſhould require.

By the time that all this was arranged night drew on. Cortes then ordered all the gold which was in his apartment to be brought to the great

rds maintained their rank till the fall of the Empire. In Mexico property could not
ted out of the body of the nobility.

ecchow one of the Sandwich islands the daughter of the King's brother was constantly
e in arms and never permitted to touch the ground. { The same custom prevailed in Florida

ile the King is carried on men's shoulders as whatever ground he puts his foot on
sacred and his own.

the Indians of North America the Sachemships descended collaterally that is to the
r Nephews.

Japanese

overnors of cities under the Emperor of Japan

. Officers civil & military, Counsellors to the Govr. & in number

Lieutenants & assistants to the former

. Stewards of the House hold.

. Ushers — Guards —

Burgomasters 4. Mayors & Wardens. Headboroughs —

ssengers or Seizers of criminals — This is the Japanese interior
. while bear a close resemblance to that of the Silvanus in
latins & confidential — under them upon is a police
regulation —

North American tribes the son cannot succeed to his father's King

The Ancient Mexicans valued a turquoise or emerald, on account of the colour and for the superstitious uses made of it, at fifty pounds weight of gold. A calchihuis is an emerald. The mines of these stones are now lost, & not to be traced.

great ſaloon, which being done, he deſired the officers of his Majeſty, A. de Avila and Gonzalo Mexia, to take his Majeſty's due, in their charge, aſſigning to them for the conveyance of it eight lame or wounded horſes, and upwards of eighty Tlaſcalans. Upon theſe were loaded as much as they could carry of the gold which had been run into large bars, and much more remained heaped up in the ſaloon. Cortes then called to his ſecretary Hernandez and other royal notaries and ſaid, "Bear witneſs that I can be no longer reſponſible for this gold; here is "to the value of above ſix hundred thouſand crowns, I can ſecure no "more than what is already packed; let every ſoldier take what he will, "better ſo than that it ſhould remain for thoſe dogs of Mexicans." As ſoon as he had ſaid this, many ſoldiers of thoſe of Narvaez, and alſo ſome of ours fell to work, and loaded themſelves with treaſure. I never was avaricious, and now thought more of ſaving my life which was in much danger; however when the opportunity thus offered, I did not omit ſeizing out of a caſket, four calchihuis, thoſe precious ſtones ſo highly eſteemed amongſt the Indians; and although Cortes ordered the caſket and its contents to be taken care of by his major domo, I luckily ſecured theſe jewels in time, and afterwards found them of infinite advantage as a reſource againſt famine.

July 1st upon the Causeway of Tlacopan or Guadalcoupe

A little before midnight the detachment which took charge of the portable bridge ſet out upon its march, and arriving at the firſt canal or aperture of water, it was thrown acroſs. The night was dark and miſty, and it began to rain. The bridge being fixed, the baggage, artillery, and ſome of the cavalry paſſed over it, as alſo the Tlaſcalans with the gold. Sandoval and thoſe with him paſſed, alſo Cortes and his party after the firſt, and many other ſoldiers. At this moment the trumpets and ſhouts of the enemy were heard, and the alarm was given by them, crying out, "Taltelulco, Taltelulco, out with your canoes! the Teules "are going, attack them at the bridges." In an inſtant the enemy were upon us by land, and the lake and canals were covered with canoes. They immediately flew to the bridges, and fell on us there, ſo that they intirely intercepted our line of march. As misfortunes do not come

ſingle, it alſo rained ſo heavily that ſome of the horſes were terrifyed, and growing reſtive fell into the water, and the bridge was broken in at the ſame time. The enemy attacked us here now with redoubled fury, and our ſoldiers making a ſtout reſiſtance, the aperture of water was ſoon filled with the dead and dying men, and horſes, and thoſe who were ſtruggling to eſcape, all heaped together, with artillery, packs, and bales of baggage, and thoſe who carried them. Many were drowned here, and many put into the canoes and carried off for ſacrifice. It was dreadful to hear the cries of the unfortunate ſufferers, calling for aſſiſtance and invoking the Holy Virgin or St. Jago, while others who eſcaped by ſwimming, or by clambering upon the cheſts, bales of baggage, and dead bodies, earneſtly begged for help to get up to the cauſeway. Many who on their reaching the ground thought themſelves ſafe, were there ſeized or knocked in the head with clubs.

Away went whatever regularity had been in the march at firſt; for Cortes and the captains and ſoldiers who were mounted clapt ſpurs to their horſes and gallopped off, along the cauſeway; nor can I blame them, for the cavalry could do nothing againſt the enemy, of any effect; for when they attacked them, the latter threw themſelves into the water on each ſide the cauſeway, and others from the houſes with arrows, or on the ground with large lances, killed the horſes. It is evident we could make no battle with them in the water, and without powder, and in the night, what elſe could we do than what we did; which was, to join in bodies of thirty or forty ſoldiers, and when the Indians cloſed upon us, to drive them off with a few cuts and thruſts of our ſwords, and then hurry on, to get over the cauſeway as ſoon as we could. As to waiting for one another, that would have loſt us all; and had it happened in the day time, things would have been even worſe with us. The eſcape of ſuch as were fortunate enough to effect it, was owing to Gods mercy, who gave us force to do ſo; for the very ſight of the number of the enemy who ſurrounded us, and carried off our companions in their canoes to ſacrifice, was terrible. About fifty of us, ſoldiers of Cortes, and ſome of thoſe of Narvaez, went together in a body, by the cauſe-

way;

eway. That of Iztapallapan to the South was seven miles — That of Tacuban
st two miles — that of Tepeacac to the North three miles — also that
on the aqueducts of Chapultltepec.

way; every now and then parties of Indians came up, calling us Luilones, a term of reproach, and attempting to ſeize us, and we, when they came within our reach, facing about, repelling them with a few thruſts of our ſwords, and then hurrying on. Thus we proceeded, until we reached the firm ground near Tacuba, where Cortes, Sandoval, De Oli, Salcedo, Dominguez, Lares, and others of the cavalry, with ſuch of the infantry ſoldiers as had croſſed the bridge before it was deſtroyed, were already arrived. When we came near them, we heard the voices of Sandoval, De Oli, and De Morla, calling to Cortes who was riding at their head, that he ſhould turn about, and aſſiſt thoſe who were coming along the cauſeway, and who complained that he had abandoned them. Cortes replied that thoſe who had eſcaped owed it to a miracle, and if they returned to the bridges all would loſe their lives. Notwithſtanding, he, with ten or twelve of the cavalry and ſome of the infantry who had eſcaped unhurt countermarched, and proceeded along the cauſeway; they had gone however but a very ſhort diſtance when they met P. de Alvarado with his lance in his hand, badly wounded, and on foot, for his cheſnut mare had been killed; he had with him three of our ſoldiers, and four of thoſe of Narvaez, all badly wounded, and eight Tlaſcalans covered with blood. While Cortes proceeded along the cauſeway, we repoſed in the encloſed courts hard by Tacuba. Meſſengers had already been ſent out from the city of Mexico, to call the people of Tacuba, Ezcapuzalco, and Teneyuca together, in order to intercept us. In conſequence they now began to ſurround and harraſs us with arrows, and ſtones, and to attack us with lances headed with the ſwords which had fallen into their hands on the preceding night. We made ſome attacks upon them, and defended ourſelves as well as we could.

To revert to Cortes and his companions, when they learned from Alvarado that they were not to expect to ſee any more of our ſoldiers, the tears ran from their eyes, for Alvarado had with him in the rear guard, Velaſquez de Leon, with above twenty more of the cavalry, and upwards of one hundred infantry. On enquiry Cortes was told that they were

450 Spaniards
46 Horses.
4000 Auxiliaries
including all the
Tlaxcalans.

were all dead, to the number of one hundred and fifty and more. Alvarado alſo told them that after the horſes had been killed, about eighty aſſembled in a body and paſſed the firſt aperture, upon the dead bodies and heaps of luggage; I do not perfectly recollect if he ſaid that he paſſed upon the dead bodies, for we were more attentive to what he related to Cortes of the deaths of J. Velaſquez and above two hundred more companions, thoſe of Narvaez included, who were with him, and who were killed at that canal. He alſo ſaid that at the other bridge God's mercy ſaved them, and that the whole of the cauſeway was full of the enemy.

As to that fatal bridge which is called the leap of Alvarado, I ſay that no ſoldier thought of looking whether he leaped, much or little, for we had enough to do to ſave our own lives. It muſt however have been as he ſtated when he met Cortes, that he paſſed it upon the dead bodies and baggage, for if he had attempted to ſuſtain himſelf upon his lance, the water would have been too deep for him to have reached the bottom of it; and the aperture was too wide, and the ſides too high for him to have leaped, let him have been ever ſo active. For my part I aver that he could not have leaped it in any manner, for in about a year after, when we inveſted Mexico, I was engaged with the enemy on that which is now called the bridge of the leap of Alvarado, for they had there made breaſtworks and barricades; and we many times converſed upon the ſubject at the ſpot, and all of us agreed that it could not have happened. But as ſome will inſiſt upon the reality of it I repeat it again, it could not have been done, and let thoſe who wiſh to aſcertain it view the place; the bridge is there, and the depth of the water will prove no lance could reach to the bottom. There was in Mexico afterwards one Ocampo, a ſoldier who came with Garay, a prating fellow and very ſcurrilous, amuſing himſelf with making defamatory libels. Many of thoſe he made upon our captains, too bad to be repeated. He ſaid of Alvarado, that he left his companion Velaſquez and two hundred more, and that fear made him give that great ſpring, for that as the ſaying goes, he leaped for his life.

As

The children of Montezuma which survived were Ta-ca-huc pan johuca tlacahuc
Zin otherwise afterwards Don Pedro Montezuma, and Tecuichpotzin
otherwise Donna Elizabeth Montezuma. sometime queen of Mexico a
wife of his brother King Cuitlahuatzin, and afterwards of his nephew
Cuauhtemoczin, with whom she was taken prisoner at the conquest,
and subsequently wife of three Spanish Officers, one of whom we find
was by name ~~Pedro De Ircio~~ Alonzo De Grado. From hence are
descended the houses of Cano and Andrea Montezuma now existing —

As our captains found from the information of Alvarado that they were not to expect any more of our companions, for that the causeway was full of warriors of the enemy, and if any had hitherto escaped they must now be intercepted, as we also found that all the people of those countries were preparing to attack us in Tacuba, it was determined under the guidance of six or seven of our allies well acquainted with the country, to endeavor to reach Tlascala. Accordingly we set out, and proceeding by an indirect road came to some houses hard by a temple on a hill. During our march we were harrassed by the enemy, who threw stones and shot their arrows at us. I fear to tire the reader with the prolixity of those repeated details, but I am compelled to relate what was of such desperate consequence to us, for many of us were in this manner killed. Here we defended ourselves, and took what care we could of our wounds. As to provisions, we had none.

Otomeal polpo a temple on a small mountain nine miles west of Mo. where is now a chapel of N. S. de los Remedios they receive succour from the Otomi of two neighbouring hamlets.

After the conquest of Mexico, a church was founded on the scite of this temple, and dedicated to Nuestra Senora de los Remedios, and thither many ladies and inhabitants of Mexico go in procession, and to pay the nine days devotions.

Our wounds, having taken cold and being only bound with rags, were now in a miserable situation, and very painful; we had also to deplore the loss of many valiant companions. As for those of Narvaez, most of them perished in the water, loaded with gold. Numbers of Tlascalans also lost their lives in the same manner. Poor Botello too! the astrologer! his stars bore an evil aspect for he was killed with the rest. The sons of Montezuma, Cacamatzin, and all the other prisoners, amongst whom were some princes, lost their lives on this fatal night. All our artillery was lost, we had very few cross-bows, only twenty three horses, and our future prospect was very melancholy, from our uncertainty as to the reception we might meet in Tlascala, which was our only resource.

three sons of Montezuma or a son and two daughters. and a brother.

Having dressed our wounds and made arrows for our cross-bows, and

Cuitlatzin, a prisoner escaped, and was afterwards killed in Tezcuco after placed on the throne of Michoacan.

+ Note. Kog - the hand, claw, talon. symbol of power - thus the five claws of the dragon are the symbol of the Imperial power.

Culeo - Japanese Jaon Kog

and being inceſſantly harraſſed in our preſent poſt, we proceeded at midnight upon our journey, under the guidance of our faithful Tlaſcalans. Thoſe who were very badly wounded we carried between us; the lame were ſupported upon crutches, and ſome who were utterly unable to help themſelves on, were placed upon the croups of lame horſes. Thus, with what cavalry we had able to act, in front and on the flanks, and as many of the infantry as were fit to bear arms making head to the enemy, we proceeded on our march, our wounded Spaniards and allies in the centre, the reſt oppoſing the enemy, who continued to follow, harraſs, and revile us, ſaying we were now going to meet our deſtruction. Words which we did not at that time underſtand.

by Guautitlan Citlaltepec. Xolo. a 2d place of this name.

I have hitherto forgotten to mention the ſatisfaction we had, in ſeeing Donna Marina and Donna Luiſa rejoin us. Having croſſed the bridge amongſt the firſt, they had been ſaved by the exertions of two of the brothers of Donna Luiſa, all the reſt of the female Indians having been loſt there. On this day we arrived at a great town named Gualtitlan, from whence we continued our march, harraſſed by the enemy, whoſe numbers and boldneſs increaſed, inſomuch that they killed two of our lame ſoldiers and one horſe in a bad paſs, wounding many more. Having repulſed them, we proceeded until we arrived at ſome villages, and halting there for the night, we made our ſupper on the horſe which had been killed. On the next morning we ſet out very early, and having proceeded little more than a league, juſt as we began to think ourſelves in ſafety, three of our vedettes came in with a report that the whole plains were covered with the armies of the enemy. This intelligence was truly frightful and we felt it as ſuch, but not ſo as to prevent our determination to conquer or die, or our arranging all matters to the beſt effect for action.

in Zacamolco By the mountains of Aztaquemecan of Tonan -

A halt being made, orders were given to the cavalry, that they ſhould charge at half ſpeed, not ſtopping to make thruſts, but pointing the lances at the faces of the enemy, until they were put to flight; the infantry were warned to thruſt with their ſwords, and to paſs them clear

Kings in ancient oriental history designated or emblematized or [illegible] namely as the = goat = the Guardians of the flock - as [illegible] - derived & applied from the qualities - note the form of the horns in the painting for it does not appear that there was any Iniquities annexed in America that led such to [illegible]

This Empire the total subversion of which was now about to take
was of recent establishment, and rapid progressive growth.
entering upon the subject of what impulse or moral or political revolu
il threw Mankind into the new continent. Their own history of them
which there is this.

the first work (representation) represented in Mexican history of the records. It is, their parents thrown
upon the coasts of the continent of America.
is form resembles a bateau's trough and such are now the boats of the people
the West coast of America. Portlock & Dixon.
and tree was used as the symbol of California, that is, place of the
the general name of their nation, but it is not to be understood to
ve of that name as the Gulf of California. The two heads sig-
generally their parents. The figures above the heads are symbolical

their names. that behind the man is, a hand, the symbol of power, and th
hithet. Kog = kog, or most [illegible] Kog signifying might, and the whol
eal is by duplication. [illegible] in the upper corner is the symbol of his other
tribute "holy, or sacred." Teo = tipactl. Holy sword = fish." the twisting of th
he unicorn horn always carries with it a sacred meaning.
N. B. the sword fish towes the ark in the Bas-relief Avatar.
North Asia is a vast station of diluvian remains abounding with bones of th
ea unicorn. the same is obsd in the Hertz-wald or Hercynean forest of Germ
his species must have abounded prodigiously. — they live chiefly on the co
N. B. "The Indians say they come of the lineage of an old man who came hit
in a boat." Henry Hawkes, Mexico.
Note. These paintings were in the collection of Doctor Siguenza professor of
Mathematics in the University of Mexico, who lived there twenty yea
after the Conquest. Torquemada speaks of this painting when he says
"in the many of their historics which he has seen, all agree in representi
the ancestors of the Americans as having, to pass to that country fro
their original one, crossed an arm of the sea with an ice land on it."
+ Bolduini conjectured Scythia to be in Asia. Impossible from Siguenza.
The horns on the head of the man are symbolic of high station, protection
and are an asiatic emblem thereof, such is the origin of the horns of Jupiter
Ammon. Great Lords are always so represented in Asia — The other h
is a female, the mother of the Americans. over it is that of a bird. her
name they say was Chochi-quetzal, which is as much as to say "Flo
bird, or green blossom. but more probably the fish. The quetz
is a beautiful green bird of that country. by the side of this pictu
is the figure of a Culvan age or cycle of 52. years.
The nine figures in the next plate represent so many tribes descen
from common ancestors, residing previous to their separation & migr
in a country called (Hue-hue-Ha-pall-an. according to some but
probably Scythia, which must have been near or adjoining to the
a Cau of refuge on the coast, as we see the figure of Culiacan, and

clear through the bodies of their opponents, so that at worst we should sell our lives dearly, and this being done, as we saw that the enemy began to surround us, after recommending ourselves to God and the Holy Virgin, and invoking the aid of St. Jago, the cavalry formed in bodies of fives, and the infantry in concert with them, proceeded to the attack.

Oh what it was to see this tremendous battle! how we closed foot to foot, and with what fury the dogs fought us! such wounding as there was amongst us with their lances and clubs and two handed swords, while our cavalry, favoured by the plain ground, rode through them at will, galloping at half speed, and bearing down their opponents with couched lances, still fighting manfully, though they and their horses were all wounded; and we of the infantry, negligent of our former hurts, and of those which we now received, closed with the enemy, redoubling our efforts to bear them down with our swords.

Cortes, De Oli, Alvarado mounted on a horse of one of the soldiers of Narvaez, and Sandoval, though all wounded, continued to ride through them. Cortes now called out to us to strike at the chiefs; for they were distinguished by great plumes of feathers, golden ornaments, richly wrought arms, and devices.

Then to hear the valiant Sandoval, how he encouraged us crying out, "Now gentlemen is the day of victory; put your trust in God, "we shall survive for he preserves us for some good purpose." All the soldiers felt determined to conquer, and thus animated as we were by our Lord Jesus Christ, and our lady the Virgin Mary, as also by St. Jago who undoubtedly assisted us, as certified by a chief of Guatimotzin who was present in the battle, we continued, notwithstanding many had received wounds and some of our companions were killed, to maintain our ground.

It was the will of God, that Cortes, accompanied by the captains

De Oli, Sandoval, Alvarado, and ſeveral others, ſhould reach that part of the army of the enemy which was the poſt of their general in chief, who was diſtinguiſhed by a ſtandard, arms covered with gold, and a great penache ornamented in the ſame manner. As ſoon as Cortes perceived the chief who bore the ſtandard, and who was ſurrounded by many others bearing alſo great penaches of gold, he cried out to Alvarado, Sandoval, De Oli, Avila, and the reſt, "Now gentlemen, let "us charge them." Then, recommending themſelves to God, they rode into the thickeſt of them, and Cortes with his horſe ſtruck the Mexican chief, and threw down the ſtandard; the cavaliers who ſupported him at the ſame moment effectually breaking this numerous body. The chief who bore the ſtandard, not having fallen, in the charge made upon him by Cortes, Juan de Salamanca, mounted on his good pyed mare, purſued him, and having killed him, ſeized the rich penache which he bore, and preſented it to Cortes, ſaying, that as he had given the Mexican general the firſt blow, and ſtruck down his ſtandard, the trophy of the conqueſt was due to him.

It was God's will, that, on the death of their general, and of many other chiefs who ſurrounded him being known, the enemy ſhould relax in their efforts, and begin to retreat. As ſoon as this was perceived by us, we forgot our hunger, thirſt, fatigue, and wounds, and thought of nothing but victory, and purſuit. Our cavalry followed them up cloſe, and our allies, now become lions, mowed down all before them with the arms which the enemy threw away in their flight.

As ſoon as our cavalry returned from the purſuit, we all gave thanks to God, for never had there appeared ſo great a force together in that country, being the whole of the warriors of Mexico, Tezcuco, and Saltocan, all determined not to leave a trace of us upon the earth. The whole nobility of theſe nations were aſſembled, magnificently armed, and adorned with gold, penaches, and devices. This battle was fought near a place named Obtumba. I have frequently ſeen it repreſented in paintings amongſt the Mexicans, in the ſame manner as I have

standard. This was fastened to his back. like the Generals of the Ancient Asiatics his post
the centre. sit a chariot like an Indian palenquine. Darius lost his life and throne in
armor; for the two battles bear much resemblance

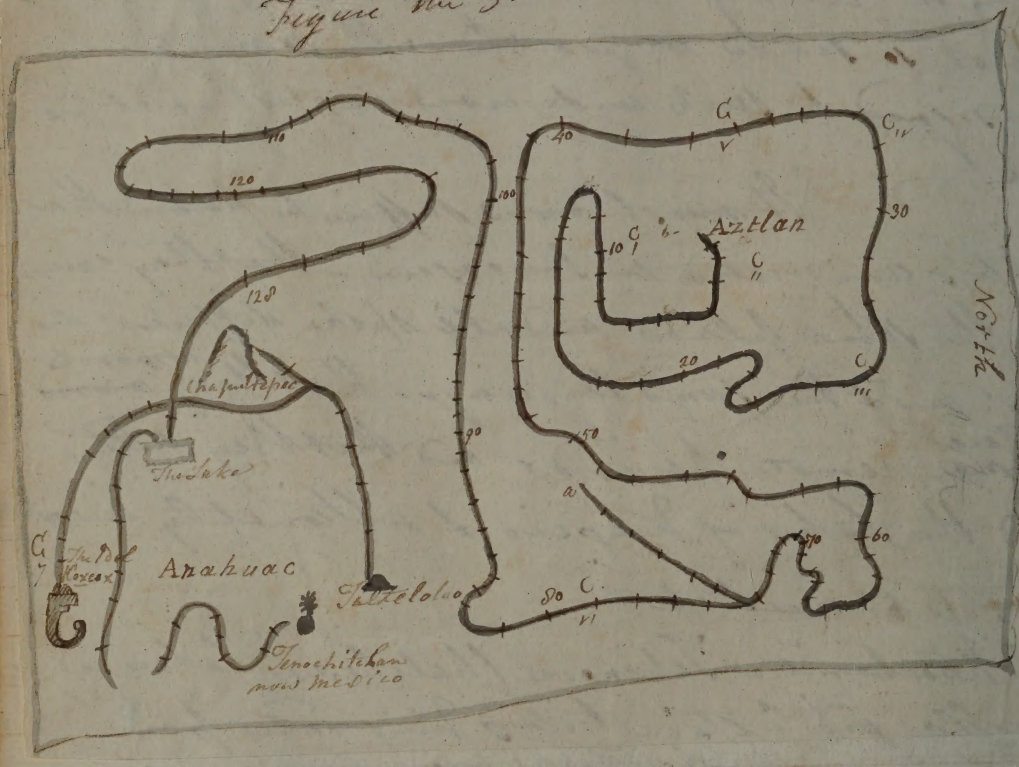
the greatest probability conjecture it to be the Fou sang of China according to
ciques, and Nootka of modern Navigators.

The city of Iroshee to the South of the Winds by a mountains
alled Palli. to imply its Eminence Sri=Palli which is
ne means with. Huic=Nenitta=pallan. of the fulness

an means the place of the Pye, or Mag=pie, called in China the bird of
ch. But Acosta learns later it "place of Herons. the pegeon is of a water fowl.
tree is the Hoba or Meiabolens, it bears a fruit, its leaves are always in the
n paintings used as the symbol of tongues. harangues or languages. —
ine tribes are the Tolteealli, Chichimecatlli, Rochimilcalli, Tepanecatli, Acolhua
i Chalquicatli, Tlahuicatli Tlaxcallecalli Aztecatli. q. of these the Chichi
tribe named their residence, Amaquemecan, the Acolhuacatli in Tezcolhuca
the Azteeans in Aztlan. which last place is here noted, because this is in
n Aztecan record of the history of that particular tribe. Some account is
the number of the tribes. and they may have been more numerous & the memory
fallen into obscurity. in the left, with the bird is the water plant and a hot

of plain signification and applied to the place; but why it was so is not clear.
This place Aztlan was actually inserted in maps of the 17th Century as a dis
of 2700 Miles North West of Mexico, and answering to the present site of North
Sounds. These maps must have been obtained from Native observations as the Sp
had not then penetrated beyond the River Ghila or Colorado (2. Colorado) in
North. — The Maps of Michuacan of that period is wonderfully correct consid
the Compass was not used.

Figure the 3d



This drawing represents the route or track of the Aztecan tribe in its pr
from Aztlan to the vale of Mexico. For the purpose of retaining the histo
memorials of their Nation they had recourse like the Peruvians to knotted
To judge by this representation it should appear, that they first noted the re
able events, as they occurred in their respective years, which last they k
account of by putting a knot for each year upon the cord, the amount
which knots remarkably tallies with the amount of the years occu

I have the other battles fought by us antecedently to the final conqueſt. I muſt now recall to the readers recollection, that our entry into Mexico to relieve Alvarado was on the day of St. John in the month of June one thouſand five hundred and twenty. We entered that city with upwards of one thouſand three hundred ſoldiers, cavalry included, which latter body was ninety ſeven in number, and of our infantry eighty were croſsbow-men, and as many muſqueteers. We had alſo with us a great train of artillery and two hundred Tlaſcalan allies. Our flight from Mexico was on the tenth of July following, and the battle of Obtumba was fought on the fourteenth day of that month.

I will now give an account of all our countrymen who loſt their lives in Mexico, at the cauſeway, in battle, and on the road. In five days were killed and ſacrificed upwards of eight hundred and ſeventy ſoldiers, including ſeventy two of thoſe of Narvaez put to death together with five Caſtillian women, in a place named Tuſtepeque. One thouſand two hundred and upwards of our allies of Tlaſcala were alſo killed. Juan de Alcantara and two more, who came for the ſhare of the gold aſſigned to them, were robbed and murdered, and if we examine throughout we ſhall find, that all who were concerned with the treaſure came to ill fortune. Thus it was with the ſoldiers of Narvaez, who periſhed in a much greater proportion than ours did, on account of their having followed the dictates of their avarice.

After the battle we continued our march to Tlaſcala, chearfully, and eating certain gourds named ayotes, which we found by the way, the enemy only ſhewing themſelves at a diſtance, until we arrived at a village where we took up our quarters in a ſtrong temple, and halted for the night, occaſionally alarmed by the Mexicans, who kept about us as it were to ſee us out of their country. From this place we to our great joy perceived the mountains of Tlaſcala, for we were anxious to be convinced of the fidelity of our friends, and to know ſomething of our companions in Villa Rica. Cortes warned us, as we were ſo few in number and had eſcaped by God's mercy, to be cautious not to give

this ſeems a miſtake Cortes says he arrived in Tlaxcalla on the 24th of July — the fight muſt have been on the firſt — it was a Friday

ayotli, borne by a papavetical plant like a Vine.

The Peſuans like the Peruvians Quipos had their Hiſtorical Chronological memorandums or records by variety of colours & knots. but they had become obſolete. Botturini with difficulty found one, in Tlaxcalla much decayed

offence; this he particularly enforced to the ſoldiers of Narvaez who were not ſo much habituated to diſcipline. He added that he hoped to find our allies ſteady to us, but that if it turned out otherwiſe, though but four hundred and forty ſtrong, ill armed, and wounded, we had vigorous bodies and ſtout hearts to carry us through.

We now arrived at a fountain on the ſide of ſome hills, where is a circular rampart built in old times, at the boundary of the ſtates of Mexico and Tlaſcala. Here we repoſed, and then proceeded to a town named Gualiopar, where we procured a little food which we were obliged to pay for, and halted one day. As ſoon as our arrival was known in the head town of Tlaſcala, our friends Maxicatzin, Xicotenga, Chichimecatecle, the chief of Guaxocingo, and others, came to ſee and embrace Cortes and the reſt of our captains and ſoldiers. They wept for our loſſes, and kindly blamed Cortes for having neglected the warning they had given him of Mexican treachery. They then invited us to their town, rejoicing at our eſcape, and congratulating us on our valiant actions. They alſo aſſured us that they were aſſembling thirty thouſand warriors to join us at Obtumba. Cortes thanked, and diſtributed preſents to all. They were rejoiced at ſeeing Donna Marina and Donna Luiſa, and lamented the loſs of others; Maxicatzin in particular bewailed his daughter, and V. de Leon to whom he had given her. Thus we were received by our friends in Tlaſcala, where we repoſed after our dangers. Cortes lodged in the houſe of Maxicatzin, Alvarado in that of Xicotenga; and here we recovered from our wounds, loſing but four of our number.

The j. a. like the chinese all names are of proper ſignification & not arbitrary ſounds. perhaps all Indian tives are ſo. The j. a. a guttural as in Spaniſh. By travellers of other nations we find the Chinese have the guttural. as Jegholl. called by the English Jehol.

The arrived in Tlaxcallan on the 8th of July. Cortes after ſeven days journey

Another Lord — Inca in Peru. Nezahualtzitzin Mexico. which word means meneration and explains their use.

migration. [illegible] It appears that at a future period they laid their cord upon a deer-skin, for on such they made their paintings, in the manner most convenient for inserting the whole of their subject within a limited space. This accounts for the rings of the cord, one end of which is placed at the site of their Destination Mexico and Yucatan, the other at Aztlan the parental site which by a peculiarity to be added to is placed directly North-west of Mexico as it is described to be. The broken lines mark their wanderings in Anahuac. At the end of the line is a knot which appears to belonged to the original cord & probably by which it was carried or hung up when completed. It is very likely that their symbolical memoranda annexed to the simple chronicle were carved representations or emblems wrought as they needed, and annexed to the cord at the proper period or respective year are marked in the preceding drawing by numerical figures. — It appears however that they made use to a certain degree of the mode of record adopted by the Peruvians. Seven ages of 52 years each are marked in different places of this picture. The left hand lower quarter of which is in the original inverted probably for the greater convenience in studying by turning the sheet round. The Tolteca unit is a round, like a ball or knot. They have no other form of figure till they come to 20. which is 400 is an ear of Maiz - and the end of their numeration 8000 a tassel or a bunch as to signify, probably the termination or completion of a cord. The Chinese now use little wooden balls on wires for numeration. The Tolteca Mexicographey is read from right to left round and their proper names are none of them mere arbitary sounds but like the Chinese a record of some thing or idea physical or moral. The Wampum belts of North American Indians are a branch of this art of record.

N. B. By their traditions the Nahuatlacas left their original site [illegible] 600 years before they arrived in Anahuac. which was about. a. D.C. 902 some accounts say they first migrated about. a. 720 —. the first probably 80 years as they say on their route, the others were more. they might have [illegible] in a Year. They were led by the guidance of their God, and proceeded accordingly. When they left an establishment they had been at any [illegible] sick, old &c remained behind.

This ~~plate~~ drawing represents five Culvan Lords. The name of the Leader, Te
signifies "Pierced leg".
N.B. Some Enumerate the tribes as follows. Acosta.
1. Khochimilcas
2. Chalcas. (The hamlets / people of mouths.
3. Tepanecans, people of the bridge. Settled at Ezcaputzalco.
4. Culhuans. of Tezcuco. Culhua he says means crooked mountain
5 Tlaxcalcas, Mountaineers, Settled at Quauhximachcas (Eagles voice
Guernavaca in the Marquisate.
6. Tlascaltecans men of bread.
300. years after the former two lineages / such are the wards, the Aztecans
Mexitan or Tenochcas, / this seems the General denomination
There is a place named Tenochtitlan in Chili /.
Clavigero places this migration in or about. A. 1160.

principle
Asiatic of

figure is identical with the last of the year of the Aztecan migration
particularly noticeable in as the first instance of the representation
e of their temples roundly from the figures at the summit
e are identically the same with the Incidents of Seeva carved
e tops of Hills in North Hindoostan and on the tops of the
lles of Ogulboodha, and Deo-ghur the most ancient
dia.

e. Tul. tyl - migration ancient Language -

Ancient

[illegible] Thus Hyambos [illegible] assumed by the Greeks [illegible]
[illegible] Thus Hyambos [illegible] assumed by the Greeks [illegible]

- This is the 20th. year of their Emigration. The number of [illegible] is doubled.

+ They were banished from Ueui Ueui-Ila Palli- and [illegible] The Pallis of India supplanted by the Rajaputras called [illegible] their head Sirte Pallistan.- Their villages are still [illegible] Palli. The city of Dashee + to the South of the Vindya mou[illegible] was emphatically styled Palli- and to imply its de[illegible] appellation Sri: Palli- The Sari palla of Ptolomy

Wilford

These people were literate

+ a person. or king Horus. surnamed Pingaysha yellow eyed- [illegible] Phenicians or Philistines were ejaculation - idem

tory } There are no traces of buildings in California. such are found on the river Gila and in Pimeria
Clavigero thinks the migrators passed R. Colorado in Lat 35. ———
——— River Gila where ruins are seen ——
Casa Grande in Lat. 29. 250 miles
t. N. N. W. from the town of Chihuahua. this place is now in the range of
ild Apaches ——— Tarahumara Mountains (by tradition)
——— Culiacan, anciently Huicholhuacan
Gulf of California (see maps) Lat. 24 — Here they made their entrée
of Bushes) ——— By Natick where are remains of Trench
by the Hovi or people of the Country to ——— Chicuiuztoc. this place is
and to be 20 miles south of Zacatecas City where are now ruins. N. B. The
ear were too barbarous to construct such buildings.

Route

Coatlicomac is on this route
& there a vision & division of
the tribe took place

Amica
Jocula
Zayula
Colima } Coatlicomac
Zacatula } & Mibucan
Inhabited in the mountains
which surround the valley of
Tolnca

Tula. A. 1196
Zumpango 1216
Tzayocan 1223
Tolpetlac
Tepeyacac or Guadaloupe
Chapultepec. 1245
for 50. years Acolhuacan 1262
This place belonged to Slavery Tezcapan 1314
& Acolhuacan Huitzilopochco, was the name of the
residence of the Aztecans in Tezcapan
Acatzingo Itlan
Ixtacalco

Plate 7.

Picture history. Curiography. - Symbols of ideas, (as letters or fo
figures are representations of sounds) was used in Egypt, Mexi
China and Japan.

~~Is Mexican picture history Egyptian?~~

The above figure A. designates a prairie-like mountain; B is the mou
symbolized by an Ear of Corn. -

Query is Curiography actual representation?

THE TRUE HISTORY

OF

THE CONQUEST OF MEXICO.

PART THE SECOND.

CHAPTER I.

Tlaſcala, July, 1520. Tranſactions and occurrences there. Foundation of the colony of Segura de la Frontera. Subjugation of the neighbouring diſtricts by the Spaniards.

WE were thus, as I have mentioned, by the friendſhip of the Tlaſcalans, hoſpitably received and entertained in their city, after our fatigues, dangers, and loſſes, in the retreat from Mexico.

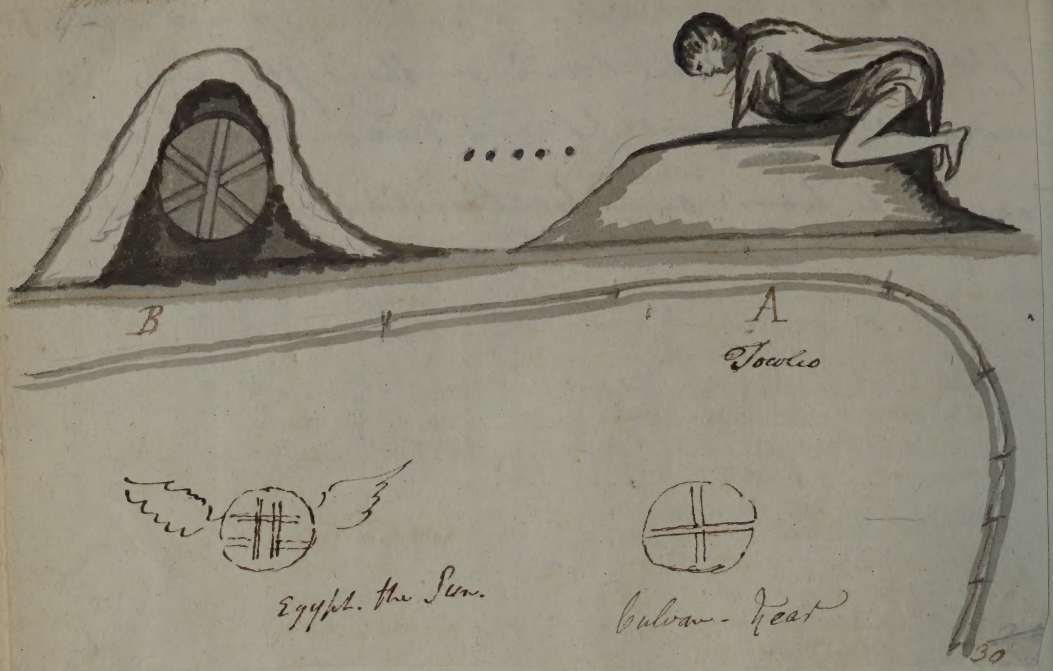
One of the firſt things done by Cortes on our arrival was, to enquire after the gold which had been brought there, to the value of forty thouſand crowns, and which was the ſhare of the garriſon of Villa Rica,

Rica. He was informed by the Tlaſcalan chiefs, and alſo by one of our invalids who remained there when we marched to Mexico, that the perſons who had been ſent from Villa Rica to receive it, had, on their return, been robbed and murdered on the road, at the time we were engaged in hoſtilities with the Mexicans. Another cauſe of uneaſineſs to us was, our uncertainty as to the ſituation of our countrymen at Villa Rica. Letters were ſent, to inform them of the events which had lately taken place, and deſiring them to ſend us what arms and ammunition they could ſpare, and a ſtrong reinforcement. We were informed by the return of the meſſengers, that all continued well in the neighbourhood of that garriſon. The reinforcement alſo, which had been required, was immediately ſent. It conſiſted of ſeven men in the whole, three of whom were ſailors, and every one of them invalids. They were commanded by a ſoldier named Lencero, the ſame who kept the inn at preſent called by his name. For a long time afterwards, a reinforcement of Lencero, was a proverbial expreſſion with us.

We had now ſome trouble given us by the younger Xicotenga. This chief on hearing of our misfortunes in Mexico, and of our being in march for his country, conceived the project of taking us by ſurpriſe, and putting us all to death; for which purpoſe he was very active in forming his party, and having aſſembled many of his friends, relations, and adherents, he expoſed to them the facility with which it could be done. Theſe intrigues however could not go on long, without coming to the knowledge of his father, who reproached him ſeverely for his treacherous conduct, aſſuring him that if it came to be known, it would coſt the lives of him and all thoſe concerned with him. The young man however perſevered, paying no regard to what his father ſaid, and the affair at length coming to the ears of his mortal enemy Chichimecatecle, he immediately gave information of it; whereupon, a council was ſummoned of all the chiefs to take the affair into conſideration, and Xicotenga was brought priſoner before them. Maxicatzin was the orator upon the occaſion and ſpoke at conſiderable length in favour of the Spaniards; he ſaid that proſperity had attended their nation ever ſince

our

Ancient Mexican Picture History

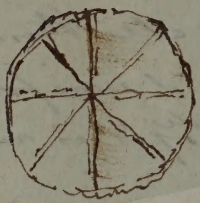


Egypt. the Sun.

Celtic - Heat

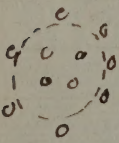
30

Siberian Hieroglyphic

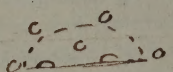


note the Cross is the Sign of Thor.

day.



Night



Midnight

Heat.

our arrival amongſt them. That we had enabled them to eat ſalt with their proviſions, and that we were certainly thoſe of whom their anceſtors had ſpoken. He then reprobated and expoſed the conduct of the younger Xicotenga. In reply to this, and to the diſcourſe of his father to the ſame purpoſe, the young man made uſe of ſuch outrageous and diſreſpectful language, as induced them to ſeize him by the collar, and throw him down the ſteps of the building into the ſtreet, and he very narrowly eſcaped with his life; but Cortes did not think it prudent in his preſent ſituation to carry matters any farther. Such was the fidelity of our Tlaſcalan allies, with whom we at this time ſtaid two and twenty days.

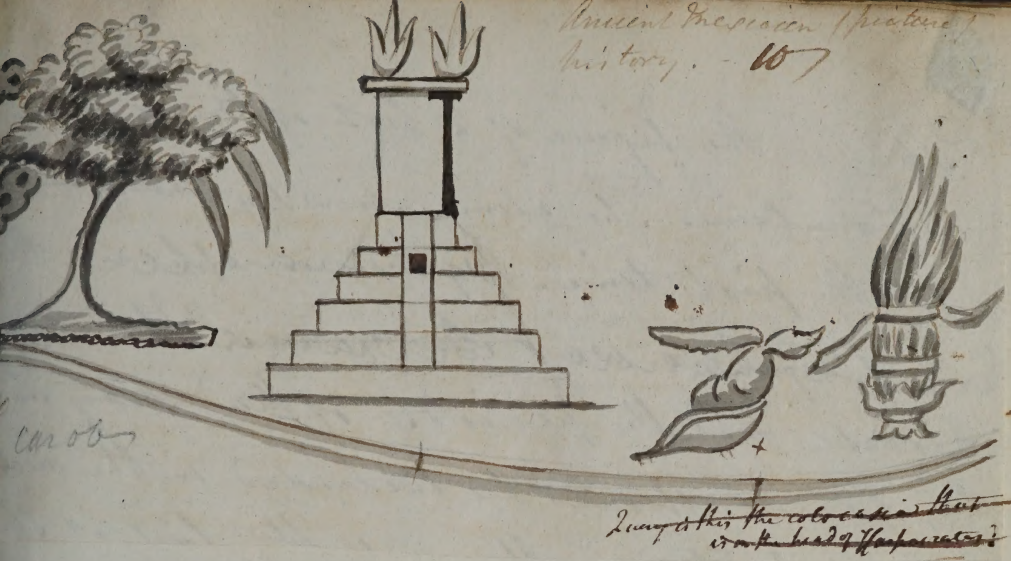
v. Tlaxcala
Tepeyacac

Cortes meditated an attack upon the adjoining provinces of Tepeaca and Zacatula, on account of the murders committed by theſe people upon the Spaniards, and determined to ſet out upon it, at the expiration of the above mentioned period; but when he came to propoſe this to his troops, he found the univerſal ſentiment of the ſoldiers of Narvaez decidedly againſt it. They thought that they never could get back ſoon enough to their houſes and mines in the Iſland of Cuba, and the ſlaughter of Mexico, and battle of Obtumba, made them deſire to renounce all connexion with Cortes, his riches, and his conqueſts. But beyond all others Andres de Duero, his friend and companion, moſt heartily curſed the day he had embarked with him in the buſineſs, and the gold which he had been forced to leave in the ditches of Mexico. They all totally declined any connexion with his new ſchemes, and finding that words did not avail them they made a requiſition in form to that effect, ſtating the inſufficiency of our force, and demanding licences to return to Cuba. Cortes having received and read the memorial, replied to it, giving at leaſt ten reaſons for his plan, to every one they alledged againſt it; his own ſoldiers alſo addreſſed him on the occaſion, requeſting him on no account to give permiſſion to any one to depart, but that we ſhould all remain together, as being moſt conducive to the ſervice of God, and his Majeſty. At length they were obliged to acquieſce, with a very ill grace, and much murmuring againſt Cortes, and his expeditions, and againſt us who ſupported him in them, and who as they ſaid had no-

thing to loſe but our lives. Cortes on his part made them a general promiſe, that by the next convenient opportunity he would ſend them to their Iſland of Cuba.

The hiſtorian Gomara in his account of this tranſaction makes no diſtinction between us and the ſoldiers of Narvaez, as if we were equally concerned in preſenting the memorial; and this he does in order to enhance the merits of his hero, Cortes, and to depreciate us the true conquerors of Mexico, becauſe we did not think it became us to bribe him with gifts to ſpeak favourably of us, when we were thoſe, and thoſe only, who ſupported Cortes. And now this hiſtorian would annihilate our reputations, in ſaying, forſooth, that we memorialled!!

It would have better become this hiſtorian to attend more to matters of fact, and leſs to his figures of rhetoric in what he writes. I have been aſtoniſhed at that part of his relation, where he aſſigns the victory at Obtumba ſolely to the valor of Cortes. I have ſaid before, that it was in the firſt inſtance owing to God's mercy; I ſay alſo that Cortes did every thing that ought to be expected from a wiſe and valiant general, and that he owed his ſucceſs, under God, to the ſtout and valiant captains, and to us brave ſoldiers, who broke the force of the enemy, and ſupported him by fighting in the manner we fought, and as I have related. What that hiſtorian ſays relative to his charging the general and bearer of the royal ſtandard of Mexico is true, and it was Juan de Salamanca, afterwards alcalde major of Guacacualco, who killed him with his lance, and preſented the ornamented plume to Cortes; which plume his Majeſty was afterwards pleaſed to give Salamanca in his coat of arms. Not that I am unwilling to aſcribe all due honour to our Cortes; for I know that he deſerves it; and if it was the cuſtom, as formerly, to give triumphs to generals, he is more worthy of one than any Roman. Gomara alſo greatly exaggerates the numbers of our Indian allies, and the population of the country beyond all reaſon; for it was not the fifth part of what he repreſents it. According to his account there would have been more thouſands here, than inhabit all Caſtille; but where he



Carob

2 copy of this the colonnade that is in the hand of Humboldt

It is probable they contained a temple at the point of their route where the representation of one appears. Some one of them is probably casa grande on the River Gila Latitude 33°.

The tree. The Carob tree Gleditsia siliqua, or Robinia, asphaltus, Caragana pinnata, conjugated leaves oval single folioles ranged by pairs on a common stalk long curved pod, seeds like a lentil used for food by the Turquois - a blue dye is extracted from the leaves. and which probably gave the blue colour used in painting by the Caribees & Otomis

Quauhtli - a tree. long thick narrow leaves. from the shape of its flower called 2. pod six inches long, one thick, a plant of the hot Countries.

This should seem to be Mexicalcaan now Julicaan on the Gulf of California Lat 24½. and with the landing there named and as they represent Julicaan as a mountain in raised shapes on a hook as the animals represent a mountain something in the way as Chiles paper kite is made

(Picture) The Place

Mizquiahuala

Query? Tulapotatio

Yet they are said previous to reaching Julicaan to have passed Mountains of Saraumara to its North, from Casa Grande which is 2 miles N. N. W of Chihuahua in Lat 29, from the R. Gila N. N. W. in 34. to the Red River N. N. W. in Lat. 35.

he has written eighty thouſand we ſhould read one thouſand. All this he has done in order to make his narrative the more agreable. In my hiſtory I tell the truth, word for word as it happened, without looking to ornaments of rhetoric; for I conſider myſelf obliged to adhere to matter of fact, and do not deal in flatteries.

We now ſet out on our march, to puniſh the diſtricts of Cachula, Tepeaca, and Tecamachalco, without artillery or fire arms of any kind, for all had been left in the ditches of Mexico. Our force conſiſted of ſixteen cavalry and four hundred and twenty infantry, moſtly armed with ſword and target, with about four thouſand Tlaſcalans. We halted at night, at the diſtance of three leagues from Tepeaca; but the people of the place had deſerted their houſes on our approach. We made ſome priſoners on our way, by whom Cortes ſent to the chiefs, to inform them, that we came for the purpoſe of obtaining juſtice for the murder of eighteen Spaniards, who had been without any cauſe put to death in croſſing their territories; and alſo to know the reaſon of their entertaining Mexican troops, and to warn them, that if they did not immediately treat with us for peace, we would make war againſt them with fire and ſword. However terrible our language was, that of their anſwer conveyed by our meſſengers and two Mexicans, was much more ſo; for the Mexicans were elevated by their ſucceſſes againſt us at the bridges. Cortes treated them very kindly, and declared every wiſh to forget and forgive the paſt, but all could not do; they ſent back for anſwer, that if we did not return immediately, they would put us all to death and make a feaſt upon our bodies.

Upon this Cortes called a council of the officers, and it was then determined, that a full ſtatement of all which had paſſed ſhould be officially drawn up by a royal notary, whereby all the Mexicans and allies of the Mexicans who had killed Spaniſh ſubjects, after having given obedience to his Majeſty, ſhould be declared in a ſtate of ſlavery. This being duly drawn up and atteſted, we once more ſent to require them to come in, giving them notice of the conſequences of their contumacy,

The ordinary denunciation of war was by presenting a Shield, as a warning to the Enemy to take care of themselves.

The Spaniards first attacked Tacatepec — in the confederacy of the Tepe
they next attacked Acatzinco — 10 Miles South of Tepeyacac

but they returned an anſwer ſimilar to their former one. Both ſides then prepared for battle, and on the next day we came to an action with them. This battle taking place in open fields of maiz, our cavalry ſpeedily put the enemy to flight, with conſiderable loſs, though they made a ſtout reſiſtance; but our allies fought gallantly, and purſued them hotly, and we took many boys, for ſlaves.

The Mexicans being thus defeated, the natives came in, to ſue for peace; we accordingly proceeded to the town of Tepeaca, to receive their ſubmiſſion, and on that ſpot was founded our ſettlement of Segura de la Frontera, the ſituation being eligible, as on the road to Villa Rica, and in a fertile diſtrict. The municipal officers were immediately appointed, and the iron brand was made here, for the purpoſe of marking thoſe natives who were taken for ſlaves; they were marked with the letter G, for "Guerra," or war. We made excurſions through the diſtrict, and to the towns of Cachula, (where they had put fifteen Spaniards to death in the houſes,) Tecamechalco, Las Guayavas, and many others whoſe names I do not recollect; taking a number of priſoners, who were immediately branded for ſlaves. By theſe means, in about the ſpace of ſix weeks, we reduced the people to order and obedience.

This name is ſince changed into Oliveira, it is called Tepeaca

Quauhquecholla or Guacachula 4 Miles from Tepeaca South 6000 families fortified by a wall of Lime & Stone & 4 barbacans

Quitlahuatzin

At this period another prince of the blood royal was elected to the throne of Mexico, for the former one who had expelled us from that city, was dead of the ſmall pox. The new king was named Guatimotzin; he was a young man about the age of twenty five years, of elegant appearance, very brave, and ſo terrible to his own ſubjects that they all trembled at the ſight of him. When the intelligence reached this prince of what had happened in Tepeaca, he began to be apprehenſive for his other provinces, neglecting, however, nothing that it was in his power to do, to induce the chiefs to continue ſteady to him; and he alſo ſent conſiderable bodies of troops to watch our movements.

Cortes now received letters from Villa Rica informing him, that a veſſel had arrived at the port, commanded by a gentleman named Pedro Barba,

Tepetitlan. Translated Stoney place.

Chicuic-moztoc or the seven caves, where they are said to have arrived in
the year of their Emigration. and where the other tribes left that of Aztlan proceed
without them to the vale of Anahuac. by the Annals it is 52 years from
the first setting out to their quitting this place. the units are 38. and probable
the only to their halts.

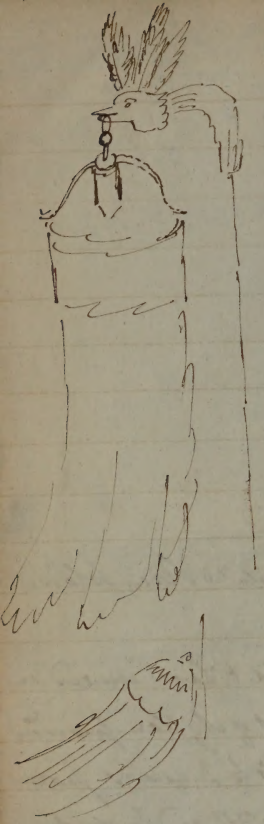
This is supposed to be in the Zacatecas country 20 miles distant from the City
of same name, and where is now the ruin of a great edifice. It is considerably to the
east of Culiacan on the Gulf of California. At this place Culiacan they are
have ~~made~~ made the ark of Rushes to carry their God. There is a place in the
of Culiacan named Petlacan which means Place of the Chest or Ark. it is
Brantz, which however may be right.

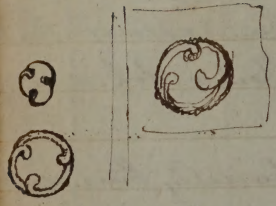
N. B. Their tradition accounts for their separation metaphorically thus. one
preferred a Shining gem, the other a bundle of sticks to kindle a fire. and
probably represented it so in their painting.

Culiacan. appears among the Conquests of Montezuma

13.

50





Japanese.

Barba, who was his intimate friend. He had been lieutenant under Velaſquez at the Havannah, and had now brought with him thirteen ſoldiers and two horſes; he alſo brought letters from Velaſquez the governor of Cuba to Narvaez, who was thought to be by this time all powerful in New Spain, ordering him, if Cortes was not already dead, to ſend him to Cuba, that he might be thence tranſmitted to Caſtille, ſuch being the directions of the biſhop of Burgos. As ſoon as Pedro Barba arrived in the harbour, the officer whom Cortes had appointed admiral went to viſit him, taking with him in his boat a ſtrong crew, with their arms concealed. When he came on board, he ſaluted Barba and the reſt courteouſly, and enquired after the health of the governor of Cuba. The others in their turn enquired after Narvaez, and what had become of Cortes. They were told that Cortes was a fugitive with about twenty of his companions, and that Narvaez had eſtabliſhed himſelf, and was in poſſeſſion of great riches. They then invited Barba and the reſt on ſhore to refreſh themſelves, to which they aſſenting deſcended into the boats, where they were bid to ſurrender themſelves inſtantly priſoners to Cortes. They had no alternative, and were obliged to ſubmit. The ſhip was diſmantled, and the captain and crew ſent to us in Tepeaca, to our great ſatisfaction, for though we did not ſuffer much in the field, yet continual fatigue had made us very unhealthy, five of our ſoldiers having died of pleuriſies within a fortnight. With this party came Franciſco Lopez, afterwards regidor of Guatimala. Barba was exceedingly well received by Cortes, who was informed by him that he might expect the arrival of another ſmall veſſel with proviſions, within the ſpace of a week, which accordingly happened. On board the laſt mentioned ſhip came a gentleman, native of Medina del Campo, by name Rodorigo de Lobera, eight ſoldiers, and one horſe. Our friends purſued the ſame method with this veſſel that they had done with the former, and with the ſame ſucceſs. The party joined us in a few days, it being no ſmall ſatisfaction to us, thus to find our army recruiting its numbers.

The new king of Mexico having ſent large bodies of troops to theſe provinces

provinces that were neareſt to the Spaniſh army, they became very diſorderly, robbing and outraging the people. Theſe provocations induced the natives to ſend four chiefs ſecretly to negotiate with Cortes, offering to ſurrender themſelves to him, provided he would give them his aſſiſtance to expell the Mexicans. Cortes immediately acceded to the propoſal, and ordered for this ſervice the whole of the cavalry and croſsbow-men, under the command of Chriſtoval de Oli. A conſiderable number alſo of Tlaſcalans were joined in the expedition. Several of the captains who had come with Narvaez were appointed to command in this detachment, which amounted in the whole to above three hundred ſoldiers. As our people were on their march, converſing with the Indians, they received ſuch accounts from them of the force of the enemy, as entirely deprived the ſoldiers of Narvaez of what little inclination they ever had for military expeditions, and made them doubly anxious to return to their Iſland of Cuba, being utterly averſe from a repetition of the days of Mexico, and Obtumba. They began to grow very mutinous, and told their chief in plain terms, that if he was determined to perſiſt in his attempt, he might do it by himſelf, for that they were all reſolved to quit him. De Oli remonſtrated with them upon the impropriety of ſuch conduct, in which he was ſupported by all the ſoldiers of Cortes, but in vain; he was compelled to yield to their perverſeneſs, and halt at Cholula, from whence he wrote to Cortes, informing him of his ſituation. When Cortes received his letter, he immediately returned an angry meſſage, ordering him poſitively to advance with his whole force, at all events. When De Oli received this, he fell in a violent rage with thoſe who had brought that reprimand on him, and ordering the whole to march immediately, declared he would ſend back any one who heſitated to Cortes, to be treated by him as a coward deſerved.

When he arrived within a league of Guacacualco, he was met by ſome chiefs, who informed him in what manner he might beſt come upon the enemy. Having in conſequence ſettled his plan of attack, he marched againſt, and after a ſharp action defeated the Mexican troops, and

Teo-zapottan

place of the divine fruit - Zapotte or Sapadilla, a Species of plum. a fruit of the hot Latitudes. & probably not beyond 23.d

This sacred Symbol. the sea unicorn's horn is not traceable in the old world except perhaps in the horn of the Axis of Zerdesht.

N. B. There is a place named Zapottan some Miles to the South East of Lake Chapalla.

Teo-zapottan also appears to the North of Lake Chapallan.

- coast of North East Asia is a Station and
- Horns of the Sea Unicorn.

is seems to have been in the Zapotecan Country where Chimezotes is said
ve been

otl seems a pretty general name for fruit.

tree or Zambu. Zambu. Thibetian - divine fruit. or fruit of
ortality — Sir W. Jones. V. 1. p. 23. a tree of sacred or Mythological
ter. Islands adjoining four great rocks whence proceed as many
according to the traditions of that people.

of Arimon - A Spiral lined Stone Symbol of the Deity

Chinese = tepee.

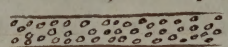
Mountains of heaven. Storry

The lower part represents the firmament. Their symbols were confined to representations on plain surfaces.

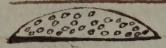
This is a human skull blackened and drilled in holes, into which a light was probably put, as we see done by children. To it are appended short hollow cylinders of bone. — According to the Egyptians the heavens are made of a Giant's Skull. The Kochin Chinese whose creed agrees with this call the giant who furnished matter for the universe Banko. The Scandinavian Goths have the same opinion in their Edda.

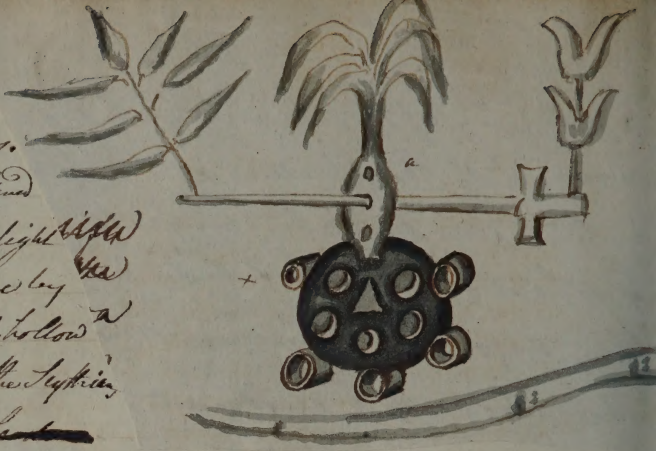
The Hindoos call the firmament the God with the thousand eyes. The Greek Argus.

The later Sabeans altered the figure of the firmament as here



and





Persian Birma

V. Grosier for the depictment of a mountain in the Chinese manner

Above the figure of heavens is that of a cut or traversed mountain, which [illegible] Hence is usually expressed by the figure of a knife laid across that of a mountain. In this latter they had two ways of representing either by an imitation of nature (as the drawing above) as in Birma, or by stretching out paper upon a wooden frame to signify the profile or elevation. The idea conveyed by the knife is also used in Birmah Cosmography.

NB. The affinity of Egyptian & Chinese Idioms made de Guignes think China was instructed by an Egyptian Colony A. A. C. 1112 — This is the Egyptian [illegible] of divinity or eminence

According to Egyptian hieroglyphic	a wing.	is a messenger of State.
	a bonnet.	a public office
	the sun	a solid circle
	moon	a disk
	a battle	two hands holding weapons

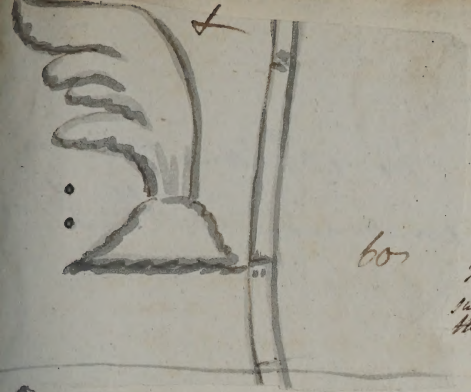
and put them completely to flight, with the loſs on his part, of two horſes, and eight wounded. Our allies this day made a great ſlaughter of the Mexicans, who fell back, and rallied at a large town called Ozucar, where were other great bodies of their troops. Here they made a poſt, fortifying themſelves and breaking down the bridges; but De Oli, turned into a tiger by the reproof of Cortes, purſued them without halting, with as many of his troops as he could bring up. By the aſſiſtance of his Indian friends of Guacachula, he contrived to paſs the river, and falling on the Mexicans, diſperſed them again, with the loſs of two more horſes killed; his own horſe was alſo wounded in ſeveral places, and De Oli himſelf received two wounds. Here he halted for two days after the action, and all the principal people waited on him, to ſubmit as vaſſals to his Majeſty. Their allegiance being accepted, and the country reſtored to peace, he returned with his force to the town of Segura de la Frontera.

Not having been on this expedition, the account I have given is ſuch as was related to me, by thoſe who were. De Oli was received by Cortes and all of us with great ſatisfaction; we laughed heartily at him for his counter march, in which he joined with us, and ſwore that for the next expedition he was ſent on, he would take the poor ſoldiers of Cortes, and not the rich planters of Narvaez, whoſe minds were more intent upon their houſes and eſtates, than upon feats of arms; and who were much more ready to command, than to obey. Gomara ſays that it was the people of Guaxocingo who gave the information to the officers of Narvaez; but this is abſurd, for the laſt mentioned town was entirely out of their route, and it is exactly the ſame thing as ſaying, that if we were to ſet out now from Medina del Campo to travel to Salamanca, we ſhould go round by Valladolid.

While we were here, Cortes received letters from Villa Rica, whereby he was informed, that a veſſel had arrived there commanded by a perſon of the name of Camargo, having on board upwards of ſeventy ſoldiers, all very ſickly. She was one of theſe which had been ſent

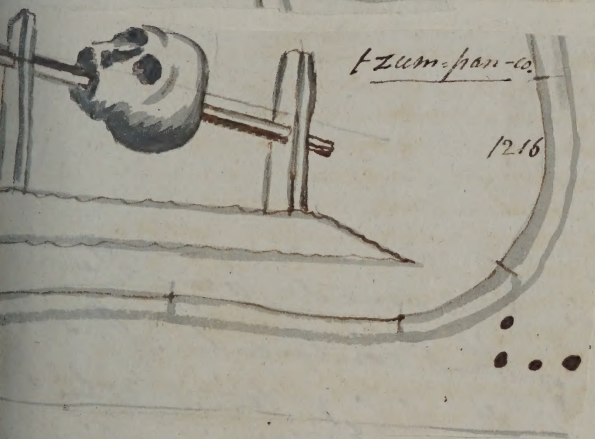
sent to eſtabliſh a colony at Panuco, * and brought intelligence that the other captain who had been ſent thither, named Pineda, with all his ſoldiers, had been put to death by the Indians; and that their ſhipping had been burned. Camargo therefore finding the ill ſucceſs of that attempt, had come to Villa Rica for aſſiſtance, his men being afflicted with liver complaints, which their yellow and dropſical appearance demonſtrated. This officer was very well acquainted with the ſituation of affairs, and had been it is ſaid, a Dominican friar. Having diſembarked his ſoldiers, he ſet out with them, and arrived by ſlow marches at La Frontera, where they were kindly received by Cortes, and attended with as much care as we could beſtow upon them, but the captain and many of the ſoldiers very ſoon died. On account of their morbid colour and ſwollen bodies, we uſed to call them "the green paunches." In order to avoid the interference of foreign matters with the thread of my narrative, I will now inform my reader, that one after another, at different and irregular periods, all the remains of this armament arrived at the port of Villa Rica. Amongſt others was an Arragonian named Miguel diaz de Auz. He brought upwards of fifty ſoldiers, with ſeven horſes; with which he immediately joined us, being the moſt effectual reinforcement we had for a long time received. This Captain de Auz ſerved very well during the war in New Spain; it was he who afterwards had a law ſuit with a brother in law of Cortes, named Andres de Barrios, whom we uſed to call "the dancer." The law ſuit was about the diviſion of Meſtitan, which was awarded afterwards as follows; he had the ſurplus of the rents, beyond two thouſand five hundred crowns, on condition of not entering upon the diſtrict for the ſpace of two years, becauſe he was accuſed of having killed Indians there, and in other places where he had been. Another of Garay's veſſels arrived ſhortly after at our port. In this came an officer named Ramirez, called by us, "the old." He brought with him forty ſoldiers, ten horſes, croſs-bows and other arms. Thus Garay continually ſent us reinforcements, thinking that his colony was going on well in Panuco. All theſe ſoldiers joined us at Tepeaca. Thoſe who came with Miguel diaz de Auz, as they were plump and in good condition, we named "the Sir loins;" and as the ſoldiers

* By F. de Garay governor of Jamaica.



Papanthon. Place of the broad leaved Plank.
Carica papaya - a rare Indian plant.
Paw-paw - a root according to De Bry.
custard apple anona canorol.
Paw paw of Surinam has large leaves

N.B. The Natives of Surinam use the patwo patos, have the superstitious veneration for green stones, intoxicate with the seeds of the Cotton plank.



Tzum-pan-co.

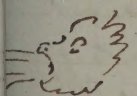
1216

Tzum - Stimulus, Golgotha
panco. Mantrum Golgotha.

Tzompantli. Place where the Skulls were strung in the Temple.
There is a place of this name at, which are Silver mines
Tula precedes this in their line of route mond? to Co

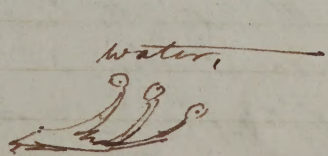
Apazco. Place of the pottery.

a adam's fig-tree - leaves half a fathom long & more - It is neither tree nor for on the one side it bears the very bigge

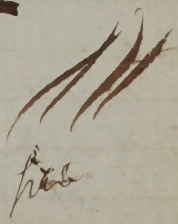


air

earth



water.



fire

A contraband trade existed between Bristol and the west Indies at this period
the conquerors of Mexico were armed in Mail of English manufacture—

Ezcaputzalco

Atlaquiacan, place where the river sinks into the earth. Such a place is put down in
Hondius's map. in the country of the Zacatecas — Lat 22. 2 N. E. of Tekochapalco
Quauhtitlan. Grove of the Eagle for woody mountains &c / here a colony parted off— the name
bears the distinctive of one of the first five Lords. the figure at the end of the word the
branches off seems to identify with the other.

Ezcaputzalco is the place or clan stream of the Ants.

N. B. On a river which runs into Lake Chapaltan, we find a town named Mexicalcingo
or Place of the Mexicans temple of either the God Mexitli, or the Mexican Nation — and
60 Miles west, a little South of the head of this river — Lat 21. 30. on the Rio
40 miles up it — Teo-altitlan — of the same name about 15 miles west of
this, whence the White or shining mountains run South West —

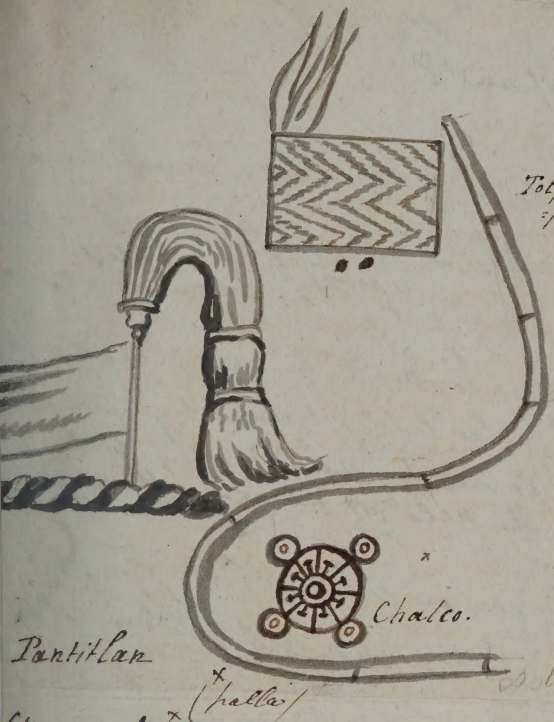
Quauhtlan. Xochiatzin lord of — obtained a noble wife from the Aztecans when
they were at Tizayocan.

ſoldiers of old Ramirez wore cotton armour which was very thick and clumſy, ſo that no arrow could penetrate through it, we called them "the pack-horſes."

Cortes having been thus reinforced to the amount of an hundred and fifty ſoldiers and twenty horſes, determined to puniſh the Cacatame and Xalacingo Indians, with ſeveral others who had been concerned in the murders of Spaniards. Twenty cavalry and twelve croſsbow-men, made part of the force ſent againſt them, the whole of which conſiſted of two hundred of the veterans of the army of Cortes, and a body of Tlaſcalans, commanded by Gonzalo de Sandoval. Our detachment received intelligence that the enemy were in arms, fortified, and reinforced by Mexican troops. Sandoval therefore arranged his plan of attack, firſt ſending to inform them, that he would pardon the deaths of the Spaniards, provided they ſubmitted, and returned the treaſure. The anſwer they ſent back was, that they would eat him, and all thoſe with him, in the ſame manner that they had done the others. Sandoval then proceeded to attack them, which he did in two places at the ſame inſtant, and notwithſtanding that both the natives and the Mexicans fought with great ſpirit, they had no better ſucceſs than on former occaſions, being defeated and purſued with a conſiderable loſs. Our people after the action going into ſome of their temples, found cloaths, arms, bridles and ſaddles, preſented as offerings to their gods. Sandoval declared his intention of halting three days there, and he alſo now again demanded from them the treaſure which had been taken. They readily ſubmitted themſelves to his Majeſty, but in regard to the treaſure, they ſaid, that it was no longer in their power, having been tranſmitted to Mexico. Sandoval referred them to the general for their pardons, and returned with his troops, having made a conſiderable number of women and boys priſoners, all of whom were immediately marked with the iron. I was not on the expedition, being ill of a fever, and throwing up blood at the mouth; but I was bled plentifully, and thanks to God recovered. In conſequence of the directions given by Sandoval, the chiefs of theſe nations, and alſo of many others in their neighbourhood,

came in and made their ſubmiſſions to Cortes. This expedition was productive of the very beſt effects. The fame of Cortes extended through all their countries, for valor and for juſtice, and he was much more dreaded and reſpected than Guatimotzin, the new ſovereign of Mexico; inſomuch that his deciſion was requeſted in the moſt important litigations. The ſmall pox was now ſo prevalent in New Spain, that many of the great lords of the natives died of it. In ſuch caſes the claimants to the ſucceſſion called on Cortes for, and abided by his deciſion, as ſovereign lord of the country. There were at this period great diſputes relative to the lordſhips of Ozucar and Guacachula, which being referred to Cortes he decided the cauſe in favor of a nephew of Montezuma, whoſe ſiſter had married the cacique of that diſtrict.

At this time Cortes ſent Sandoval to puniſh the people of the diſtrict called Cocotlan, where they had put to death nine Spaniards. Sandoval took with him thirty cavalry and one hundred infantry, with a ſtrong body of Tlaſcalans. On his entry into the diſtrict he ſummoned theſe people, holding out as uſual threats on the one hand, and invitations on the other, to which the Indians replied, that they acknowledged no other government than that of Mexico, and that they were very well able to defend themſelves. They had here a conſiderable force of Mexican auxiliaries, who encouraged them to reſiſtance. As ſoon as Sandoval received this meſſage he put his troops in order, and cautioned his allies not to advance to the attack at firſt, on account of their diſordering the cavalry, but to wait until the enemy were broken by our troops, and then to fall on the Mexicans. Two large bodies of the enemy were met by our army, in a ſtrong ſituation; they made a firm reſiſtance, and before Sandoval could extricate his cavalry from the difficult and rocky ground, they had killed one and wounded nine of his horſes and four ſoldiers. At length having driven them from this poſt, he advanced to their town, and there aſſaulting them and the reinforcements which had joined them, at their poſt in the temples, and large walled incloſures, with the good aſſiſtance of his Indian allies, whoſe keenneſs was increaſed by the abundance of plunder, he totally defeated



If this is Tollan, or Tollantzinco the settlement of the Tolteccatlis the first colonists on record. it is benefit to mention the Arabic word. Toolah - lofty - high stature - and it is the case that these Tolteccatlis are actually so described in the most ancient Records

Tola - a river in South Siberia
Pittaca - Vulcan } a chest
Petshi - Vindex }

Chalco. Place or Sanctuum of the Gens. the figure taken from the Lunar signs of Bimah of the same thing agrees nearly with it.

Pantitlan. Place of partition as it is interpreted. Whereas it should seem to sig the place of the sacred standard. "pan" which is a contraction entering into words significant of a Standard.

Tolpetlapan means, Place of the ink of Rushes.

Tollan. a separation did take place in the Aztecan tribe, by tradition as will be seen 50 leagues from Mexico — those who went are pronounced by Chalco - Tula or Tollan, & Coatlicpac.

Tinalli a broom.

Tlli. means a seat or cushion of rushes. Hence its ordinary usage.

very Station.

Quauhtepec
mountain of the
Eagle.

Teotlaxqualoyan
or
Ehecacoatl or
reveal Serpent
prow its swift
ness. Clavigero
says. but this
quality is contra
dicted

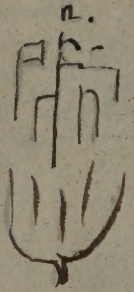
Ep-coatl
Fiery Serpent
The rattle
Snake.

Quere - the word Coa - is it Asiatic?
Is the name of the Great Serpent of which?

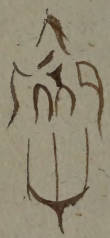
ed, and put them to flight. Sandoval halted here for two days, during which the chiefs came in and made their ſubmiſſions. He demanded of them the property and effects of the Spaniards whom they had put to death, but they replied that it was out of their power to return them, they having already burned the whole. They alſo ſaid that moſt of the Spaniards they had killed were eaten, five of them having been ſent to their monarch Guatimotzin. They promiſed a plentiful ſupply of proviſions, apologized for what was paſſed, and Sandoval being able to do no more was fain to accept their ſubmiſſions.

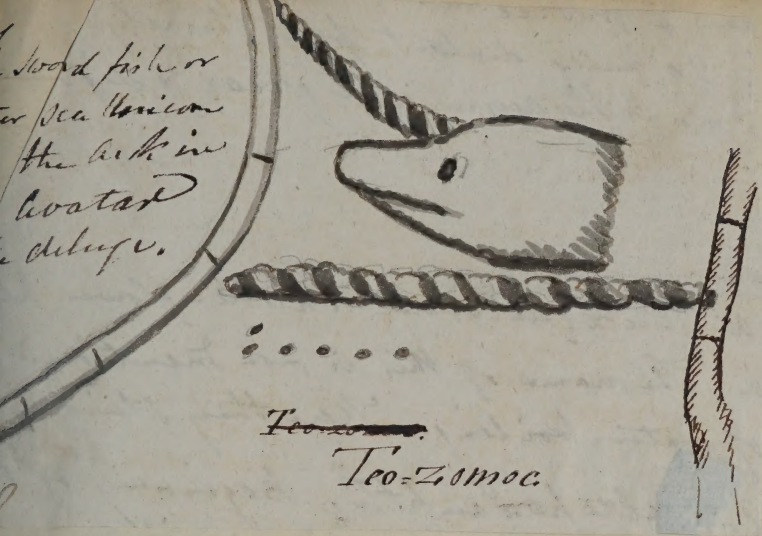
As all this country was now brought under ſubjection, Cortes determined, with the approbation of his Majeſty's officers to mark the priſoners and ſlaves, previous to the taking out the royal fifth, and his own. An order was in conſequence given out, that the ſoldiers ſhould bring all their priſoners to an appointed place, which was a large houſe in the town, for this purpoſe. It was accordingly done; they conſiſted of women, boys, and girls of the Indians, for as to the men they were too troubleſome to keep, and our Tlaſcalan friends did us all the ſervice we could deſire from them. The priſoners remained in confinement during the night, and in the morning the repartition took place. Firſt the royal fifth was ſelected, and then that of Cortes; and thus far all went on very well, but when the ſoldiers ſhares came to be allotted, behold! we found that ſome one had been there in the night, and taken every handſome and good Indian that was there, leaving us nothing but a herd of old, ugly, and miſerable jades. This of courſe made a great murmur amongſt the ſoldiers, who loudly charged Cortes with having conveyed away and concealed all the valuable ſlaves, and the ſoldiers of Narvaez ſwore they never heard of ſuch a thing as two kings, and two fifths, in his Majeſty's dominions! among the reſt one Juan de Quexo ſaid he would make it known in Caſtille how they were treated, and another plainly told Cortes how he had abuſed them in regard to the gold in Mexico, for that when the diviſion was made there appeared only three hundred thouſand crowns in value, and when our flight took place he produced above ſeven hundred thouſand; all which had been

regularly atteſted. And now the poor ſoldier, who had worn himſelf to nothing with fatigue, and was full of wounds, when he had gotten a good female Indian priſoner, and given her cloathing and ornaments, found that ſhe was taken from him! "When the order was given," ſaid the ſoldier, "Every one thought that the ſlaves were only put in "to be marked and valued, and that each would get his own back, pay- "ing the fifth of the value which ſhe was rated at to his Majeſty, and "that Cortes was to have no farther claim on them whatever." He added a great deal more to the ſame purpoſe, but worſe than what I have mentioned. When Cortes heard theſe exclamations againſt him, he made anſwer, ſwearing by his conſcience! his uſual oath, that it never ſhould happen ſo again, and he proteſted that in future better regulations ſhould be adopted. Thus with ſmooth words, and fair promiſes on his part, the affair paſſed over.



But I have now ſomething to mention worſe than this; it has been already related how in the fatal night of the retreat from Mexico, the treaſure was produced and all the ſoldiers given liberty to take as much as they choſe of it; many of thoſe of Narvaez loaded themſelves with gold, ſome alſo of ours did the ſame; to a great many this coſt their lives, and none who eſcaped with life and what they had carried off, but were ſeverely wounded. After all this however Cortes came to know that in our garriſon here at La Frontera, a quantity of gold in bars was in circulation, and that deep gaming was going on amongſt our ſoldiers; wherein our companions had forgot the old proverb which ſays, that "wealth and amours ſhould be kept concealed." He iſſued an order for all the gold to be brought in within a given time, under the ſevereſt penalty in caſe of diſobedience, promiſing, on a fair delivery, to return the third part, but threatening in caſe of failure or evaſion, that the whole ſhould be forfeited. Many of the ſoldiers refuſed, and from ſome Cortes took it by way of loan; but indeed rather by main force than free will. As many of the captains and alſo of thoſe who had offices under his Majeſty were poſſeſſed of gold, a compromiſe took place

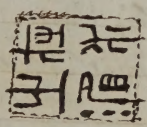




Teo-Zomoc.

This seems a place to which they annexed importance the sacred symbol makes its appearance twice. once in the usual way. the other as it is in the description of the sacred Ark of Zer dusht. The

Zomoc. Sulvan, an ape. Simaco. Malay — The Ape is a sacred character in the Mythology of the old world. In the Hindoo Hanuman comes with the apes to the assistance of Gods in the Ramayana. In Egypt the Cynocephalus or Ape is sacred to, and symbolic of, the Moon, as the rabbit is in India —



an equal square. no. 13. in 4 points it touches the Edge.

a seal of white China or Japanese ware. found in a grave pit, many feet below the surface. the animal is the dog-ape — the characters are known — it is a tube of plain white China-ware — no

Huitzquilloxan. place of the thistles.

Huitzilton
Huitzilopochtli the celestial bird gets the Scientific

The next place to which ~~no interpretation~~ is added has been taken more unwarrantable liberties with by the Italian engravers. It is intended to signify the place of boiling water. it should be as represented in the corner. A the three round stones on which they placed the pot, are always used to express fire in that use.

Xaltepozauhtli. Place where the sands begin. Here more liberty has been taken. he introduces a sieve. it is always represented as a heap, in a circular boundary to retain or keep it together as here.

And rice is thus represented in Chinese Cosmography.

From the Mexican paintings. Cacao.

Tezcatitlan. Place of the Mirror. made of a black volcanic stone and of which the figure is an exact representation.

Huitzilhuitl. thistle. & bird of Paradise. some mythological meaning here as the humming bird which bears a sacred allegorical is considered to live on the thistle the milk of which was the nourishment of one of their Gods.

place whereby no more was ſaid about the order; but it was a very bad tranſaction on the part of Cortes.

The officers of Narvaez thought this a good juncture to renew their ſolicitations to Cortes for permiſſion to return to Cuba. After much trouble and many efforts on their part, Cortes aſſented, promiſing that on the conqueſt of Mexico, he would give his friend Andres de Duero much more wealth than he had ever poſſeſſed. He made ſimilar offers alſo to the other captains, eſpecially to Auguſtin Bermudez. Thoſe who were determined to return he ordered to be provided with whatever was neceſſary for their voyage, ſuch as maiz, dogs ſalted, fowls, &c, and giving them one of the beſt ſhips in the harbour, he wrote letters by them to his wife Donna Catalina Xuarez Marcayda, and to his brother in law Juan Xuarez, informing them of all that had happened; and he alſo tranſmitted to them by the ſame opportunity ſome bars and ornaments of gold. The following perſons were among thoſe who returned to Cuba at this time, with their pockets well lined after all their diſaſters. Andres de Duero, Auguſtin Bermudez, Juan Buono de Quexo, Bernardino de Queſada, Franciſco Velaſquez the hump backed, a relation of the governor of Cuba, Gonzalo Carraſco who returned afterwards to this country and lives in La Puebla, Melchor Velaſco, and one Ximenes who lives in Guaxaca: he went for his ſons; alſo the commendador Leon de Cervantes who went to bring over his daughters; after the conqueſt of Mexico he married them to very honourable connexions; one Maldonado alſo of Medellin, an invalid; not he who married Donna Maria del Rincon, nor the big Maldonado, nor the other of that name whom we called Alvaro Maldonado "the fierce," who was married to a lady named Maria Arias; there was alſo one Vargas whom we nicknamed "the gallant;" I do not mean the Vargas who was father in law to Chriſtoval Lobo; Cardenas the pilot alſo went; it was he who talked of the two kings; Cortes gave him three hundred crowns for his wife and children; with many others whom it would be too prolix to enumerate. When Cortes was remonſtrated with on letting ſo many quit us in our weak ſtate he replied, that he did it partly

to

to get rid of their importunities, and partly becauſe they were not fit for war, and that it was better to be alone than badly accompanied. He ſent Alvarado with them in order to ſee them ſhipped, and at this time he alſo diſpatched De Ordas and Alonzo de Mendoza to Caſtille, with certain inſtructions, the tenor of which we were ignorant of; as we alſo were of what was going on in that country relative to us, except that the Biſhop of Burgos declared us all traitors, and that Diego de Ordas anſwered very well for us, and got for himſelf the order of St. Jago, and for his coat of arms the volcano which is between Guaxocingo and Cholula. But theſe affairs ſhall be related in their proper time. Cortes alſo ſent Captain Alonzo de Avila contador of New Spain, and Franciſco Alvarez, a man of buſineſs, to make a report to the royal court of audience and the brothers of the order of Jeronymites in St. Domingo, of all that had happened, more particularly relative to Narvaez; and alſo to inform them, how he had puniſhed by ſlavery, thoſe guilty of revolt and murders, and meant to purſue the ſame meaſures with all thoſe people who adhered to the alliance of the Mexicans. He alſo ſupplicated their intereſts in repreſenting our faithful ſervices to the Emperor, and their ſupport againſt the miſrepreſentations and enmity of the Biſhop of Burgos.

Cortes likewiſe at this time ſent a veſſel to Jamaica for horſes, commanded by one De Solis, whom we afterwards called De Solis de la Huerta. Some will aſk how he was able to ſend agents to Caſtille, to St. Domingo, and Jamaica, without money. To this I reply, that on the night of our retreat from Mexico, though many of our ſoldiers were killed, yet a conſiderable quantity of gold was ſaved, as the firſt who paſſed the bridge were, the eighty loaded Tlaſcalans; ſo that though much was loſt in the ditches of Mexico, yet all was not left there, and the gold which was brought off by the Tlaſcalans, was by them delivered to Cortes. But as to us poor ſoldiers who had no command, but were commanded, it was enough for us to eſcape with our lives, and all badly wounded too, without troubling ourſelves what was done with the gold, nor how much of it was brought off; and it was alſo ſhrewd-

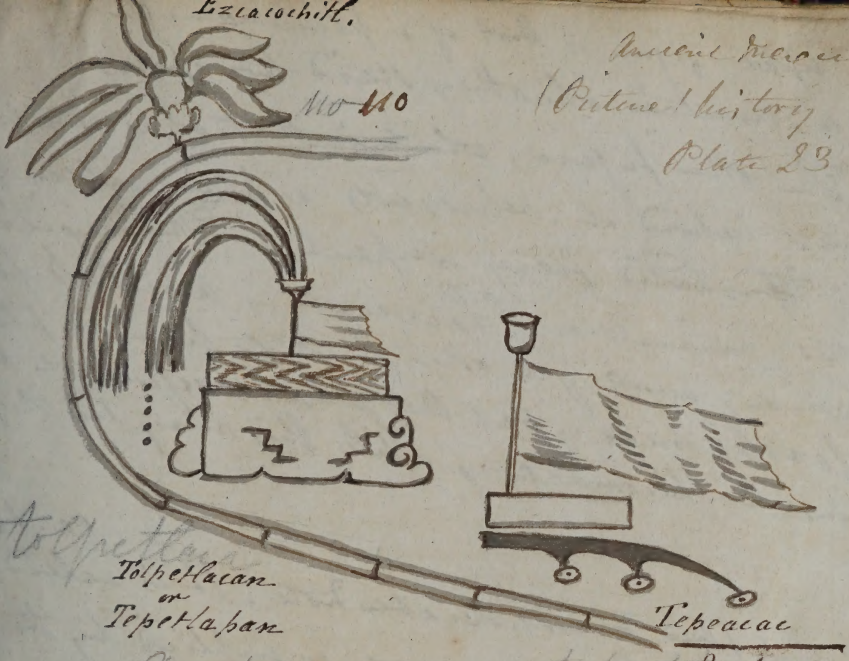
ly

Ezcaxochitl.

110 110

Ancient Mexican
Picture history
Plate 23

Tula
Xumpanco
Tezayocan
Tepeacac
0.



Tolpetlacan
or
Tepetlapan

Tepeacac

N. S. de
Guadaloupe

Stoney plain upon
the water edge.

Ezcaxochitl, an, in place of the Art-flower?
Petlacan, Place of the Stone chest, or Tolpetlacan, place of the chest of rushes
probably in either case the ark or Shrine of their idol
eacac — called Tepeaca, & famous for the flight of the Spaniards
our Lady of Guadaloupe was at the extremity of one of the Lakes
o of Mexico. The Mexicans or Aztecans arrived here in or about
year 1223. They divided and Conducted here in two divisions and in great
ity. The other Colonies Tribes who had preceded them Having occupied all the
ry around the Lake. The Aztecans continued in this situ
about 20 years or until 1257 —
The Aztecans in Tepeaca emigrated to Chalchitepeque

N. B. this part of the Picture is inverted in the Original

Chapultltepec is South West of Mexico and is the place whence that City is supplied with water, for which purpose in Montezuma's time there was a double and covered aqueduct that one should be always clean.

Tepeacac or Guadeloupe is at the extremity of the Causeway leading thence Mexico and due North of Mexico.

About A. 1250
an incarnation of Bhoodh is represented with the hair thus tied – Wilford A. R. v. 3. p. 414
Chapultltepec Mountain of the Grasshopper
this may be Mexitli for it was his reign.
Tepeacac now Guadeloupe
These are the Lords or Kings of the five tribes of the Sultan Nations who separated from, and arrived in the vale of Anahuac before the Azteeans.
The two Mexican Lords, or Heads of tribes of the five Kings of Anahuac. whereon to build a town or Cha
The names of the two Lords are thrown and figures annexed to the hea

A a point of Land is always thus depicted by a leg. as the Northern nations call it.

B other interpretations are given to the Eagle's Claw. but less probable.

The figures annexed to the heads, or that of the hindmost are obscene, but that a means Nellotzin which signifies "Lost Tejers" The other is not of difficult explanation. The engraver has done what he could to add to the unavoidable rity of the history

N. B. Rubbac Kawn's expedition to Japan when his fleet was cast away was Kel. Foster attributes the colonization of America to that work. whereas from a of circumstances it must have been some centuries prior to Rubbac Kawn

A
B
A
B
divining, beg
nt of Land
nated by the heads behind
ben hands signify that they
requesting or petitioning

[illegible] plate [illegible]

[illegible] it is not translated but seems [illegible]
(many others)

[illegible] founded of two words one of which means
red, the other – love. The Emblem is this
red Sword fish, and another representing
two tufts of his horn which has a rela
to the same idea. No plant meets
[illegible] do nearly as Tula or Tolla
[illegible] site of the Toltecas or the
Teotihuacan both
Here they stand sig
to the Native

ly ſuſpected, that the treaſure which fell to the ſhare of the garriſon of Villa Rica, and of which thoſe who were entruſted with the conveyance were robbed, went after all to Old Caſtille, Jamaica and elſewhere. But the ingots of gold in the captains pockets ſtopped all inquiry upon that head.

The ſiege of Mexico being now determined on, Cortes left a garriſon of twenty men moſtly ſick and wounded, under the command of Franciſco de Orozco in the town of Frontera, and proceeded with the reſt of his force to the country of Tlaſcala, where he ordered timber to be cut for the conſtruction of the veſſels to command the lake of Mexico. The ſhips were to be conſtructed under the directions of Martin Lopez, an excellent ſhipwright, and one who was moſt highly ſerviceable to his Majeſty's intereſts here in other reſpects, beſides being a valiant ſoldier. When we arrived at Tlaſcala, we found that our good friend and the faithful ally of our Monarch, Maxicatzin, had fallen a victim to the ſmall pox. Cortes lamented him as if he had been his father, and put on mourning in reſpect to him, as did many of our captains and ſoldiers. As there was ſome diſpute in regard to the ſucceſſion, Cortes ſettled that it ſhould be with the legitimate ſon of our friend, as he had deſired at his death; a ſhort time previous to which, having ſummoned his family into his preſence, he had ſtrictly enjoined them never to quit our alliance, as we were undoubtedly thoſe who were deſtined to rule that country. The other chiefs of that nation offered their aſſiſtance in providing timber, and alſo to aid us in the war againſt the Mexicans. Cortes received their propoſals with every mark of attention and gratitude, and at that time propoſed to one of them, the elder Xicotenga, to turn chriſtian; to which he readily aſſented, and was baptized in great ceremony by the name of Don Lorenzo de Vargas.

Our ſhipwright Lopez managed his buſineſs ſo well, that in a few days he had all his timber cut, ſhaped, and marked for each particular part of the veſſels. He was aſſiſted by a good ſoldier named Andres Nunez,

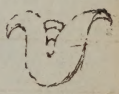
Probably Tepeaca

[illegible] an arbor [illegible] (on the [illegible]
mountain - on the lake of Mexico - there
is a Stone
[illegible] of Anahuac a point of land
[illegible] Eagle's claw

The two human heads indicate the two [illegible]
[illegible] petition. the plant, and the tigers
[illegible] connected to it indicate their names -
probably signify - from their posture
petitioning

~~Tepeaca keeps the [illegible]~~ Tepeaca they [illegible]
A. 1245 The water flower means Tepeaca

Borodes. a Cluster of small islands at the South Extremity of the Lake. hence they also carried slaves to Tegeapan. by the King of Colhuacan a town near that place



Observe the 2 the seated figures at Teotihuacan Borodes V. I.

The Pluto of the Portland Vase has one foot sunk in the Ground — & Vulcan of the Greeks is lame in one leg —

There are some mysteries hitherto unattempted to investigate relative to this — is left leg was covered; translation says with feathers of the humming bird. humming bird. the bird of paradise in India is held sacred and called bird of God? and why the left leg? yet we see in China that the holy Spirit drives the sacred Cow at the Annual festival has one foot

The idols of the S. Seas and of N.W. Coast are thus seated in Chairs probably the Palladium of Troy, said to be the bones of Pelops remains of their Patriarchal ancestor

A the hook at the end of the cord.

B. The Slavery of the Aztecans, at Tizapan. black. but blue was the symbol o

C. This figure cannot be made out. It is either sacrificial or a proper name

D. All this relates to Tizapan. with penances and sacrifice. It is probabl

E. relates to skinning of Men, one of their practices as it is not unlike the figure

the temple are aloe thorns, an instrument of penance, and above them a fl

Lancets for sacrificial Lacerations. { over their temples and on the walls from they played the thorns of Magney used in pa

F. Ulach-to, or Clausthrum of the game of Football, a process of no inconsidera

annexed importance with the Sulvan Nations, and of universal practice throu

America from Nootka to Greenland and Cuba.

They were now slaves to the Colhua or Acolhua nation,

The points on the temple are the sharp ends of aloes ~~thorns~~ smeared with bl

or sacrificial blood. I used as the Cusa grass of Indias, which is said

ſetting forward on our route for Tezcuco, after we were joined by the people who came on board the veſſel. Amongſt theſe were one Juan del Eſpinar, afterwards a very rich man, one Sagredo uncle to the woman called La Sagreda, in the Iſland of Cuba, and a Biſcayan named Monjaraz, uncle to two of that name who were ſoldiers with us, and father to the handſome woman who afterwards came to Mexico called La Monjaraza. This man never was in any expedition or engagement with us, always pretending to be ſick, though he miſſed no opportunity of boaſting of his valour. When we beſieged Mexico, he ſaid he would ſee how the natives fought, for he had no opinion of their bravery. He accordingly went to the top of a very high temple like a turret, and no one ever could tell how it was, but certain Indians killed him on that very day. Thoſe who had known him in the Iſland of St. Domingo ſaid, that it was God's judgment on him for having had his wife, a good, honourable, and beautiful woman, put to death, by the perjury of falſe witneſſes.

The foot-ball was solid & of like or elastic gum. the produce of a tree in hot Climates, as for instance of Guatemala

The Lamot or Rayo frequently occurs in Egyptian Hieroglyphic Figure. But something like it occurs in Egyptian Hieroglyphic — stability — as it is in Persia & other eastern Countries the colour running —

the wheat the beloved. the boar may have a mystic meaning Emblematical of the bristles of the boar of the avatar who roots the world out of the Ocean.

Thomy wood is in the Quarter of S. Paul. in Mexico

CHAPTER II.

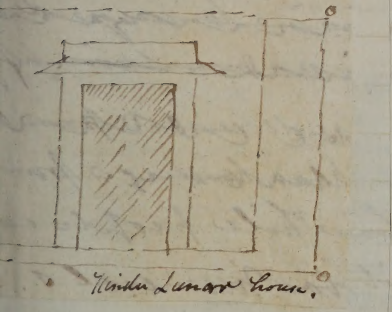
March of the Spaniards to beſiege Mexico, December 28th. 1520. Inveſtment of Mexico, May 30th. 1521. Siege of that city, and final conqueſt Auguſt 16th. 1521.

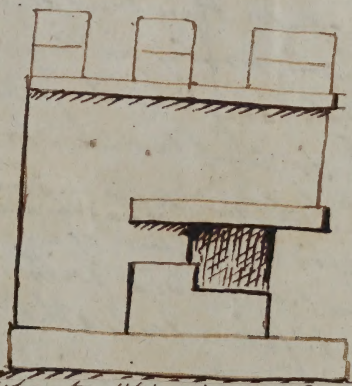
ON the day after the feaſt of the nativity, we ſet forward towards Tezcuco with our full force, and accompanied by ten thouſand of our Tlaſcalan allies. On the ſame night we halted in a part of the territory of Tezcuco, the inhabitants of the place ſupplying us with proviſions. The next night we halted at the foot of the ridge of mountains, having made a march of about three leagues; we found here a very ſevere cold. Early the next day we aſcended the mountains, the bad roads through which were made more difficult by cuts, or dikes, abbatis of trees, and the like, which required the utmoſt exertions of our allies to remove. Proceeding thus however with much regularity and precaution, we reached the ſummit, a company of muſqueteers and croſsbow-men being in our front, and our allies clearing the way for the cavalry. Deſcending a little, we came to that part from whence we diſcover the whole extent of the city, lake, and plain of Mexico, with all its towns riſing as it were out of the water, and here we returned thanks to God for permitting us again to behold this city.

We now obſerved ſignals made by ſmoke in the different places towards Mexico, and a little farther on we fell in with a body of the enemy who were poſted at a bad paſs, where a broken wooden bridge croſſed a deep water cut. We ſoon drove them from thence, and paſſed over without difficulty, the enemy contenting themſelves with ſhouting at us from a diſtance. Our allies pillaged as they went along, contrary

Iztacalco.
or Asylum of the White houses.

Iztacalco
at Iztacalco they are said to have remained two years.


Mixtecan Lunar House.



The badge of Tlaxcalan teeth. proves that they battlements their buildings.

This relates to some circumstance where tradition is required as aid of painting at least offensive or ill omened kind sent to them by their masters, viz mockery to sacrificial explanation given it. — The figure of the Lancet signifies sacrifice. It is doubtful prayer has not been interposing in their buildings the produce of his own fancy. —

cross here is very apocryphal. yet there is such an hieroglyphic found in Siberia

mon the Mother of their God. or mediatrix or sanctified rather as such. the daughter King of Culhuacan. — sacrificed by them at Tizapan or Culhuacan which is doubtful
by A. — Thence they went to Iztacalco. ultimately to where the hermitage of Tonantzin now is in the Quarter of St Paul. in Mexico

Iztaccalco
or
Temazcaltitlan
from the other
page. the last
word means
place of the
bathing house
or Stove.

these bathing
houses or stoves
are built with
the Key-stone.
so they might
have had Arches

This represents the emancipated Aztecans in Tenochtitlan. afterwards a quarter of Mexico. the word signifies place of the Opuntia flower, which plant is here seen.

In the continuation sheet of this Cosmographic history is a nominal symbol the head of a Lord A similar one to which is in one of the hands of the Japanese Deities whom

trary to the inclination of Cortes, who was not able to reſtrain them. We halted for this night at a town in the territory of Tezcuco, which the inhabitants had abandoned. We had got intelligence by ſome Mexicans we made priſoners in the laſt ſkirmiſh, that large bodies of the enemy waited for us in front; but it afterwards appeared that they had ſeparated, in conſequence of feuds, and indeed a civil war which exiſted between the Mexicans and thoſe of Tezcuco. The ſmall pox alſo, which was at the ſame time very deſtructive in the country, contributed in a conſiderable degree to prevent their armies from aſſembling.

On the next morning we again ſet forward on our march for Tezcuco, which was diſtant about two leagues; but we had proceeded a very ſhort diſtance, before one of our patroles came to us with intelligence that ten Indians were on the road, with ſigns of peace. The whole of the country alſo through which we marched exhibited every ſign of moſt perfect tranquillity. When theſe Indians arrived, we found that they compoſed an embaſſy, conſiſting of ſeven chieftains of Tezcuco. A golden banner borne upon a long lance was carried before them, and when they came near us the banner was lowered, and they bowed their bodies. Addreſſing Cortes in the name of their lord Cocoivacin, the prince of Tezcuco, they then requeſted to be received under our protection, inviting us to their city, and preſenting to us, as a token of peace, their golden banner. They utterly denied having any part in the attacks with which we had been threatened, and requeſted that no injury might be done to their city by us or our allies. Three of theſe embaſſadors were perſonally known to moſt of us, for they were relations of the good Montezuma, and captains of his guards. Cortes earneſtly requeſted the Tlaſcalan chiefs to prevent their people from pillaging, and his wiſhes were ſtrictly attended to, excepting only in the article of proviſions.

It clearly appeared that this embaſſy was a mere pretence; nevertheleſs the embaſſadors were aſſured that every protection ſhould be afforded to the country, but were at the ſame time told, that it could not

Personal designations ex Officio in India as in Hindostan
See asiatic researches v. 1. page 130

be unknown to them, how, above forty of the Spaniards and two hundred of our allies were put to death within their territories, when we retreated from Mexico. For the loſs of lives Cortes ſaid no reſtitution could be made, but the gold and other property they might return. They in reply threw the blame upon the prince who had ſucceeded Montezuma, and who they ſaid received the ſpoil, and ſacrificed the priſoners. Cortes therefore found that little was to be got from them, and we proceeded to a village in the outſkirts of Tezcuco, named Guatinchan, or Huaxutlan, where we halted for the night. On the enſuing morning we arrived at Tezcuco, and immediately remarked that neither women or children were to be ſeen, and the men appeared as if they were meditating ſome miſchief againſt us. We took up our quarters in ſome buildings which conſiſted of large halls and encloſed courts, and received orders not to quit them, and to be very alert. Alvarado, De Oli, and ſome ſoldiers whereof I was one, then aſcended to the top of the great temple, which was very lofty, in order to notice what was going on in the neighbourhood. We obſerved that all the people were in movement, carrying off their children and effects to the woods, the reedy borders of the lake, and to a number of canoes collected for the purpoſe. Cortes now wiſhed to ſeize the chief who had ſent him the embaſſy, but found that he had fled to Mexico, with many other perſons of rank. We poſted ſtrong guards for the night, and as in ſo large a city there are many different parties and factions, and thoſe perſons who were adverſe to the preſent chief having remained, Cortes on the next morning ſent for them, and enquired into the ſtate of their government. They aſſured him that their preſent chief, Cocoivatzin, was an uſurper, having murdered his elder brother Cuſcuxca, and was ſupported only by the prince then on the throne of Mexico, and whoſe name was Guatimotzin. They pointed out the youth who was the right heir, and who was immediately conducted into the preſence of Cortes, by whoſe order he was baptized with much ſolemnity, being called after his godfather, Don Hernando Cortes; after which he was appointed lord of Tezcuco. Cortes in order to retain him in our holy faith and in the intereſts of Spain, and alſo to inſtruct him in our language, ordered three perſons to attend

December 31. 600 Spaniards lodged in the palaces of King Nezua Cojotle Lib. 9 Chap. 1 contained 600 Men. Cortes.

very bad translation of Thuanus

Coanacotzin ×
Cuicuitzatzin ××

Prince Ixtlilxochitl, about 23 years of age, who had early proposed alliance to the Spaniards.

This part of the tribe which before was in Tecoloco is now
ed in Talteloleo, or Talleloleo. the Claustrum of the sand heap. A
d a. 1330 ——

This is the account given of themselves by the Aztecans from their first
e on the continent of America unto their settlement in the Vale of Mexico
Mexicans in the vale of Chalcuca. Siguenza who was possessed
aterials now not attainable or no longer existing is said to have
d them through Asia. He calls them the children of Neptune
es peoples America from Tartary assigning this reason. Lucia in
ica now observantier illa indicia asticum aut industrie Chinæ

aut Scythiæ aut alterius civilis regionis" This sentence contains the essential
all that can be said upon that subject, or that has been, won to the writings of h
but upon investigation the detail comes of the above statement will appear to be the
and it may be justly said that the Americans possessed nothing but what they d
from the old continent.—

Their origin is probably in its historical part much connected not only with the nations of
Indian Caucasus, but with that of China. of Siam Pegu or Ava. — for these reas
Their Religion, manners, customs policy and architecture were Scythian. Their lan
age has affinity with the Chinese, their Geography a more intimate one with t
of those Nations which now occupy the great Countries of the Continent of Siam &c
and which themselves are not aboriginal there.

The situation of the Esquimaux. The tradition of the Chepewayans quoted. the Histor
the Galvans all prove them to have landed at one concentric point. in or about
what is now called Nootka Sound. the inhabitants of which may be strongly pre
to be of the same family with them. —

The colony must have consisted of a considerable number, of both sexes, of a va
of Trades, and to have composed not the crew of a Ship, or crews even of a fleet but to
been a body of people, if not an expatriated nation sent out for the purpose of col
ation.

At this period then commences the necessity of investigating the occurrences in the
history of the old world that could have led to such an event. — By what computation
be founded upon their own history. combined with other circumstances America
must have been peopled in the [redacted] eighth century that is before
year 800. Then the events which led to it may be looked for between the first
æra and that period. —

Chinese certain chronology commences with the Third dynasty, a. a. 1,100. The Kingdo
of Tshen si being founded a. a. c. 800. ++

The Indian Caucasus is the cradle of the Sclavonian race, a part of it the district of Ab
is 15,000 feet above the level of the Yellow Sea. The first accounts of the peoples of
Country are derived from Herodotus. this great Chain dips for thousands of
at the horizon at the North Sea where it consists of a vast mass of marsh

attend upon him; Anthonio de Villaroel married to the handſome Iſabel de Ojeda, a batchellor named Eſcobar captain of Tezcuco, and Pedro Sanches Farfan, a good ſoldier, married to the worthy and honorable lady Maria de Eſtrada. Cortes then required of him a number of Indian labourers to open the canals, in order to bring his veſſels to the lake. He alſo explained to him his plan of attacking Mexico, to which the young prince offered aſſiſtance to the utmoſt of his power.

Our captains were at this time aſſigned their different poſts, in caſe of a ſudden attack upon our quarters, the reigning prince in Mexico frequently ſending out his troops upon the lake, in expectation of taking us unprepared. Some neighbouring people, whoſe diſtrict is called Guatinchan, and who had been guilty of offences in the murders of our countrymen, now petitioned for, and obtained pardon. The work upon the canals went on moſt rapidly, as we never had leſs than from ſeven to eight thouſand Indians employed.

Guatimotzin now upon the throne of Mexico, was lord of Iztapalapa, the people whereof were bitter enemies to us, and our declared allies of Chalco, Talmalanco, Mecameca, and Chimaloacan. As we had been twelve days in Tezcuco, ſo large a force cauſed ſome ſcarcity of proviſions; idleneſs had alſo made our allies grow impatient, and for thoſe reaſons it became neceſſary to take the field. Cortes therefore proceeded towards Iztapalapa at the head of thirteen cavalry, two hundred and twenty infantry, and the whole body of our Indian confederates. The inhabitants had received a reinforcement of eight thouſand Mexicans, and as we approached, they fell back into the town. But this was all a concerted plan; they then fled into their canoes, the reeds by the ſide of the lake, and alſo to thoſe houſes which were in the water, where they remained quietly, leaving us in poſſeſſion of that part of the town which was on the firm land. As it was now night we poſted our guards, and were repoſing contentedly in our quarters, when all on a ſudden there came on us ſuch a body of water by the ſtreets and into the houſes, that if our friends from Tezcuco had not called to us at that moment,

2 K. In the reign of [illegible] the ſecond family of Emperors of China who came to the throne A. A. C. 1196 the nation being [illegible] with colonies to people the [illegible] 25th monarch of the dynaſty [illegible] to the north of [illegible] overſtocked with population [illegible] Iſlands of the Ocean

moment, we ſhould have been all drowned; for the enemy had cut the banks of the canals, and alſo a cauſeway, whereby the place was laid under water as it were inſtantaneouſly. As it happened two of our allies only, loſt their lives, but all our powder was deſtroyed, and we were glad to eſcape with a good wetting. We paſſed the night badly enough, being ſupperleſs, and very cold; but what provoked us moſt was the laughter and mockings of the Indians upon the lake. Worſe than this however happened to us, for large bodies from the garriſon of Mexico, who knew of the plan, croſſed the water and fell on us at day break with ſuch violence that it was with difficulty we could ſuſtain their attacks. They killed two ſoldiers and one of our horſes, and wounded a great many. Our allies alſo ſuffered a conſiderable loſs on this occaſion. The enemy being at length beaten off we returned to Tezcuco, in very bad humour, having acquired little fame or advantage by our expedition.

Two days after our return from our laſt expedition, the people of three neighbouring diſtricts, viz Tepetezcuco, Obtumba, and another which I do not recollect, ſent to ſollicit pardon for the offences they had committed, excuſing themſelves, by alledging the commands of Coadlavaca. Cortes making a merit of neceſſity gave them a free pardon, knowing very well that he was not in a ſituation to do otherwiſe. The people alſo of that place called Venezuela, or Little Venice, who had always been at enmity with the Mexicans, now ſollicited our alliance; a circumſtance highly uſeful, from the ſituation of that town within the lake; and they promiſed alſo to bring over their neighbours to us.

Intelligence was ſoon received, that large bodies of Mexican troops had fallen upon the diſtricts in alliance with us, the inhabitants of which being afraid to remain at home, were flying to the woods or to our quarters for protection. Cortes ordered out twenty cavalry and two hundred infantry, twenty three muſqueteers and croſsbow-men included, and taking Alvarado and De Oli with him, proceeded to the towns of Guatinchan, and Huaxutlan. The reports appeared to have foundation, but

A. P. C. 1281. The Chinese Expedition against Japan which armament was diſperſed & deſtroyed by a Storm.

vice, municipality known of the sea unicorn. Mount Ararat is its western point: Imaus Basis or
ak is an insulated mountain at the head of the Euphrates, sixty miles in circumference and
ed with perpetual Snow.

iger in this tract was the seat of ancient Literature. Kashmir the Holy land of Antiquity

The first mention of the Tartars is in Chinese history, a. a. C. 2300. - The
l is concerning the expedition of Oghus Kawn in the west, a. a. C. 700. - 32. Emperors
ed in succession from Oghus Kawn to Zinghis Kawn who in 1162, B. C. was elected
eror by seven tribes in Balgian or Mount Altai, banished by Oom Kawn, or Chester
, Kawn of the Kheraites who was heinously tributary to the Kawn of Kathai, in answer
ligion Zinghis Kawn and his followers being idolaters, and was ~~defeated~~ defeated and
t on the great Plain of Tenduck by Zinghis who married his daughter. From the com
s of the Mogul nation he speedily became sovereign of all the Tartars and conquered
a and the Karismian Empire which reached from the Persian Gulf to Kindostan
ying of a wound received in Mt. Altai. His fourth successor father of Kublai
the patron of Marco Polo perished with all his fleet in an expedition against
n. Kublai Kawn in 1274 effected the conquest of China the last native Prince
oring to save his life at sea was lost, with all his fleet.

Kindostan was colonized from Kashmir, China, Java, Araucan, Siam, Pegu
- All probability America from Tangut, the great peninsula of Java is
known in history until the 16th. century but it was long involved in cruel
wars. A strong affinity is traceable between these people and the Sulwars
Universal title of the Royal family is Maha Radja, it is also called Mogho, Moghs.
Kublai Kawn who conquered the Islands kept his fleet in the Sagalien or Karamooran River.
The Pirates whom Pompey forced to take refuge in Mt. Taurus were Scythians & Cimmerian Sacrificers using the Solar worship
The Iberi dwelt in good houses of fortified towns.
The Otgiri are the Issedones or Eleuthi according to some.
N. B. Herodotus says of the ancient Caucasians "the women possessed equal authority with the men"
Rock is the Oom Deed of Zoroaster, the mountain King, of Mt. Bairy, whose sons, Shem Ham &
are personified as Jove, Pluto & Neptune.
ence is traceable to the aera of the deluge that is 4300 years back in Chaldea.
an authentic observation is known in China a. a. C. 2155.

Japanese history emerges from obscurity about 600 years a. c. Their mythology has an affinity with the Hindoo creed. Their celestial parents are named Isa-nagi, and Isa-nami. Their ritual connects the Sun with the Solar worship. It is said that Mikado is a royal epithet in Japan. They expelled the natives of Kinkisima to their north of their island. These last were ~~clad~~ long haired blacks & wore high caps. The Japanese are ruddy & fleshy like the Kashmerians. The tonsure is used by the Priests of Japan.

The Pelasgi of the Nile were Ionians from Thrace & Scythia, & named from Javan or Jon. said to be four generations from Deu-calion or Noah —

Two rather inconsistent or incompatible tendencies are observable in ancient history to seek for very ancient origin, the other to be approximate to, their primary ancestors.

The Malay Nation which occupies the islands of the ocean from Madagascar to Eastern Sandwich islands and which probably colonized Peru are originally from the heads of the Indus or Multan.

The Scythe-goethæ, were expelled the Ukraine in the 3d Century B. C. by Thargari, 1000 years after the expulsion of the Kimmerii by Oghes Kawa.

The cause of this inception of Nomades was their being themselves harassed by the Massagoethæ. The Nomades then penetrated into Thrace it was in the reign of Gyges King of Lydia. The Massagoethæ were a great Nation extending to the East and who as was said of the Scythians eat their parents.

The Kimmerii or Kimbri or Cimbri were a fair long haired people of tall stature. North of these Herodotus places the true Scythians. Then the Issedones Argari, then the Melanchlæni of the Marshes, & last the Arimaspi who are born one Eye — He says the Scythians wear rings in the ears & nose.

N. B. The Kimmerii got their name from their country black Tartary. Kimri

N. B. The Negros of Africa are of the Chaldean Troglodyte branch & all one from as in de Gama's time the same language was spoken on both coasts to east & west in the same latitude

N. B. Sarmatæ. or Jauromatæ, or Isclavi from the Sea of Azof. is differently explained by Herodotus Scythic emigrants justify the Greek explanation viper eyed, as Sigurd in the Edda is surnamed Ormur-Eiega - (worm snake-eyed)

+ the Country is a black O

but the real cauſe of contention was, the crop of Indian corn on the borders of the lake, which was now fit to reap, and from which the people of Tezcuco and the others ſupplied our proviſions; but the Mexicans alſo laid claim to it, and it appeared that the produce of theſe fields went to the prieſts of Mexico. Cortes told them to inform him when they thought it neceſſary to cut the corn, and accordingly, at that time, a body of one hundred or upwards of our ſoldiers, attended by the allies went out to cover the reapers. I was twice on that duty, and had one ſmart ſkirmiſh. The Mexicans croſſed over in upwards of a thouſand canoes, and attacked us in the maize fields, but we and our allies, drove them back to their boats, with the loſs of one ſoldier of our's killed, and many wounded. They fought like men, and left behind them twenty dead, and we alſo took five priſoners. At this time other neighbouring diſtricts ſolicited our alliance.

There were two places, named Chalco and Talmalanco, of ſome conſequence, as being between our army and Tlaſcala. They were now poſſeſſed by the Mexican troops, and though Cortes had ſeveral petitions for protection, he thought it neceſſary above all things, immediately to diſlodge theſe Mexicans, that ſuch of his allies as wiſhed it might return home, and alſo in order to obtain his ſhip timber from Tlaſcala. He therefore ſent a force for this purpoſe under Sandoval and De Lugo, conſiſting of fifteen cavalry and two hundred infantry, and he gave theſe officers orders to break completely the Mexican force, whereby we ſhould obtain a clear communication with Villa Rica. Our allies of Chalco were ſecretly informed of our intention, in order that they ſhould be ready to ſupport us. Sandoval had put ten of his party in the rear as a guard, and to protect the allies who were returning home with his detachment, and who were loaded with plunder. The Mexicans fell upon them on their march with conſiderable impreſſion, owing to the weakneſs of the rear guard, of which they killed two, and wounded the reſt; and although Sandoval inſtantly flew to their relief, the Mexicans contrived to reach the lake. Sandoval cenſured the people in the rear for this, throwing the whole blame on them; he then put the

Tlaſcalans

Tlaſcalans in ſecurity, and having ſent the letters with which he was intruſted to the commandant of Villa Rica, in which Cortes ordered him to ſend what reinforcements he could to Tlaſcala, there to wait until it ſhould be aſcertained that the route from thence to Tezcuco was clear, he diſmiſſed the allies to their province, and returned to Chalco, which diſtrict he had reaſon to apprehend was filled with the troops of the Mexicans.

On his road he was attacked in a plain covered with maize and maguey, by a body of the enemy who wounded ſeveral of his party; the cavalry drove them to a diſtance, after which he purſued his route to Chalco. Having informed the principal people of this place of his intention to march to Tezcuco on the enſuing day, they informed him of their determination to go with him, and for the following reaſon. Their lord was lately dead of the ſmall pox. He had on his death-bed recommended his ſons to the protection of Cortes, being convinced that we were thoſe of whom their anceſtors had propheſied, when they ſaid that men with beards ſhould come to govern them; and he therefore enjoined his ſons to receive their dominions from the hands of our chief. Sandoval accordingly marched for our head quarters, bringing with him the young lords of Chalco, who experienced a moſt gracious reception from Cortes, and they preſented him with ornaments of gold amounting in value to about two hundred thouſand crowns. Cortes divided the diſtrict between them, giving Chalco and the larger part to the elder brother, and Talmalanco, Ayocingo, and Chimalcan, with other places, to the younger. By ſome Mexican priſoners Cortes ſent a meſſage to the reigning prince in that city, couched in the moſt inviting and amicable terms, in order to induce him to come to an accommodation; but Guatimotzin would not hear them, and perſiſted in the moſt active hoſtility againſt us. Frequent complaints came to us at this time of the incurſions made by the enemy upon our allies of Guatinchan and Huaxutlan, in the neighbourhood of the lake, upon the old cauſe of the fields ſown for the ſervice of the Mexican temples; in conſequence of which, Cortes being determined to put a ſtop to theſe inroads

Thus for many centuries the Scythians ~~[illegible]~~ spread the most part of
the populated of the Globe.

The Hindoo Hindoos like the Tibetans are by some considered a distinct branch of
the Caucasian Chaldean family (H. B. Mr. Chaldea, signifies above) little is known of
the people from the time of Alexander who had them in his army, until the eleventh
century. They are the Patans, Afghans, Ghybers or Baloojas, which last is explained
to be Scythians by some. They differ very materially from most of the Scythian
nation; they are bearded and very hairy. They are identified with the Jews and it
is probable the Gipsies may be long to them. These last have now wandered into and
are acknowledged to Siberia. The Hindoos have no written character & speak a
language peculiar to themselves, dwell in caves & live on the produce of
herds. on the South west of Mt. Caucasus.

The Grecian states were Babylonian colonies, the Pelasgi Asiatic wanderers. Romulus
& Remus are a fabulous allusion to the first aggregation of the Roman State in that city
and is of remote antiquity. Roma is the allegorical personification of order
& is justly given a divine origin.

Antecedent to the Malays in the Islands were a woolly headed race
which also exists in the range of Hills extending from Kaje Malacca &
Singlepore. The Siyens (each the Empires of Persia and the ancient
Parthians. The above two nations eat all food indiscriminately. a
proof of a very early separation from the other nations.

The Scythic Chinese (of my which first occupied China, called themselves Tsohen (tribe)
into hundred families, and the number of patronymic names in the Nation amounts
to more. They came from Tshang-pe-Chang in Tancut — they divided the Lands of
the Language. The language called Duene, is the mother tongue of the Chinese. it has
450 words all monosyllable. it is that of the northern provinces & unconnected
with the Manteheou. Mandchou-Tartary is considered the more ancient writing of China
Burmah language has some relation to the Chinese. the learned language is
(not ideographic) had but six primitive strokes. The Burmese express
entire ideas by one character.

Language

Tshang-pe-Chang. Chang means supreme.

their new settlement into townships or hamlets of eight families
They found a scattered population the descendents of which yet exist and are called Mi
Their history dates 3000 years back & is admitted authentic for 2000. According thereto
first eight Kings to Fohi reigned each a century. This is attempted to be explained else
These Kings were elective. In the latter reigns the Tartars first began to shew the
selves troublesome neighbors. or the warrior
The next important event to the present purpose is that in the reign of Ti Ti, 2
monarch of the Dynasty of Yam, the Nations to the North of China or its Northern
vinces being overstocked with inhabitants sent out colonies to people the islan
of the ocean. This would account for the colonization of America if it agreed as
of time, but it seems to have been antecedent to the Christian aera, which
too long a period unaccounted for in America.
Paganism was the religion of China until about 600 years A.C. when the Sect of Fo
Lality was introduced, Budsoism was brought there about the Christian aera
About the Christian aera some great revolution of which their accounts make a my
is supposed to have happened. And another about the ninth Century
in 1270 the Tartars after 70 years of warfare subjected the native race of
Kings the last of whom committed himself to the ocean & was never after he
of. in 1368. The Tartars were expelled by an insurrection & a native family
on the throne where they remained until 1644
But the event which comes nearest to the present point is the situation of

~~In this was the practice of ancient Egyptians.~~

N. B. Greece had inhabitants 1000 years before Herodotus and Rome 3
~~N. B.~~ 4 Years before Fabius Pictor Yet they were their first historians.
N.B. The ordinary computation of China is by decasegessimals.
N. B. Tradition says the Colony of Cadmus was led by a Heifer because Thor is Phe
nician for a heifer
Language
+ The throne was assumed by the Son of the last elective King
N. B. In Marco Polo's time the Chinese had ships of 1200 tons burthen. yet those were smaller th
what they had built formerly. Kublai Kaans army Cavalry & infantry embarked in 3
vessels.

inroads; and marching with a ſtrong party for that purpoſe, came up with the enemy at the diſtance of about two leagues from Tezcuco, and ſo completely broke and defeated them, though with no very conſiderable loſs on their ſide, that they did not ſhow themſelves there again.

As it was reſolved to loſe no time in the grand object of our enterpriſe, Sandoval attended by twenty of the principal people of Tezcuco, marched with a detachment of two hundred ſoldiers of the infantry, twenty muſqueteers and croſsbow-men included, and fifteen cavalry, from Tezcuco, in order to bring the timber to conſtruct our ſhips on the lake of Mexico. Before they ſet out, Cortes effected a reconciliation between the Tlaſcalans and the Indians of Chalco, who had long been hoſtile. He gave directions to Sandoval, after he had left the chieftains of Chalco in their own town, to proceed by a place named by us Puebla Moreſca, the inhabitants of which had robbed and put to death upwards of forty of our ſoldiers, who were on their march from Vera Cruz to Mexico, when we went to the relief of Alvarado. Sandoval had orders to inflict an exemplary puniſhment on them, not that their guilt was more than that of the people of Tezcuco, who were the leaders of the buſineſs, but becauſe they could be puniſhed with leſs inconvenience. The place was put under military execution. Some few of the inhabitants were made priſoners, and when Sandoval enquired of them in what manner they had deſtroyed the Spaniards, they informed him that they were fallen on by the troops of Mexico and Tezcuco, by ſurprize, in a narrow paſs where they could only go in ſingle file, and that it was done in revenge for the death of Cacamatzin. Not more than three or four of theſe people loſt their lives, as Sandoval had pity on them. In the temples were found many traces of the blood of our countrymen upon the walls, their idols were beſmeared with it, and we found the ſkins of two of their faces with their beards, dreſſed like leather, and hung upon the altars, as were alſo the ſhoes of four horſes, together with their ſkins very well dreſſed. The following words were found written upon a piece of marble fixed in the wall of one of the houſes. "Here was taken the unfortunate Juan Juſte, with many

 others

" others of his companions." This Juſte was a gentleman who came with Narvaez, and ſerved in the cavalry. Theſe ſad remains filled the minds of Sandoval and his party with rage and grief, but there was no poſſibility of obeying the dictates of their feelings, for the men were all fled, and the women and children bewailed their fate in the moſt affecting terms. Sandoval therefore ſent them to their huſbands and fathers, whom they induced to come in and ſubmit. In anſwer to the queſtions put to them relative to the gold, they declared that it had all been claimed by the Mexicans. Sandoval now continued his march to Tlaſcala, and when he came near the capital of that country, he fell in with a vaſt body of Indians employed in tranſporting the timber, and conducted by Chichimecatecle, and our ſhipwright Martin Lopez. The order theſe people came in was as follows. Eight thouſand men carried the timber ready ſhaped for every part of the thirteen veſſels, eight thouſand more followed as a guard with their enſigns and arms, and a third body of two thouſand, as a relief, and with proviſions for the whole. Several Spaniards joined us with this eſcort, and alſo two great Tlaſcalan chiefs named Teuleticle, and Teatical. The enemy appeared only in ſmall bodies at a diſtance, but it was thought neceſſary to uſe much precaution, conſidering the extent of the line of march, and the danger of a ſurpriſe. Sandoval ſent ſome of his troops in front, and poſted others on the flanks, while he remained at the rear guard with the Tlaſcalans, to whom he aſſigned that poſt. This arrangement gave their chief, Chichimecatecle, great offence, but when he was informed that it was there the Mexicans were moſt likely to attack, his pride became pacified. In two days more the whole body arrived at Tezcuco, in great triumph and pomp, the allies wearing their fineſt habits and great plumes of feathers, with drums, horns, and trumpets, ſounding. Thus they continued marching into our quarters, without breaking a file, for the ſpace of full half the day, ſhouting out, "Caſtilla! Caſtilla! Tlaſca-
" la! Tlaſcala! live his Majeſty the Emperor."

Our timber being all now laid ready at the docks, in a very ſhort time, by the great exertions of Lopez, the hulls were completely finiſhed;

ese Empire. A. post Christum - 419. when that Empire was torn by civil wars
voked by the claims of the family of U-Tai - which were however
ed to yield to the fortune of the family of U-tong which reigned until
—

As the Chinese consecrate the mountain Chang = pl. chang (chang, eminence) as Tau
the Hindoos, the mountain Pitzen = yel on the frontier of Little Thibet as the
t seat of their Nation. & the Burmahs have a similar idea.

B. The deluge of Ogyges 1800 years before our aera.
Pakite pigmies pay adoration to Him who steers.
1790 of our aera is 4091. of Kalleeyug - a difference exists in the reckonings
50 years. which is just 4150. years past.

Babylonian dispersal. a. a. C. 2000. first observation at Babylon. a. a C. 2234
since 2155.

The numerous Parsis colony to avoid the persecution of the Mussulmen fled
Kerman to Guzzerat where it now remains - (this book please. a p. C. 767.

Zoroaster aera, according to some 2500 years past.

The Budinis inhabit Podolia East of the Sauromate. Herodotus.
were east of the Don. Massagethes, Dahe the Getæ Western Scythians. Religion

The ancient Scythians wore hel mets terminating in a Spike (v. Siberian
el. Thibetians (Chinese) their arms bows arrows & a hatchet called
ris. — N. B. Kallipidæ probably from Kallee. Erlish Kaure
tary. The Kut, or Mountain Ogyrs take the lead in antiquity & science. The
Livonians & Finns are descended from them. The East Tartars have little beard
West Tartars are bearded (v. Uyhurs. or Ouri) The Bratti, Tungoosi, Mongol
muk tribes inhabit the Borders of Lake Baikal. (Baikal a sea. Scythian)
Yakutis call themselves Tchoka, say they came from the South, (those of
Kalkin seem to belong to this branch. They nourish hereditary manners
very respectful to old age and intelligent in the affairs of Life. Yakutsk
River Lena. They are a settled people extending to Ochotsk on the Sea of
Okha.

The Jaxartes is navigable to its source in Lat 49. Long 110 East

Rudbeck also
that Anacharsis
& the Roschi
de
See his curious notes
on cradle of human Race

for boats - a trade for slaves to the Islands is carried on by them -
N. B. Western Scythia Jason and his Argonauts were the first Greeks who ca
this land of Magic where they fabled Prometheus to be Chained. The borders of
Europe were occupied by a barbarous Scythic population who captived and d
voured Strangers / such are the Laestrigons of Homer / & thank Cook of the
Skulls. The Kolkides the Koraz / Koraï white Rocks or fortresses / Scyth
South East the Palus Meotis or Sea of Azof. The people of West Tauri
used poisoned arrows. — But Kolchis was colonized from Thebes by a bla
woolly headed colony.
N. B. Oghus Kawn's area 670. m. l. 32 Emperors to Zinghis Kawn. He conquered from
Chinese wall to the Volga.
N. B. Nova Zembla paid tribute to The Tartar Emperor of China in Hawk's
Russia, Hindostan China, Persia Turkey Germany / they penetrated to Leignitz / & Sha
have all been compelled to bow to the Successors of the Race of Zinghis who occupie
several of their thrones. This tends to shew how the movements of this nati
may have in various ways / operated upon the affairs of the Human world
Tartarian warfare. 1286. Kublai Kawn, being obliged to take the fie
against a prince of his own family was anxious to prevent a junction of
Enemies. He therefore assembled, in 20 days, 360,000 Cavalry & 100,00
infantry / falconers & other attendants included / from tribes within ten
days journey / perhaps a radius of 500 miles, round his palace of
Kawn baloo. after 25 days march he came in sight of the Enemy. The
battled two days, on the third the Astrologers having promised victory his tro
advanced drawn up in three great divisions of ten squadrons of 10,000
each / horsemen / before each squadron were 500 infantry armed with short
Lances and Swords who when the cavalry retreated leaped up behind them
when they halted dismounted & harassed the Enemy. Kublai was bo
by armed elephants, in the Centre of his Army in a turret full of archers
the Royal standard with the figures of the Sun and Moon being displa
from it. The attack commenced with the sound of Kettle-drums and
horns the troops advanced singing according to Custom, and the bl

ed; but we were obliged to keep the ſtricteſt guard, as the Mexicans ſent three parties to endeavour to ſet them on fire.

The Tlaſcalans were anxious to be ſent on ſome enterpriſe, and Cortes indulged them by declaring his intention to march on the enſuing day to Saltocan, a town which had neglected our ſummons to a ſubmiſſion. For this purpoſe he ordered two hundred and fifty infantry and thirty cavalry, the whole of the Tlaſcalans, and a body of the warriors of Tezcuco. He appointed the captains Alvarado and De Oli to act under him, and having left the poſt of Tezcuco, where it was always neceſſary "to have the beard upon the ſhoulders," under the care of Sandoval, and ordered Lopez to have the veſſels ready to launch within the ſpace of fifteen days, he ſet out with the above force upon his expedition. When he approached Saltocan, he was met by large bodies of the Mexican troops, whom the cavalry drove to the woods. The troops halted for the night in ſome villages, in a country thickly inhabited. They were kept very alert, for it was known that the enemy had a conſiderable force in Saltocan; and a body of Mexicans had been ſent thither in large boats, and was at this time concealed in the deep canals of the neighbourhood.

On the enſuing day, at the commencement of the march, our troops were aſſailed by the enemy, and ſeveral were wounded, without our cavalry having it in their power to retaliate, on account of the number of canals. The only cauſeway which led to the town on the land ſide, they had completely inundated, and our muſquetry was of no effect againſt the enemy in their canoes, being ſo well guarded by ſtrong ſcreens of timber. All this contributed to give our people a diſguſt to the expedition. Some Indians of Tezcuco who had joined our army, at this time pointed out a paſs to one of our ſoldiers; upon which, our people put themſelves into march, and under the direction of their guide croſſed the canals and waters, and at length reached the road which led to the town, Cortes with the cavalry remaining on the other ſide. Our troops advanced againſt the town, and made a conſiderable ſlaughter of

the Mexicans, driving the remainder, and the natives of the place, to their boats. They then returned to Cortes, with a conſiderable booty of ſlaves, mantles, ſalt, and gold. We loſt one ſoldier by this expedition.

On the enſuing day Cortes marched againſt a large town called Culvatitlan, through a very populous country. We found the place to which we marched totally deſerted, and here we halted for the night. On the enſuing day we proceeded to another large town called Tenayuco, but which we named the town of the ſerpents, on account of the enormous figures of theſe animals which we found in their temples, and which they worſhipped as gods. This place we alſo found deſerted, and we proceeded a league farther to that which we called the town of the gold-ſmiths. This place was alſo deſerted, and our troops marched half a league farther, to Tacuba, our ſoldiers being obliged to cut their way through conſiderable numbers of the natives. In this town our troops halted for the night, and on the next day they were aſſailed by bodies of the enemy, who had ſettled a plan to retreat by their cauſeways, in order to draw us into an ambuſcade. This in part ſucceeded; Cortes and our troops purſued them acroſs a bridge, and were immediately ſurrounded by vaſt numbers on land and in the water. The enſign was thrown over the bridge, and the Mexicans were dragging him to their canoes, yet he eſcaped from them with his colours in his hand. In this attack they killed five of our ſoldiers, and wounded many. Cortes perceived his imprudence, and ordered a retreat, which was effected with regularity, our people fronting the enemy, and only giving ground inch by inch. Juan Volante, the enſign who fell into the lake, had a jealouſy with one of our ſoldiers, Pedro de Ircio, about a certain woman. The latter in order to affront him uſed ſome abuſive language, which Volante did not deſerve, being a very valiant gentleman, as he had ſhown on that and many other occaſions. Cortes halted here for five days, and then returned to Tezcuco, the Mexicans harraſſing his march; but having been once defeated in an ambuſcade which Cortes laid for them, they deſiſted. When our troops arrived at head quarters, the Tlaſcalans,

† Palmer under Loaisa 1525
I probably Pomeranian —

ng at length decided in favour of Kublai Kawn, the Prince was taken prisoner and
d to death in a blanket that the Royal blood might not be spilled.

N. B. The political relations among the Malays were. Monarchy. aristocracy and com
ns in a state of slavery.

B. The Limerii, or Rimmerii had some idea of architecture.

B. The Goetae of Podolia and the Ukraine were expelled thence in the third
tury by the Bulgari. The Franks crossed the Rhine in the fifth. The
ngnignons were Vandals.

B. Marco Polo was 26 years in the service of Kublai Kawn. The winter
ce of this monarch at Kambaloo. in Katai stood in the centre of four squares
closures the four of the outer one being eight miles in extent. In the summer
ths he resided at Cianganor from which three days journey to the west
Xan du. a palace within a wood in a park 16 miles in circumference
th rivers & meadows where he kept his falcons & hunting Leopards.
ich were brought out upon a horse & let loose at the deer. The Palace
which was made of canes gilt, was supported by pillars gilt surmounted
dragons whose tails were twisted round the pillars the head and wings
sheating the roof. they were retained by two hundred silken cords—
ded from the roof to the ground.

Semochains. the Prince called the old man of the mountain was put to death. His
ple interpreted by Kublai Kawns brother. a. 1262. they were Mussulmen.
Plain called Chesmer they destroy no animal of life. The Plain of Pomer
ner Pomerania) a fine Lake, & grass of a very fattening quality. the air so
birds will not live & fire kindled with difficulty. He admired the ingen
with which the idols of Tanoat were carved. Karakorum, a city walled.
people of Tanut are civil industrious gay & luxurious, plump. with round
& little hair. (This agrees with Herodotus). Citin fu, a city in
of a trace of this word in Sclavonian history). Marco Polo
ued of Norway completes 870. The Scandinavians brought the art
building in stone.

The Scolhuan princes were said to be of the
house of Citins. C. l. d. p. 93

The genealogy of the Chichimecs and Aztecan princes are traced up to about the
period of the 6th. Century B.C. This gives reason to suppose it might be the arrival
of their ancestors on the Continent of America. Sigüenza is said to have traced their
progress in Asia. If he did it was probably obscurely.
The above circumstance justifies placing their migration about A. 650. and looking into the
history of Asia for the cause of it at that period. A colony which brought so much science
with them would have brought an alphabet had such a thing been known in the parent Country as would have been the case had the Calmucs come from China perhaps. but as the
Chinese literature was then little advanced, nor is it now: and these colonists partake more
strongly of Tibetian manners. it is therefore their origin is to be sought.
Their religion, the manners & regulations of their priesthood is Tibetian particularly and
generally Tartarian. Their Language is Tibetian.
Their manners and Tartarian. Their science is Tartarian
Their architecture is Tibetian. Their ignorance is
Tartarian, as for instance that of the use of artificial light.
They were an inland people, being ignorant of the use of
the sail, or of oily substances, which enable the people of the
North coasts to live there. In consequence they were mountaineers
They have affinities with the Burmah nations. as per Asiatic Calendars & war-boat.
They cannot be Malays, Chinese, Tibetian nor Hindoos. nor so purely Tibetian as to have
the sect of Llamas, but were worshippers of the Solar sect, & like the Celts of old, or the
general Tartar religion. In their warfare they resemble the Tipperi of the Indian
Caucasus, a widely diffused nation. v. Strabo
Yet they resemble all three nations, Malay, Chinese & Hindoo, & Burmah, &
because all have a common origin in the Indian Caucasus.
American history & tradition correspond in saying they were exiled, they crossed
a sea, endured hardships, & wandered to the places where found by the Europe-
ans. All the Americans have a similarity of customs, among all is handed down
of a better, more ancient government. The North Americans say they came
a country inhabited by a very wicked people. That they crossed a great lake on

North American nations

Chilli. & Nopal. we find these words of Mexico & exact application in Sabean & they are Asiatic.

The word Tzin. is Chinese. & also Tartarian & Indian

Tlaſcalans, who had enriched themſelves by plunder, were anxious to go home, which Cortes readily gave them permiſſion to do.

During four days after this expedition, the Indians of ſeveral neighbouring diſtricts came in with preſents and declarations of ſubmiſſion. Cortes received all in good part, although he knew very well that they had been concerned in murders, diſmiſſing them with promiſes of protection. Other applications of a more embarraſſing nature were alſo made at this time, for the nations in our alliance came with painted repreſentations of the outrages committed on them by the Mexicans, and requeſting ſuccour. Cortes was hardly able to grant them aſſiſtance, from the ſtate of our army, which, excluſive of our loſs by killed and wounded was grown very unhealthy. He however promiſed them his ſupport, bnt told them to rely more on their own exertions, and that they ſhould be aſſiſted by the neighbouring people of our alliance. For this purpoſe he gave them letters of ſummons to the reſpective diſtricts, to aſſemble againſt the common enemy. The different diſtricts having aſſembled their forces, met the Mexicans in the field, and had an action with them, in which they exerted themſelves with ſucceſs. The province of Chalco however was an object of more importance; the poſſeſſion of that country was requiſite for our communication with Villa Rica and Tlaſcala, and for the ſubſiſtence of our troops, as it was a corn country. It was much harraſſed, and therefore Cortes ſent Sandoval with about two hundred and fifty of our troops, cavalry and infantry, accompanied by what few of our Tlaſcalan allies remained with us, and a company of thoſe of Tezcuco, to clear it of the enemy.

On the twelfth day of March, one thouſand five hundred and twenty one, after hearing maſs, Sandoval ſet out, and arrived in the diſtrict of Chalco. On the enſuing morning he reached Talmanalco, where he received information that the Mexican force was poſted at a large town called Guaztepeque. The warriors of Chalco accompanied our troops, who halted for the night at the town of Chimalcan. On the next morning Sandoval ordered the croſsbow-men and muſqueteers to attack the enemy

enemy in the broken ground, and forming the cavalry into ſmall diviſions of three in front, directed them to charge as ſoon as the firing had made any impreſſion; thoſe who were armed with ſword and buckler he formed in a compact body as a reſerve. Advancing in this order, he ſhortly perceived the Mexicans in three large battalians or columns, and ſounding their warlike muſic. As ſoon as Sandoval perceived their diſpoſition he thought proper to give up his original plan, and to break the enemy by a charge of cavalry. Putting himſelf therefore at the head of this body of troops, he attacked them, crying out "St. Jago for us! comrades fall on!" The main body of the Mexicans was partly broken by the charge, but they immediately cloſed and fronted again. The ground was much in their favor, ſo that Sandoval ſaw it was ~~abſolutely~~ neceſſary to drive them from this poſt, into the open ground in their rear. For this purpoſe he ordered the muſqueteers and croſsbow-men to engage them in the front, and the troops armed with ſword and target to turn their flanks, and he gave directions, that at the proper time, the cavalry ſhould fall on the enemy by a ſignal. He alſo now ordered our allies to come forward to the attack. Our troops at laſt forced them to retreat; they fell back however no farther than to a ſecond ſtrong poſition, nor could Sandoval with his cavalry do any conſiderable execution among them. Here we loſt Gonzalo Dominguez, whoſe horſe fell with him, whereby he died in a few days. He was much regretted, for we eſteemed him to be as brave a ſoldier as De Oli or Sandoval. Our army having broken the enemy again, purſued them to the town, where they were ſuddenly attacked by at leaſt fifteen thouſand freſh warriors, who attempted to ſurround them; but our troops falling on both their flanks, the whole faced about and fled, endeavoring to rally behind ſome works which they had conſtructed. They were however ſo cloſely followed that they had not time to do ſo, and were driven compleatly withinſide the town. Sandoval then thought it neceſſary to give his ſoldiers ſome repoſe, and as a conſiderable ſpoil of proviſions had fallen in the way of the troops, they began to prepare their dinners, during which time the patroles came galloping in, crying "To arms! the ene- " my are coming!" There was hardly a moments interval until they

* Cannibalism now used in the North West coast. the lost discovered by Cook's buss- a practice so ancient in India as to be included among the sports of the antediluvian Deities.
Lizt antiquaries and Records
This pastime of the Gothic lord
Who having piss'd and dane'd enough
Clos'd the brisk night with blind man's buff

ed misery from port and snow among many islands - and that they
swn years travelling eastward to the Mississipi - a rapid
ress to barbarity seems to have taken place among them to the
of that River -

America had Neither Budsoom, nor the tonsure, nor the
of oily or sebaceous matter for artificial light, nor the
of the sail, nor the throw board, nor Letters, nor hogs.
the use of iron. or the hammer

They flattened the head, tatooed, used the paddle
nibalism, dogs for food, subterranean ovens, sweating houses,
igneous worship,

The Esquimaux had the use of oil &c - of the sail
throw-board & the corach or Skin boat, but they were a mari-
e Colony, & distinct from the Calvans.

The Calvans had, the Peruvians had not the use of Lime
painting.

Letters. The Chinese are supposed not to have had the use of letters before the era of
ie or their Emperor Choang Ham. The Ogham being in circles, primitively, it is
ble that it may have been first applied to things or Cords, like the
ian paintings which are thus as before, seen laid in volutes.

A Queen Homai was the predecessor but one, of Darius, or Dorash the 2
ured by Alexander. Homai the bird of Paradise, never touches the ground, lives on thistle milk
nd of the first born man, happy omen. Phoenix (Phoinix Greek)
The Chinese had not the tonsure before the Tartar Conquest.

Huitzilopochtli - Huitziton, a bird & opochtli, left, / left side, or
herman. - Ancient Persia had a fabulous Queen, of remote times
of paradise. As had China a Queen whose feet resembled a bird &
d be said whence they derive the peculiar custom of the women of that
This bird never alights or rests. Lives on Thistle-milk thus
ntala says
elestial bird sips the milk & leaves the water that has been
mingled with it -

Garden of Mexico. Six miles in circumference, and watered by a beautiful river. It was maintained by the Spaniards for many years after the Conquest. Cortes in his letter to the Emperor Charles 5. of 15. Mar 1522 mentions the beauty of this Garden. V. also Hernandez. also Cortez's letter to the Emperor of the 30th. Oct. 1520

Historical continued.

After the Deluge the Noachides established their primeval empire in Iran or Armenia. where the dynasty of Mahabad. (maha abba great father) reigned for many centuries (like Maha Beli, great Lord) during the continuance whereof the empires of Chaldea, and Assyria succeeded each other. being Noachidean colonists, or from this parent stock. This Mahabadian dynasty or Iranian empire appears to have been subverted by the Assyrians a. c. 900.

It had at early periods sent out its colonists of Tartars under Japhet, ~~of Cush under Ham~~, and of ~~Chaldeans under Ham~~ ~~the Cushs are descended~~

From Ham are descended the Chaldeans.

From Shem. the Africans & Arabs. Egyptians Greeks &c.

The Race of Ham appear to have been the progenitors of the Scientific part of Mankind to the East. as that of Shem was to the West.

From the Race of Ham the Hindus, and the Chinese Nation whose germ was planted in Katai (not Maha China) are descended. and of this branch the Sulivan family is deduced. being upland tribes from North China. as the North Chinese were from the Hindus & these last from Chaldea.

x Primary Seat of the north Chinese Nation founded in Shen-si a. a. c. 900.

x continued

were prepared, and advancing againſt the enemy, they met them in an open ſpace, and had a ſevere ſkirmiſh, after which the enemy fell back behind their works; but Sandoval attacked them with ſuch impetuoſity that he drove them completely away, forcing them to evacuate the town.

In this place was a very magnificent and extenſive garden, in which Sandoval took his quarters for the night, and certainly it was a beautiful one to behold; it contained a number of large and handſome buildings, and ſuch varieties that it was truly admirable, and fit for the reſidence of a great prince; nor had our ſoldiers time to ſee the whole of it, for it was above a quarter of a league in length. I was not in this action, being very ill by the wound of a lance, which I received in my throat at the affair of Iztapalapa, the marks of which I carry to this day; but I ſaw the garden about twenty days afterwards, when I accompanied Cortes. Not having been on this expedition for the reaſon I have before aſſigned, as I was then almoſt at death's door, I do not in my narrative ſay we, and us, but they, and them; but notwithſtanding that, all is true to the letter as I have related it, for the tranſactions of an expedition are immediately known in quarters, nor is there any opportunity of adding to, or diminiſhing the truth, as is ſometimes the caſe elſewhere.

Sandoval thought it a good time to ſummon all the neighbouring diſtricts to ſubmiſſion, which he accordingly did, but with very little effect, thoſe of Acapiſtlan, eſpecially, anſwering by a defiance. This made our allies of Chalco uneaſy, as well knowing that they and the Mexicans were only waiting until the return of the Spaniards, in order to fall upon them. For ſeveral reaſons it was neceſſary therefore to humble theſe people, but a great difference of opinion exiſted on the ſubject. Sandoval was adverſe to any new expedition on account of the number of his wounded, and the ſoldiers of Narvaez were adverſe, becauſe they diſliked riſques of any kind; but our allies were for it, and Captain Luis Marin, a wiſe and valiant officer, ſtrongly ſupported them. As

the

the diſtance was but two leagues Sandoval acquieſced. When he advanced, the enemy attacked him with their miſſile weapons, and after wounding ſome of his men, returned to their ſtrong poſt in the town. Our allies did not exhibit much alacrity in going to the attack, in which the Spaniards were obliged to ſhew them the way, and diſmounting ſome of the cavalry, and leaving the reſt in the plain to guard the rear, they advanced againſt the place, which they entered, having a number wounded in the aſcent, and amongſt others Sandoval himſelf. But if the Indians were tardy before, they made up for it now; the Spaniards not having the trouble of putting the enemy to death, it being entirely ſaved them by their allies. Indeed our countrymen thought their time employed to much better purpoſe in ſearching for gold, or making good female priſoners, than in cutting to pieces a parcel of poor wretches who did not any longer defend themſelves. They frequently blamed the cruelty of their allies, and ſaved many Indians from them. Gomara ſays that the Spaniards ſuffered thirſt here becauſe the water was not to be drank, on account of the quantity of blood with which it was diſcoloured; the fact is, that many of the wounded Mexicans did come from the rocks and ridges down to the water in making their eſcape, and it was diſcoloured the length of time that it would take to ſay an Ave Maria, but as to our people ſuffering thirſt on that account, that muſt be untrue, for there were ſeveral fountains of the fineſt water, in the town.

After this ſucceſs Sandoval returned to Tezcuco, with a number of ſlaves and conſiderable ſpoils. Guatimotzin the reigning prince of Mexico was enraged when he heard of the hoſtilities committed againſt him by his own people of Chalco, and determined to inflict immediate puniſhment. He now ſent acroſs the lake twenty thouſand of his warriors in two thouſand canoes, to waſte the province with fire and ſword, ſo that at the very moment when the brave Sandoval had arrived at head quarters, and before he could make the report of his expedition to the general, there arrived expreſſes from Chalco ſtating their being in a more deſperate ſituation than ever. This put Cortes in a violent paſſion with Sandoval,

is history records that the provinces of North China being over
ed with Inhabitants sent out colonies to people the Islands
e Ocean. At which period it is probable America and Japan
first planted with the human race.
e American Colony preserved, the Japanese lost, the peculiar
fect defects of the Chinese language.
ding to the foregoing chronology. the foundation of the Chinese Empire
the Chinese is modern. It is said the Reign of Tchin Xi was
tyrannical - this agrees with the traditions of the North
ican Indians. five centuries must be allowed to the State
Chin Xi for its being overlooked though the country is so
ently poor. (Query why did they not discend sooner into
the China?) this would bring this compulsory migration
ne Centuries anterior to the Exodus.
e Celtae, had the ancient superstitions, the solar ritual,
natural religion of the old world but had not Buddaism
ce they would hardly have neglected had their migration
been antecedant to its introduction in Asia. Nor
they acquainted with the reformation of Vishnoo.
is not Brooch "The Divine Spirit"? - This Doctrine
received much later in China than in India where he is said
ve appeared as Vishnoo. A.C. 1014 -
W. Jones P. 30. for a Proof of the Vishnoo descent of the Peruvian
Religion see Page 186 of this book -
(foot page)
The Brahmins having migrated about A.C. 900. and a
sion of the migrators having taken place. a body of the Military class
sing to remain in the State of inferiority allotted to them may
proceeded onwards when the Brahmins settled in India
Country of Shen Xi & there laid the germ of the
ic Nation. and subsequent to these events is the ninth

appearance of Bhoodh in India. and the migration of the Sulvan and Japanese nations from Tshen Si, — when that Region became overflowed with inhabitants. Subsequent to which was the descent of the people of Shen Si into Inda (China).

This accounts for the Indians and Sulvans possessing the Brahminical rites & Solar ritual, for the Chinese and Sulvans being ignorant of Budsoism, for the Sulvans, tho' Scientific, not being like the Chinese literate which they must have been had they migrated at a later period. The B. Lamaism seems to be of Tartarian origin. But there is a strong appearance of Budsoism being from their Tartarian root. for Bhood was ruddy. (tho' his curled hair may militate against this — but Boot is a demoriac, or one under a preternatural influence, a divinity incarnate with the Tartars in more recent times, and may have been the cause of their reflection on Brahminism. As their Tartarian neighbours had the perpetual incarnation, they may have derived from them the occasional one.

As the Hindus a People of the Sind or Indus were a navigatory people it is much more probable Budsoism should have been diffused by them and have thus reached Ethiopia than by any other Channel. Q? was not the Banner of the Red Sea an Indian Navigator?

Sandoval, thinking that he had been the cauſe of this misfortune; and thus, without hearing him out, when he came to wait upon him, he commanded his inſtant return. This gave Sandoval pain, thinking that he was unworthily treated by Cortes. However he was obliged to return to Chalco. On his arrival he found the buſineſs entirely over, for the people of that province had ſummoned their allies, and repulſed the Mexicans, ſo that our countrymen returned with the priſoners to head quarters. Cortes was delighted when he heard the event, but Sandoval would not ſpeak to him. The general made every apology, and proteſted that the whole was owing to a miſtake, however, it is unneceſſary to ſay any more upon the ſubject, as they ſhortly after became as good friends as ever.

At this time, according to a general proclamation, the Indian ſlaves were brought together in order to be marked. The reader is already acquainted with the tranſactions at Tepeaca. It was if poſſible worſe now at Tezcuco. Firſt there was a fifth for his Majeſty, then another fifth for Cortes, and then the ſhares of the captains. What was worſt, moſt of the good female ſlaves had diſappeared during the night! it had been promiſed that they ſhould be rated, and the proprietor charged according to the value; but the royal officers or commiſſaries valued them as they thought proper, ſo that the poor ſoldier fell from bad to worſe. The conſequence of this was, that in future, to avoid loſing them thus, the ſoldiers concealed their ſlaves or paſſed them as ſervants and not priſoners of war, and thoſe who were in favor with Cortes brought them to be marked privately and paid the value to him. Thoſe ſlaves who fell to the lot of ſuch maſters as treated them ill, or had the name of doing ſo, immediately deſerted and were no more to be found; but the owners always remained debtors for ſo much upon their value in his Majeſty's books, ſo that many were in debt more than their ſhare of priſage of gold could pay off.

At this time arrived a ſhip, with arms and gunpowder, from Old Caſtille, in which came Julian de Alderete treaſurer for the crown; he

was from Tordeſillas, as was alſo Orduna the elder, who, after the conqueſt, brought over five daughters whom he married very honorably. A brother of the order of St. Francis alſo came; he was named Fra Pedro Malgarejo de Urrea. He brought with him a number of bulls of our lord St. Peter, ~~in order~~ to compoſe our conſciences if we had any thing to lay to our charge on account of the wars. The reverend father made a fortune in a few months, and returned to Caſtille. Anthonio Carajaval who now lives in Mexico, though very old, Geronymo Ruiz de la Mora, one Briones, who was about four years afterwards hanged in Guatimala for ſedition, Alonzo Diaz de la Reguera now living in Valladolid, and many others came by this veſſel. We now learned that the Biſhop of Burgos had no longer any power, his Majeſty having been diſpleaſed with his conduct ever ſince he knew of our eminent ſervices. Another meſſage arrived at this moment from Chalco for aſſiſtance againſt the Mexicans, upon which Cortes gave his promiſe that he would immediately march thither, although the brigantines were now ready to launch, and the ſoldiers ~~were~~ anxious to begin the ſiege of Mexico.

Cortes, leaving the town of Tezcuco to the care of Sandoval, ſet out after maſs, upon his expedition, to clear the diſtrict of Chalco, and reconnoitre the country adjacent to the lake, on friday the fifth of April, one thouſand five hundred and twenty one, at the head of three hundred infantry, twenty croſsbow-men and fifteen muſqueteers included, and thirty cavalry, with a large body of the auxiliaries of Tezcuco and Tlaſcala. The general was accompanied by the treaſurer Alderete, Fray Pedro Melgarejo, the captains Alvarado, De Oli, and Tapia, and in this expedition I alſo went. The firſt night we halted at Talmanalco, and on the next day reached Chalco, whither Cortes ſummoned all the chiefs, and informed them of his intention immediately to attack Mexico, requiring their aſſiſtance, which they moſt readily promiſed. On the next day, Cortes continuing his march, arrived at the town of Chimalacoan, in the ſame province, where above twenty thouſand warriors had aſſembled to meet us. From the time of my firſt arrival in this country,

Chimalhuacan near Chalco.
N.B. There are two places called Chimalhuacan ſimply — the other as above.

country, I never had ſeen ſo many of our allies in one body. They were thoſe of Chalco, Guaxocingo, Tlaſcala, Tezcuco, and other places, and they certainly were attracted by the hope of ſpoil, and a voracious appetite for human fleſh, juſt as the ſcald-crows and other birds of prey follow our armies in Italy, in order to feed on the dead bodies after a battle.

We here received intelligence, that the Mexican forces and their allies of that neighbourhood, were ready and in the field. Cortes therefore warned us to be alert, and early the next morning after maſs, as we proceeded on our march, our route being between two ridges of rocks the ſummits of which were fortified and garriſoned, the enemy endeavored by outcries and reproaches to draw us to an attack; but we purſued our march, by a large town named Guaztepeque, which we found abandoned, and paſſing through, we arrived at a plain where were ſome very ſcanty fountains of water, and hard by was a great rock with a fortreſs on the ſummit. We obſerved it to be filled with troops, who ſaluted us on our approach with ſhouts, ſhowers of ſtones, and arrows, by the firſt diſcharge of which they wounded three of our ſoldiers. Cortes then ordered us to halt, and obſerving that the Mexicans ſeemed to deſpiſe us for not attacking them, he ſent a party of cavalry to examine the rock. On their return they told the general, that no part ſeemed to them ſo acceſſible as that where we then were. Cortes then ordered us to aſcend, Enſign Chriſtoval del Corral with the colours leading us, and Cortes with the cavalry remaining in the plain to protect the rear.

Huaxtepec

This is a Specimen also of Hindustan warfare —

When we began to aſcend the mountain, the Indians threw down large maſſes of rock, and it was dreadful to ſee them roll among us, and a wonder how any of us eſcaped, as they bounded over us. The order was a very inconſiderate one, and very unlike a wiſe captain. One ſoldier though he wore a helmet was killed at my foot; he never uttered a word; his name was Martin Valenciano. As we continued to aſcend, the ſtones ſtill came rolling down upon us, and two more ſoldiers, one named Gaſpar Sanches, nephew to the treaſurer of Cuba, and the other

named Bravo, were the next who loſt their lives, and immediately after, Alonzo Rodriguez was killed, and two more knocked down. Moſt of the reſt received wounds, but ſtill we aſcended. I was at that time an active young man, and followed cloſe to our enſign, taking advantage of the concavities that we found from time to time in the rock. Corral was wounded in the head, his face covered with blood, and the colours tattered to pieces. "Oh ſignor Bernal Diaz del Caſtillo" ſaid he to me, "here is no advancing; remain under cover, for it is as much as I can "do to keep my hold, and preſerve myſelf from falling." Looking downward I at this time perceived Pedro Barba captain of the croſsbowmen, with two ſoldiers, climbing up as we had done under the cover of the projections in the face of the rock. I called to him not to advance, for that it was impoſſible to climb much farther. He replied in lofty terms, that I ſhould deſiſt from talking, and proceed on. I was a little piqued at this, and exerting my utmoſt activity, mounted to a conſiderable diſtance higher, telling him I ſhould ſee how he would do. At this moment a ſhower of large rocks came down, and cruſhed one of the ſoldiers who were with Barba to death; after having ſeen which he did not ſtir a ſtep. Corral called out to thoſe below deſiring them to report to the general the impoſſibility of proceeding, and that even the deſcent was full of danger. When Cortes was informed of this, for he could not ſee us on account of the inequalities of the rocks, and underſtood that moſt of us were wounded and many killed, a circumſtance which he could the readier believe from having had three of the cavalry killed on the plain by the rolling down of the maſſes of rocks, ſeven alſo being wounded in the ſame manner, he gave ſignals for us to deſcend, which we accordingly did, in a very bloody and bruiſed condition, leaving eight of our party dead.

Bodies of the Mexicans were watching us during this time, concealed in different places, ~~in order~~ to fall upon us when we were engaged in the attack, for it was a concerted plan. They now ſhewed themſelves, and advanced againſt us; we attacked them in the plain and drove them to ſome other ridges of rocks, and advancing through narrow

row paſſes like roads between them, we found another very ſtrong fortreſs ſimilar to that we had juſt been repulſed from. We now deſiſted for the preſent, and returned to our former poſition, in order to procure water, the men and horſes not having drank during the whole day. We found ſome ſprings at the foot of the rock, but the numbers of the enemy had drained them, and left nothing but mud. We then proceeded to the other fortreſs which we had obſerved; there was a diſtance of about a league and a half between the two. Here, in a grove of mulberry trees we found a fountain, but very ſcanty of water, and under theſe trees we halted for ſome time. At the foot of the rock whereon the fort was, ſtood a ſmall village. The people above began at our approach to ſhoot at us, and appeared in much more conſiderable numbers than in the former place, and their ſituation was ſuch that no ſhot from us could take effect upon them. For ſome diſtance from the level ground, there was an appearance of paths up the rock, but it altogether preſented extreme difficulties.

On the enſuing day we attacked, our principal body climbing the rock very ſlowly and with great fatigue, nor could we have ever aſcended to the works, for they were wounding and deſtroying us by rolling down maſſes of rock on our heads, but that fortunately for us there was within ſhot of the poſt another rock which commanded it, and to this all our fire arms and croſsbow-men were detached; and although they were rather too far off to have much effect, yet having killed ſeveral of the enemy over their ramparts, it threw them off their defence, and they offered to ſubmit. Cortes called for five of their chiefs to deſcend, and reprehending them for having been the aggreſſors, he told them that he would pardon them on condition that they induced thoſe who were in the other fortreſs to give themſelves up, which they undertook to do. Cortes then ordered the two captains Juan Xaramillo and Pedro de Ircio, and the enſign, Corral, to aſcend to the fort which had been ſurrendered, bidding me accompany them, and he at the ſame time warned us not to touch a ſingle grain of maiz. This expreſſion I conſidered as implying that we ſhould do ourſelves what good we had in our power. We found

found it to conſiſt of an extenſive plain on the ſummit of a perpendicular rock; the entrance was by an aperture not much larger than twice the ſize of the mouth of an oven. It was completely filled with men, women, and children, but they had not a ſingle drop of water, and about twenty of their warriors were killed, and many wounded. Their property was all packed up in bales, and here was alſo a conſiderable tribute, collected ~~in order~~ to be ſent to Mexico. I had brought four of my Indian ſervants with me, and began to load them, and alſo four of the natives; upon which Captain De Ircio came and told me to lay down the packs immediately, or he would report me to the general, aſking if I had not heard his orders not to touch a grain of maize. I replied that I had heard the orders that the maize ſhould not be taken, and that was the reaſon why I took the packages; but he would not ſuffer any of it to go, and on our return reported me to Cortes, expecting that I ſhould receive blame; but Cortes was not ſo diſpoſed, ſaying on the contrary, that he was ſorry I had not got the ſpoil, and that the dogs ſhould keep their property, and laugh at us, after all the miſchief which they had done. De Ircio on this wiſhed to return thither; but Cortes told him that the time did not then admit of it. By this, the chiefs had arrived from the firſt fortreſs, the garriſon of which agreed to ſubmit, and we returned, being compelled by want of water, to the town of Guaztepeque, where was the noble garden I have before mentioned. In this garden our whole force lodged for the night; I certainly never had ſeen one of ſuch magnificence, and Cortes and the treaſurer Alderete, after they had walked through and examined it, declared that it was admirable, and equal to any that they had ever ſeen in Caſtille.

On the enſuing day we marched for Cuernabaca. The Mexicans who were in that town came out and attacked us, but we defeated and drove them to a town named Tepuztlan, which we took by ſurpriſe, making a great booty of Indian women, and other ſpoils. Cortes ſummoned the chiefs three or four times, to ſubmit, and on their refuſal to come in, and in order to ſtrike terror into others, ſet fire to about one half of the houſes. At this time the chiefs of a diſtrict named Yauh-

Quauhnahuac alias Cuernavaca — M. B. the Duke of Monte Leon is now Marquis of the V. of Oaxaca. This was the Capital of the Tepeque Nation. & 30 Miles South of Mo.

tepeque

Tlahuica

Tlahuitl — i. e. Cinnabar

tepeque came to wait on Cortes and make their ſubmiſſion. On the next day we arrived at the large town of Cuernabaca, or Coadlavaca, in a very ſtrong ſituation, on account of a deep ravine cauſed by a rivulet which runs at the depth of at leaſt forty feet, although there is not much water, and which precluded all acceſs to the town except by two bridges, which the inhabitants had broken upon our approach. Cortes however being informed that about half a league higher up was a paſſage practicable for the cavalry, went thither with them, and we all ſearched for paſſes, and at length diſcovered a very dangerous one, over ſome trees which hung acroſs from the two oppoſite ſides of the ravine. About thirty of us, and many Tlaſcalans, made our way over, by the help of thoſe trees, with great difficulty, three fell into the water, and one broke his leg. It was indeed a truly frightful attempt; I for a time entirely loſt my ſight, from the depth and danger. We who got over, falling on the flank and rear of the enemy unexpectedly, and being juſt then joined by part of our cavalry who had croſſed a bridge which was not entirely deſtroyed, now drove the enemy from this poſt, to the neighbouring woods and rocks. In the town we found conſiderable property, and here we were again lodged in a large garden, belonging to the lord of the diſtrict. A deputation of twenty of the principal Indians waited on Cortes, apologizing for the hoſtilities committed, the blame of which they threw on the Mexicans, offering to ſubmit themſelves and obſerving, as I recollect, that their gods had been permitted by ours to puniſh them.

Suchimileco, the object of our march, is a large city on the freſh water lake, in which moſt of the houſes are built. As it was late when we ſet out from Coadlavaca, and the weather exceſſively ſultry, our troops ſuffered dreadfully from the want of water, not a drop whereof was to be met with on our route. Our allies fainted on the road in numbers; one of them died, and alſo one of our ſoldiers. Cortes ſeeing the diſtreſſes of the army, halted under ſome pine trees, and ſent a party forward to ſeek for relief. When I ſaw them about to ſet off, my friend Chriſtoval de Oli being one of them, I brought three of my Indian ſervants

vants with me, and followed the party, which they obſerving, halted ~~in order~~ to make me return, but I was reſolved, and De Oli at laſt aſſented, telling me I muſt expect to fight my way. About half a league in front were ſome villages on the ſide of a ridge. The cavalry went thither and found water in the houſes, and one of my ſervants brought me ~~from~~ thence a large jar, which they uſe in that country, full of water. I then determined to return, for the inhabitants of the village had begun to take the alarm. I found Cortes juſt ſetting forward on his march, and gave him and the captains a hearty draught each out of the jar, which my ſervants carried ~~very~~ well concealed, for thirſt conſiders itſelf before any one. We arrived at the villages and found water, though not much; the ſun was then near ſetting, and our cavalry came in and reported that the whole country was in movement againſt us; we therefore halted here. I was on the night guard, and recollect that it was very windy and rainy. Several of our ſoldiers were taken ill with inflamations in the mouth and throat, from eating a ſpecies of thiſtle or artichoke, to quench their thirſt.

Early the next morning we purſued our route, and about eight o'clock arrived at Suchimilco. I can give no idea of the number of the enemies troops which were gathered here, they were in ſuch vaſt bodies. They had broken down the bridge which was in front, and fortified themſelves with parapets and palliſades; their leaders were armed with ſwords which they had taken from us in the fatal night of Mexico, and which they had poliſhed and made very bright. The attack laſted for half an hour at the bridge. Some of our people paſſed the water by ſwimming, and ſome loſt their lives in it. What was worſt, ſeveral bodies fell on our flanks and rear. When our cavalry had got on firm ground, with the loſs of two more of our ſoldiers killed, we drove them before us, but a reinforcement of at leaſt ten thouſand Mexicans juſt then arrived, and received the charge of our cavalry, four of whom they wounded. Here the good cheſnut horſe which our Cortes rode tired under him amongſt a croud of the enemy, who pulled or knocked the general down, with the intention of taking him alive; more crouds now

gathered

gathered about him, and were hurrying him off, but a body of our Tlaſcalan allies headed by the brave Chriſtoval de Olea came to his reſcue, and remounted him, though he was ſeverely wounded in the head. Olea alſo received three deſperate wounds from the ſwords of the enemy.

As all the ſtreets of the town were full of Mexican troops, we were obliged to divide into bodies and fight ſeparately; but thoſe who were neareſt, knowing by the outcry and noiſe that it was very ſerious in that part where Cortes commanded, hurried thither, and found him with about fifteen of the cavalry in a very embarraſſed ſituation, among the canals and parapets. We then forced the enemy to give ground, and brought off our Cortes and Olea. On firſt paſſing the bridge, Cortes had ordered the cavalry in two diviſions, to clear our flanks. At this time they returned to us, every one of them wounded, and reported that the numbers were ſuch that their efforts were unavailing.

We were in an encloſed court, dreſſing our wounds with burnt oil, and tearing cloth to bind them, when the cavalry came in; and in a ſhort time after, ſuch a volley of arrows came among us that very few eſcaped unhurt. We now, together with the cavalry, ſallied out among the enemy, and uſed our ſwords to ſuch effect that they left a conſiderable number behind them on the ground; our loſs being, one man and two horſes killed. Having now a little breathing time, for the enemy deſiſted from their attempt to ſtorm our poſt, Cortes brought his troops to the large encloſures where were the temples of the Indians, and ſome of our party going to the top, which commanded Mexico and the whole lake, perceived above two thouſand canoes coming from the city againſt us full of troops. A body of ten thouſand men alſo marched on the land ſide, to attack us on that night, and another body of ten thouſand was in readineſs as a relief. All this we learned from five of the chiefs whom we made priſoners. We poſted ſtrong guards at thoſe places where the enemy were to diſembark, the cavalry were in readineſs to act upon the roads and firm ground, and conſtant patroles were kept

going during the night. I and ten more ſoldiers were poſted as a guard upon a wall of lime and ſtone, which commanded one of the landing places. While we were on the watch, we heard a noiſe which we knew to be occaſioned by the approach of a party of the enemy. We were prepared, and beat them off, ſending one of our ſoldiers to make a report to Cortes. The enemy returned in a very ſhort time, and attacking us again, knocked down two of our party, and then drew off to attempt a landing at another place, which was a ſmall gate upon a deep canal. The night was very dark, and as theſe people are not accuſtomed to fight during that ſeaſon, it appeared that their two armies fell into confuſion, and contrary to the orders they received, formed in one body, making at leaſt fifteen thouſand men.

I muſt now ſpeak of myſelf, not meaning it however in the way of boaſt. When our report reached Cortes, he came to us with ten of the cavalry, and as he approached without ſpeaking, I challenged, "who goes there?" and getting no anſwer, I and my comrade, one Gonzalo Sanchez a Portugueſe of Algarve, ſent three or four ſhots at them. Cortes knowing our voices obſerved to thoſe with him, that this poſt required no viſiting, for we were two of his veterans. He then remarked to us that our ſtation was a dangerous one, and turning about without ſaying any more, he continued his rounds. I afterwards heard that one of Narvaez's ſoldiers was whipped for negligence on this night.

Our powder being all exhauſted, Cortes ordered us to prepare a good ſtore of arrows, which we were employed during the night in heading and feathering, under the directions of Pedro Barba the captain of the croſsbow-men. At day break the enemy attacked us, but without much ſucceſs; for we killed ſeveral of their leaders, and took many of them priſoners, with the loſs of but one Spaniard killed. Our cavalry who had advanced, fell in with the Mexicans, and not being ſtrong enough to attack them, ſent back for aſſiſtance; on which the whole of our force ſallied out. We charged and defeated the enemy, and

and made ſeveral priſoners, who informed us of the plan of the Mexicans to wear us out by inceſſant attacks. We therefore determined to quit that place on the enſuing day. In the interim, our troops and allies having intelligence of the wealth which was in the town, got ſome of the priſoners to point out to them the houſes that contained it, the approach to which was by a cauſeway with ſmall bridges over the canals, for they ſtood on the freſh water lake. From theſe they returned loaded with cotton cloths and other valuables, and this example induced others to follow it. Unfortunately, while thus employed, a body of Mexicans in canoes came upon them, and wounding many, ſeized four ſoldiers of the company of Captain De Monjaraz, alive, and hurrying them into their veſſels, carried them to Mexico in triumph. From theſe men Guatimotzin the King of Mexico was informed of the ſmallneſs of our numbers, and our great loſs in killed and wounded. After having queſtioned them as much as he thought proper, he commanded their hands and feet to be cut off, and in this lamentable condition ſent them through many diſtricts of the neighbourhood, as a ſample of what he expected to do by us all, and after having thus exhibited them through the country they were put to death. The enſuing morning afforded opportunity for freſh attacks upon us, as had been regularly the caſe for the four days during which we ſtaid in Suchimelco.

Previous to our march, Cortes drew his troops to an open place a little out of the town, where the market was held. Here he formed us, and then made a ſpeech, wherein he dwelt upon the dangers we had to go through in our retreat, and the great bodies of the enemy that waited us on the road; for which reaſon, he ſtrongly inſiſted on the neceſſity of leaving all the luggage behind; but we replied that we were men able to defend our properties, our perſons, and his alſo; and that it would be very paltry in us to abandon what we had acquired. When he ſaw our determination, he put us in order for the march, the baggage in the center, and the cavalry forming the advanced and rear guard; and it was protected alſo by our croſsbow-men, for as to our muſquetry it was uſeleſs from want of powder. The enemy attacked us upon our

retreat, purſuing us as far as Cuyocan. There were in this neighbourhood cluſters of towns, each of conſiderable magnitude, built in the water, at the diſtance of two leagues from Mexico, and about a league and an half from each other. They amounted to above ten in number. It was the inhabitants of all thoſe who had joined together at this time to attack us; their names were Suchimelco, Cuyoacan, Chohuilobuſco, Iztapalapa, Coadlavaca, Meſquique, and others. We halted for two days at Cuyoacan, which we found abandoned, attending the wounded, and making arrows for our croſsbows. On the third morning we ſet out upon our march for Tacuba, and were attacked as uſual, but our cavalry drove the enemy to their ditches and canals.

Cortes at this time determined to lay an ambuſcade, and accordingly ſet out with ten of the cavalry and four ſervants. He ſoon fell in with a party of Mexicans who fled before him, and imprudently preſſing them too far, a large body of their warriors ſtarted out upon him, and in their firſt attack wounded all the horſes, and getting two of the attendants of Cortes in their hands, carried them to Mexico to be ſacrificed, the reſt having a moſt narrow eſcape. Our main body reached the head quarters at Tacuba with the baggage in ſafety, and not hearing any thing of Cortes or his party of cavalry, we ſuſpected ſome misfortune. Alvarado, De Oli, Tapia, I, and ſome more therefore went in ſearch of him, towards that part whither we ſaw them go, and we ſoon met two of his ſervants, who informed us of what had happened. In a ſhort time Cortes came up to us; he was very ſad, and weeping.

When we arrived at our quarters at Tacuba it rained heavily, and we remained under it for two hours in ſome large encloſed courts. The general, with his captains, the treaſurer, our reverend father, and many others of us, mounted to the top of the temple which commanded all the lake, and afforded a moſt ſurpriſing and pleaſing ſpectacle, from the multitude of cities riſing as it were out of the water, and the innumerable quantity of boats employed in fiſhing, or rapidly paſſing to and fro.

fro. All of us agreed in giving glory to God, for making us the inſtruments of rendering ſuch ſervices: the reverend father alſo conſoled Cortes, who was very ſad on account of his late loſs. When we contemplated the ſcenes of what had happened to us in Mexico, and which we could well trace from where we ſtood, it made Cortes much more ſad than before. It was on this that the romance was written which begins,

" In Tacuba was Cortes, with many a gallant chief,
" He thought upon his loſſes, and bowed his head with grief.

One of our ſoldiers, the bachelor Alonzo Perez, who was afterwards fiſcal near Mexico, in order to conſole him, obſerved, that thoſe things were the common fortune of war, and that they could not at preſent compare him to Nero viewing Rome on fire. Cortes anſwered that he was only ſad from the reflection of the dangers and fatigues that we ſhould have to go through, but that he would ſhortly put his hand to the buſineſs. Our captains and ſoldiers now conſulted, whether it would not be eligible to take a view of the cauſeway, but it was thought not prudent, and we continued our march by Eſcapuzalco, which was abandoned, to Tenayuca, where, in the great temple, they worſhipped three ſerpents. From this place, which was alſo abandoned, we proceeded to Guatitlan, and during the whole days march it never ceaſed raining; whereby, together with the weight of our arms, we came in dreadfully fatigued.

The enemy gave us ſome alarms in the night, during which it rained heavily, no watch being kept by us on account of the ſeverity of the weather, as I can teſtify, my poſt not having been viſited either by rounds or corporal. Marching through four or five towns which were abandoned, by a road deep in mud, we arrived in two days more at Aculman in the diſtrict of Tezcuco, where we found that a reinforcement to our army had newly arrived from Caſtille. On the next day

we

we proceeded to Tezcuco, and arrived fatigued, worn out, and diminiſhed in numbers.

A conſpiracy againſt the life of Cortes was at this time formed, by an adherent of the governor of Cuba, one Anthonio de Villafana, native of Zamora or of Toro, and ſome of the other ſoldiers of Narvaez, whoſe names I will not mention. The aſſaſſination was to have been executed in the following manner. A veſſel having lately arrived from Caſtille, a letter was to be brought to the general, as from his father, and as if it had come by that opportunity; which letter was to be delivered as he ſat at table with his officers and ſoldiers, and when he had opened, and was in the act of reading it, the conſpirators were to fall on and aſſaſſinate him with their poinards, together with all of us who were in his company. When every thing was arranged, the conſpirators communicated their intentions to two principal perſons whom I will not name, but who had been on the expedition with us, one of whom on the death of Cortes they meant to have appointed captain general. The offices of alguazil major, enſign, alcaldes, regidor, contador, treaſurer, veedor, and others of this kind were to have been filled up from among the ſoldiers of Narvaez, and they had divided amongſt them our properties and horſes. The buſineſs was diſcovered two days after our arrival at Tezcuco, by God's mercy, who did not chuſe that New Spain ſhould have been ſo loſt; for if we had been put to death, all would have fallen into confuſion and faction.

It ſeems a faithful ſoldier made the diſcovery to Cortes, who immediately took proper ſteps to prevent the miſchief from ſpreading, for he underſtood it to be conducted by perſons of quality. As ſoon as it was made clear to him, he gave large rewards for the information. He then communicated it to all our captains, namely, alvarado, De Lugo, De Oli, Sandoval, and Tapia, alſo to me, and to the two Alcaldes of that year, Luis Marin, and Pedro de Ircio; in ſhort to all of his party. As ſoon as we knew of it we prepared ourſelves, and attended Cortes to the quarters of Villafana, where we found him and many others

others of the conſpirators. The four alguazils ſeized Villafana; the others attempted to eſcape by flight, but Cortes ordered them to be detained, and ſome of them he committed to priſon. Cortes then took from the boſom of Villafana a paper, with the ſignatures of thoſe who were concerned with him, in conſideration for whom however, he cauſed the report to be circulated, that it had been ſwallowed by Villafana, without his having ſeen it. He was immediately put upon his trial, but voluntarily made a confeſſion, according to which, and to the teſtimony of many witneſſes, he was condemned by his judges, the two alcaldes, conjointly with Cortes, and De Oli who ſat by virtue of his office. Shortly after his condemnation, having confeſſed himſelf to the reverend Father Juan Diaz, he was hanged from a window of the apartment.

Of the ſeveral others who were arreſted, no more were proceeded againſt; enough having been done for example and intimidation. Cortes however to prevent ſuch attempts in future thought it prudent to appoint a guard for his perſon, compoſed of valiant and faithful ſoldiers. They were ſelected from thoſe who had been with him from the firſt, and were commanded by a gentleman named Anthonio de Quinones. Henceforward, although he ſhowed great attention to thoſe who had been in the conſpiracy, and treated them in the beſt manner, he took care to be on his guard with them.

At this time came out an order for all the priſoners to be brought to an appointed place, in order to be marked. Not to take up time with repetitions of the ſtory I will ſum up all in one obſervation which is, that if what was ill done the firſt time, was worſe done the ſecond, this third was worſt of all; for after the royal fifth had been drawn out, Cortes took his own, and then came no leſs than thirty ſucceſſive drafts for the captains. Beſides, thoſe handſome and good female priſoners which we put in to be marked were ſtolen out of the crowd, and were kept concealed until it was no longer inconvenient to produce them.

The

The brigantines were now finiſhed, and the canal brought to a ſufficient width and depth to float them to the lake. Cortes therefore iſſued a circular notice to all the diſtricts of our alliance in the neighbourhood of Tezcuco, to ſend him each within the ſpace of the next eight days, eight thouſand arrow heads made of copper; alſo an equal number of ſhafts, of a particular wood. By the expiration of the given time the whole number was brought, executed to a degree of perfection which exceeded the pattern. Captain P. Barba who commanded the croſsbow-men ordered each of his ſoldiers to provide themſelves with two cords and nuts, and to prove the range of their bows, for one of the laſt ſhips which came from Caſtille had brought out a ſupply of the materials to make cords, and alſo of powder. Cortes ordered the cavalry to have their lances well pointed, and to uſe their horſes to daily exerciſe; and he at this time ſent an expreſs to Xicotenga the elder, otherwiſe Don Lorenzo de Vargas, for twenty thouſand of the warriors of his nation, and thoſe of Guaxocingo and Cholula; and he ſent ſimilar notices to Chalco and Talmalanco, ſummoning them to a general rendezvous, on the day after the feaſt of the Holy Ghoſt, at which time Don Hernando our ally of Tezcuco was alſo to join us with all his forces.

Monday May 20th.

On the day after the feſtival of the Holy Ghoſt, Cortes inſpected his army in the large quadrangles of Tezcuco. They amounted to eighty four cavalry, ſix hundred and fifty infantry with ſword and buckler or lances, and one hundred and ninety four muſqueteers and croſsbow-men. Out of this number he took for the ſervice of his fleet twelve of the muſqueteers or croſsbow-men, and twelve of the other infantry for rowers, under the command of a captain, to each veſſel; he alſo diſtributed twenty cannoniers through the whole fleet, which he armed with what guns fit for this ſervice we had in our ſtores.

Having thus diſtributed his force, Cortes gave the following orders. Firſt, no perſon to utter any blaſphemy againſt our Lord Jeſus Chriſt, the Holy Virgin his mother, the Holy Apoſtles, nor any other of

of the ſaints, under heavy penalties. Second, no ſoldier to ill treat our allies in their perſons or properties. Third, no ſoldier to abſent himſelf from his quarters on any pretence. Fourth, every ſoldier to be fully provided with arms offenſive and defenſive. Fifth, no ſoldier to ſtake his horſe or arms at gaming. Sixth, no ſoldier to ſleep out of armour, or without his weapons beſide him, except in caſe of wounds or ſickneſs. Laſtly, penalty of death for ſleeping on, or abſence from a centinels poſt, abſence from quarters without leave, quitting the ranks in the field, or flight in battle.

Although a number of our people had ſerved as ſailors before, there was a great averſeneſs on the preſent occaſion among them to act as rowers. The general was therefore obliged to make enquiry, and conſidering all thoſe who belonged to, or were natives of Palos, Moguer, Triano, El Puerto, or any other ſeaport, or who had been known to have been employed in fiſhing, as being of the profeſſion, he ordered them to the oars, and although many of theſe brought their gentility as an objection, he would not hear of it, but enforced his orders; by which he obtained one hundred and fifty, who were, as it will appear in the ſequel, better ſituated than any of us who had to bear the weight and dangers of the field. The crews being embarked, each brigantine hoiſted a royal ſtandard, and alſo its peculiar one. The general then appointed the captains as follows: Garci Holguin, Pedro Barba, Juan de Limpias Carvajal the deaf, Juan Xaremillo, Geronymo Ruiz de la Mora, Carvajal his companion who is now very old and lives in the ſtreet of St. Francis, one Portillo, a good ſoldier with an handſome wife, Zamora, maſter of a ſhip, now living in Guaxaca, Colmenero a mariner and brave ſoldier, Lerma, Gines Nortes, Briones native of Salamanca, another whoſe name I have forgotten, and Miguel diaz de Auz. To theſe he gave inſtructions how they were to act, and with what officers of the land forces they were to cooperate.

At this time arrived the army of our allies of Tlaſcala under the command of the younger Xicotenga. He brought with him his two

See the account of the Conquest who was commissary for the African Slave Trade in [illegible]

brothers. In this army alſo came ſome of the warriors of Cholula, and Guaxocinga, but not in any conſiderable number. The alacrity of the whole body appeared in their arrival a day previous to that appointed; they advanced in great parade, each chief having a ſtandard with their national device, a white ſpread eagle, embroidered upon it. They entered the town in high ſpirits, ſhouting "Caſtilla! Caſtilla! Tlaſcala! "Tlaſcala! live the Emperor!" and it was about three hours from the time of the arrival of their advanced party, until the rear had come in. Cortes, with many compliments, diſmiſſed them to their quarters, and promiſing to make them all rich on their return to their native country. We now heard that the Mexicans had put to death three of our ſoldiers who had been left by Pizarro to ſearch for mines, one only, named Barrientos, eſcaping to Chinanta, where he was protected.

Our general made his diſpoſition for the attack upon the city of Mexico as follows.

Pedro de Alvarado, with one hundred and fifty infantry, thirty cavalry, eighteen muſqueteers and croſsbow-men, and eight thouſand Tlaſcalans was to take poſt at Tacuba, having to aſſiſt him Jorge de Alvarado his brother, Gutierre de Badajos, and Andres de Monjaras, each of whom was captain of a company, conſiſting of fifty infantry, and a third of the croſsbow-men and muſqueteers, the cavalry being commanded by Alvarado in perſon. To this detachment I was appointed.

Chriſtoval de Oli, having under him the captains Andres de Tapia, Franciſco Verdugo, Franciſco de Lugo, thirty cavalry, one hundred and ſeventy five infantry, twenty muſqueteers and croſsbow-men, and eight thouſand Indians was to take poſt at Cuyoacan, and Gonzalo de Sandoval, with captains Luis Marin and P. de Ircio, at the head of twenty four cavalry, one hundred and fifty infantry, fourteen muſqueteers and croſsbow-men, and upwards of eight thouſand Indians was to take his poſt at Iztapalapa. The two firſt named diviſions were to march by the right, the third in the oppoſite direction. Sandovals

party

party had alſo orders not to march, until Cortes who commanded the flotilla in perſon ſhould launch out upon the lake.

I muſt now advert to another affair which happened at this time. The diviſions of the two captains in chief Alvarado and De Oli being prepared to ſet out, in order not to be incumbered with our Indian allies on the march, we ſent them off one day before us, with orders to halt and wait for our arrival when they came upon the Mexican territory. The Tlaſcalans purſuing their march, Chichimacatecle remarked the abſence of the younger Xicotenga, the commander in chief. On enquiring it was found that he had ſecretly gone away on the preceding night to Tlaſcala, there to ſeize and poſſeſs himſelf of the property and territory of Chichimacatecle, thinking this a good opportunity, in the abſence of that chief and of the other warriors of his nation, and fearing no oppoſition ſince the death of Maxicatzin. His diſinclination to the expedition had alſo been apparent from the firſt. Chichimacatecle, on diſcovering the deſign againſt him, immediately returned to Tezcuco to inform Cortes, who on hearing it diſpatched five of the chiefs of Tezcuco and two of Tlaſcala after Xicotenga, with a meſſage from him to requeſt his return. His anſwer was, that if Maxicatzin and his old father had believed him, they would not be now ridden by Cortes in the manner they were, and he abſolutely refuſed to return. This anſwer being ſent back to Cortes, he commanded an alguazil attended by four of the cavalry and five chiefs of Tezcuco, to ſet out immediately, giving them orders, wherever they found Xicotenga, to ſeize and hang him without ceremony. Alvarado interceded ſtrongly for him, but ultimately to no purpoſe, for although Cortes appeared to liſten to him, the party which arreſted Xicotenga in a town ſubject to Tezcuco, there hung him under private orders of Cortes not to let him go from them alive, and as ſome ſay with the approbation of his father.

This affair detained us one day, and on the next, the two detachments of Alvarado and De Oli marched by the ſame route, and halted

for the night, in a place ſubject to Tezcuco named Aculma. Here a diſagreeable affair had like to have taken place. It appeared that De Oli had ſent forward to take quarters, and had appropriated every houſe in the town to his own company, marking them by putting green branches on the terraces, ſo that when Alvarado's detachment arrived, we had not a place to lodge in. Our ſoldiers immediately ſtood to their arms to fight thoſe of De Oli, and the two captains had already challenged each other, but ſeveral of the more moderate officers interfering, they were pacified for the preſent. An expreſs was immediately ſent to Cortes, who wrote to every one of any influence amongſt our detachments, condemning the ſteps which had been taken, and earneſtly recommending a reconciliation. After this Alvarado and De Oli never were friends.

We continued our march for two days more, by Mexican cities which were abandoned, the laſt of which was Guatitlan; and on the third, paſſing the towns of Tenayuca and Eſcapuzalco where we found our allies * waiting for us, we proceeded to Tacuba.

The proceedings of this siege much resemble those of the Crusaders against Turkish Nice —

The enemy gave notice by their noiſes that they were about us in great numbers, and our two detachments, it was ſettled, ſhould on the enſuing day go to cut the aqueduct of Chapultepeque. At the time appointed, we ſet out with our allies, and though the enemy attacked us in our march, we ſucceeded, deſtroying the pipes, ſo that from that day, no more freſh water came to Mexico. It was now determined to try our fortune againſt the city, and ſee if we could not at leaſt get poſſeſſion of a bridge upon the cauſeway of Tacuba. When we arrived there, the immenſe number of boats, and of their troops on the land, was a ſubject of aſtoniſhment. By the firſt volley of their arrows they killed three and wounded thirty of our ſoldiers; nevertheleſs we advanced to the bridge, the enemy, as it were by ſtratagem, receding, and now we were upon a cauſeway twenty feet wide, expoſed as a butt to the arrows of thoſe on the water on both our flanks. Our muſquetry and croſsbows had no effect whatever on their canoes they were ſo well protected; as to

* The whole number of whom amounted to ſeventy thouſand.

The whole number from Tlaxcallan, Huexotzinco & Cholula amounted to above 200,000 men. The inventor and communicator of the device was Gonzalo de Sandoval — whose account I copied —

to the cavalry their horſes were all wounded, and if they purſued the enemy a little diſtance on the cauſeway, they were ſtopped by the parapets which they had built acroſs it, and which they defended with long lances; and when our infantry advanced againſt them in front, the enemy threw themſelves into the water. Thus we were fighting them for upwards of an hour, their numbers increaſing from every part of the lake, and our allies only encumbering the cauſeway. Being utterly unable to reſiſt the enemy who were on the water we determined to retire, which we did, leaving eight dead and having above fifty wounded, the enemy purſuing us cloſely.

On the enſuing day, Captain De Oli proceeded with his detachment for Cuyoacan; he talked in terms of diſapprobation of the preceding expedition, laying the blame on the raſhneſs of Alvarado. We all were ſolicitous that the two captains ſhould remain together, and certainly their ſeparation was very imprudent, for had the enemy known the ſmallneſs of our number, they would have fallen on and deſtroyed either detachment, during the four or five days that we were ſeparated, and before the arrival of Cortes with the flotilla. In theſe two poſitions our detachments remained for the above period, without venturing to pay another viſit to the Mexican cauſeways. During this time the enemy frequently ſent bodies of their troops to the main land, and annoyed us with attacks in our quarters.

Tezcuco near this part of the ancient wall of the town of Coatle has yet remains.

Sandoval with his detachment left Tezcuco on the fourth day after the feaſt of Corpus Chriſti, and marching through a friendly country, arrived in front of the town of Iztapalapa. On his arrival he immediately attacked the enemy in that place, and burned many of the houſes which were built on the firm ground; but freſh bodies of Mexicans came both by land and water to their relief, and while thus occupied, our troops obſerved a ſmoke to riſe from the top of a hill above the town, which was anſwered in the ſame manner at other points round the lake, and this we found to be a ſignal for the information of the enemy, that our flotilla was launched; a circumſtance which occaſioned them to

Iztac-palla-par.
Tiza-white city —

relax

relax in their hoſtilities againſt Sandoval. He now remained unmoleſted in his inſulated ſituation, in a part of the town of Iztapalapa, between which and Cuyoacan there were no means of communication but by a cauſeway which croſſes the lake, and the paſſage of which was impracticable in the face of the enemy.

Cortes when he brought his flotilla upon the lake, firſt went to attack a rock which forms a ſmall iſland juſt by Mexico, and on which many of the natives as well of that neighbourhood as of other parts had taken refuge. As ſoon as the enemy diſcovered his intention, their whole force from every part of the lake proceeded againſt him. When our general perceived the immenſe number of large boats full of fighting men, for it exceeded four thouſand, he drew his flotilla into an open part of the lake, and ordered his captains to wait patiently for a breeze of wind which was juſt then beginning to ſpring up. The enemy thinking this was owing to fear, began to cloſe round him with great triumph, and juſt at this moment the wind riſing in his favor, the whole fleet ſet ſail, plying their oars at the ſame time; bearing down upon the Mexican canoes in this manner, they ſunk a number of them, and compelled the reſt to take ſhelter in the receſſes on the ſides of the lake.

After this Cortes ſailed for Cuyoacan. Here he had another attack by the Mexicans, who aſſailed his veſſels from the temples on the land, as well as with their canoes; but he brought four guns to bear upon them, and did conſiderable execution; although, by ſome miſmanagement of the gunners, his powder magazine blew up, wounding many of his people. This misfortune obliged him to detach his lightſt veſſel to Sandoval for a ſupply. At Cuyoacan he remained with the flotilla for two days, and here I will leave him to relate what paſſed in the detachment of Alvarado. When we perceived that the flotilla was upon the lake, we marched out upon the cauſeway as far as the bridge, where we paſſed our time in a repetition of engagements with the enemy, but to little effect, farther than repairing the paſſes in our rear as we

probably coyo= or coyott= acan. place of the coyott. a little land= animal

The war boats of Siam agree in their description, or construction with those of the Inspiration

The three causeways which were the line of action presented together, but a front of sixty feet to occupy.

we advanced, nor did we now ſuffer the cavalry to come to the cauſeway.

Sandoval had found that in his preſent poſition he could not ſufficiently annoy the enemy, who were eſtabliſhed in the houſes built in the water; he therefore advanced by a cauſeway to a place which commanded them better. This being perceived from Mexico, a large detachment was ſent in canoes, with directions to cut the cauſeway behind our troops. Cortes obſerving this ſet ſail with his veſſels for their relief, ordering De Oli to go thither with a body of troops by the cauſeway. Having relieved Sandoval, the general ordered this detachment to a place named Tepeaquilla, where is now built the church of Nueſtra Senora de Guadelupe, in which many wonderful miracles have been, and are, performed.

As it was impoſſible for our troops to advance upon the cauſeways without their flanks being ſecured on the water, the flotilla was formed into three diviſions, and one of them attached to each of the three corps of our army; that is to ſay, four ſhips to Alvarado, ſix to De Oli, and two to Sandoval, making in all twelve, for the thirteenth, named "Buſca Ruido, or follow the noiſe," being found to be too ſmall, was ordered to be laid up, and her crew divided among the reſt, as we had twenty very badly wounded already on board the ſhips. Alvarado now ordered us out upon the cauſeway, and placing two of the ſhips on each ſide, he thereby protected the flanks. We drove the enemy from ſeveral bridges and barricades, but after fighting during the whole day, we were obliged at night to retreat to our quarters, almoſt every man of us wounded by the ſhowers of arrows and ſtones, which exceeded imagination; for we were attacked conſtantly by freſh troops bearing different devices, by land, while from the terraces of the houſes, the enemy commanded our ſhips. As we could not leave a party to ſecure what we got in the day, at night the enemy repoſſeſſed themſelves of the bridges, and put better defences on them. They deepened the water in ſome places, and in the ſhallow part they dug pits, and placed canoes

in

in ambuſcade, which they ſecured from the attacks of our veſſels by palliſades under the water. This was the manner in which they oppoſed us every day. The cavalry as I before obſerved could do nothing; the enemy had built parapets acroſs the cauſeways which they defended with long lances, and even had an attack been practicable, the ſoldiers would not riſk their horſes, which at this time coſt eight hundred crowns, and ſome more than one thouſand; nor indeed were they to be had at any price.

When we arrived at night, we were employed in curing our wounds, and a ſoldier named Juan Catalan alſo healed them by charms and prayers, which, with the mercy of our Lord Jeſus, recovered us very faſt. But wounded or not, we were obliged to go againſt the enemy every day, as otherwiſe our companies would not have been twenty men ſtrong. When our allies ſaw that the before mentioned ſoldier cured us by charms and prayers, all their wounded came to him, ſo that he had more buſineſs on his hands than he knew what to do with. Every day our enſign was diſabled, not having it in his power to carry the colours, and defend himſelf. Corn we had ſufficiency of, but we wanted refreſhments for the wounded. What preſerved us was the plant called "quilites," cherries while in ſeaſon, and "tunas" or Indian figs. The ſituation of our other parties round the lake was ſimilar to what I have here deſcribed.

The enemy in the city ruſhed out on the ſignal being made from the top of the great temple of Taltelulco; and theſe attacks were made every day, and repeated by freſh troops, who were formed and marched out in ſucceſſion. Finding that we gained ſo little and loſt ſo much, we reſolved to change our plan of operations. There was on our cauſeway a ſmall open place, where were ſome buildings for religious worſhip; here we eſtabliſhed a poſt, and lodged ourſelves, though very badly, as every ſhower of rain came in upon us, leaving our cavalry and Indian allies to ſecure our rear in Tacuba, from which place we were ſupplied with bread. From this time, as we advanced, we filled the water cuts which

which interſected the cauſeway, and proſtrated the houſes which were on each ſide of it; for it was exceeding difficult to ſet them on fire, nor could the flames communicate from one to another, on account of the water which was between them, and if we threw ourſelves into the water to ſwim to a houſe, the enemy deſtroyed us from their terraſſes. We guarded every paſs day and night as we gained it, and our method of keeping guard was as follows.

The company which was firſt for duty took it from ſun ſet to midnight with forty men; the ſecond company with the ſame number came on at midnight, and remained until two hours before day break, the firſt guard not quitting the poſt, but ſleeping on the ground; this ſecond guard watched the hours of lethargy, and after them came on the third company for the two hours until day, at which time, as thoſe who were relieved did not quit the poſt, there were an hundred and twenty men at the guard. Sometimes our whole detachment remained under arms during the night, for our priſoners had informed us that it was the intention of the Mexicans, by a great effort, to force our poſt, as they knew that by ſo doing they would entirely diſconcert the plans of the other two; and it was intended that the nine towns in and about the lake, including ours of Tacuba, together with Ezcapuzalco and Tenayuca, ſhould make a joint effort, and attack us in the rear while the Mexicans attacked us in front. It was at the ſame time intended to carry off our luggage and bakery in Tacuba. This intelligence we immediately communicated to our cavalry, warning them and our allies to be well on their guard.

As we had been informed, ſo it happened; we were attacked for ſeveral nights in ſucceſſion, from midnight to the break of day. The enemy ſometimes came on with great noiſe, at others ſtole upon us in ſilence, but during the night their attacks were never made with ſo much reſolution as in the day. We were however harraſſed to death with wounds, fatigues, wind, rain, and cold. The place where we were poſted was now mud and water, and our miſerable food of maize, and

herbs withall! but, as our officers ſaid, ſuch is the fortune of war! with all our ſufferings nothing effectual was gained: the parapets we threw down, or the ditches we filled up during the day, the enemy replaced in the enſuing night. What uſe was our cutting off their water, or cloſing their cauſeways againſt them, when they were ſupplied by canoes with whatever they wanted from the neighbouring towns on the lake? In order to prevent this, it was determined that two of our veſſels ſhould cruiſe during the night, to intercept them. This was found to anſwer in a conſiderable degree, but ſtill ſome eſcaped into the city.

The Mexicans had the boldneſs at this time to form a plan for the ſurpriſe of theſe veſſels. For this purpoſe they prepared thirty of their largeſt piraguas, and concealed them among reeds, ſending two or three canoes along the lake, as if conveying proviſions, by way of a bait for our veſſels. The Mexicans had alſo fixed piles of large timber below the water, in the direction which our ſhips were to be drawn in. The canoes being perceived by our people, two veſſels ſallied out upon them; the others appeared to take fright, and rowed towards the ambuſcade, followed by our veſſels, which as ſoon as they arrived near enough, were ſurrounded by the thirty piraguas. By the firſt diſcharge they wounded every officer, ſoldier, and rower, on board; and the veſſels could not ſtir on account of the piles of timber. The enemy continuing their attacks, killed a captain named Portilla; he was a gentleman who had ſerved in Italy. Captain Pedro Barba alſo of the croſsbowmen died of his wounds, and the veſſels fell into their hands. Theſe belonged to the principal diviſion, which Cortes commanded; he was much exaſperated, but in the courſe of a ſhort time repayed them well in their own way.

Cortes as alſo our other chiefs, by his order, purſued their plan of advancing againſt the city. As they gained ground, they threw down the houſes, and with the materials filled up the ditches or canals which croſſed the cauſeways; and our brave Tlaſcalan allies rendered us the greateſt ſervices, during the whole war. The Mexicans oppoſed our progreſs

progreſs by breaking a bridge in the rear of their parapets and barricades, where the water was very deep, leaving one obvious paſs as a decoy, and in other parts, pit falls under the water; they alſo made parapets on both ſides of the breach, they placed paliſades in the deep water where our veſſels could approach, and they had canoes manned ready to ſally out upon the ſignal given. When they had made theſe preparations they advanced againſt us in three bodies, one by the ſide of Tacuba, the other by the ruins of the houſes which had been deſtroyed, and the third by the cauſeway, where they had made the works. Alvarado had brought part of his cavalry to our poſt, ſince the houſes were deſtroyed. We repulſed the enemy on all ſides, and one party of us having forced them from the work I have mentioned, croſſed the water, up to our necks, at the paſs they had left open, and followed them, until we came to a place where were large temples and towers of idols. Here we were aſſailed by freſh troops from the houſes and roofs, and thoſe whom we purſued faced about and came againſt us. We were obliged to retreat, which we did with regularity, but when we came to the water, we found that the enemy in their canoes had got poſſeſſion of the paſs where we had croſſed. We were therefore obliged to look for other places, but as they came preſſing on us, we were at length compelled to throw ourſelves into the lake and get over as we could. Thoſe who were not able to ſwim fell into the pits; the enemy cloſed in upon them, wounded moſt, and took five of our ſoldiers alive. The veſſels which came to our relief could not approach, being embarraſſed among the paliſades, and here they loſt two ſoldiers. It was a wonder that we were not all deſtroyed in the pit falls; a number of the enemy laid hands on me, but our Lord Jeſus Chriſt gave me force to diſengage my arm, and by dint of a good ſword, I got free from them, though wounded, and arrived on the dry ground, where I fainted away, and remained ſenſeleſs for a time. This was owing to my great exertions, and loſs of blood. When this mob had their claws on me, I recommended myſelf to our Lord and his bleſſed mother, and they heard my prayer, glorified be they for all their mercies! one of our cavalry croſſed the water with us this day; he and his horſe were killed. Fortu-

nately, the reſt were with Alvarado in Tacuba; had they been with us they muſt have been all deſtroyed from the tops of the buildings, for the action took place as it were within the very city. After this ſucceſs the enemy kept us conſtantly employed during the day and night, by attacks upon our poſts. Cortes was much diſſatisfied at hearing of our defeat, which he conſidered as owing to our neglect of his directions that the cuts acroſs the cauſeways ſhould be filled with timber and ſods as we advanced.

In the ſpace of four days, and with the loſs of ſix ſoldiers, we completely filled up this great aperture, and here we eſtabliſhed our advanced poſt, the enemy having one oppoſite to us. Their method of keeping guard was this; they made a great fire in their front, which concealed them from our view, except when they came to renew the fire, as it was ſometimes extinguiſhed by the rains, which were at that ſeaſon frequent and heavy. They kept profound ſilence on guard, nor was it ever interrupted except by their ſignals, which were given by a whiſtle. Our ſhot did no execution among them, for they fortified their poſt by a parapet and a new ditch. Having deſcribed the manner in which guard was kept on each ſide, I will now give an account of our daily employment. In the morning we marched againſt the enemy; after engaging them during the whole day we retreated, towards evening, covered with wounds, firſt clearing the cauſeway of our allies whoſe numbers embarraſſed us, a circumſtance the enemy were watchful to take advantage of; after which we fell back ſtep by ſtep, firing at the enemy as they advanced, and being flanked by the armed veſſels, until we reached our poſt. When we arrived in our quarters we ſat down to our miſery of maize cakes, herbs, and tunas, curing our wounds with oil, and remaining all night ſubject to conſtant alarms.

The Mexicans took great alarm at hearing a ſailor whiſtle.

Cortes and his party were employed in the ſame manner, and his loſs in killed and wounded was by this time become very conſiderable. He conſtantly ſent out veſſels at night to ſcour the lake, and one night they brought in to him ſome priſoners of conſequence; from them he learned

learned that the enemy had formed an ambuſcade ſimilar to their former one, of forty piraguas and the ſame number of canoes. Cortes then prepared ſix veſſels, and ſent them during the night, and with muffled oars, to a place of concealment within a quarter of a leagues diſtance of that of the enemy. It muſt be obſerved that the buſhes and tall reeds, and the water cuts at the edges of the lake, favored thoſe deceptions. Early in the morning one of our veſſels was ſent as if in ſearch of the Mexican canoes which went with proviſions to the city, the priſoners being put on board it in order to point out the place where their flotilla was concealed. The enemy alſo played off the deception of loaded canoes to draw us thither, and theſe canoes pretending to endeavor to eſcape, rowed towards the ambuſcade laid by their party; our veſſel purſued them very near it, and then brought to, as if from apprehenſion. The enemy's flotilla perceiving that ſhe did not advance, ſallied out on her, thoſe on board of her rowing towards that part where our ſhips were concealed. When they found that the enemy were brought to that point where we wiſhed them to be, the crew fired two ſhots as a ſignal to our ambuſcade, immediately on which the veſſels puſhed out, and falling on the enemy ran down ſeveral, and diſperſed the reſt, making a number of priſoners. This gave them enough of ambuſcades, nor did they from that time run acroſs to Mexico ſo openly as before.

The people of the cities in the lake growing tired of this warfare, waited on Cortes at this time in order to make ſubmiſſion, declaring that they had been forced into hoſtility by the Mexicans. Cortes received them with affability, gave them aſſurances of protection according to their behaviour, and at the ſame time told them that he expected their aſſiſtance in the ſupply of boats and proviſions, and in erecting barracks for the troops. This they promiſed readily, but performed very badly. Cortes had huts built for his detachment, but the reſt remained expoſed to the weather, a very ſevere duty in itſelf in that climate, where during the months of June, July, and Auguſt, it rains continually.

The chief power of the Mexicans opposed the Spaniards was an allied nation to the South which threw a whole army into Mexico

main body of the allies were lodged at Cojohuacan 4 miles from c. — the cities now sent forth 3000 canoes. He formed them two flotillas of 1,500 each, which with the brigan

Our detachment perſevered in filling up every ditch and canal as we proceeded with the materials of the houſes which we deſtroyed; and conſtantly gained temples, bridges, or houſes which ſtood ſeparate from each other, and were acceſſible by draw-bridges only. To prevent jealouſy, the companies took the working and covering parties alternately, and towards evening, when we drew off, the whole ſtood to their arms, and retreated, ſending our Indian allies before us. The latter rendered us moſt important aſſiſtance in the working duty, both in pulling down the houſes, and filling the apertures. Sandoval during this time was obliged to ſuſtain conſtant attacks, and Cortes on his ſide attacked one of the out poſts of the city, where the canal which croſſed the cauſeway was too deep to be forded. The enemy had fortified it ſtrongly, and defended it both by land and water. Cortes commanded the attack in perſon, and with ſucceſs; but at night he was obliged to retire without filling the ditch, and with the loſs of four Spaniards killed and above thirty wounded, for the paſs was commanded from the terraces, and the palliſades made in the water prevented the approach of the veſſels.

Guatimotzin now determined to wear us out by continual efforts. Accordingly, on the twenty firſt of June, the anniverſary of the day of our entry into Mexico, the enemy attacked us at every point with their whole force by land and water, at the hour of the ſecond ſleep, or of lethargy, that is two hours before day. The number fit for duty at our poſt was one hundred and twenty; our allies we had ſent entirely off the cauſeway, and it was with our utmoſt efforts that we could reſiſt the enemy; we at length however repulſed them from all our poſts, but with the loſs of many killed and wounded. Alvarado's detachment loſt two ſoldiers on this occaſion. The enemies attacks were continued for two nights ſucceſſively upon the different poſts, and they afterwards concentrated their whole force in an aſſault upon ours, which took place at day break. This was the moſt deſperate of all; if our allies had been with us we ſhould have been loſt. Our cavalry on this occaſion ſaved our flanks, and we had conſiderable ſupport from our ſhips. Eight of our

our ſoldiers were killed in this attack, and Alvarado was wounded; but we ultimately beat the enemy off, and alſo made four of their chiefs priſoners. I fear to tire my readers with this repetition of battles. For ninety three days together were we employed in the ſiege of this great and ſtrong city, and every day and every night we were engaged with the enemy. Of courſe they muſt pardon what my duty as an hiſtorian compels me to relate; ſtill were I to extend my narrative to include every action which took place, it would be almoſt endleſs, and my hiſtory would reſemble that of Amadis, and the other books of chivalry.

Cortes growing weary of delay, called a council of war, relative to a general aſſault upon the city. His plan was, to march by the three cauſeways, and to endeavour to gain the great ſquare, where, uniting our whole force, we ſhould command all the ſtreets leading to it. Upon this propoſal there was a great difference of opinion, for many thought our preſent method of proceeding by filling the canals as we advanced, deſtroying the houſes, and making a road with the materials, was preferable to that recommended by Cortes, whereby, in going into the heart of the city, we ſhould become the beſieged inſtead of being the beſiegers, and fall exactly into the ſituation in which we were when obliged to fly from Mexico. We ſhould alſo they ſaid be involved in greater difficulties than formerly, for the enemy would now bring their whole power by land and water upon us, ſo that we ſhould have to contend with them in the city, on the lake, and all round it, without the poſſibility of retreat, which they could preclude by cutting the cauſeways. When Cortes had heard the opinions of all, and the good reaſons upon which they were founded, the reſult was, that he gave orders for our whole force, together with our allies, to attack the city on the enſuing day, and to get poſſeſſion of the great ſquare.

20th day of the Siege.

On the next morning therefore, having heard maſs, and recommending ourſelves to God, our three detachments marched againſt the enemy's poſts in their front. Thoſe commanded by Cortes and Sandoval

val met with leſs violent oppoſition than that which fell to the lot of the diviſion of Alvarado, to which I belonged. In our attack upon the firſt dike, moſt of the Spaniards received wounds, one was killed, and above one thouſand of our allies killed or wounded. Cortes at firſt bore down all before him, and having driven the enemy from a poſt where the water was very deep and the cauſeway very narrow, he was induced to purſue them in their retreat to the city, his Indian allies crouding cloſe after the Spaniards. The enemy induced him by frequent halts and feigned attacks to continue the purſuit, and the cauſeway had been narrowed, to anſwer their deſign. It was the will of our Lord that Cortes and his captains ſhould be ſo negligent as to omit filling the ditch, which they had paſſed. The cauſeway was alſo in ſome parts covered with water, and deep in mud. When the enemy ſaw our Cortes thus run into the trap which they had laid, multitudes in canoes ſallied out againſt him and took him on his flanks and rear, his own veſſels not being able to approach on account of the palliſadoes. It became now neceſſary for the troops to retreat, which they did at firſt with great regularity, but when they came to the narrow paſs I have before mentioned, the difficulty of the ground, with the fury of the attack, from a retreat turned it into a race, our people flying before the enemy without attempting to defend themſelves. Our Cortes uſed every exertion to rally them but in vain; he received a wound in the leg from the enemy on board the canoes at the paſs, where they killed ſix of our horſes, and carried off ſeventy two Spaniards alive. Six chiefs ſeized upon Cortes, but it was the will of God that he ſhould eſcape, for that valiant ſoldier Chriſtoval de Olea, ſeeing his general's danger, flew to his aſſiſtance, as did another brave man named Lerma. Olea with his own hand killed four of the ſix Mexican chiefs, gallantly loſing his own life in defence of his general, and Lerma eſcaped with the greateſt difficulty. Other ſoldiers now arrived to the aſſiſtance of our Cortes; amongſt the number was Quinones captain of his guards. They took him out of the water in their arms, and placing him on a horſe, hurried him off from the crowd of enemies, and ſhortly after, his major domo named Chriſtoval de Guzman brought one of his own horſes for him. The

also Prince Xotlic Cochitl. and a Tlascallan by some said to have been unknown by others to have been named Tenabatzin

enemy

when the ~~fortress~~ temple of Chillambrum in the East Indies was stormed, the priests and women of it, collected on the summit sang hymns which inspired those who defended it with frantic courage.

enemy followed up their attack with ardour, and the unfortunate Guzman being ſeized by them was carried alive to Mexico. Cortes and the ſhattered remains of his troops, purſued to the laſt, arrived with great difficulty at their quarters, where I will leave them for the preſent, to relate what happened in the diviſion commanded by Alvarado.

After our firſt attack, wherein we defeated the enemy, as we were advancing, we were met by freſh troops in great parade, bearing plumes of feathers, and devices on their ſtandards. When we came near them they threw down before us five bleeding heads, crying out to us that they were thoſe of Cortes and his officers, and that we ſhould meet the ſame fate with our companions; they then marched up, and fighting us foot to foot, compelled us to retreat. We as uſual called to our allies to clear the way for us, but in the preſent caſe there was no occaſion; the ſight of the bloody heads had done it effectually, nor did one of them remain on the cauſeway to impede our retreat. Before we arrived at our quarters, and while the enemy were purſuing us, we heard their ſhrill timbals, and the diſmal ſound of the great drum, from the top of the principal temple of the god of war, which overlooked the whole city. Its mournful noiſe was ſuch as may be imagined the muſic of the infernal gods, and it might be heard at the diſtance of almoſt three leagues. They were then ſacrificing the hearts of ten of our companions to their idols. Shortly after this the king of Mexico's horn was blown, giving notice to his captains that they were then to take their enemies priſoners, or die in the attempt. It is impoſſible to deſcribe the fury with which they cloſed upon us when they heard this ſignal. Though all is as perfect to my recollection as if paſſing before my eyes, it is utterly beyond my power to deſcribe; all I can ſay is, it was God's will that we ſhould eſcape from their hands, and get back in ſafety to our poſt. Praiſed be he for his mercies, now, and at all other times!

Our cavalry made ſeveral charges this day, but our great ſupport was in two guns which raked the cauſeway, and were commanded by a gentleman named Pedro Moreno de Medrano, who always bore a

high reputation as an officer, but whoſe ſervices on this day were moſt important, for the whole cauſeway was crouded with the enemy. We were as yet ignorant of the fate of our other detachments. Sandoval was above half a league diſtant, and Cortes ſtill farther. The melancholy ſight of the remains of our countrymen, and the loſs of one of our veſſels, three of the ſoldiers of which the enemy had killed, impreſſed our minds with deſpair, and we thought this the laſt hour of our lives. The veſſel was afterwards recovered by that commanded by Captain Juan Xaramillo. Captain Juan de Limpias Caravajal, who now lives in La Puebla, a moſt gallant officer, had the honor of being the firſt who with his veſſel broke through the enemies palliſades, totally loſing his hearing, from this day, by exceſs of courage.

Cortes, moſt of whoſe ſoldiers had been killed, and what remained alive, wounded, was attacked in his quarters by a great body of the enemy, who threw over to him the heads of four of our companions, alledging them to be thoſe of Alvarado, Sandoval, and others, in order to impreſs the ſoldiers of Cortes and our allies with the idea, that they had been equally ſucceſsful againſt the other detachments. When Cortes beheld the horrid ſpectacle his heart ſunk within him, but he kept up appearances, and ordering all to ſtand to their arms, made a front to the enemy. He then ſent Andres de Tapia with three more mounted men to our quarters, in order to aſcertain what the ſtate of affairs was. In their way thither they were attacked by many bodies of the enemy, whom the king of Mexico had placed upon a plan of intercepting our communications. On their arrival they found us engaged with the Mexican forces. They at that time concealed the loſs of Cortes, ſtating it at no more than five and twenty.

It is now neceſſary to advert to Sandoval, who had gone on victorious until the defeat of Cortes; after which the enemy turned on him, and in their firſt attack killed two ſoldiers and wounded all the reſt, giving Sandoval himſelf three wounds, one of which was in the head. As they had done elſewhere, they threw before his troops ſix heads of their

their companions, recently taken off, threatening them with the like fate. Sandoval was not to be terrified; he warned his ſoldiers to preſerve a good countenance, and ſeeing no hopes of ſucceſs brought his diviſion back to their quarters, with many wounds it is true, but with the loſs of only two of their number. Sandoval then, wounded as he was, leaving the command of his poſt to Captain Luis Marin, ſet out on horſeback to have an interview with Cortes. As he went he was aſſailed by the enemy, but he arrived at the general's quarters, and addreſſing him in terms of ſurpriſe and condolance, aſked him how this ill ſucceſs had happened. "Son Sandoval" ſaid Cortes, with tears in his eyes, "it is for my ſins that this misfortune has befallen me; but "the fault is with the treaſurer Alderete, who was ordered by me to "fill up the bad paſs where the enemy threw us into confuſion." The treaſurer then exclaimed, that it was with Cortes himſelf the fault lay, he having never given any ſuch orders, but hurrying on his men after the enemy in their feigned retreat, crying, "forward! gentlemen for-"ward!" Cortes was alſo very much blamed for not having ſent his allies out of the way early enough; however I will omit to detail any more of the converſation which paſſed at this time between Cortes and the treaſurer, as it happened in the heat of anger and diſappointment. Cortes was agreeably ſurpriſed by the arrival of two of his veſſels which he had given up for loſt, although he did not expreſs himſelf ſo. Cortes deſired Sandoval to go to our quarters at Tacuba, as he apprehended that the weight of the enemy's attack would fall upon this poſt, and recommended that he ſhould pay attention to our affairs, as he himſelf was at preſent unable to do ſo. Sandoval ſetting out, arrived at Tacuba about the hour of veſpers. He alſo found us as Tapia had done, occupied in repelling the enemy, ſome of whom were attacking us by the cauſeway, others by that of the ruined houſes. I was at this time together with others of our ſoldiers up to my waiſt in the water defending a veſſel which was aground, and engaged with the enemy who were endeavouring to get poſſeſſion of her. Juſt as Sandoval arrived however, by a great effort we got the veſſel afloat, but with the loſs of two of the crew killed, and every man on board wounded. The enemy

now attacked us with more violence. Sandoval received a blow on the face with a ſtone, and called to us loudly to retreat; we not falling back as faſt as he wiſhed, he called again to us, aſking if we wanted to have all the cavalry deſtroyed. We then retreated until we reached our poſt, during the time of which, our two guns, under the direction of Medrano, though they frequently ſwept the cauſeway, could not prevent the enemy from following us cloſely.

Here we were for a time at reſt, and engaged in relating the events which had happened at each poſt, when on a ſudden our ears were ſtruck by the horrific ſound of the great drum, the timbals, horns, and trumpets, in the temple of the war god. We all directed our eyes thither, and ſhocking to relate! ſaw our unfortunate countrymen driven by force, cuffs, and baſtinades, to the place where they were to be ſacrificed, which bloody ceremony was accompanied by the mournful ſound of all the inſtruments of the temple. We perceived that when they had brought the unfortunate victims to the flat ſummit of the body of the temple, where were the adoratories, they put plumes upon their heads, and with a kind of fan in the hand of each, made them dance before their accurſed idols. When they had done this, they laid them upon their backs, on the ſtone uſed for the purpoſe, where they cut out their hearts, alive, and having preſented them, yet palpitating, to their gods, they drew the bodies down the ſteps by the feet, where they were taken by others of their prieſts. Let the reader think what were our ſenſations on this occaſion. Oh heavenly God! ſaid we to ourſelves, do not ſuffer us to be ſacrificed by theſe wretches! do not ſuffer us to die ſo cruel a death! and then how ſhocking a reflection, that we were unable to relieve our poor friends who were thus murdered before our eyes! at this moment the enemy aſſailed our poſt in great force, reviling us and ſaying their gods had promiſed us all to them. Our Indian allies ſunk under the dreadful ideas they expreſſed, when they threw among them alſo ſome of the mangled remains of their horrid feaſts, other parts being ſent round all the neighbouring diſtricts, as a triumphant memorial.

ow the modern Savage Chilians have an opportunity to way-lay a Spaniard they
in open under the ribs and tear out the heart. – the knife used for the purpose has
edge on the convex side of the blade. The Kootkow of Chinese knife is of the same
m. v. Grosvier. as was the ancient Thessalian. v. Roberts's paintings.

The people of Cochin in China eat their war prisoners until the Dutch purchased
, and the Japanese did the same. The Andamanese and Sumatrans eat their
war prisoners, and criminals, women convicted of adultery, are devoured on the spot of
sement. Human flesh has been publicly sold in the Market of Hue Foo, the
tal of Ko-tchin China the people of which are descendants of Chinese invaders
Aborigines being blacks now driven to the mountains – vast works of un-
rchable antiquity exist in this Country. In the wars of China prisoners were de-
ured on each side. The Finns of the north considered the Gothic invaders as canni-
Thibet owns the entire site of this practice. In Marco Polo's time the priests of
ibet were Astrologers, legislators and executioners, every crime was pun-
with death and the criminals devoured by the judges and execu-
rs upon the Spot. The Appalachian Indians when they killed

morial. We ſtill however maintained poſſeſſion of our poſt, one half of our cavalry being on the cauſeway and the other half in the town.

Our new allies on the lake had ſuffered conſiderably by the enemy, having loſt half their canoes, but they continued firm to us, from animoſity to them, or contented themſelves with being mere lookers on, and did not moleſt us. Cortes in conſequence of our loſſes ordered a ceſſation of attacks, which laſted for the ſpace of four days, during which we did not quit our poſts, having loſt near eighty men, and ſeven horſes, in the laſt engagement. The enemy alſo gained ground on us, and made new ditches and water cuts, but we had a very deep and defenſible one in front of our quarters. Sandoval and Tapia on their return to the general, reported to him the valiant manner in which our ſoldiers were behaving when they arrived at our poſt; Sandoval alſo mentioned me particularly, and ſaid thoſe things in my commendation, which, excluſive of the facts being known to our whole army, would not be proper to repeat of myſelf.

During this ceſſation, our whole force of infantry kept guard on the cauſeway at night, flanked by the brigantines, one half of the cavalry patroling in Tacuba, the other half on the cauſeway. In the morning we prepared to receive the enemy, who every day continued ſacrificing our poor companions, and when they attacked, reviled us ſaying, that our fleſh was too bitter to be eaten, and truly it ſeems that ſuch a miracle was wrought. For five days together the enemy continued their aſſaults, being promiſed, as they ſaid, our deſtruction, by their gods, within the ſpace of eight days; but their gods as it appears to me, were perverſe and treacherous to them, not permitting them to think of peace, and thus leading them to ruin. This language however, and the laſt menace in particular, had ſuch an effect upon our allies, together with the bad appearance of our affairs, that they almoſt entirely deſerted us in the courſe of a night. The only one who remained with Cortes, was, Suchel, otherwiſe Don Carlos, brother of Fernando lord of Tezcuco. He was a man of great bravery. His friends who ſtaid

Prince Ixtlilxochitle

elsewhere. He was in hostility with Montezuma by reason of his family and as the head of an independent Army whom first marched to Pescio - and he had an interview with Cortes at, or near Tezcuco

by him amounted to about forty. With Sandoval remained the chief of Guaxocingo, with about fifty, and in ours the brave Chichimecatecle, the two ſons of our friend D. Lorenzo de Vargas, and about eighty Tlaſcalans. Being queſtioned as to the flight of their countrymen they ſaid, that the gods of the Mexicans had predicted our deſtruction; that they ſaw us all wounded, and many killed, that their own loſs was above one thouſand two hundred killed, and that the younger Xicotenga had from the firſt foretold that we ſhould be all put to death; and therefore, conſidering us as loſt, their countrymen had quitted us. Cortes though he thought what they ſaid much too true, put on a chearful appearance, ridiculed the predictions of the enemy, and aſſured them that all would do well. He thereby was fortunate enough to induce the few who yet remained to ſtay with us to the laſt. The Indian Don Carlos, a brave and wiſe man now repreſented to Cortes the erroneous ſyſtem on which he had acted, and alſo that which the ſituation of the enemy pointed out, adviſing him not to ſuffer his troops to fight. "Cut "off" ſaid he "their proviſions and water; there are in Mexico ſo ma- "ny Xiquipils of warriors, how can they ſubſiſt? their proviſions muſt "at ſome time be expended, the water which they get from the wells "is ſalt, and they have no reſource but from the frequent rains; fight "them by hunger and thirſt, and do not throw away your own force." Cortes embraced D. Carlos for his advice; not that the ſame had not occurred to many of us before, but we were too impatient.

Cortes began upon his new ſyſtem, by ſending orders to all the detachments to remain in their quarters for the next three days. As the enemy were ſo ſtrong upon the lake, we always ſent out two veſſels in company; they had now acquired the method of breaking through the palliſadoes by the force of oars and ſails, when there was a good wind. Thus we were maſters of the lake, and alſo of all the houſes which were at any little diſtance from the city. This ſlackened the triumphs of the Mexicans. As our veſſels broke through the enemy's palliſadoes, they could flank us while we carried on our work, filling the

the ditches in our front. This we effected at all our poſts in the ſpace of four days, Cortes himſelf carrying the beams and earth.

During each night of this period the enemy continued beating their accurſed drum in the great temple; nothing can equal the diſmal impreſſion its ſound conveyed. They were then in the execution of their infernal ceremonies; the whole place was illuminated, and their ſhrieks at certain intervals pierced the air. For ten nights together were they thus employed in putting to death our unfortunate companions; Chriſtoval de Guzman was the laſt ſacrificed; he was in their hands eighteen days; this we were informed by ſome of our priſoners, and for every ſacrifice, we were told that their war god renewed to them the promiſe of victory. The enemy at times during the foregoing period brought our own croſsbows againſt us, and made the unfortunate priſoners ſhoot them; but our poſt derived its ſafety from the excellent management of the two guns under P. M. Medrano, and we ſtill advanced, gaining every day a bridge or a parapet. Our veſſels alſo continually intercepted their canoes loaded with proviſion and water, alſo thoſe which were employed in procuring that nutritive ſubſtance which when dry reſembles cheeſe, and is found at the bottom of the lake. In this manner of proceeding twelve or thirteen days had now paſſed, our lives therefore exceeded the date allowed them by the prediction of the Mexican prieſts. This gave our allies courage, and in compliance with the requiſition of our ſteady friend Suchel, two thouſand warriors from Tezcuco returned to us. There came with them Captain Pedro Sanchez Farfan, and Anthonio de Villaroel, afterwards married to La Ojeda, who had been left behind in Tezcuco. Many bodies alſo of our Tlaſcalan and other allies arrived about the ſame time. Cortes having ſummoned their chiefs, made them a ſpeech, partly of reprimand and partly of hopes and promiſes, concluding it with an admonition to them not to put to death any of the Mexicans, as it was his wiſh to negociate for peace.

The heavy rains at this ſeaſon of the year were much in our favor, the enemy always relaxing in their exertions when they came on. We had

had now advanced conſiderably into the city at each of the three attacks; we had alſo reached the fountains of brackiſh water, which we totally deſtroyed, and the cavalry could act through the whole ſpace which we had gained, as it was our care to make it level for them.

Our general thought the preſent a good juncture to offer peace to the Mexicans; he therefore propoſed to three of his principal priſoners to go with his meſſage to their king, Guatimotzin, but they declined it, alledging that he would certainly put them to death. At length however he prevailed with them to carry his propoſal, which was to this purport. That from the affection he bore to all the family of the great Montezuma, in order alſo to prevent the deſtruction of that great city, and the loſs of lives, he was willing to treat of peace, calling to the recollection of Guatimotzin, that his troops and people were cut off from proviſions and water, and that all thoſe nations which had formerly been the vaſſals of Mexico were now the allies of the Spaniards; with many more ſtrong arguments to the ſame purpoſe, which the embaſſadors very well underſtood. Previous to their going they deſired that the general would provide them with a letter, under which authority they waited on the monarch, ſobbing and wailing bitterly, as knowing the danger which attended their buſineſs. At firſt Guatimotzin and his chiefs appeared enraged, but the moderation of his diſpoſition prevailed, and he reſolved to call a council compoſed of the princes, chiefs, and prieſts of the city. Guatimotzin opened the buſineſs by expreſſing his own inclination to come into terms, expoſing the inefficacy of their reſiſtance, the deſertion of their allies, and the diſtreſſes of the people. The prieſts took the oppoſite opinion. They repreſented the conduct of the Spaniards from the firſt, their treatment of his uncle the great Montezuma, of Cacamatzin, and of various other princes as ſoon as they had got them in their power; alſo the death of the two ſons of Montezuma, which they laid to their charge, the deſtruction and waſte of the wealth of Mexico, and the marks of ſlavery with which they had branded other nations. They reminded him of his own martial fame and conduct, of the inſidiouſneſs of Cortes and his offers, and the promiſes

Andrez de Tapia, marched two days after the defeat of the Spaniards with 60 horse 200 Spanish infantry & a body of allies to support the Quauhnahuac Nation against the Cohuixcas & Malinalchcas. Which latter nations he defeated & returned in ten days.

Sandoval went to support the Otomi, at their solicitation against the Matlatzincas who had assembled in arms to support the Mexicans & attack the Spaniards, 14 days after the defeat of Cortes he marched to the Valley of Tolloca with 40 horse, 100 Spanish infantry & 60,000 allies. He defeated the Matlatzincas and they, the Malinalquecas & Cohuixcas nations entered into the confederation against Mexico

promiſes of victory they had obtained from their gods. Guatimotzin then expreſſed his determination to fight to the laſt man and gave orders to ſpare the proviſions as much as poſſible, to ſink wells in various places, and to endeavour to obtain ſupplies by night.

Our army remained at their poſts for two days quietly, expecting the anſwer from Mexico. We were then attacked at all points by great bodies of the enemy, who fell on us like lions, cloſing upon and endeavouring to ſeize us in their hands, whenever the horn of Guatimotzin was ſounded. For ſeven days were we thus engaged, watching in a body during the night, at day break going into action, fighting during the day, and in the evening retiring to conſole ourſelves with our miſery of maize cakes, agi or pepper, tunas, and herbs. Our offer of peace only ſerved for new matter for the enemy to revile us on, reproaching us as cowards, and ſaying, that peace was for women and arms for men.

It has been mentioned that the wretched remains of our countrymen were ſent round to different provinces, to ſummon and encourage them to come to the aid of the Mexicans. In conſequence, a force aſſembled from Matalzingo, Malinalco, and other places at the diſtance of eight leagues from Mexico, to fall on our rear, while the enemy from the city attacked us in front. When they had aſſembled as above mentioned, they began to commit outrages upon the country between them and us, ſeizing the children in order to ſacrifice. Complaints of this coming to Cortes, he detached Andres de Tapia with twenty cavalry and one hundred infantry againſt the enemy. This officer executed his miſſion completely, driving them back to their own country with loſs.

Cortes then ſent Sandoval to aſſiſt the people of the diſtrict called by us Cuernabaca, who were attacked in the ſame manner. There is much to ſay in reſpect to this expedition; too much indeed to be able to do juſtice to it without going into the details; ſuffice it that it was

more peaceable than warlike, and of the happieſt effect for us, Sandoval returning accompanied by two chiefs of the nation he had marched againſt. His return was very ſudden, in order to protect our poſts, which were in a moſt perilous way; for this draft had diſmantled them, as he had with him every man really fit for duty, being twenty cavalry and eighty infantry. However he by his expedition ſaved both our allies and us.

Cortes now again ſent an embaſſy to Guatimotzin, ſaying he had his Monarch's orders to ſave if poſſible that fine city; he reminded Guatimotzin of the diſtreſs of the wretched people, and to convince him that he had no hope from his allies, he ſent the meſſage by the two chiefs who accompanied Sandoval. The Mexican monarch returned no anſwer, except ordering the ambaſſadors immediately to quit the city. The enemy now increaſed every day the fury of their attacks; their expreſſions were, "Tenitoz re de Caſtilla! Tenitoz Axaca?" which means, "what ſays the king of Caſtille? what does he now?" We ſtill continued advancing towards the heart of the city, and obſerved that notwithſtanding the rage with which they aſſailed us, for it ſeemed as if they wiſhed to meet their deaths, there was not ſo much movement among them as formerly, nor did they ſo buſily employ themſelves in opening the ditches. We alſo had cauſe for reflection of a leſs pleaſant nature which was, that our powder was almoſt reduced to nothing. At this moment moſt fortunately, arrived at the port of Villa Rica, a veſſel with ſoldiers and ordnance ſtores, one of an armament fitted out by the Licentiate Lucas Vaſquez de Aillon, which had been deſtroyed or diſperſed near the Iſlands of Florida. The relief and reinforcement were immediately forwarded to Cortes, by his lieutenant, Rangel. It was now determined by Cortes and all the army to puſh for the great place or Taltelulco of the city, on account of the principal temples and ſtrong buildings being there. Each of our detachments therefore advanced for the purpoſe. Cortes got poſſeſſion of a ſmall ſquare at which were ſome temples; in thoſe temples were beams whereon were placed the heads of many of our ſoldiers; their hair and beards had much grown;

July 24.

They told the Spaniards they should rebuild their houses with "Lazos" — are these lazos? is it a contraction of lezadas? snares, round their doors doors. &c. They were probably, or they were accustomed to ornaments of snakes as was the case of the battlements of the ple. they caused a snake twining through every aperture of house & finishing by taking his tail in his mouth. these probably the "lazos" of the author. the temple had casacades of ses of black jasper in its galleries.

The making piles of Skulls is an ancient Mogul custom. also. see Rodri on. the Persian usurper's life & Thevenay's travels.

Mexico. Huitzumpan. Golgotha. outside the wall of the great temple & opposite incipal gate. an oblong pyramid of earth, 15 feet long, flat top, ascent by 30 the top were seventy beams or more. 4 feet asunder with holes bored in them, in Sticks were run, and skewered a certain number of Skulls by the temples — top. Sticks & Skull was on each stick. & at each end of the edifice a tower made is & mortar only. the ordinary Skulls were bare, those of more importance were th hair & beard — the total of Skulls amounted to 136,000, by account

Andres de Tapia. V. Sahagun's account in Torquemada and extent of the Jo
V. Gomara. buildings within the great temple by Humboldt
~~Andres de Tapia~~ in Kiesenberg.

grown; I could not have believed it had I not ſeen it with my own eyes in three days after, when our party had advanced near enough to get a view of them, after having filled two canals. I recogniſed the features of three of our friends, and the tears came into my eyes at the ſight. In twelve days they were all buried by us in that which is now named the church of the martyrs.

The detachment of Alvarado continued to advance, and after an engagement of two hours forced the enemy from their barricades in the great ſquare. The cavalry now rendered good ſervice in the open ſpace, and the enemy were driven before us into the temple of the war god. Alvarado divided his forces into three bodies, and while he occupied the attention of the enemy with two, he ordered the third, commanded by Gutierre de Badajoz, to drive them from, and take poſſeſſion of the great temple. The enemy, headed by their prieſts, occupied the adoratories or ſanctuaries of their idols, and repulſed our troops, driving them down the ſteps; which being obſerved by Alvarado, he then ſent us to ſupport them, and on our arrival, having aſcended to the top, we completely drove the enemy from that poſt; having done which, we ſet fire to the images of their falſe gods, and planted our ſtandard on the ſummit of the temple. The view of this ſignal of victory rejoiced Cortes, who would fain have joined us, but he had it not in his power. He was then diſtant a quarter of a league, and had many ditches to fill as he advanced. In four days from this time, both he and Sandoval had worked their way to us, and the communications to the three poſts were opened through the centre of the city of Mexico. This attack upon the temple was truly perilous; the edifice was very lofty, and the enemy numerous; and they continued to engage us on the flat ground at the ſummit, from the time that we had ſet fire to the idols and their adoratories, until night. The royal palaces were now levelled to the ground, Guatimotzin and his troops having retired to a quarter of the city more diſtant from the centre, and towards the lake.

Still they attacked us in the day, and at night purſued us to our

quarters, and thus time paſſed over, and no propoſition was made concerning peace. Our chiefs then propoſed a plan of laying ambuſcades. Thirty cavalry and one hundred infantry of the prime of our army, together with one thouſand Tlaſcalans were poſted in concealment, in ſome large houſes which had belonged to a nobleman of the city. This was done during the night. Cortes with the reſt of his troops, in the morning went to attack a poſt at a bridge, which Guatimotzin had ordered to be ſupported by a large force. Cortes after his firſt attack retreated, drawing the enemy after him, by the buildings where the troops were placed in concealment. At the proper moment he fired two ſhots cloſe together as a ſignal to us; we ſallied out, and the enemy being encloſed between us, our allies, and the party of Cortes which faced about, a dreadful havoc was made of them, and from that time they no more annoyed us in our retreat. Another trap was alſo laid for them by Alvarado, but not with the ſame ſucceſs; I was not preſent at it, being ordered by Cortes to do duty for that time with his party.

From our quarters we had to march above half a league to meet the enemy; we now therefore quitted that poſt altogether, and lodged ourſelves in the great ſquare or Taltelulco. Here we were for three days without doing any thing worth mentioning: we alſo abſtained from deſtroying any more of the city, in the hopes of peace.

Cortes at this time ſent to Guatimotzin requeſting him to ſurrender, under the ſtrongeſt aſſurances of enjoying the plentitude of power and honors. He accompanied this embaſſy with as handſome a preſent as his ſituation permitted, of proviſions, bread, fowls, fruit, and game. Guatimotzin as he was adviſed to do by thoſe whom he conſulted, diſſimulated, and ſeemed inclined to a pacification. He ſent four of his principal nobility, with a promiſe to come to an interview with Cortes in three days. But this was all feigned; he employed the time in fortifying his quarter of the town, and making preparations to attack us. He alſo endeavoured to amuſe us by a ſecond embaſſy, but we were now adviſed of his ſchemes. In fact, from what he was told by thoſe about

about him, and from the example of his uncle Montezuma, he was afraid to truſt himſelf in our hands. But the maſk was ſoon thrown off; we were attacked by great bodies of the enemy, with ſuch violence that it appeared as if all was beginning anew. Having been rather taken by ſurpriſe, they did us at firſt ſome miſchief, killed one ſoldier, and two horſes; but in the end we ſent them back with very little to boaſt of. Cortes ordered his troops now to proceed againſt that part of the city where the quarters of Guatimotzin were; accordingly we began upon our former ſyſtem, and gained ground as we had before done elſewhere. When the king perceived this, he deſired an interview with Cortes, on the ſide of a large canal which was to ſeparate them. To this Cortes readily aſſented, and it was to take place on the enſuing morning. Cortes attended, but Guatimotzin never appeared; inſtead of which he ſent ſeveral of his principal nobility, who ſaid that the king did not think proper to come, from an apprehenſion that we might ſhoot him during the parley. Cortes then engaged by the moſt ſolemn oaths not to do him any injury whatever, but it was of no effect. A ridiculous farce was played here: two of the nobility who attended on the part of Guatimotzin, took out of a ſack, bread, a fowl, and cherries, which they began to eat, in order to impreſs the Spaniards with an idea that they were not in want. Cortes ſeeing the manner in which he was treated, ſent back an hoſtile meſſage and retired; after this we were left unmoleſted for the ſpace of four or five days. During this time numbers of wretched Indians, reduced by famine, ſurrounded our quarters every night. Cortes pitied their miſerable ſituation, and hoping that it might induce the enemy to come into terms of accommodation, ordered the ceſſation of hoſtilities to be ſtrictly adhered to; but no overture of the kind was made.

40,000 Mexicans killed.

the Chiacatt & a ſolemn deputation.

30,000 Mexicans died of famine ſorty.

There was in the army of Cortes a ſoldier who boaſted of having ſerved in Italy, and of the great battles which he had ſeen there. His name was Sotelo, and he was a native of Seville. This man was eternally talking of the wonderful military machines which he knew the art of conſtructing, and how he could make a ſtone engine which ſhould

ſhould in two days deſtroy that whole quarter of the city where Guatimotzin had retreated. He told Cortes ſo many fine things of this kind, that he perſuaded him into a trial of his experiments, lime, ſtone, and timber being brought, according to his deſire; the carpenters were alſo ſet to work, two ſtrong cables were made, and ſtones the ſize of a buſhel were prepared. The machinery was now all ready, the ſtone which was to be ejected was put in its place, and the whole apparatus was played off* againſt the quarters of Guatimotzin. But behold! inſtead of taking that direction, the ſtone flew up vertically into the air, and returned exactly into the place from whence it had been launched. Cortes was enraged and aſhamed: he reproached the ſoldier, and ordered the machinery to be taken down; but ſtill it continued the joke of the army.

Cortes now gave orders to Sandoval, to go with the flotilla againſt that part or nook of the city whither Guatimotzin had retired, cautioning him at the ſame time not to kill or injure any Mexican, unleſs he was attacked, nor even then to do more than was abſolutely neceſſary for his own defence; but to level all the houſes, and the many advanced works which the enemy had made in the lake. Cortes aſcended then into the great temple, with ſeveral of his officers and ſoldiers, to obſerve the movements of his fleet. When Sandoval approached the quarters of Guatimotzin, that prince, who had great apprehenſions of being made priſoner, availed himſelf of the preparations which he had made for his eſcape, and embarking himſelf, his family, his courtiers, and officers, with their moſt valuable effects, on board fifty large piraguas, the whole body ſet off for the main land, as did all his nobility and chiefs in various directions. Sandoval who was at this time occupied in making his way by tearing down the houſes, received immediate notice of the flight of Guatimotzin. He inſtantly ſet out in the purſuit, giving ſtrict orders that no injury or inſult ſhould be offered, but that each ſhould keep a ſteady eye upon the royal veſſel, and do his utmoſt to get poſſeſſion of it. He particularly directed however Garci Holguin, his intimate friend, and captain of the quickeſt ſailer of the fleet, to make

* From the platform of a theatre.

If this was the one in Tlaltelolco Cortes describes it as built of Stone & Lime. 13 feet high & 30 paces diameter.
V. Acosta. Hist. Nat. & Mor. de las Indias

like all the natives of America
aqueas. The Iroquois were ignorant of the use of the sail. a proof
of migration from an inland country. - that the Hindoos were
navigators is proved by their ancient laws relative to the in-
of money in ventures at Sea. S. W. J. V. 1. p. 32.

From . .
HODGSON & CO., Auctioneers of Literary Property,
115, Chancery Lane, London, W.C.

A. C. Giles Esqr.,
Topsham,
S. Devon.

make for that part of the ſhore whither Guatimotzin was moſt likely to go. Accordingly this officer followed his inſtructions, and falling in with the veſſels, from certain particulars in its appearance, ſtructure, and awning, he aſcertained that which the king was on board of. He made ſigns to the people in it to bring to, but without effect; he then ordered his croſsbow-men and muſqueteers to preſent, upon which Guatimotzin called out to them not to ſhoot, and approaching the veſſel, acknowledged himſelf for what he was, declaring his readineſs to ſubmit, and go with them to their general, but requeſting that his queen, his children, and attendants ſhould be ſuffered to remain unmoleſted. Holguin received him with the greateſt reſpect, together with his queen, and twenty of his nobility. He ſeated them on the poop of his ſhip, and provided refreſhments for them, commanding, that the piraguas which carried the kings effects, ſhould follow untouched.

Sandoval at this moment made a ſignal for the flotilla to cloſe up to him, and perceived that Guatimotzin was priſoner to Holguin, who was taking him to Cortes, Upon this he ordered his rowers to exert their utmoſt to bring him up to Holguin's veſſel, and having arrived by the ſide of it, he demanded Guatimotzin to be delivered to him as general of the whole force; but Holguin refuſed, alledging that he had no claim whatever. A veſſel which went to carry the intelligence of the great event, brought alſo to Cortes who was then on the ſummit of the great temple in the Taltelulco, very near the part of the lake where Guatimotzin was captured, an account of the diſpute between his officers. Cortes inſtantly diſpatched Captain Luis Marin and Franciſco de Lugo, to bring the whole party together to his quarters, and thus to ſtop all litigation; but he enjoined them not to omit treating Guatimotzin and his queen with the greateſt reſpect. During the interval, he employed himſelf in arranging a ſtate, as well as he could, with cloths and mantles. He alſo prepared a table with refreſhments, to receive his priſoners. As ſoon as they appeared, he went forward to meet them, and embracing Guatimotzin, treated him and all his attendants with every mark of reſpect. The unfortunate monarch, with tears in his eyes, and

on the terrace of a house in Taltelolco

and ſinking under affliction, then addreſſed him in the following words. "Malintzin! I have done that which was my duty in the de- "fence of my kingdom and people; my efforts have failed, and being "now brought by force a priſoner in your hands, draw that poinard "from your ſide, and ſtab me to the heart." Cortes embraced, and uſed every expreſſion to comfort him, by aſſurances that he held him in high eſtimation for the valour and firmneſs he had ſhewn, and that he had required a ſubmiſſion from him and the people at the time that they could no longer reaſonably hope for ſucceſs, in order to prevent further deſtruction; but that was all paſt, and no more to be thought of; he ſhould continue to reign over the people, as he had done before. Cortes then enquired after his queen, to which Guatimotzin replied, that in conſequence of the compliance of Sandoval with his requeſt, ſhe and her women remained in the piraguas, until Cortes ſhould decide as to their fate. The general then cauſed them to be ſent for, and treated them in the beſt manner his ſituation afforded. The evening was drawing on, and it appeared likely to rain; he therefore ſent the whole royal family to Cuyoacan, under the care of Sandoval. The reſt of the troops then returned to their former quarters; we to ours of Tacuba, and Cortes, proceeding to Cuyoacan, took the command there, ſending Sandoval to reſume his ſtation at Tepeaquilla. Thus was the ſiege of Mexico brought to a concluſion by the capture of Guatimotzin and his chiefs, on the thirteenth of Auguſt, at the hour of veſpers, being the day of St. Hyppolitus, in the year of our Lord one thouſand five hundred and twenty one. Glorified be our Lord Jeſus Chriſt, and our lady the Holy Virgin Mary his bleſſed mother, amen!

In the night after Guatimotzin was made priſoner, there was the greateſt tempeſt of rain, thunder, and lightening, eſpecially about midnight, that ever was known; but all the ſoldiers were as deaf as if they had been for an hour in a ſteeple, with the bells ringing about their ears. This was owing to the continual noiſe of the enemy for ninety three days; ſome preparing their troops and bringing them on, ſhouting, calling, and whiſtling, as ſignals to attack us on the cauſeway; others

Ao. 1555.

Thomson, John Field, Ralph Force Leonard Chilton, in a Ship of John Sweeting dwelling at Sailed to Newf.d and the Seas

35. Thomas Blake a Scotsman must no have been there at the Conquest as he was found there & the people, & had dwelt there above 20 years.

Robert Thompson married a rich Spanish Ladies, after being ransomed all he. v. Hakluyt

64. Roger Bodenham's voyage. H.

8. John Chilton Do. Do.
Henry Hawkes Do.

7. Hawkins's voyage — 114. men left on Shore in distress. three lost, Miles Philips escaped to Land. David Ingram returned to England — a Negro "by one Robert Sweeting some of an Englishman boy a Spanish woman. they were holpen much from the Indians or else all had perished.

75. — 68 condemned by the Inquisition. & George Rively, Peter Monfrie & Cornelius an Irishman burnt. many who were not punished with death married & settled there. Philips returned to England 1582

Job Hortop belonged to this Company. also Robert Barret. John Elbert John Bare David Ingram v. Hakluyt. Ingram's voyages to the North Apowry Strait & as such, not inserted in Hakluyt's second edition.

the custom of Ancient Asia, the Royal Family intermarried not
withstanding any degree of parentage.
concentrated. According to the Scythian prejudice to defend the tombs of
their ancestors. as they said when they retreated before Alexander.

others in the canoes coming to attack our veſſels; ſome again at work upon their palliſadoes, or opening the ditches and water cuts, and making ſtone parapets, or preparing their magazines of darts and arms, and the women ſupplying the ſlingers with their ammunition. Then from the temples and adoratories of their accurſed idols, the timbals and horns, and the mournful ſound of their great drum, and other diſmal noiſes, were inceſſantly aſſailing our ears, ſo that day or night we could hardly hear each other ſpeak. But theſe dins immediately ceaſed on the capture of Guatimotzin, for which reaſon as I have obſerved, we felt like ſo many men juſt eſcaped from a ſteeple where all the bells were ringing about our ears.

Guatimotzin was of a noble appearance both in perſon and countenance; his features were rather large, and chearful, with lively eyes. His age was about twenty three or four years, and his complexion very fair for an Indian. His queen the niece of Montezuma, was young, and very handſome.

In regard to the diſpute between Sandoval and Holguin, Cortes related to them the circumſtance from the Roman hiſtory, of the capture of Jugurtha, and the diſpute of Marius and Sylla, about which of them ſhould have the honor of it, and that this diſpute was productive of moſt fatal civil wars; but ſaid that he would lay the whole affair before his Majeſty, by whoſe arbitration it ſhould be decided, which of the two ſhould have the action emblazoned in his arms. In two years from this time the Emperor's orders upon the ſubject arrived; they were to this purpoſe; that Cortes ſhould bear in his arms the ſeven kings, repreſenting Montezuma, Guatimotzin, and the princes of Tezcuco, Iztapalapa, Cuyoacan, Tacuba, and Matalzingo.

What I am going to mention is truth, and I ſwear and ſay amen to it. I have read of the deſtruction of Jeruſalem, but I cannot conceive that the mortality there exceeded this of Mexico; for all the people from the diſtant provinces which belonged to this empire had concentrated

themſelves here, where they moſtly died. The ſtreets, the ſquares, the houſes, and the courts of the Taltelulco were covered with dead bodies; we could not ſtep without treading on them; the lake and canals were filled with them, and the ſtench was intolerable. For this reaſon, our troops immediately after the capture of the royal family retired to their former quarters. Cortes himſelf was for ſome time ill from the effect of it.

The veſſels were now the beſt ſituation, thoſe on board carrying away all the plunder, for they had acceſs to houſes in the water which were not in our reach. They alſo found what the Mexicans had concealed in the reeds, and on the borders of the lake, and intercepted that which was carried out of our reach by water. We on land gained nothing but honor and wounds. The wealth our navy got was much more than we could gueſs at; Guatimotzin and all his chiefs declaring, when enquiry was made as to the public treaſure, that it had moſtly fallen into their hands.

To return to the ſtate of Mexico. Guatimotzin now requeſted of Cortes, that permiſſion ſhould be given to clear the city entirely of the inhabitants, in order to purify it, and reſtore its ſalubrity. Accordingly they were ordered to remove to the neighbouring towns, and for three days, and three nights, all the cauſeways were full, from one end to the other, of men, women, and children, ſo weak and ſickly, ſqualid and dirty, and peſtilential, that it was miſery to behold them. When all thoſe who were able had quitted the city, we went to examine the ſtate of it, which was as I have deſcribed. The ſtreets, courts, and houſes were covered with dead bodies, and ſome miſerable wretches were creeping about, in the different ſtages of the moſt offenſive diſorders, the conſequences of famine and improper food. The ground was all broken up to get at the roots of ſuch vegetation as it afforded, and the very trees were ſtripped of their bark! There was no freſh water in the town. During all their diſtreſs however, though their conſtant practice was to feaſt on ſuch as they took priſoners, no inſtance occurred

of

So, the Floridans were shocked at seeing the Spaniards of Narvaez's army
must eat each other through famine.

of their having preyed on each other; and certainly never exiſted ſince the creation a people which ſuffered ſo much from hunger, thirſt, and warfare.

After having returned thanks to God, Cortes determined to celebrate his ſucceſs by a feſtival in Cuyoacan; a veſſel had arrived at Villa Rica with a cargo of wine, and hogs had been provided from the Iſland of Cuba. To this entertainment he invited all the officers of his army, and alſo the ſoldiers of eſtimation, and all things being prepared, on the day appointed, we waited on our general. When we came to ſit down to dinner there were not tables for one half of us; this brought on great confuſion among the company, and indeed for many reaſons it would have been much better let alone. The plant of Noah was the cauſe of many fooleries and worſe things; it made ſome leap over the tables who afterwards could not go out at the doors, and many rolled down the ſteps. The private ſoldiers ſwore they would buy horſes with golden harneſs; the croſsbow-men would uſe none but golden arrows; all were to have their fortunes made. When the tables were taken away the ſoldiers danced in their armour, with the ladies, as many of them as there were, but the diſproportion in numbers was very great. This ſcene was truly ridiculous. I will not mention the names, ſuffice it to ſay a fair field was opened for ſatire. Fray De Olmedo thought what he obſerved at the feaſt, and in the dances too ſcandalous, and complained to Sandoval; and the latter directly told Cortes how the reverend father was ſcolding and grumbling. Cortes, diſcreet in all his actions, then came to him and affecting to diſapprove the whole, requeſted that he would order a ſolemn maſs and thankſgiving, and preach a ſermon to the ſoldiers on the moral and religious duties. Fra Bartholome was highly pleaſed at this, thinking it had originated ſpontaneouſly from Cortes, and not knowing that the hint had been given him by Sandoval. Accordingly, the crucifixes and the image of our Lady were borne in ſolemn proceſſion, with drums and ſtandards; the litany was ſung during the ceremony, Fra Bartholome preached and adminiſtered the ſacrament, and we returned thanks to God for our victory.

Cortes now took leave of his allies, the Tlaſcalan chiefs, and alſo of Suchel otherwiſe Don Carlos, a very brave man, as was another, a captain of ſome city near the lake the name of which I forget; but he did wonders. Many others who had rendered us moſt important ſervices departed at the ſame time. Cortes diſmiſſed them all to their homes with many embraces, thanks, and compliments, promiſing that he would ſoon make them rich, and great lords, and give them lands and vaſſals, ſo that they took their departure in high ſpirits. They had however ſecured ſomething more ſubſtantial than promiſes, for they were well loaden with the plunder of Mexico, nor were they behind the enemy in their cannibal feaſts, carrying with them portions preſerved, to ſupply their friends on their return home.

Now that I am paſt theſe furious combats, through which, praiſed be God he was pleaſed to conduct me ſafe, I have to mention a certain particularity relative to myſelf, and it is this. When I ſaw the ſacrifice of our ſeventy two countrymen, and their hearts taken out and offered to the war god of the Mexicans, I had a ſenſation of fear. Some may conſider this as want of firmneſs; but if they weigh it duly, they will find that it was in truth the reſult of too much courage, which cauſed me to run into extreme and uncommon dangers; for in that day I conſidered myſelf a moſt valiant ſoldier, and was ſo eſteemed by all; and was uſed to do that which was attempted by the boldeſt, and I was always under the eye of my captain. As I have before obſerved, when I ſaw my companions ſacrificed, their hearts taken out palpitating, and their legs and arms cut off and eaten, I feared it might one day or other be my own lot, for they had me in their hands twice, but it was God's will that I ſhould eſcape; but I remembered, and thought on what I had ſeen, and from this time I feared that cruel death; and this I mention, becauſe before I went into battle, I felt a great depreſſion and uneaſineſs about my heart, and then recommending myſelf to God and his bleſſed mother our Lady, the inſtant I was engaged with the enemy it left me. Still I am ſurpriſed that it came upon me when I ſhould have felt more valiant than ever, on account of the many battles in which I had

Nequalpilli King of Tezcuco left three sons. Cacamatzin, Coanacotzin & Ixtlilxochitl. a his death. Ixtlilxochitl opposed the succession of Cacamatzin in consequence a partition of the Mexican states took place, Cacamatzin & Coanacotzin retaining Tezcuco & the plain of Mexico, & Ixtlilxochitl kept over together in the mountains. in hostility to Montezuma who inclined his brothers. in this state he was when the Spaniards arrived in the country with them he immediately opened a communication.

Nequalpilli died a. 1516.

had been engaged. But I declare I never knew what fear was, until I ſaw the maſſacre of the ſeventy two ſoldiers. Let thoſe cavaliers who have been in deſperate battles and mortal dangers now decide what was the cauſe of my fears; I ſay that it was exceſs of courage; and for this reaſon; that I knew the greatneſs of the danger into which I was determined to go, and knowingly, and voluntarily, encountered it. Many engagements are related in my hiſtory beſides thoſe I was at; but if my body were of iron, I could not have been at all; and I was much oftener wounded than whole.

I muſt obſerve, that the Mexicans did not kill our ſoldiers, but wounded, and carried them off, to ſacrifice alive, to their gods.

d them to be eaten. (annibalism as before observed prevailed
ugh the Old world- the Thibetian priests are judges and expe
nies and the cause of the victim is their perquisite. In Anam
women convicted of adultery are killed & cut in pieces
the first and drowned and such was the identical pun
ment of this crime in Inspruck. The Lestrygons of the
editerranean were annibals

THE TRUE HISTORY

OF

THE CONQUEST OF MEXICO.

PART THE THIRD.

CHAPTER I.

Tranſactions and occurrences in New Spain ſubſequent to the conqueſt.

AFTER the conqueſt, as ſoon as Cortes had leiſure to turn his mind to objects of police and internal regulation, he directed that the aqueducts ſhould be reſtored, and the city cleared of the dead, ſo that within two months it might be inhabited as before. The palaces and houſes he ordered to be repaired, and pointed out that part which was to be inhabited by the natives, and that which was to be reſerved for the Spaniards.

Guatimotzin now applied in the name of many of his principal nobility to Cortes, requeſting that he would order ſuch of their women of

of rank as had been taken by our ſoldiers, to be delivered to their huſbands, and fathers. The general found ſome difficulty in this, but agreed to permit them to make ſearch, and ſuch as wiſhed to return, he aſſured them that he would cauſe to be given up. They ſearched through every houſe, and though the women hid themſelves they found many, but very few were inclined to return; they declared that they deteſted the idolatry of their countrymen, and in addition they were many of them pregnant, ſo that of the whole number three only went back to their families.

One of the firſt public works undertaken was an arſenal in the city, ſo ſituated as to include our flotilla. Alvarado was to the beſt of my knowledge appointed alcalde, until the arrival of Salazar de la Pedrada. All the gold, ſilver, and jewels, which were now collected in Mexico, amounted to the paltry ſum of three hundred and eighty thouſand crowns. It was reported that Guatimotzin had thrown great quantities into the lake four days before the ſurrender of the town, and it was well known that a conſiderable ſhare had fallen to our allies, and to thoſe who ſerved on board the fleet. Cortes was not ſorry to think Guatimotzin had it concealed, in hopes of obtaining it all for himſelf. It was then propoſed to put both Guatimotzin and his confidential friend the prince of Tacuba to the torture, to extort confeſſion from them; this was certainly very contrary to the inclination and diſpoſition of Cortes, who could not approve of ſuch an act of cruelty being committed on a perſon ſo diſtinguiſhed as Guatimotzin; one who was abſolute monarch of a country three times larger than Caſtille. In anſwer to all enquiries the king's officers proteſted that there was no more than what had been produced, which when melted and run into bars did not exceed three hundred and eighty thouſand crowns. From this the fifth for the Emperor and another for Cortes were deducted; what remained did not at all ſatisfy thoſe of the conquerors of Mexico who were not before friends to Cortes. They ſuggeſted to the treaſurer Alderete that the general objected to Guatimotzin being tortured, in order to get the gold himſelf. Cortes was therefore obliged to leave the unfortunate king at their diſpoſal,

diſpoſal, as well as the lord of Tacuba. What this inhuman proceſs extorted from them was, a confeſſion that they had, four days previous to the ſurrender, thrown treaſure into the lake, and alſo the muſquets, bows, and other arms taken from us in our flight, and in the laſt defeat of Cortes. The place which Guatimotzin pointed out was ſearched by the beſt ſwimmers, to no effect whatever. In a deep pond at his palace was found a ſun of ſolid gold, ſimilar to that which Montezuma had given us, with many ornaments of ſmall value, the private property of Guatimotzin. On the torture the Prince of Tacuba declared that he had gold at ſome large houſes he poſſeſſed four leagues from the town of Tacuba, and that, if there, he would point out to us where it was buried. Alvarado and ſix ſoldiers whereof I was one accompanied him thither; when we arrived he declared he had ſaid ſo in hopes of dying on the road, for that he had no treaſure whatever; ſo we remained without any more gold to melt. The fact is that the treaſury was diminiſhed to a mere trifle before it came into Guatimotzin's hands; and I and many others who ſaw it at firſt knew it appeared to be then worth twice what it was when brought out to have his Majeſty's ſhare deducted: I obſerved many articles of remarkable and curious workmanſhip miſſing at that time; they were taken for the public ſervice.

I and ſeveral good divers ſearched that part of the lake which had been pointed out by Guatimotzin, and we found ſome pieces of gold of little value, which were immediately claimed by Cortes and Alderete. They alſo ſent down perſons and were themſelves preſent, but all they obtained amounted to leſs than the value of ninety crowns. This made us very penſive and grave, when we found what mere trifles our ſhares as they were called came to. For this reaſon Fra Bartholome, and other cavaliers and captains, repreſented to Cortes that it would be beſt to divide that which fell to the lot of the whole army, among the wounded, the halt, the blind, the deaf, the ſcorched, and the ſick; and that thoſe who had eſcaped ſound would renounce their claims. This they ſaid upon an expectation that it might draw out ſome of the treaſure which they ſuſpected was concealed. Cortes replied that he

 would

would enquire, and rectify all. Our captains and ſoldiers were then curious to know what the ſhares came to for each man. On caſting it up it appeared, that to each horſeman there came one hundred crowns, and to each infantry ſoldier I forget how much, but no one would accept it. This did not quiet the ſoldiers; they murmured loudly and accuſed the treaſurer. He to exculpate himſelf ſaid, that they ſhould blame Cortes, who had taken out a ſecond fifth for himſelf, and alſo a deduction for loſs of horſes, and had retained from the common ſtock many pieces of wrought gold to ſend to his Majeſty. The ſoldiers of Narvaez who never liked Cortes thoroughly, would not take their paltry ſhares, and as Cortes now lodged at Cuyoacan, in large buildings with white walls, very well adapted for ſcribbling on, there appeared every morning libels againſt him in proſe or verſe. The idea of one of them was, that as the planets ſometimes went a little out of their courſe, but by the order of nature ſpeedily reverted to it again, ſo it was with Cortes and his ambition. Another ſaid we were more conquered by Cortes than Mexico by us, and that we were not the victors of New Spain, but the vanquiſhed of Cortes. Some ſaid that he had taken his fifth as general, and a ſecond as king; and others again that Velaſquez had incurred all the expence, and Cortes reaped all the profit. I recollect the words of one only: they were

" Que triſte eſta el alma mea,
" Haſta que la parte vea.*

Many were written in ſuch a ſtile as is not fit for me to relate, and ſome had a turn and witty point in them which I am not able to give. Cortes was a poet, and prided himſelf on giving anſwers in that way to ſuch complimentary addreſſes as he received; he alſo uſed to reply in pointed epigrams to theſe paſquinades which grew every day more indecent. One day obſerving the walls covered with them he wrote, "a white wall is paper for fools." Next morning was found added, "and for truths." At length Fra Bartholome told Cortes the thing was going too far

* How anxious I am for a partition of plunder!!

Some years after the conquest a horse shoe sold for what would have been eight guineas, but now the quadruple of that sum.

A pound weight of gold was two Manchi or 16 oz - or 100 cattellans so each cattellan was 6¼ th. cattellans.

far, and adviſed him to ſtop it, which he did by threats of ſevere puniſhment.

Among the ſoldiers of our army very heavy debts were contracted; a croſs-bow was ſold for fifty crowns, a muſquet coſt one hundred, a horſe eight hundred, one thouſand, and even more; and every thing elſe was in proportion. Then our ſurgeon Maeſtre Juan charged high, as did a Doctor Murcia who was an apothecary and barber. There were beſides various other money traps, all which were to be ſatisfied out of our dividends. This required ſome regulation: Cortes accordingly appointed Sancta Clara, a very honorable perſon, and one Lerena, to appreciate each claim, which was to be paid according to their award, within two years. The value of the gold was alſo altered by increaſing the alloy; this was intended to ſerve us in our dealing with the merchants from Europe or Cuba, but it had a contrary effect, as they were prepared, and added twice as much to the price of their goods. The alloy was copper, called here Tepuzque; for which reaſon we call any one of an inferior degree to another of the ſame name, Don Juan, or Don Alonzo Tepuzque, or the copper Don Juan &c. The abuſes reſulting from this being made known to his Majeſty, he was pleaſed to forbid the currency of this baſe metal, ordering it to be taken in duties until it was all drawn over to Caſtille, and that no more of it ſhould be made. At this time two gold-ſmiths were hanged here for running baſe metal with the legal mark.

I have digreſſed for ſome time paſt, and will now return to the thread of my narrative. Cortes, as the beſt way to get rid of troubleſome companions and demands, determined now to ſend out colonies, and make ſettlements at convenient ſituations. For this purpoſe Sandoval was ordered to Tuſtepeque, and Guacacualco. Juan Velaſquez was to go to Colima, one Villa Fuerte to Zacatula, Chriſtoval de Oli to Mechoacan, (he was at this time married to a Portugueze lady named Donna Phillipa de Aranja,) and Franciſco de Orozca to Guaxaca.

At this time the chiefs of the diſtant provinces could not bring themſelves to believe that Mexico was deſtroyed: they therefore ſent deputations to aſcertain the truth, and alſo to offer themſelves as vaſſals to his Majeſty the Emperor. All made great preſents of gold to Cortes, and many came in perſon, and brought their children to ſee the ſtate of that power once ſo feared by them, and uſed to expreſs themſelves as we ſay, "here Troy town ſtood."

Curious readers will be deſirous to know how it happened, that the conquerors of Mexico who had gone through ſuch dangers to obtain poſſeſſion of that city, ſhould now quit it to ſearch for new ſettlements. To this I reply, that the books which contained the accounts of Montezuma's revenues were examined to find from whence the gold, and other valuable articles of tribute, ſuch as cacao, and cotton manufactures, were ſent; and it was to theſe productive diſtricts that we wiſhed to go. Eſpecially, we were led by the example of Sandoval, who being known to be the particular friend of Cortes, it was not to be ſuppoſed would go upon an unprofitable enterpriſe. We alſo ſaw that the vicinity of the city of Mexico had neither mines, plantations, nor manufactures, but was intirely occupied by the cultivation of maize, and of maguey. This we thought did not afford us proſpects ſufficiently advantageous, and we went to other places where we were ſadly diſappointed. I waited upon Cortes to requeſt permiſſion to attend Sandoval; "brother B. Diaz del Caſtillo" ſaid the general to me, "by my conſcience you will find yourſelf miſtaken; you had better ſtay with me, but if you are determined on going with your friend Sandoval, go in God's name; I will always do my utmoſt to take care of you, but I tell you that you will repent of it." All the gold remained with the Emperor's officers; the ſlaves having been purchaſed by the ſoldiers according to their valuation at a public ſale. The detachments were ſent out to colonize the provinces at different periods, for two months after the capture of Mexico; however I will not any farther particularize them, not to treſpaſs unneceſſarily on my reader's time.

At

At this time arrived at the port of Villa Rica, Chriſtoval de Tapia, veedor of the Iſland of St. Domingo, with a commiſſion to take upon him the government of New Spain, by order of his Majeſty, and under the direction of the Biſhop of Burgos. He brought with him letters from the ſaid Biſhop of Burgos to Cortes and many others of his army, recommending him, to be honoured by us as governor of New Spain, and beſides thoſe which were cloſed and ſealed, he had alſo with him letters filled up and which he was authoriſed to addreſs as he ſaw occaſion for his own intereſt. Great promiſes were held out to ſuch as would come over to the new governor, and violent threats of puniſhment to thoſe who made any oppoſition to him. Tapia firſt preſented his commiſſion to Alvarado, then commandant in Villa Rica. Alvarado received it with the higheſt reſpect, and ſaid that as he was not able of himſelf to decide any thing, it would be neceſſary to aſſemble the alcaldes and regidors of the town, to have the commiſſion verified before them, and alſo to prove the manner in which it had been tranſmitted, that they might know for a certainty that it came in a proper form from his Majeſty's hand. This did not exactly agree with the views of Tapia. Being adviſed to proceed to Mexico and produce his commiſſion to Cortes himſelf, he forwarded the letter of the biſhop, and alſo wrote to Cortes upon the ſubject of his miſſion. The ſtile of the letters was ſmooth and perſuaſive, but the anſwer of Cortes was ten times more ſo. Cortes immediately ſent expreſſes to ſome of the different officers he had detached, ordering them to go and meet Tapia who had already ſet out for Mexico, but was, in conſequence of the direction of Cortes, met on the road by Alvarado, Sandoval, De Soto, Valdenegro, Captain Andres de Tapia, and the reverend father Fra Malgarejo. Theſe gentlemen with much compliments and ceremony, induced Chriſtoval de Tapia to go to Cempoal; they there requeſted to ſee his commiſſion, which being verified, and acknowledged, they placed it on their heads in token of reſpect and ſubmiſſion; but in regard to the admitting him as governor by the virtue of it, that was quite another affair; it was firſt neceſſary to know what his Majeſty's pleaſure was touching the affairs of New Spain, the true ſtate of which had been

concealed

concealed from him by the Biſhop of Burgos, who did it to ſerve his own private views, and to favor Velaſquez and Tapia, one of whom he intended ſhould marry his niece. By all this it was pretty evident to Tapia, that he would not very ſpeedily enter upon his office, and the diſappointment affected him to that degree that he fell ſick. Our captains wrote to Cortes letting him know all that had paſſed, and recommending him to ſend a good quantity of golden ingots, and try their effect in mollifying the fury of the would-be governor. Theſe arrived by the return of the expreſs, and with them they bought from him ſome negroes, three horſes, and one of his ſhips; in the other Tapia embarked himſelf, and ſet ſail for the Iſland of St. Domingo, where he was very ill received by the court of royal audience and the brothers of the order of Jeronymites, he having undertaken the buſineſs contrary to their expreſs command; but they would not exert their power farther againſt one patroniſed by the Biſhop of Burgos, his Majeſty being at that time in Flanders.

I have formerly made mention of ſome particulars relative to an expedition ſet on foot by one Garay. It was to colonize and ſettle upon the river of Panuco. Cortes had received intelligence of it, and reſolved to anticipate him by ſending thither a party for the ſame purpoſe. He alſo now again ſent Rangel to Villa Rica as commandant, and ordered Narvaez to be ſent to him at Cuyoacan, where he reſided until the palace which he was to inhabit in Mexico was compleated. The reaſon he ſent for Narvaez was this; he was told that the latter had held a converſation with Tapia, in which he adviſed him to quit the country on as good terms as he could get, and go to his patron the Biſhop of Burgos in Caſtille, to lay the whole ſtate of affairs before him; telling him alſo to profit by the example which his misfortunes ſet him, as, if he ſtaid, he certainly would be put to death, and that ſucceſs attended all the meaſures of Cortes. When Narvaez was brought before Cortes, he fell on his knees and attempted to kiſs his hand, but our general would not permit it; he raiſed, and embracing Narvaez, treated him with all reſpect and regard, and made him ſit by his ſide.

Cortes

Cortes now proceeded to take his reſidence in the city of Mexico. He divided the ground into lots for the churches in the firſt place, then for the monaſteries, the public buildings, and ſquares. He divided the reſt of the ground among the inhabitants that were to be, and not to waſte more time upon the ſubject, all thoſe who have ſeen the preſent city of Mexico agree, that there is not in Chriſtendom one more populous, larger, or better built.

While Cortes was thus employed, intelligence arrived that the province of Panuco was in arms. They are a warlike people, very numerous, and having rebelled, had killed many ſoldiers of the party which Cortes had ſent to form a colony there. He reſolved therefore to go thither in perſon: indeed all his captains were now abſent on different duties. Our numbers had by this time received a conſiderable reinforcement as well of thoſe who had come with the veedor Tapia, as of ſuch as had been on the expedition to Florida with Vaſquez de Aillon, and of many others lately arrived from the iſlands. He left a good garriſon in Mexico under Diego de Soto, and ſet out on his march with one hundred and thirty cavalry, two hundred and fifty infantry, and ten thouſand Mexicans. Juſt at this time De Oli returned from Mechoacan which he had reduced to a ſtate of ſubmiſſion and peace, bringing with him the principal chief and ſeveral others, and a quantity of gold. This expedition to Panuco was very expenſive; Cortes applied for a reimburſement from the crown, which could not be acceded to; his Majeſty's officers objected that it was undertaken on a private account, to prevent the eſtabliſhment of a colony by Garay, and not for the public ſervice. When he arrived at Panuco he found the people very rebellious. In the courſe of a few days he had two battles, in which he loſt three ſoldiers, four horſes, and above one hundred Mexicans. The number of the enemy amounted to above ſeventy thouſand warriors, but it was God's will that we ſhould obtain the victory, with ſuch a ſlaughter of the rebels as deprived them of all thoughts of making any head for the preſent. Theſe people are called the Guaſtecas, and Naguatecas. After the laſt battle Cortes again ſent to ſummon them to ſubmiſſion.

The King who voluntarily submitted to the Crown of Spain having been in battle with the Cacique just to death by Guzman

ſubmiſſion. He employed for this purpoſe ſome of the priſoners, and ſent with them Fra Bartholome, by whoſe exhortations they were induced to ſubmit.

Cortes then went with one half of his troops to the river Chila, to reduce the Indians on the oppoſite ſide. He ſummoned them, but they murdered his meſſengers. He then paſſed over one hundred and fifty infantry, and fifty cavalry, during the night. The enemy on their landing fell on them in great numbers, but they were ſoon driven from the field, and our troops advancing took their quarters in a town where they found plenty of proviſions. In the morning ſome of them entering the temple found remains of the bodies and clothes of our countrymen; ſome of our ſoldiers thought they recogniſed the features of their friends, and it was a melancholy ſight to all; their remains we carefully collected and buried.

From this place our detachment marched to another, where an out party reported, that great bodies of the enemy were poſted in concealment in the houſes to fall upon our people when the cavalry had diſmounted; their plan being diſcovered failed of ſucceſs, but they fought valiantly for half an hour, and three of our ſoldiers died afterwards of their wounds. Theſe people contrary to the general practice of Indians, rallied no leſs than three times. On the enſuing day our ſoldiers ſcoured the neighbourhood, and entering ſome towns which had been abandoned, found a quantity of earthen veſſels, full of the wine of the country, in cellars under ground. After a ſtay of five days they returned to the river of Chila. Cortes now again ſummoned them, to which they returned for anſwer that they would come within four days; which Cortes waited out, but to no effect. He therefore determined to puniſh them, and during a dark and rainy night, embarking a large body of Mexicans, he ſent them acroſs a lake to one of the enemy's largeſt towns, which they totally deſtroyed. This brought in moſt of that country to ſubmit. Cortes founded a town of one hundred and thirty houſes, ſixty three of the inhabitants whereof were ſoldiers. He

named

— they used by preference the mode of the T. I. Blankets of crushing the material by the Jaws of Old women —.

This vice was punished with death by the Laws of Lycurgus, a severity justified by the great prosperity of the people to it. as they now shew —

named it Villa de St. Eſtevan del Puerto. It is ſituated about a league from Chila. He allotted to it all the neighbouring diſtricts which had ſubmitted, and gave the command to Pedro Valego. Cortes was informed that three diſtricts which had been concerned in the murder of many Spaniards, but which had been now received under allegiance, intended to fall on this poſt as ſoon as he quitted the country. He in conſequence marched againſt them and deſtroyed their towns, but they ſoon eſtabliſhed them again.

A veſſel which Cortes had ordered to come to him with proviſions and neceſſaries was at this time loſt in ſome ſtrong gales from the north, whereby the new ſettlement was much diſtreſſed.

Cortes on his return to Mexico was informed of depredations committed on the peaceable diſtricts, by ſome of the inhabitants of the neighbouring mountains, whom he determined to chaſtiſe in his way, but they anticipated him, by falling upon his rear and robbing the baggage in a bad paſs; our allies the Mexicans made them pay well for this inſult, and two of their chiefs were hanged. Cortes then ordered hoſtilities to ceaſe, and the people, on being ſummoned, came in and ſubmitted. In the place of the chief, who was executed, Cortes appointed his brother, after which he proceeded to Mexico. In all the provinces of New Spain none was ſo bad for ſavage and evil manners, as that of Panuco. They made human ſacrifices, and were cruel to an exceſs, drunkards, filthy, and wicked, with thirty other turpitudes. They were puniſhed with fire and ſword two or three times, and greater misfortunes befell them when Nuno de Guzman came to be their governor, for he made them all ſlaves, and ſold them in the iſlands.

Alonzo de Avila whom I have formerly mentioned, was now returned with powers from the court of royal audience and the brothers of the order of St. Jeronymo, whereby we were authoriſed to purſue our conqueſts, to mark ſlaves, and to make ſettlements according to the practice in the Iſlands of Hiſpaniola and Cuba. They alſo ſent a report

of what ſteps they had taken, to Caſtille. His Majeſty was then in Flanders, where it was laid before him. Had De Avila been here at the time of Tapia's arrival he might have been very troubleſome, for he was an adherent of the Biſhop of Burgos, and had been bred up in his houſe. For theſe reaſons, and by the advice of Almedo, Cortes to put him in good humour gave him the diſtrict of Guatitlan, one of the richeſt in that country. He alſo preſented him with a conſiderable quantity of gold, and a much greater of kind words and promiſes, by which he won him ſo completely over to his intereſt that he afterwards ſent him as his agent to Caſtille; at which time ſeveral gigantic human bones were tranſmitted, together with a quantity of gold, pearls, and valuable jewels. The bones were found in a temple at Cuyoacan; they were prodigiouſly large, and ſimilar to thoſe which we had procured in Tlaſcala and ſent to Caſtille. The agents alſo brought over with them three tigers, and many other things of a curious nature, which I do not recollect. One part of their buſineſs was to tranſmit memorials to his Majeſty from the council of Mexico, and from us the conquerors of New Spain, requeſting that he would ſend us over holy men of good life and example, as biſhops and clergymen. Alſo praying, that in conſideration of our meritorious ſervices, all offices of honour and emolument ſhould be given amongſt us, and the government to Cortes, as the only fit and proper perſon. Alſo that his Majeſty would be pleaſed not to ſuffer any ſcholars, or men of letters to come into this country, to throw us into confuſion with their learning, quibbles, and books. We further repreſented the inſufficiency of Chriſtoval de Tapia, who was only ſent by the Biſhop of Burgos to effect a marriage between the ſaid Tapia, and the biſhop's niece, Donna Petronila de Fonſeca. We alſo deprecated the interference of the biſhop in the affairs of this country as being obſtructive of our plans of conqueſts for his Majeſty's ſervice, adding that we were ready to receive his Majeſty's commands, proſtrate on the ground, but had thought it our duty to inform him of theſe particulars, which had been artfully kept from his knowledge. All this, and more, was repreſented in the fulleſt light, for his Majeſty's information, and to do away the miſrepreſentations of the ſaid

Biſhop

Biſhop of Burgos, whoſe enmity was manifeſt in his having prohibited the Caſa de Contractation of Seville from ſending us any ſupplies. Cortes alſo left nothing in his inkſtand which could be of ſervice to our intereſts, for he wrote a memorial of twenty one pages, which I read, and certify to be to the full tenor and effect of what I have related. He alſo farther petitioned, that his Majeſty would permit him to go to the iſland of Cuba, to apprehend Velaſquez the governor thereof, and ſend him as a priſoner to Caſtille, for the injuries done by him to the general ſervice, more eſpecially in ſending an order to put Cortes to death.

Our agents ſailed from the port of Vera Cruz, on the twentieth of December one thouſand five hundred and twenty two, without any particular occurrence on the voyage to the Terceras, except the breaking looſe of two tigers, who wounded ſome ſailors, and their being obliged to kill the other on account of his ferocity. At the Iſland of Tercera Captain Anthonio de Quinones loſt his life. He was very amorous, and in a quarrel concerning a lady there, as he piqued himſelf upon his valor a duel enſued, in which he received a ſword wound on the head, and died in three days. Thus the buſineſs remained in the hands of Alonzo de Avila only. As he purſued his voyage to Europe, he fell in with a French privateer commanded by Juan Florin, who made prize of him, his ſhip, and all the treaſure. This captain took another ſhip from St. Domingo with a valuable cargo of ſugar, and hides, as alſo twenty thouſand crowns of gold, and a quantity of pearls, ſo that he returned to France very rich, and made great preſents to the King, and alſo to the admiral of France, the people whereof were aſtoniſhed at the magnificence of what we ſent to our great Emperor. The King of France ſaid that the wealth we ſupplied was ſufficient alone to enable our Monarch to wage war againſt him, and yet Peru was not at this time known. It is alſo reported that the King ſent to our Emperor, to ſay, that he and the King of Portugal had divided the world between them, without giving him a ſhare, and that he deſired to ſee the will of our father Adam, to know if he had made them excluſively his heirs.

Florin in his next expedition fell in with a ſtrong Biſcayan ſquadron, by which he was defeated and made priſoner, and being tranſmitted to Spain, he was hanged at the Iſland of Teneriffe. Thus was an end of him, his ſhips, and our treaſure.

Avila was confined a cloſe priſoner in France, but he ſucceeded in gaining the friendſhip of the officer in whoſe cuſtody he was, and obtained means of communicating with his friends in Spain, to whom he tranſmitted all the papers and documents with which he had been entruſted, and which were laid before his Majeſty by the means of the licentiate Nunez, couſin to Cortes and relator of the royal council, Martin Cortes his father, and Diego de Ordaz. The Emperor was pleaſed on due conſideration to order, that all favor ſhould be ſhewn to Cortes, and that farther proceedings ſhould be ſuſpended until his Majeſty's return to Spain.

The intelligence of the loſs of the treaſure was received by us as a moſt ſerious diſappointment. The diſtrict of Guatitlan was honorably reſerved by Cortes for Avila, notwithſtanding his captivity, and his brother ſucceeded to it three years after, Alonzo de Avila being then appointed contador of Yucatan.

The two captains, Sandoval and Alvarado, after the ſettlement with Tapia, returned to their detachments, and proceeded on their expeditions, of which I will now give an account.

CHAPTER II.

Expeditions of G. de Sandoval and P. de Alvarado.

WHEN our party (for I went with Sandoval) arrived at Tuſtepeque, I took up my lodgings in the ſummit of a tower in a very high temple, partly for the freſh air and to avoid the muſquitos which were very troubleſome below, and partly to be near Sandoval's quarters. It was here that ſeventy two ſoldiers of thoſe who came with Narvaez, and ſix Caſtillian women had been put to death. The whole province on our arrival came in and ſubmitted, except the Mexican chief, who had been the cauſe of the deaths of our ſoldiers. Him Sandoval got arreſted, and he was ſhortly after executed, being burned alive. There were many more as guilty but this example was judged ſufficient. After this was done a meſſage was ſent to the Zapotecan mountaineers to come in and ſubmit. Their country is about ten leagues diſtant from Tuſtepeque. On their refuſal an expedition was ordered againſt them, under the command of a Captain Briones, who according to his own account had been a great officer in Italy. He marched with one hundred infantry and about the ſame number of Indian allies; the enemy were prepared for him, and laid a plan for a ſurpriſe, which they effected ſo completely that they drove our party over the rocks, rolling down to the bottom, and above a third of them were wounded, one of whom afterwards died. The diſtrict is ſo very difficult of acceſs, that troops can only paſs in ſingle file, and the climate is very miſty and humid. The natives are armed with large lances with an ell of blade, with two edges of ſtone as ſharp as a razor, and pliable ſhields which cover the whole body. They are very nimble, and give their ſignals by whiſtlings which echo among the rocks with inconceivable ſhrillneſs. This diſtrict

is

is called Tiltepeque. After it had been brought to ſubmiſſion the government of it was aſſigned to a ſoldier named Ojeda, who now lives in St. Ildefonſo. Sandoval who was a good humoured man began to joke with Briones at his return, upon the bad ſucceſs of his expedition, aſking him if ever he had ſeen the like in Italy; for Briones was always giving accounts how he had ſevered men in two, and cut their heads off, &c. He was not pleaſed with Sandoval's jocularity, and ſwore he had rather fight the Turks and Moors, than the Zapotecans. This expedition was of little uſe, but on the contrary injurious. There was another diſtrict of the Zapotecans which was called Xaltepeque, the people of which were at war with their neighbours, and immediately on being ſummoned waited on Sandoval with handſome preſents, and a conſiderable quantity of gold partly formed into toys, and the reſt in ten little tubes; their chiefs wore very long robes of cotton reaching to the feet, richly embroidered, and reſembling the upper robes of the Moors. They applied to him for ſome of his ſoldiers to aſſiſt them againſt their enemies named the Minxes. This the ſtate of his force did not permit him to comply with, but he promiſed to tranſmit an application to Mexico for a reinforcement for them, and in the interval would ſend ſome of his men to ſee the country and the nature of the paſſes; but his real object was to examine their mines. Thus he diſmiſſed them all except three, ſending eight of us upon the buſineſs I have mentioned.

There were two of the ſame name in this party, for we had three Caſtillos in our army. I who at that time prided myſelf upon my dreſs, was named Caſtillo "the gallant." My nameſake who went on his expedition was a man of very ſlow ſpeech, not replying to a queſtion for a length of time, and then he came out with ſome abſurdity; he was named Caſtillo "the thoughtfull." The other who was very ſmart and ready in all he ſaid was called Caſtillo "the prompt." But to have done with our witticiſms and proceed with my narrative. On our arrival, the Indians turned over the earth in three different rivers, and in each they found gold, filling four tubes of the ſize of the middle finger with it, and with theſe we returned. Sandoval thought that all our fortunes were

were now made; he took a diſtrict to himſelf from which he immediately procured fifteen thouſand crowns. To Captain Luis Marin he gave Xaltepeque from whence we had obtained the gold. This turned out however very indifferently. He gave me a very profitable diſtrict there; would to God I had kept it! it conſiſted of three places named Matallan, Ozotequipa, and Oriaca, where is now the ingenio of the viceroy: but I thought it more conſiſtent with my character to go with Sandoval upon his expeditions. Sandoval called his town Medellin, after the birth place of Cortes. The river De las Vanderas from which the fifteen thouſand crowns were procured is the port, and it was here that the merchandiſe from Caſtille was diſcharged until Vera Cruz became the emporium.

We now proceeded on our route for Guacacualco. The province of Citla through which we paſſed has the moſt pleaſant climate, and the greateſt plenty of proviſions, of any we had ſeen in this continent; its extent is about twelve leagues, in length and breadth, and it is very populous. The chiefs immediately ſubmitted. On our arrival at the river of Guacacualco, thoſe of that diſtrict, which is the head one of all the neighbouring people, on being ſummoned did not appear, which we conſidered as a declaration of hoſtility, and ſuch in fact was their firſt determination; but after five days had paſſed, they waited on Sandoval with a preſent of ſome trinkets of fine gold. By his directions they collected one hundred canoes, in which our troops croſſed the river, after we had firſt ſent four ſoldiers to obſerve and report the ſtate of the people. The town which we founded here we called Del Eſpiritu Santo, which ſublime name was given to it becauſe it was on that day we defeated Narvaez; it was alſo our word in the battle, and it was on the ſame day that we croſſed this river. Here the flower of our army was eſtabliſhed, and it is certain that when we went out to the ſquare upon a feſtival or review, we muſtered eighty cavalry; a greater number in proportion than five hundred now, horſes were then ſo ſcarce and dear. Sandoval having examined and conſidered the ſituation of the neighbouring diſtricts, made repartitions of them as moſt convenient to the different

different ſettlements. The diſtricts he allotted to his of Guacacualco were Guazpaltepeque, Tepeca, Chinanta, the Zapotecas, Copilco, Cimatan, Tabaſco, Cachula, the Zoques, Techeapa, Cinacatan, the Quilenes and Papanahauſta. We had much trouble afterwards on account of litigation with Vera Cruz concerning three of them, Guazpaltepeque, Chinanta, and Tepeca; with the town of Tabaſco concerning two others, Cimatan, and Copilco, alſo with Chiapa concerning two, the Quilenes and Zoques, and with St. Ildefonſo about the Zapotecas. I was very ſorry I fixed myſelf here; the lands were very poor, and it turned out altogether to my diſadvantage. Still we ſhould have done very well had we been left as we were at firſt; but when the new ſettlements were formed our poſſeſſions were clipped, to accommodate them; whereby our colony fell to decay, from being the beſt, and containing the greateſt number of the generous conquerors of Mexico; but it is at preſent a place of very few inhabitants.

Sandoval now received intelligence of the arrival of Donna Catalina lady of our general Hernando Cortes, and her brother, at the river of Aguayalco. La Zambrana alſo and her family arrived with them, and Elvira Lopez "the tall," married to Juan de Palma who was afterwards hanged. We all ſet out to pay our reſpects to theſe ladies, and I recollect the roads were almoſt impaſſable from the conſtant and heavy rains. Donna Catalina and the reſt were eſcorted by us to our town of Guacacualco, and we ſent word to Cortes of their arrival. After a ſhort ſtay with us they ſet out for Mexico. Cortes was very ſorry for their coming, but he put the beſt face upon it, and received them with great pomp and rejoicings. In about three months after the arrival of Donna Catalina, we heard of her having died of an aſthma.

Villafuerte who had been ſent to Zacatula, and Alvarez Chico who had alſo gone to Colima, were unſucceſsful in their endeavours to bring thoſe provinces into ſubmiſſion. Cortes then ſent a party thither commanded by Chriſtoval de Oli; the natives attacked him on his march, killing two of his ſoldiers; but he reached the ſtation of Villafuerte who

was

was afraid to ſtir out of it, and the enemy had even killed four of his men in the town. De Oli however before he departed reduced both theſe diſtricts to ſubmiſſion. I do not know what became of Captain Juan Alvarez, but I believe he was killed in ſome of the actions with the natives at this time. De Oli returned to Mexico, but had hardly got there when intelligence arrived of three provinces being again in rebellion. Sandoval had at this time arrived at Mexico with the ladies. Cortes ſent him with a ſmall party of our veterans to take theſe diſtricts into his hands, which he did, and puniſhed, and regulated them in ſuch a manner, that we heard no more of their being refractory.

Several of the diſtricts ſubject to Guacacualco rebelled on the departure of Sandoval, killing the Spaniards employed in the management of the tribute; amongſt others were the Xaltepeque Zapotecas, Cimatan, and Copilco; the firſt of which is difficult of acceſs on account of its mountains, the two others on account of lakes and marſhes, and they were not brought to ſubjection but with the greateſt difficulty.

At this time, and while Captain Luis Marin was employed in ſubjugating theſe diſtricts, arrived at our ſettlement in a ſmall veſſel which came up to the town, Juan Buono the Biſcayan. He immediately ſummoned us all to a meeting, where, after ſome compliments on both ſides, he opened his buſineſs to us, which was, to induce us to accept as governor Chriſtoval de Tapia, of whoſe return to St. Domingo Buono was ignorant. Large offers were made by the Biſhop of Burgos in unaddreſſed letters, which Buono had a diſcretionary power of directing to ſuch as would ſupport his views. Theſe he accordingly ſent to ſuch as he found to hold offices; I was offered a regidor's place. When Buono heard that Tapia was no longer in the country he was very much diſappointed. We referred him to Cortes at Mexico, whither he went; I do not know what paſſed between them, but I believe Cortes ſent him back to Caſtille with ſome money in his pocket.

Amongſt others who courted the alliance of the Spaniards after the conqueſt of Mexico, were the people called the Tutepeque Zapotecans. They applied very earneſtly for our aſſiſtance againſt a nation which was in hoſtility to them, named likewiſe the Tutepeques, whom they repreſented as poſſeſſing a very rich country. Accordingly in the year one thouſand five hundred and twenty two, Alvarado, by the order of Cortes, marched from Mexico with one hundred and eighty ſoldiers, infantry and cavalry, with an order to take twenty more in his march to the province of Guaxaca, and alſo to viſit certain rocky diſtricts ſaid to be in rebellion. He was forty days upon his route from Mexico to Tutepeque; on his arrival he was hoſpitably received, and lodged in the moſt populous part of the city, where the houſes joined, and were roofed with ſtraw, it not being the cuſtom of that country to have terraces on their houſe-tops, as the climate is very ſultry. By the advice of Olmedo it was determined that our troops ſhould remove to a more open part of the town, leſt, in caſe of any treachery on the part of the people, their quarters ſhould be ſet fire to. When they were fixed the chief of the town brought them proviſions, and every day ſome rich preſent of gold. Alvarado deſired a pair of ſtirrups of this metal, which was done according to the pattern. In a few days after, the chief was made priſoner, on an information from the Indians of Teguantepeque, who were in hoſtility to theſe, of his intention to burn the Spaniards in the quarters which they had firſt aſſigned to them in the temples. Some of the Spaniards ſay, it was to extort gold from him; however it was, he died in priſon, after Alvarado had got from him to the value of thirty thouſand crowns. Apparently his death was owing to vexation, though Fra Bartholome did what he could to conſole and encourage him. His ſon was permitted to ſucceed him in the chieftainry. Alvarado obtained from him more than he had got from the father, and then proceeded to eſtabliſh a colony which he named Segura, as the coloniſts were moſtly from Tepeaca, named by us Segura de la Frontera.

Alvarado then ſet out on his return, with all his wealth; for Cortes had

weighing according to the Spanish costume some ~~eight~~ eight pounds wind ~~and~~ [illegible]

had written to him to collect what he could, to ſend to Caſtille. The ſoldiers being thus excluded from any ſhare, ſome of them formed a conſpiracy to aſſaſſinate Alvarado and his brothers. They were principally muſqueteers and croſsbow-men. A ſoldier of the name of Tribejo gave information to Fra Bartholome, a few hours before it was to be attempted. The reverend father having called Alvarado aſide, and informed him of what he had heard, at the hour of veſpers, when the latter was riding out in company with ſeveral of the conſpirators, and paſſing by ſome houſes, he ſaid to them, "gentlemen I am ſuddenly "taken ill with a pain in my ſide, let us return, and call a barber to bleed me." On his arrival he immediately ſent for his brothers George and Gonzalo, together with the alcaldes and alguazils. He then ordered them to arreſt the aſſaſſins, two of whom were hanged; one was named Salamanca; he had been a pilot. The other was called Barnardino Levantiſco. They both died like good chriſtians, the reverend father taking great pains to bring them to a due ſenſe of their ſituation.

Alvarado now returned to Mexico, leaving a colony in this place; but when the coloniſts found that the gold had been drawn away, that the climate was hot and unhealthy, and infeſted with muſquitos, bugs, and other vermin, and that they and their ſlaves were dying faſt, they determined to abandon it, ſome going to Mexico, and ſome to other places. Cortes on hearing of the ſettlement being thus renounced, cauſed an enquiry to be ſet on foot, and found that it had been determined by the alcaldes and regidors in council, for which he condemned them to ſuffer death, which was afterwards mitigated at the interceſſion of Olmedo to baniſhment. Thus fell to the ground the colony of Segura or Tutepeque, a very fertile country, but unhealthy. The cruelty and extortion of Alvarado alienated the minds of the people, and they threw of their allegiance; but that officer returning thither brought them again to ſubmiſſion, and they afterwards continued peaceable.

CHAPTER III.

Armament of Franciſco de Garay.

I HAVE already made mention of F. de Garay, who was governor of the Iſland of Jamaica. When he heard of the riches that had been acquired here by Diego Velaſquez, and of the fertile countries which had been diſcovered, ſtimulated by his avarice, and encouraged by the reflection on his wealth and means, Garray was induced to try his fortune.

Having therefore ſent for, and diſcourſed with Alaminos our principal pilot upon the ſubject, his account was ſo favorable that he determined on ſending a confidential perſon one Juan de Torralva, to obtain from the Biſhop of Burgos the government of the country about the river Panuco. His application having been ſucceſsful he ſent an armament of three ſhips, with two hundred and forty ſoldiers, under the command of Alonzo Alvarez Pinedo or Pineda, which was defeated by the Indians of Panuco, one ſhip only eſcaping, and joining us at Villa Rica.

Garay receiving no intelligence of his firſt armament, ſent a ſecond, which alſo arrived at our port; and having now expended much treaſure, and learning the good fortune of Cortes, he was more than ever ſtimulated to make exertions. He therefore fitted out a fleet of thirteen ſhips, and embarked one hundred and thirty ſix cavalry, and eight hundred and forty foot ſoldiers, moſtly muſqueteers and croſsbow-men. The fleet under his command ſailed from Jamaica in the year one thouſand five hundred and twenty three, on the day of St. John, and arri-

ved

ved without any particular occurrence at a port called Xagua in the Iſland of Cuba. On his arrival here, he learned the news of Cortes having brought the province of Panuco under ſubjection, and that he had ſent a petition to his Majeſty to be appointed to the government of it. He was alſo told of the heroic actions of Cortes and his companions in arms, and of our having defeated Narvaez with only two hundred and ſeventy ſoldiers. He was therefore ſtruck with awe at the power of our chief, and the more ſo when he was viſited by the Licentiate Zuazo. One day diſcourſing with this gentleman on the fortunes of Cortes, he expreſſed his apprehenſions of a difference between them relative to the government of Panuco, and requeſted that Zuazo would mediate with Cortes in his favor, to which the other aſſented.

Shortly after this, Garay with his armament ſet out, and being forced by a ſtorm into the river Palmas, he there diſembarked and marched for Panuco. Knowing alſo that Cortes had made an eſtabliſhment there, he thought it neceſſary to take an oath of fidelity from thoſe under his command, and he nominated the officers requiſite for the eſtabliſhment of his colony, which he meant to name the city of Garayana.

Having advanced for two days march along the ſea ſhore through an uninhabited and marſhy country, he with his troops arrived at ſome villages, whoſe inhabitants received and entertained them hoſpitably, but, many of the ſoldiers ſtaying behind, robbed and injured the people. Garay continued his march and at length arrived at Panuco, which the troops had painted to themſelves as the end of their labours, but were ſadly undeceived by finding it almoſt a deſert, for the war of Cortes had waſted it, or what remained was concealed on the approach of the Spaniards, who found nothing but bare walls, where they were to ſuſtain the attack of flies, and vermin of every deſcription. One misfortune following another, he could get no intelligence from his fleet, but learned by a Spaniard who having committed ſome crime was a fugitive among the Indians, that it had not arrived at the port. The

ſame

ſame perſon gave a very unfavorable account of the country of Panuco, enhancing that of Mexico, and this making a ſtrong impreſſion on the minds of Garay's ſoldiers, they began to diſband, and went towards Mexico, robbing the natives in their way.

All theſe things combined reduced Garay to a bad ſituation, and he ſent one of his officers named Diego de Ocampo, to ſound the diſpoſition of the governor under Cortes in the colony of Santiſtevan, to whom he notified the appointment he had obtained from his Majeſty. This officer anſwered Garay's meſſage politely, and returned a favorable anſwer as to their reception, requeſting that the ſoldiers might not outrage the inhabitants; Pedro de Vallejo, for that was his name, at the ſame time ſent an expreſs to Cortes with Garay's letter, and ſollicited a ſtrong reinforcement, or the preſence of Cortes himſelf.

On the receipt of the intelligence from Vallejo, Cortes diſpatched Fra Bartholome, Alvarado, Sandoval, and Gonzalo de Ocampo, brother to the perſon of that name who was with Garay, and entruſted to them the inſtructions he had received, whereby his Majeſty's pleaſure was ſignified, that all his conqueſts ſhould be left under his command, until the matters in diſpute between him and Velaſquez ſhould be brought judicially to an iſſue.

I will now return to my relation of the ſteps taken by Garay, who advanced with his force into the neighbourhood of St. Eſtevan del Puerto. On receiving intelligence thereof, Vallejo concerted a plan with the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, and being guided by five deſerters who told him that Garay's troops were ſcattered negligently in a large town called Nacoplan, he came upon them by ſurpriſe, and made forty of them priſoners, aſſigning as a reaſon, their coming without producing any commiſſion, and the outrages which they committed on the inhabitants. This being reported to Garay, he demanded the priſoners, threatening Vallejo with the vengeance of government. Vallejo replied, that when he ſaw his Majeſty's orders he would obey them with all humility,

Founded by Gonzalo de Sandoval. 1522 D. (some say) 60 Leagues from Mexico
N.E. eight leagues from the Sea.

humility, and requeſting that they ſhould be ſent to him. At this moment the perſons deputed by Cortes arrived, and Diego de Ocampo being at that time firſt alcalde under Cortes in Mexico, began to remonſtrate againſt the entrance of Garay's force into that country, and ſeveral days were paſſed in remonſtrances and replies. During this time numbers of Garay's ſoldiers deſerted from him; thus he ſaw every day his force diminiſhing, and that of Cortes encreaſing. From his fleet he had intelligence, that two of his ſhips had been loſt in a tempeſt, and that the remainder, which were at the mouth of the river, had received and rejected a friendly invitation from Vallejo to remove higher up to a place of ſecurity, threatening at the ſame time, that in caſe of refuſal he would conſider them as pirates.

Vallejo continued ſecretly to negociate with the officers of the fleet, and having ſucceeded with two of them, they went to the ſhip of the commodore Juan de Grijalva, and informed him that he ſhould either bring his veſſel into the river, or quit the place entirely. To this Grijalva only anſwered by diſcharging his artillery, but on the receipt of certain letters from Alvarado and Fra Bartholome, accompanied with promiſes conveyed by a royal notary he was at laſt induced to accede to the firſt propoſition. No ſooner had he brought his ſhip into port than Vallejo declared all on board priſoners to his general Cortes; he was perſuaded however by Fra Bartholome to give them their liberty, from motives of humanity, which as he ſaid was the method of acting moſt agreeable to God and to Cæſar.

The unfortunate Garay entreated the officers of Cortes to reſtore his ſhips, and to compel his troops to return to him, promiſing to give up his intended eſtabliſhment, and make the beſt of his way to the river Palmas. This propoſal was acceded to, and every meaſure taken to deliver up to him his deſerters, though with little effect; for the ſoldiers deſpiſed Garay, and as to the oath of ſervice, they ſaid that they had complied with it in coming to Panuco. Garay was then in the utmoſt deſpair, and finally agreed to adopt the meaſure adviſed by the officers of Cortes,

Cortes, in writing to that general, ſtating his ſituation, and praying his protection in conſideration of their former intimacy. This requeſt was acceded to by Cortes, who ſent an invitation to him to come to Mexico. Garay ſet out upon his journey, and when he approached the city of Mexico, he was met by Cortes at the head of a number of Spaniſh gentlemen on horſeback, who conducted him to his newly built palace, and having heard the detail of his diſtreſſes, he promiſed him redreſs, and referred the affair to Fra Bartholome, Alvarado, and Sandoval. Fra Bartholome, to bind Cortes and Garay in ſtronger ties of friendſhip propoſed an alliance between the daughter of Cortes, named Donna Catalina Cortes or Pizarro, and the eldeſt ſon of Garay, who then held a command in his fleet. Cortes accepting the propoſal gave his daughter a liberal fortune, adding an aſſent to Garay's colonizing on the river of Palmas, and a promiſe to ſupport the undertaking.

Garay was now induced to intercede with the general, and obtained permiſſion for Narvaez to viſit the Iſland of Cuba; for which favor Narvaez was very thankful, and took his leave of Cortes with many profeſſions of gratitude and ſervice. As to Garay and his expedition, both one and the other approached their end, for he, attending Cortes to early mattins, and having walked about the church, and eaten his breakfaſt, was ſuddenly ſeized with a pleuriſy, which after a courſe of bleeding and purging was declared mortal. This was anounced to him by Fra Bartholome, who accompanied the fatal news with earneſt exhortations to him, to advert to the ſtate of his ſoul, and not loſe that in the next world, as he had already thrown away his fortune in this. Garay was impreſſed by the arguments of the good father, and having confeſſed, and had the rites of the church adminiſtered, he made his will, leaving Cortes and Fra Bartholome his executors, and in four days from the time he was firſt ſeized he gave up the ghoſt. This we obſerve peculiarly to belong to the climate of theſe countries; that in four days pleuriſies are fatal, of which we had many inſtances amongſt our ſoldiers, both in Tezcuco and in Cuyoacan. However Garay being now dead, God pardon him his ſins! amen. He received an honour-

able

able funeral, and Cortes and the other officers put themſelves into mourning. Thus died Garay in a diſtant country, a ſtrange houſe, and far from his wife and children. As to his armament, being now left without any head a competition aroſe for the command, between Juan de Grigalva, Gonzalo de Figueroa, Alonzo de Mendoza, Lorenzo de Alloa, Juan de Medina, Juan de Villa, Anthonio de la Cerda, and a certain Tobarda the moſt ſeditious fellow in the whole army. The young Garay however was ultimately made general, contrary to the inclination of every ſoldier; the conſequence of which was, that they ſeparated in ſmall bodies of fifteen or twenty, and went through the country pillaging as if they had been amongſt Moors. This enraging the Indians they laid a plot to cut all the Spaniards off, which they ſo effectually executed, that in a few days they had ſacrificed and eaten more than five hundred of Garay's ſoldiers. In ſome towns upwards of a hundred Spaniards were ſacrificed together. In other places they fell on and maſſacred theſe wanderers without reſiſtance, and encouraged thereby, they roſe againſt the ſettlement of St. Eſtevan in ſuch numbers, that it was with great difficulty they could be kept out of it, nor would they have been, but for ſeven or eight of the veterans of Cortes, who ſupported Vallejo, a brave man, and experienced officer. Theſe gallant veterans induced many of Garay's Spaniards to abide by them in the open field, being obliged to fight three battles, in one of which Vallejo was killed, and many were wounded. So deſperate did the Indians grow, that one night they killed and burned forty Spaniards and fifteen horſes, and among the ſoldiers who were killed were ſeveral of thoſe of Cortes.

When the general heard of theſe outrages he was exceedingly diſpleaſed, and determined to go in perſon to ſuppreſs them; but being at that moment prevented, having broken his arm by accident, he diſpatched Gonzalo de Sandoval, with one hundred infantry, fifty cavalry, two pieces of artillery, and fifteen arcabuſiers, to whom he joined eight thouſand Mexicans and Tlaſcalans, with orders not to quit thoſe diſ-

Expedition of Gonzalo de Sandoval to Panuco.

tricts until he had ſo completely ſubjugated them, as that it ſhould not be in their power again to make diſturbance. Sandoval was a man who did not ſleep at night when on any buſineſs of importance; of courſe he made no delay upon his route, towards the enemy, who expected him in two narrow defiles, where they had concentrated the whole force of the refractory provinces. Sandoval on learning this divided his force into two bodies, and attacked each of theſe poſts. The Indians reſiſted with their darts and arrows, whereby many of our ſoldiers were wounded, inſomuch that he was obliged to halt the body which he commanded in that bad poſition, and ſend orders to his other detachment to do the ſame for that night. The Indians retaining their firſt poſition, Sandoval recalled his detachment, and began his retreat towards Mexico. When the enemy perceived this, they thought themſelves conquerors, and began to follow and ſurround the Spaniards from all parts, ſhouting at, and reviling them. This Sandoval ſeemed not to regard, but continued his retreat, by which having completely deceived them, he made a ſudden countermarch at midnight, to gain the paſſes. This he effected, but not without the loſs of three of his horſes, and conſiderable danger to his whole army, many of whom were wounded. No ſooner were his two columns clear of the defiles, than he perceived in front vaſt bodies of Indians, who had arrived there that very night, on hearing that he had countermarched. He therefore again brought his whole force into one body, and perceiving the deſperation with which the Indians fought, and that they had actually wreſted the lances out of the hands of ſix of his ſoldiers, while his cavalry was compoſed of men unuſed to ſuch ſervice, he gave them full inſtructions how to act, telling them not to halt to give thruſts, becauſe the firſt thing that the Indian does when wounded is, to ſeize the lance. He farther directed, that if ſuch a thing happened, the ſoldier ſhould put ſpurs to his horſe, and with the lance firmly graſped in his hand, and under his arm, wreſt it from the enemy by the force of the horſe. Having then placed watches, guards, and patroles, he gave orders that the cavalry ſhould remain ſaddled all night, and the troops went to their repoſe

poſe on the bank of a river. The Mexicans and Tlaſcalans were poſted at a little diſtance, for Sandoval knew by experience, that if the enemy attacked him in the night, he would be little benefited by them.

As ſoon as daylight appeared, Sandoval put his army into march, but had hardly advanced half a mile when he heard the ſound of the drums of the Indians, and he was ſhortly after fronted by three large bodies of their warriors, who attempted to ſurround him. As ſoon as Sandoval perceived this, he made an attack upon them with his cavalry in two ſquadrons with ſuch ſpirit that he entirely broke and diſperſed them. This was not however effected without the loſs of two ſoldiers and three horſes. Our allies then made conſiderable deſtruction, burning all before them, until the army arrived at St. Eſtevan del Puerto. The remains of this colony Sandoval found in a wretched ſtate, and he was received as one who ſaved them from deſtruction, and the ſoldiers of Garay who were there aſſured him, that the preſervation of what remained was ſolely owing to our veterans. Sandoval then divided his cavalry, muſqueteers, and croſsbow-men, into different bodies, and placed them under the command of the veterans, with orders to carry on the war with vigour againſt the neighbouring Indians, and to ſend in what proviſions they could collect, for he was unable to go out, in conſequence of a bad wound. During three days his parties ſent in a number of priſoners of the lower claſs, together with five chiefs, the former of whom Sandoval releaſed. He then gave out an order to his troops not to ſend in any but ſuch as had been preſent at, or concerned, where the lives of Spaniards had been loſt.

Sandoval now prepared for an expedition againſt the enemy, and on the day after, marched out with thoſe troops which he had brought from Mexico, and by ſkilful meaſures ſucceeded in taking twenty caciques, who had commanded where no leſs than ſix hundred Spaniards had been put to death. Purſuing mild and ſevere meaſures at the ſame time, according to the circumſtances, he ſummoned the neighbouring

towns to a treaty of peace. Some acceded to his propoſals, but others neglected to attend. With the latter he diſſimulated, thinking it beſt not to notice their contumacy, and wrote to Cortes giving a full account of what he had done, and deſiring to know how the priſoners ſhould be diſpoſed of. Cortes on receiving theſe ſatisfactory accounts appointed Sandoval to ſucceed Vallejo, as commandant at St. Eſtevan, and informed him, that for the ſake of juſtice, and to prevent future miſchief, it was neceſſary to puniſh with death thoſe who had been any way concerned in, or who had abetted the murders of Spaniards, and he gave directions to the alcalde Diego de Ocampo, to take the neceſſary ſteps againſt them, with orders to execute ſuch as ſhould be legally condemned. He gave orders that every neceſſary meaſure alſo ſhould be taken to conciliate the natives of that province, and that proper ſteps ſhould be adopted to prevent any future outrages on the part of Garay's troops. Theſe letters, the contents of which were highly ſatisfactory to Sandoval having reached him, he proceeded conjointly with Ocampo to put the orders of Cortes into execution. In two days after their receipt they proceeded to the trial of thoſe caciques who were accuſed, and many being found guilty by evidence, or their own confeſſion, were put to death. Some were burnt and others hanged; many alſo were pardoned, and the diſtricts were given to the children and heirs of ſuch as ſuffered. Theſe acts of juſtice being done, Ocampo in compliance with the farther inſtructions he had received from Cortes, proceeded againſt all thoſe Spaniards who had committed outrages, robberies, or murders; or who, going through the country in bands, had invited other ſoldiers to deſert to them; and having ſeized and collected together theſe public diſturbers, he cauſed them to embark for the Iſland of Cuba. To Juan de Grijalva Cortes offered the alternative of accepting a preſent of two thouſand crowns, and a paſſage to Cuba, or if he preferred ſtaying in the country, an honorable reception at Mexico; Grijalva and all the others were anxious however to return and accordingly they ſet ſail for that iſland.

Sandoval

Mexicans also

This the Scythian Custom. But Botterini says they struck fire from flint

Sandoval and Ocampo having thus cleared the colony of theſe troubleſome inmates, returned to Mexico, leaving an officer of the name of Vallecillo governor of the ſettlement. On their arrival they were received by Cortes and every one there as their ſervices merited, for a general apprehenſion prevailed of ſome misfortune occurring on that expedition. Such was the ſucceſs of the meaſures purſued as I have above related, that there never was another inſurrection in that province.

The reader has been told how the Licentiate Zuazo met with Garay in the Iſland of Cuba, and that the latter made preſſing invitations to him to take a part in his expedition. Zuazo agreed to this propoſal, and promiſed to follow, as ſoon as he could give up his office. Having effected this he embarked, taking with him two brothers of the order of mercy, Fra Gonzalo de Pontevedra, and Fra Juan de Varillas. Theſe three perſons purſuing their voyage, fell among ſome ſmall iſlands named Las Viboras, very fatal to veſſels. Here, they were obliged to throw overboard their proviſions, and the pieces of pork attracted a number of ſharks, one of which ſeized a ſailor, and tore him to pieces, ſo that the whole water round them was diſcoloured with his blood. They were then obliged to run the veſſel on ſhore, and in this ſituation they were left. Two Indians of Cuba who were with them had the art of obtaining fire by rubbing two dry ſticks together; in the ſand they found ſome brackiſh water, and a quantity of turtles came aſhore to lay their eggs. Thus they obtained proviſions ſufficient to ſuſtain thirteen perſons. The ſailors alſo contrived to kill the ſea wolves which in the night were frequently found on the ſhore. Amongſt the crew were two ſhip carpenters, who had preſerved their working tools. Out of the wreck of the veſſel they conſtructed a ſmall ſailing boat in which three mariners and one Indian embarked for New Spain, and made the port of Calchocuca in the river Vanderas. From thence they went to Medellin, and informing the governor of the ſituation in which they had left the Licentiate, he ſent a veſſel in ſearch of them. The veſſel

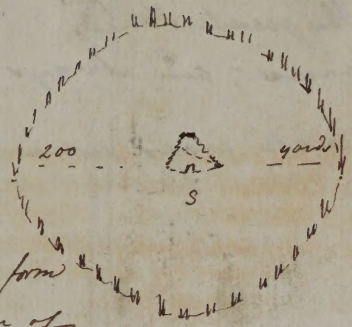
arrived

arrived at the iſland but Fra Gonzalo died a few days before. The reſt, ſhortly arrived at Medellin; from whence they went to Mexico, where they had all reaſon to be ſatisfied with the reception they met with from Cortes, who made Zuazo his alcalde major.

Minorca

Antiq. of Greece
Vol. 2. Chap. 1
1762.
1. Vol. 4to.

about two miles east of Alaior on an eminence enclosed by a force of large flat stones set on their ends close together and forming a circular plan of about 200 yards diameter



within the enclosure at some distance from the massy pile are two stones the one placed horizontally upon the upper edge of the other which last is fixed perpendicular in the ground. The upper stone is twenty sixteen feet long, seven broad, & twenty inches thick. The dimensions of the other differ but little, but it seems to be buried very deep in the ground. The height from the ground to the flat stone is about eleven or twelve feet. there are other stones fixed in regular positions at the foot of the great stone. these piles are on eminences and always in sight of each other. The island is full of small caves cut in the solid rock

In the center of the enclosure is a heap of great rough stones piled on each other without mortar in the figure of a cone about 30 yards in diameter and very near as many in height. It has a cavity at the base the entrance of which is to the south and easily admits of a man to enter it tho' not without stooping. There is a way near three feet broad contrived on the outside the pile in a spiral line to the top where is a flat area capable of containing sixty persons

The 4 principal stones in Davidson's index face the cardinal points

Architecture p. 362.

"It is probable either that the origin of pyramids was owing to the casing with stone. Hence raised grounds as they threw up in memory of their dead or that these hillocks in the northern parts were a barbarous imitation (more probably primitive) of pyramids - as in Syria there are some, not very small, cased with stone" Pococke. I.

CHAPTER IV.

Expeditions under various officers.

AS the views of Cortes were always lofty and tending towards domination, and as he was well ſupported by the talents and bravery of his captains and ſoldiers, after having eſtabliſhed his power in the great city of Mexico, and in Guaxaca, Zacatula, Colima, Vera Cruz, Panuco, and Guacacualco, he learned that in the province of Guatimala, there were populous nations, and rich mines. He therefore determined to ſend a force under Pedro de Alvarado, to conquer and colonize that country, and having firſt ſent an embaſſy thither, ineffectually, Alvarado at the head of three hundred infantry, and one hundred and thirty five cavalry, two hundred Tlaſcalans and Cholulans, and one hundred Mexican allies, with four pieces of cannon, was ordered to march to that province.

Cortes gave inſtructions to Alvarado, that he ſhould if poſſible bring thoſe nations over to him by peaceable methods, and that Fra Bartholome ſhould preach to them upon the articles of our holy religion; that all priſons and cages ſhould be broken in pieces, and the priſoners ſet at liberty.

The expedition ſet out from Mexico, on the thirteenth day of December, one thouſand five hundred and twenty three. On his march Alvarado received the ſubmiſſion of the diſtrict named the rocks of Guelamo, and there obtained many rich preſents of Gold. When the army, paſſing the provinces of the Zapotecas of Teguantepeque, and by Soconuſco,

Soconuſco, which laſt place contained upwards of fifteen thouſand houſes, came into the neighbourhood of a place called Zapotitlan, at a river over which there was a bridge, they perceived a number of bodies of warriors drawn up to diſpute the paſſage with them. An action enſued in which many ſoldiers were wounded, and a horſe killed. So numerous were the Indians, that the Spaniards could not break or diſperſe them without three very hard fought battles.

From this place Alvarado continued his march, under conſtant alarms from the neighbouring Indians of Quetzaltenango, and after ſome time he arrived at a defile which aſcends a mountain, for the length of about a league and a half. When he arrived at the ſummit, he found there an Indian woman, very fat, and having with her a dog of that ſpecies which they breed in order to eat, and which do not bark. This Indian was a witch; ſhe was in the act of ſacrificing the dog, which is a ſignal of hoſtility. Shortly after, our army perceived multitudes of armed Indians advancing upon them on all ſides, in a difficult broken tract of ground, where the cavalry could not charge. The infantry advanced, but our troops ſoon perceived that theſe Indians acted upon a regular plan; for they retreated into the moſt rough and difficult ground, where above ſix thouſand of the warriors of Utatlan, which is adjacent to Quetzaltenango, fell upon our people. They were howeve rfor the preſent put to flight, but ſoon rallied, being reinforced by freſh troops in great numbers, who waited our advance, and fought our troops foot to foot parties of three or four of them ſeizing a horſe before and behind, and endeavouring to pull him to the ground. During this time the exertions of Alvarado, and the exhortations of Fra Bartholome, who repreſented to our ſoldiers the ſervice which they owed to God, and that they muſt conquer or die, for the extenſion of our holy faith, never ceaſed; thus animated, our troops completely ſucceeded in diſperſing the Indians. They then halted in the field and were unmoleſted by the enemy for three days; after which they advanced to the town of Quetzaltenango.

and this is also the case with the North American tribes

Meaning

not bark. &c The dog of Egypt barks little but is not mute, nor are those of Tartary. In China
y are used for human food. The animal here spoken of is named in Sulivan the Techichi
thing could produce from it the sound of tongue or throat. They were very torpid & devoid
dours. The Islanders used them to drive into nets the Utia, a little animal like a rabbit
The Hootkans have not the Techichi ~~their~~ their domestic dogs are small and torpid and do not bark
have the Oonalaska
dogs, have none but the people of Cook's inlet have. The Shepewayans use dogs for draft
d abhor those who use them for food. as do the Knistinaux. — dogs are now
d for sacrificial purpose by the North American tribes. these dogs are sagacious
ng backed, short legged, prick eared with long curly tails & seldom bark
The Scythian Mountaineers eat dogs. The dogs of the Pacific Islands
white, with short crooked legs, long backs, pricked ears of the size of a lady
, some smooth others rough, sluggish and ~~howl~~ howl. Those of the Tchuts
who eat them resemble our Pomeranian breed. / Pamer. Scythia explains
Greenland dog howls & growls is too sluggish to bark. is eaten.
The Bagvat Geeta speaks of Dog eaters. —

Meaning to give ſome repoſe to his troops, Alvarado was diſappointed to find that the Indians were now aſſembled in greater force, and determined to attack him in his poſt. On their approach, to the number of about ſixteen thouſand, for their army was compoſed of two Xiquipils, Alvarado drew out his troops in a plain, and advancing upon the enemy, completely defeated them, with ſuch loſs, that for a long time after, they remained completely under awe of the Spaniards.

The chiefs now propoſed to treat for a peace, and ſent ambaſſadors to Alvarado who received them kindly, but they had at the ſame time arranged a plan for the deſtruction of the Spaniſh force, and it was this. Not far diſtant was a place called Utatlan, in a difficult country, and ſurrounded with defiles, whither they perſuaded him to march, and it was determined, that when the Spaniards were arrived, they ſhould be fallen on by ſurpriſe with the forces of both the diſtricts. Alvarado marched for Utatlan, but on his arrival remarked the bad ſituation of the place. This town was of conſiderable ſtrength, having only two gates, to one of which was an aſcent of about five and twenty ſteps, and the other opened to a very bad and broken cauſeway. The ſtreets were very narrow, and the houſes joined; and in caſe of being attacked, the ground about the town was unfit for cavalry. The Spaniards obſerved alſo that the women and common people had diſappeared; and ſome Indians of the place which they had left told them, that warriors were poſted in ambuſcade round the town, which it was intended that night to ſet fire to, and that was to be a ſignal for a general attack.

Alvarado therefore ordered his troops under arms, and marched out into the open country, telling the caciques that it was to give his horſes graſs. They did not ſeem pleaſed with this change, and as ſoon as Alvarado had his troops clear of the town he ſeized the cacique who governed it, and reproaching him for his treaſon, ordered that he ſhould be burnt alive, but Olmedo obtained a reſpite and permiſſion to uſe his

endeavours to convert him to our holy faith; he accordingly preached an entire day, and at laſt ſucceeded, and as an indulgence, inſtead of being burned he was hanged, and his territory given to his ſon. Alvarado now fell upon, and diſperſed ſuch of the natives as remained about the town, and his ſucceſs having become known in Guatimala, previous to his arrival on the frontiers of that nation which was in hoſtility with the people of Utatlan, they determined to treat; for that purpoſe they ſent an embaſſy charged with a quantity of gold, and to declare their ſubmiſſion as vaſſals to his Majeſty; they offered at the ſame time to ſerve in his wars. Alvarado accepted their ſubmiſſion and their offer of ſervice, deſiring them to ſend to him two thouſand of their warriors, which requiſition was immediately complied with. As the people had rebelled again, Alvarado continued in the country of Utatlan about eight days, collecting a conſiderable ſpoil and many ſlaves, and then ſetting forward on his march, he ſoon arrived at the city of Guatimala, where he was hoſpitably received.

During this time the greateſt harmony prevailed between Alvarado and his troops, and the natives, the chiefs of whom informed him that in their neighbourhood was a nation called the Altitans, who poſſeſſed ſeveral ſtrong fortreſſes on the ſide of a lake, and who refuſed to come in and make ſubmiſſion. They alſo repreſented them as a bad and malicious people. To theſe Alvarado ſent an invitation, but they maltreated the perſons who brought it, in conſequence of which, he found it neceſſary to go with an armed force, and taking with him one hundred and forty Spaniſh ſoldiers, and two thouſand Guatimalans, he marched againſt them, renewing his offer, which was returned by a diſcharge of arrows from their warriors, who marched out armed in coats of mail, and ſounding warlike inſtruments. Alvarado put them to flight, and purſued them, with conſiderable loſs, to their fortreſſes which were over the lake. He then drove them from thence, and making ſeveral priſoners, compelled them to take to the water, and croſs over to an iſland. The principal perſons whom he had taken, he ſet at liberty, and bid them go and uſe their endeavours to perſuade their countrymen to a peace.

Between

Between threats and promiſes Alvarado at length ſucceeded, after which he returned to Guatimala. Fra Bartholome exerted himſelf with effect in his holy office, for, erecting an altar and an image of our Lady, he explained the myſteries of our faith to the natives, who imitated our example in adoring the Holy Virgin.

A people who came from a diſtance towards the ſouth, to make ſubmiſſion, and who were named the Pipiles, told our chief, that in their way was a nation called the Izcuintepeques, of a very malignant and obſtinate diſpoſition, who maltreated all ſuch as went through their country. To them he ſent an invitation to come in and make ſubmiſſion, which they neglecting, he marched againſt them with his whole force and a body of his allies of Guatimala, and coming on them by ſurpriſe he made great deſtruction among them. This was an unfortunate event, productive of miſchief, and directly contrary to his Majeſty's orders. I have now given the reader a ſummary account of the conqueſt and pacification of Guatimala and its dependencies, but it may be found at full length as written by Gonzalo de Alvarado. I was not preſent at it, nor did I go into that province until my return from Higueras. The Indians of this province are not good ſoldiers; only waiting the attack in broken ground.

Cortes had been informed that the provinces of Higueras and Honduras contained rich mines, and certain ſailors alſo told him, they had met with the natives fiſhing, and that they uſed nets which had weights of gold mixed with copper; as alſo, that a ſtraight, or paſſage, was probably ſomewhere about that coaſt. In compliance with his Majeſty's orders, he therefore determined to ſend a body of troops thither under Chriſtoval de Oli to ſearch for this paſſage to the Spice Iſlands, and to make enquiry concerning the mines. As the way thither by land was very tedious and difficult, it was determined he ſhould go by ſea, and accordingly ſix ſhips were provided, and three hundred and ſeventy ſoldiers embarked, of whom one hundred were muſqueteers and croſsbowmen, and twenty two, cavalry. Five alſo of the old conquerors of

Mexico, the companions of Cortes and his Majeſty's veteran ſervants, who had retired to their houſes and repoſe, were commanded to take up arms again on this occaſion; and it was of no uſe to tell Cortes that any one had ſerved long enough, or ſuffered hardſhips, for when Cortes ordered no remonſtrances availed. There was alſo one Briones, a ſeafaring man, of a ſeditious diſpoſition, and a bitter enemy to Cortes, and many of the ſoldiers who embarked thought they had been ill uſed in the diſtribution of lands and property.

The inſtructions given to De Oli were, to ſail to the Havannah, to receive proviſions and neceſſaries, and purſue his voyage to Higueras, where he was to make enquiry whether any harbour, ſtraight, or paſſage lay to the ſouthward; alſo to ſearch for mines of gold, and ſilver, and in ſome commodious ſituation to build a town, not neglecting the intereſts of the church, for the extenſion whereof, two reverend friars, one of whom ſpoke the Mexican language, were to attend the expedition.

De Oli embarked from Villa Rica, and arrived at the Havannah, where he took on board his proviſions and horſes and alſo five perſons of thoſe who had come out with Garay, and who had been expelled from the ſettlement of Panuco for ſeditious conduct. Theſe perſons attached themſelves to De Oli, and began to inſtil their poiſonous counſels in his mind, adviſing him to renounce his obedience to Cortes. Briones alſo laboured in this, and having concerted matters with Velaſquez the mortal enemy of Cortes, it was ſettled amongſt them, that De Oli ſhould put himſelf under Velaſquez, who would ſupport him in his expedition, and alſo make ſuch repreſentations at court, that the new ſettlement ſhould be taken out of the hands of Cortes, and the government thereof given to De Oli. This man was of great perſonal valour, a very good ſoldier, but unfit to be a commander; he was at this time about thirty ſix years of age, and was a native of Baeza or Linares; he had a good perſon and countenance, a cleft in his under lip, and his voice was rough and fierce; he was endued with many good

The diſtrict of Cimatan being particularly refractory, and Captain Luis Marin being unwilling at that time to ſend a body of troops thither, it was determined that four neighbours, whereof I was one, ſhould be ſent to try if we could bring the people to reaſon. Accordingly, ſetting out upon our journey, when we approached the principal town, we diſpatched meſſengers to acquaint the people with our buſineſs. When we came nearer to it we were met by a large body of Indians, armed with lances, and bows and arrows, who killed two of my comrades, and wounded me deſperately in the throat. My ſurviving companion after a few blows provided for himſelf by making off to ſome canoes by the bank of the river Macapa, ſo that I was left alone; I however retained ſufficiently my ſenſes, to creep into ſome buſhes where recovering a little, I addreſſed myſelf to heaven, and implored the aid of our Holy Virgin, beſeeching her not to let me die in the hands of thoſe dogs of Indians. Then, feeling my powers return to me, I ſallied out, and forcing my paſſage through the natives, giving many good cuts by the way, I made my eſcape to where my comrade was in the canoes, with four Indians whom we had brought with us to carry our baggage, which they had thrown away, and which the natives quitted us, to pillage. As it was the will of God that we ſhould not loſe our lives on this occaſion, we then got acroſs the river, which is very broad and deep, and full of alligators. To avoid the Indians we were obliged to remain eight days concealed in the woods, and from our not appearing, we were all concluded to be loſt. As was the cuſtom at that time, our property was forthwith divided amongſt the other Spaniards, however at the end of twenty three days we returned to our town, to the great joy of our friends, and diſappointment of thoſe who had gotten poſſeſſion of our lands and Indians.

Captain Marin now thought proper to go to Cortes to repreſent the ſtate of affairs, and demand more ſoldiers. He accordingly ſet out and waited on Cortes, who gave him thirty ſoldiers, commanded by Alonzo de Grado, with orders for the whole body of Spaniards to march for the province of Chiapa which was in a ſtate of war. Accordingly we ſet out for

Chiapan.

This Nation was asserted to be tributary to Mexico. — Their Language was after — however it may have happened — as for instance the names of the 20 days of the Chiapanese Month.

1. Imox.	2. Ique	3 Votan	4 Chanan	5 Nagh.
6 Zoyk.	7 Mochic	8 Zambat.	9 Molo. or Moolco.	10. Elab
11 Batz.	12 Enoh.	13 Blow.	14 High	15. Tzizimin
16 Chabin	17 Chizh	18. Chinagh	19 Cabogh	20 Ahaual

These names were distinct from those of so many Chiapanese Heroes.

for the purpoſe of reducing it, and of building a town there, to keep the inhabitants in check.

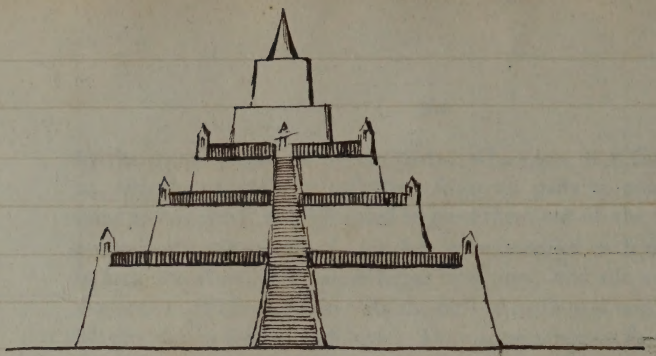
The firſt thing neceſſary was to make a road through the woods, in a very marſhy country where we were obliged to make cauſeways for the horſes to paſs. Proceeding thus, we arrived at a place called Tezpuztlan, and continued our route to another town named Cachula, from whence we proceeded, there being no paſſage previous to our expedition, from the fear the other natives have of thoſe of Chiapa, who undoubtedly were at that time the braveſt warriors in America; they alſo robbed paſſengers and travelling merchants, and brought off the inhabitants of theſe diſtricts to colonize and till their ground, nor could the Mexicans ever ſubdue them. This our expedition took place in Lent, the year I cannot bring to my recollection, but think it was one thouſand five hundred and twenty four. When we came near the city of Chiapa, we made a review of our force, which conſiſted of twenty ſeven horſemen, twenty three muſqueteers, and a field piece under the direction of a gunner who told us that he had ſerved in Italy; however that was, he was of no uſe, being a very cowardly fellow. We had ſeventy foot ſoldiers armed with ſword and target, and about eighty Mexicans. The cacique of Cachula with ſome of his principal people attended us, trembling with fear; four ſoldiers of the moſt active of our little army, of whom I was one, were always ſent forward to reconnoitre; the ground not being fit for a horſe I left mine behind, and we were uſually in front of the army about half a league. The people of Chiapa being much accuſtomed to hunting, ſome of them who were thus employed perceiving us at a diſtance gave the alarm, and made ſignals by ſmoke.

As we approached their firſt ſettlement, which is called Eſtapa, and is diſtant four leagues from the principal town, we found the roads, which ran through cultivated grounds, wide and convenient; and on each ſide were plentiful crops of corn, and vegetables. We entered this town, but the inhabitants had quitted it, and having poſted our guards and ſent out patroles, the remainder went to reſt; but we were ſoon rouſed by

by the arrival of two of our out party, who came in at full ſpeed to tell us, that the natives were collecting from all parts to attack us. We ſtood to our arms, and advanced to meet them out of the town, where a very ſevere action enſued, for they were provided with darts hardened in fire, war clubs, and lances larger than ours, and alſo a good defenſive armour made of cotton. As the field of battle was very ſtoney, their ſlingers did us infinite miſchief. They approached us ſo cloſe that in the firſt attack they killed two of our ſoldiers, and four horſes, wounded our reverend father, Fra Juan, and thirteen ſoldiers, and deſtroyed many of our allies. Our captain, Marin, alſo was wounded in two places. This action laſted till dark night, when, having made an unſatisfactory experiment of the ſharpneſs of our ſwords and the effect of our muſquetry, the enemy retired, leaving behind them fifteen killed, and many wounded, from two of whom, apparently principal people, we learned, that on the next day a general attack was intended upon us.

The manner in which the enemy had fought convinced us that they were no deſpicable warriors: for when a cavalry man halted to make a thruſt the Indians ſeized the horſe, and wreſted the lance out of the horſeman's hand, or pulled him to the ground.

On the next day we purſued our route to the city of Chiapa, and a city it might truly be called, from the regularity of its ſtreets and houſes. It contained not leſs than four thouſand families, not reckoning the population of the many dependent towns in its neighbourhood. At the diſtance of about a quarter of a league from the place which we had left, we found the whole force of Chiapa drawn up to receive us. Their troops were adorned with plumage, and well armed, offenſively and defenſively, and the hills reſounded with their ſhouts on our appearance. It was dreadful to behold the fury with which they threw themſelves upon us like enraged lions; as for our black artillery man, and black he was indeed to us, he was ſo ſtupified with fear, that he ſtood trembling and unable to put the match to the gun, and when at laſt



inside Stairs

Temple to Quane Woo, the many handed Goddess of Japan.

N.B. This deity in Japan & China has the Jewel in the Navel. V. Egypt.

The victims marched up the Stairs in ranks, so they could not have been narrow. The dead body after sacrifice was dismissed by one kick of the priest from the top of the stairs to the bottom so they must have been steep. They are said to be very steep as they no doubt were inasmuch as a litter was hauled up them. & the altars of sacrifice were close to the uppermost step. It is most probable the temple of Juno was built as this is and that the enonymous Conqueror is mistaken.

Quea, in Calvan composite words is the sound for "woman.

tufts of cotton mixed with paints or stained, and stuck on the skin with turpentine. This was a practice among the young people of the Calvan nation at their religious festivals.

architecture.

"These / Egyptian Pyramids at Saccara / do not look like Pyramids but more like hills "cased with Stone so that it is probable either that the origin of pyramids was owing to "casing with stone such raised hillocks grounds as they threw up in honour of "their dead or that these hillocks in the northern parts were a barbarous imi "tation of pyramids and as in Syria there are some not very small cased with "stone. It is possible they might first have been made in honour of great "men and afterwards converted to another use

laſt we ſucceeded in rouſing him, he fired the piece with no other effect than that of wounding three of our own men. Our captain gave orders to the cavalry to form in ſmall bodies, and the muſqueteers, croſsbowmen, and ſword and buckler men, to cloſe into one compact battalion, whereby the cavalry and infantry ſupported each other. The enemy were ſo numerous that had we not been the men we were, it would have gone very hard with us, and we ourſelves were aſtoniſhed at the bravery of our adverſaries; but good father Bartholome ſtood firmly by us, and adminiſtered comfort to us by his exhortations, promiſing that we ſhould be rewarded for our exertions, both by God and by Cæſar. Our Captain Marin likewiſe frequently encouraged us, calling out to charge them in the name of St. Jago. We at length forced them to fly before us; but as there were hard by, tracts of very rocky ground where the cavalry could not follow them, freſh bodies of Indians fell upon us by ſurpriſe, while we, thinking the day our own, were returning thanks to God and our Lady. Of theſe troops a number were prepared with long thongs to twiſt round the horſes, and throw them down, and they had alſo ſtretched out the nets which they uſed in hunting, for the ſame purpoſe. The enemy attacked us here ſo deſperately that hardly one of our ſoldiers eſcaped without a wound; they wreſted the lances from ſome of our cavalry, and killed two ſoldiers and five horſes. In the centre of their army was a woman, aged, and immoderately fat, who was eſteemed by them a goddeſs, and had promiſed them the victory. They had alſo incenſe in a pan, and certain idols made of ſtone. This woman, who had her body painted, and cotton mixed with the paint, advanced without any fear among our allies, who were formed by companies, and by whom this infernal deity was in a very ſhort time torn to pieces.

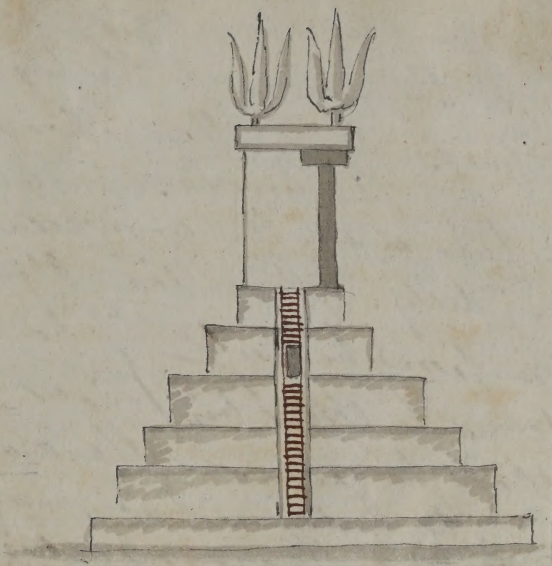
During this time the battle raged, and we and our captain recommending ourſelves to our Lady, and beſeeching the reverend father to pray for us, threw ourſelves into the thickeſt of it, and forced the enemy to fly, ſome to the rocks, others to the river, whereby they effected their eſcape, being excellent ſwimmers. We then halted to take breath,

Lucane whom is Cuban. Tua in compositi words
language. Lucane whom is Cuban. Tua in compositi words
men below is they. great woman Kybele. -
Montezuma is Japanese

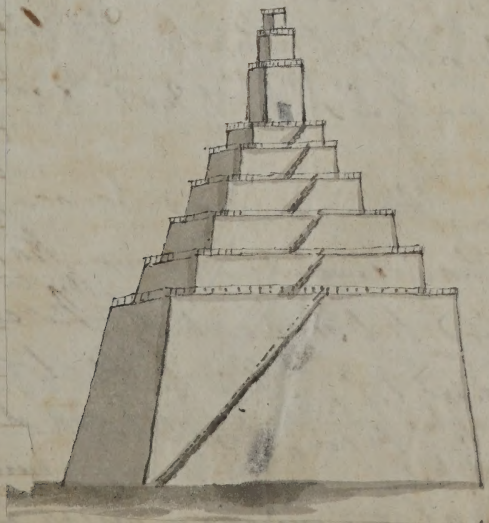
and our good friar, joined by the ſoldiers, ſang the hymn which begins " Salve &c," and we returned thanks to God for the victory. Our army then advanced towards a town by the ſide of a river, where we remained the entire day and night, paying particular attention to the concealment of our dead.

About midnight, ten chieftains of the neighbouring diſtricts came down the river which is very broad and deep in five canoes; they diſembarked at one of our poſts, and were made priſoners. Being brought before our captain, they told him they belonged to a nation called the Xaltepeques, againſt whom the people of Chiapa had made war; their object was, to offer their ſupport, and to obtain from us a promiſe, that in caſe of ſucceſs againſt the Chiapans, we ſhould ſet free from them the nations to which theſe Indians belonged; in the hopes of which, they promiſed us aſſiſtance to paſs the river, which could not otherwiſe be done. This was very ſatisfactory to us, and therefore leaving two of their party behind, the reſt went immediately to provide twenty canoes. The remainder of the night was paſſed under a ſtrict watch, for the drums and horns of the enemy were heard, from the banks of the river, where they were collecting to attack us. As ſoon as it was light we ſaw our friends arrive with the canoes; they alſo ſhewed us a ford, though a very dangerous one, and were urgent to us to loſe no time in paſſing, to ſave the lives of ſome of their countrymen who had been made priſoners. Accordingly we paſſed the river, formed into a ſolid column, at the ford, which took us up to our armpits, and where we loſt one of our cavalry. On the oppoſite bank we were aſſailed by the enemy with ſuch a diſcharge of darts and arrows, that not one of our party eſcaped without two or three wounds before we could get out of the water, but vaſt bodies of other Indians appearing in our rear, and declaring for us, by attacking the Chiapans, they were ſoon forced to turn their backs and fly towards their city, whither we advanced in good order, with colours flying, and accompanied by our allies. On our arrival there, we found it too cloſe built to be ſafely occupied by us, and we therefore pitched our camp in the open field.

Our



Mexican



In their temples &c in which the made their last efforts of resistance. All the usages and abuses of the Solar ritual of the world were practised in Mexico. The sacred and civil architecture of the Saloan Nations was brought from Asia and was a close copy of that of their ancestors of the Old world.

Their temples were all constructed on a uniform and identical plan.

It proves the accuracy of Cortes when he says the height of the great temple of Mexico equalled that of the Giralda of Seville, which Clavigero says is hyperbolical but if he had looked into the history of Seville he would have found that fifty feet were added to the height of that tower since the days of Cortes.

This temple was a pyramid of eight exterior stages, it was an oblong (the area two parallellograms but never perfect squares) its length, 350 feet was to its breadth as 3, to two, its height to the fifth stage or platform as 1. to 3 being 114 feet. the lowest of the solid stages was at the height of one half of the building from the ground. the superior ones were each of the height of 12 feet. and breadth of eight. The sacrifices were performed on the platform of the fifth stage the summit of the solid structure where was a wooden tower supported by on pillars, of three stories, in front of which, and at the two extreme corners of the platform were two altars, five feet high, for the perpetual fire. The Alter of sacrifice was before the door of the tower. in the summit of which the idols were placed. It was inverted by two areas laid out in rectangular courts surrounded by the cells of the priests, and attendants of the temple, and approached through these circuitously, but the gates, one of which was in each face of the great quadrangles, pointed the cardinal points and over them were the armorial. The whole mass of building was white except the balustrades which were of black marble or jasper & represented the coilings of serpents. at the top of the stairs going into the platform were two stuffed human skins, as chandeliers in the natural form to hold torches. the only point that is left problematical in these structures is the disposition of the stairs.

The great temple of Babylon is thus described, it was a square building (a rectangular) each face of the inclosure being two furlongs, in the centre is an elevation or solid tower one furlong in height and in the upper

Our captain now ſent meſſengers inviting them to peace, and ſhortly after, they ſent a deputation of their chiefs, praying forgiveneſs, and requeſting to be admitted ſubjects to his Majeſty. They alſo deſired that the neighbouring nations might not be permitted to deſtroy their houſes and plantations, which requeſt was readily granted. When we went into this town we found many priſoners confined in wooden cages, who had been ſeized by them when travelling. All theſe were releaſed and ſent to their homes. In their temples we found idols of horrid figure, which Fra Juan broke to pieces, and alſo many remains of men and boys juſt ſacrificed, and other traces of their moſt abominable cuſtoms.

Our captain then ſent orders to all the neighbouring nations to come in; amongſt the firſt who obeyed were theſe of Chinacatan, Gopanauſtla, Pinola, Gueguiztlan, Chamula, the Quilenes, and others of the Zoque language, with many more which I do not recollect. Theſe people were much ſurpriſed when they perceived with how ſmall a body we had ventured to attack the warlike nation of the Chiapans, whom the Mexicans never could conquer. Fra Juan preached to them with great ſucceſs, and many came to him to be baptiſed.

While this was paſſing, a certain Spaniſh ſoldier, attended by eight Mexicans, went to a town called Chamula, and there demanded without any authority a contribution of gold in the name of his captain. A portion was collected for him, but not ſatisfied therewith he attempted to ſeize the cacique, which cauſed an inſurrection in that and a neighbouring town named Guehuiſtlan. As ſoon as our captain got intelligence of it, he cauſed him to be ſeized, and immediately ſent him off by expreſs, priſoner, to Mexico. This man was one who conſidered himſelf of conſequence amongſt us, very evil diſpoſed, and cruel to the Indians.

We then proceeded to Chamula, which in conſequence of the above related outrage continued in rebellion. We were aſſiſted on our march

by the people of Cinacatan, a poliſhed and mercantile nation, and arriving at Chamula, we found this place ſtrongly fortified by nature, and the inhabitants well armed, having a large kind of ſhield with which they could cover the whole body, and which when not wanted was rolled up. When we approached we were attacked with ſhowers of arrows, upon which our captain ordered the cavalry to go into the plain, there to watch the inſurgents of the neighbouring diſtricts of Quiabuitlan. Our muſqueteers then fired upon the enemy, but with very little effect, whereas their miſſile weapons injured us who were uncovered, materially. We were during this whole day fighting thus, to very little purpoſe, and when we attempted to force the ramparts, we found them guarded by above two thouſand men armed with lances. Finding our endeavours ineffectual, it was determined to procure timber from another town which was depopulated, and to conſtruct of it the machines named burros or mantas, under cover of which twenty men or more could approach, and remain under the walls, ſo as to work an entrance. We therefore drew off for that time, and having procured the timber and conſtructed theſe machines, we again proceeded to the attack. Under cover of them our men endeavoured to undermine the wall, the enemy throwing down upon us ſcalding water mixed with blood, fire, and heavy ſtones, inſomuch that we were quite in deſpair, and forced to retreat to repair the machines, which having done, we again brought them to the walls, and working under them we made different breaches. As ſoon as the enemy perceived this, they ſent up to the top of their ramparts four of their principal perſons, prieſts, and others, who addreſſed us covered with their thick ſhields, and told us, that ſince we wanted gold we might have it; and therewith threw over ſeven crowns of fine gold, together with a quantity of gold trinkets, and other things made of that metal, caſt in the forms of ſhells and birds; and they alſo at the ſame time ſent among us freſh ſhowers of arrows, darts, and ſtones. We had ſucceeded in making two conſiderable breaches in the walls, but it was now dark, and a heavy rain began to fall; we were therefore obliged to deſiſt for that night, keeping good watch all round our poſt, and the cavalry remaining on the plain ground,

Used in the wars in Ireland and called a Sow

force, which is a base built to seven towers built rising successively
seven which is on the outside winding from the ground to the highest tower
last or summit tower is the chapel (mass the ark) Tower is the temple
figure of Jupiter. Belus. sitting. On the outside of this last chapel are two altars
woman sacrifice, and incense. — It was a square of two stadia (600 feet a
of the chamber of Ninus or Semiramis, dedicated to Jupiter. N.B. Major
quotes Belos. the summit was a dome chapel & observatory. V. Pietro della
round the base of the pyramid are foundations of other buildings — it was
with sun-dried bricks a foot square and three inches deep, with which
and some lime mortar was used together with courses of osiers &
about the use of which Rennel is doubtful but they were for the
use of tying the courses of brick work into the solid filling of
on the inside — the facing of brick to the inner earth — The figures
and of the sun and moon were on the bricks — This temple was
by Xerxes. It was built by Semiramis or Ninus the founder of the
ian Empire antecedent to that of the Medes and Persians. The
nians fled to it when Darius forced their gates. Darius brought
the Statues of Semiramis figures of the sun and moon. These
gs in the East & in Egypt also, were further assimilated to astro
ial observations —

lly the ceremonies of the solar ritual was performed on tops of mountains
the votaries of this worship descended to colonise the plain country
the deluge, they appropriated the national labour under the direction
priesthood to the formation of those stupendous monuments which
ay the practicability of would be doubted if they were not seen to
also, where they found elevated ground fit for their purpose
light effort they constructed the temples of their simple worship
ge (these natural hills thus rounded and shaped by
seen through all the plain country of the East in China and
dostan. They are probably the most ancient vestige of
labour. Where advantage could not be taken of an elevation

offered by the hand of nature, it became necessary to raise the whole structure above the level of the plain. Such was the tower of Babel. "And they said, let us make a tower whose top shall reach unto heaven. "Bricks had they for stone and slime for mortar"

The Palace of the Ancient Kings of Media was a hill cut into seven stages and ascended to, transversely.

The pyramids of Egypt are on the same principle but of more solid materials.

The first progressive step was that of making more than one among the upper stages habitable. Thus Staunton mentions a temple so ancient that the appropriation of it was beyond the reach of even Chinese record. It consists of nine stages, the lower solid, the upper, vacant. The temple of Fo-hi is upon an improved construction but in principle the same.

(v. p.) This temple mentioned by Staunton is in the remotest part of the town of Tong-chow-foo. it seems more ancient than the foundation of the town. it is of brick & in structure resembles what are called pagodas. It is perfectly solid in the first and second story without door or window, and has no appearance of steps or any access to the third story where is a door. The divisions of stories are marked externally by belts of brick work. Pagodas, as they are called are for the most part built on the summits of hills. their proportion is a height of five diameters of the base. They consist of an uneven number of stories.

According to tradition the great temple of Seylon which is a solid mound of earth faced with brick has, buried under it a number of images of their Bhood.

The temples of Pegu & Siam are now not less numerous than those of ancient Mexico were, and ruins of temples meet the Eye in every direction because the principle of devotion is directed solely to the erection of new and not to the preservation of the old. They are solid pyramidal [illegible] (buildings) faced with brick and mortar, admirably stuccoed with a kind of lime cement and oil, (the Indian art had some preparation in it not known to the Europeans) and painted with figures. They are built on hills, are terraced and ascended to by flights of steps. Rivoen-dogee, the Royal convent is a pyramid of five stories diminishing progressively to the summit, in the first

ground, ſaddled and bridled. The enemy during the whole night were ſounding their warlike inſtruments, ſuch as timbals, and ſmall trumpets, yelling, and threatening us with deſtruction on the next day, which they ſaid had been promiſed to them by their gods.

At day break we again brought forward our machines, to work at their walls, which the enemy defended with the greateſt obſtinacy, wounding five of our people, and amongſt them myſelf by a thruſt, and were it not for the ſtrength of my cotton quilted armour, the lance would have gone through me. Thus we were employed during the whole day, and the evening was drawing on, with a heavy fall of rain and a very thick miſt, as is frequently the caſe in that mountainous country. In conſequence of this our captain called us off from the engagement, and about the ſame time the enemy ceaſing to ſhout and make the noiſes they had hitherto done, I, who was accuſtomed to buſineſs of the kind, and alſo perceived that their lances were reſted againſt the walls, barbicans, and battlements, except about two hundred that ſtill appeared to be in hand, began to ſuſpect they were going to abandon the place; in conſequence whereof, I and one of my comrades getting in at a ſmall breach in the wall, to ſee what they were doing, fell ſuddenly in upon upwards of two hundred of them in arms, who attacked us with their lances, and would ſpeedily have put an end to us, but that ſome of our Indian allies who perceived our ſituation, called out to the reſt of our ſoldiers, who crouded in to where we were ſurrounded by theſe Indians, who only compoſed the rear guard of the garriſon, for all the reſt, men, women, and children, had evacuated the place by the other gate.

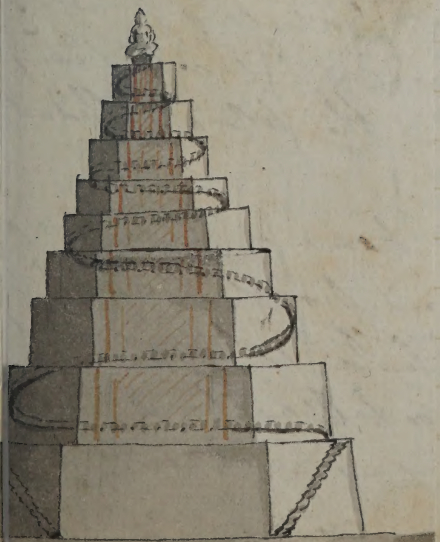
Theſe who remained we quickly put to flight, and purſuing them, we came up with many of the others, and made priſoners ſeveral men, women, and children. We now quitted the town, and purſued our route towards Chinacatan, halting for that night at a place where at preſent the city of Chiapa de los Eſpanoles is built. Being arrived here, our captain diſcharged ſix of his priſoners, with orders to inform their countrymen

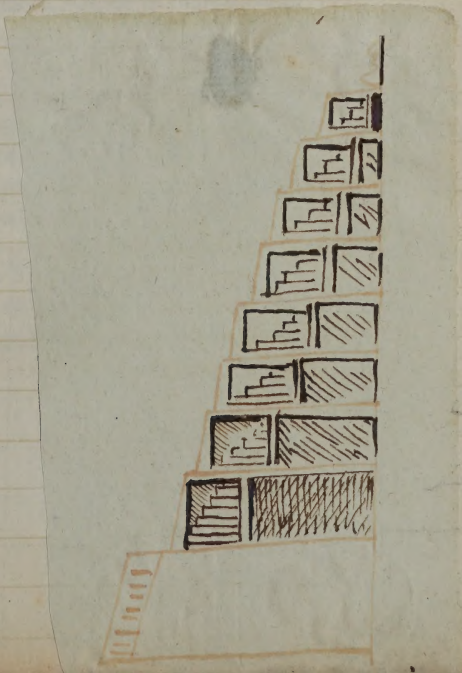
countrymen that if they ſubmitted, he would deliver up to them the whole of thoſe he had taken, which meſſage was delivered, and chearfully complied with.

In conſequence of the orders which Cortes had given to our captain, who was alſo my particular friend, to give me ſome good ſituation, I was appointed to the command of this encomienda which I held for eight years. The firſt thing I did was, to get a reverend father to preach to the Indians, and convert them to the chriſtian faith; we accordingly erected an altar and crucifix, and he preached to them to good effect. The firſt day we baptiſed fifteen, to my great ſatisfaction, for I loved and wiſhed well to them, they being now my own. There was in this neighbourhood a people who inhabited three fortified towns, and were in rebellion againſt us, named the Guegueſtitlans, and it became neceſſary to march againſt and reduce them. Leaving therefore our wounded and baggage behind, the moſt ſtout and active among us proceeded againſt them; they had barricaded all their approaches with fallen trees, which we cleared by the aſſiſtance of our Indian allies, and arrived under their fortreſſes, which appeared likely to give us enough to do, for the firſt we came to was full of warriors who were well appointed, offenſively and defenſively. When we mounted to the aſſault they all fled and left the place to us, but our allies made two of them priſoners, who were immediately releaſed, and ſent with offers of peace and good treatment to their friends, on ſubmiſſion. Theſe conditions they accepted and came in, bringing with them ſome trifling preſents of gold, and feathers of the quetzal.

Having thus effected our buſineſs here, we proceeded according to the directions of Cortes, to eſtabliſh a colony. Hereupon there was a difference of opinion amongſt us, for ſome were for it, but others who had plantations and Indians in Guacacualco were adverſe, objecting to it as an unfit ſituation for cavalry, and ſaying alſo that our force in its preſent reduced ſtate was inſufficient, the diſtrict being populous, and the towns built in the faſtneſſes of the mountains. Thus our party fell into

e court, surrounded by a high wall. The temples of Pagahm carry up a heavy
to near the top and then come abruptly to a point. The umbrella which crowns
, is a sacred ornament to which much consequence is attached. The whole is surround
houses of the priesthood. The most ancient of these buildings have the
nish / the knowledge of which is time immemorial in India / but the use of
tone is now lost in that country, and in its stead, progressive contraction in
the stones are laid in
three tiers. The steps are in one flight perpendicular to the base.
s and Shine the gate of the palace is through a tower which is the armory
re is kept the great drum the appendage of Royalty.
remains of the Lamas of Thibet are deposited in pyramids
ple of Seringham has seven parallel & concentric enclosures surrounding it. The
ing the cardinal points. Small / proportionably / doors were in the antient days
owledge of the principles of the Key-Stone
e of Fo-kien / v. figure B. / or temple of Porcelain of
: of nine stages, each stage, ~~the pyramid~~ the basement is solid / has an
ent, while the stair which communicates to all winds spirally round the
id to the summit. The ascent to the first stage is exterior and parallel





The ~~Empire~~ Chaldean Empire, which colonized the western world as Scythia probably did the Eastern was founded by Nimrod or Ninus, After wise Orion in Shinar = at and remained there & Years until the dispersion at Babel — To the Chaldean succeeded the Assyrian Empire, and to that the Persian. The Site of Government was at the confluence of the Tigris and Euphrates. "And it came to pass that as they, the Noachidæ or Cathites, journeyed from the East, they found a plain in the land of Shinar (Sithin, a nation Scythic. Ar. Armenia) and they dwelt there." This plain was also designated as Parsistan or the Country of the Parsees and was the seat whether ante diluvian science was transplanted. These Chaldeans are the Giants & Titans of Grak Fable. The western branch of Colonists, as Egyptus in Africa, sent their descendants into Europe under the name of Pelasgi vulgarly called Celts. The leaders of all the colonies claimed descent from Belus, Hercules. Perseus or Parey was the founder of the dynasty of the Pharaohs.
Bin is a temple in Sabean. Lin Persic & Keltic.
(doubtful)

+Noachidæ. Cathites, Patriarchs, Bactrians

into diſputes upon this and other ſubjects, for our captain, Marin, and Diego de Godoy who was a royal notary and a very buſy perſon, were adverſe to the plan. That troubleſome fellow Alonzo de Grado, alſo it appeared, was poſſeſſed of a patent from Cortes, giving him an encomienda in the province of Chiapa, when it was reduced to obedience. By virtue of this he demanded from Marin the gold which had been obtained from the Indians of Chiapa, and alſo that which had been found in the temples, amounting to one thouſand five hundred crowns. This Marin refuſed, alledging that it was neceſſary to employ it in replacing the horſes which had been killed in the expedition. All theſe differences together brought matters to ſuch an extremity, that our captain put both of them in irons, determining to ſend De Grado to Mexico; as to Godoy, by dint of interceſſion and promiſes he obtained his releaſe. Godoy made but a very bad return to Marin for his lenity, for he immediately entered into a cabal with De Grado, and it was agreed between them to make a formal complaint to Cortes againſt him. I was applied to alſo to write to him in exculpation of De Grado, becauſe they ſaid that Cortes would believe my repreſentations. I did write indeed, but it was to let Cortes know the true ſtate of the caſe, and by no means charging Marin with any impropriety. De Grado was ſent to Mexico under an oath to preſent himſelf to Cortes within eighty days; that time being allowed on account of the diſtance, which is upwards of one hundred and ninety leagues.

It was now determined by us, to chaſtiſe thoſe people who killed the two ſoldiers of that party wherewith I was ſent, as formerly mentioned. In our way we marched through a diſtrict ſo very rugged, that the paſſage was impoſſible to our horſes without aſſiſtance, which, on an application to the caciques was readily afforded us. Theſe people are named Tapelola. Continuing our route by the Silo, Suchiapa, and Coyumelapa diſtricts we came to thoſe of the Tecomayatacal and Ateapan Indians. The houſes in the chief town, which belonged to my diſtrict, joined each other, and formed a very populous and extenſive place.

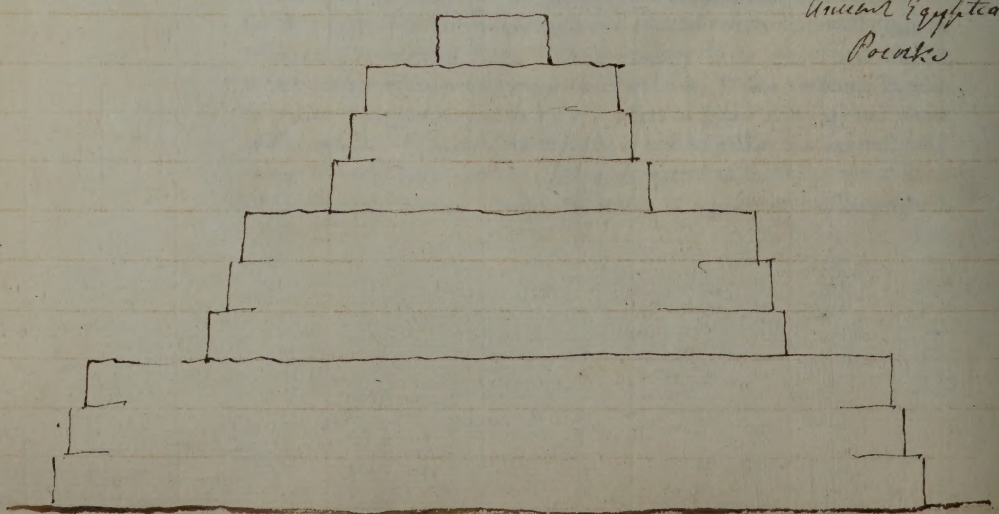
Near

Near this was a large and deep river, which it was neceſſary to paſs, and here we were oppoſed by the people of the town and vicinity, but after a ſharp action, wherein we had ſix ſoldiers wounded and three horſes killed, we put them to flight, they all taking to the mountains and woods, having firſt ſet fire to their town. We ſtayed here five days taking care of the wounded, and having made many of the women of this place priſoners, our captain ſent to invite the people to peace, which was accepted, and they returned to their homes. Godoy was averſe from this lenity, and told our captain that theſe people who had revolted without any reaſon ſhould be puniſhed, or at any rate made to pay for the horſes which were killed in the action. I was of a different opinion, and thought that ſince they came peaceably they ſhould not be made to ſuffer; and giving my opinion freely, Godoy became enraged and broke out into angry words, from which we came to blows, and drew our ſwords. A good many cuts paſſed between us before we could be parted, and if we had not been ſo, one or other of us would have loſt his life. Marin, who was a good and mild man, ſaw the impropriety of uſing harſh meaſures with theſe people, and reſtoring all their property to them, left them in peace.

We continued our march, and paſſing by other diſtricts of Cimatlan, and Talatiopan, we were aſſailed by a number of their archers, who gave us a volley whereby above twenty of our ſoldiers were wounded, and two horſes killed; and but that we immediately attacked and drove them from their poſt, they would have done us much miſchief. I muſt obſerve, that theſe are the ſtrongeſt archers that ever I met with, for they drive their arrows through two ſuits of cotton mail well quilted; which is a wonderful force. Their country is in great part marſh, which ſhakes when a foot-man walks upon it. It was therefore in vain to purſue the natives, and as for our offers of peace they treated them with neglect. We therefore thought it beſt to make our ſhorteſt way to our town of Guacacualco. We took our route for it by the diſtrict of Guimango, Nacaxa, Xuica, Teotitlan, Copilco, and others which

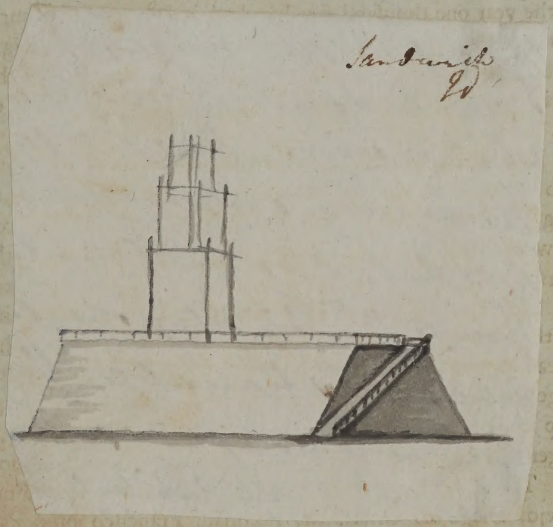
I do

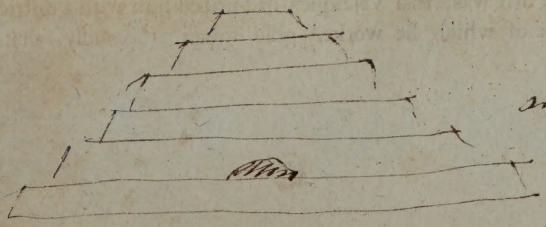
360 — Toledan feet — 300 parisian, a little more than 50 fenches. C.
50. brazas or estados, 257. parisian feet 42 fenches. C.
Great temple of Mexico, 200 Toledan cubits, 86 fenches. Hernandez's manuscript in the Escurial, quoted by ~~Hernandez~~ Kiesenberg in his Natural History. but it was oblong like those of Teotihuacan, & Cuzco. it was, it seems, 360 toledan feet in length by 257. in breadth at the base. the stairs on the South side. the two towers on the summit were of the height of 56 feet. 114. steps or feet high. in one flight.
The temples of Teotihuacan are three miles south from that place towards Guexocingo more than 20 from Mexico. about 500 feet high — the Spaniards took the stones &c. from the idols, which were figures of black basalt. Zumarraga caused them to be broken.
Remains existing of an aqueduct at Izucuzinco.
A. 1530. In the middle of this century the aqueduct of Chapoal was built by this people, directed by the Franciscan Francis Tembleque and was 30 miles in length. three bridges one of 47. one 13. one 67 arches one arch 110 feet high 61. broad. this last 3,170 feet long was erected in 3. years. the whole aqueduct in 17.



I do not recollect, to Ulapa, and acroſs the rivers Agaqualulco, and Tonala, to Guacacualco, where the killed horſes were paid for at a penny a pound.

As to De Grado, when he arrived at Mexico and waited on Cortes, the general was highly diſpleaſed with him, telling him to take three thouſand crowns and go to the Iſland of Cuba, and give him and others no farther trouble. De Grado however made ſuch apologies that they were afterwards good friends.





CHAPTER V.

Tranſactions in Old Spain.

IN the year one thouſand five hundred and twenty one, our moſt Holy Father Pope Adrian of Lobayana ſucceeded to the ſovereign pontificate. He was then governor of Caſtille, and reſided in the city of Vittoria, where our agents waited upon him to kiſs the foot of his holineſs. At the ſame time arrived a great nobleman from Germany, called Moſiur de Laſoa, chamberlain to his Majeſty, by whom he was ſent to congratulate his holineſs on his election. This M. de Laſoa, having heard the heroical actions of the conquerors of Mexico, and the great works they had done for the extenſion of our holy faith, by the converſion and baptiſm of ſo many thouſands of Indians, was intereſted in our behalf, and applied to the Holy Pontiff, requeſting him to accelerate the buſineſs wherein our agents were employed. This requeſt was readily granted, for independent of what was laid before him by our agents, our holy father had received many complaints againſt the Biſhop of Burgos from perſons of high honour and quality, whereby our agents were encouraged to proceed in a formal accuſation againſt him. Thoſe who were moſt active in the buſineſs were Franciſco de Montejo, Diego de Ordas, the licentiate Franciſco Nunez couſin to Cortes, and Martin Cortes our general's father, who were aſſiſted by many great and powerful noblemen, but principally by the Duke de Bejar; and thus countenanced, they brought forward their charges with great effect.

The firſt was, that Velaſquez had bribed him with a diſtrict, with the people of which he worked gold mines. Secondly, that in the year

year one thouſand five hundred and ſeventeen, when one hundred and ten of us procured veſſels at our own expence and ſet out for the diſcovery of New Spain, the Biſhop of Burgos informed his Majeſty that it was Diego de Velaſquez who had done ſo, contrary to the truth.

Thirdly that Velaſquez had ſent twenty thouſand crowns in gold, which his nephew Juan de Grijalva had obtained, to the biſhop, and no part to his Majeſty; and that when Cortes ſent a preſent of gold the biſhop ſeized it, ſuppreſſing our letters, and ſubſtituting others, aſcribing the ſaid preſent to Velaſquez. Alſo that the biſhop retained one half of the treaſure, and when Puertocarrero applied to him for permiſſion to wait upon his Majeſty, he cauſed him to be ſeized and thrown into priſon, where he died. Alſo, that he ſent orders to the officers of the Caſa de Contractacion of Seville, that they ſhould not give any aſſiſtance to Cortes. Farther, that he appointed as officers to the military ſervice in New Spain, ſuch as were not fit for it, as was the caſe in regard to one Tapia, to whom, in order to bring about a marriage between his niece and the ſaid Tapia, he promiſed the government of New Spain. Alſo, that he approved for good, the falſe relations tranſmitted by the agents of Velaſquez, which he forwarded to his Majeſty, ſuppreſſing thoſe of Cortes which were the true ones. There were beſides many other charges, all very well ſubſtantiated, and which he could not deny.

Theſe things being all brought to light, his holineſs was pleaſed to order, that the Biſhop of Burgos ſhould have no farther authority in New Spain, that Cortes ſhould be declared governor thereof, and that Velaſquez ſhould receive compenſation for the expences he had been at, and could duly prove. His holineſs ſent alſo to New Spain a number of indulgences for the hoſpitals and churches, and was pleaſed to direct Cortes and us the conquerors to pay unremitting attention to the converſion of the Indians, adding how much it was the duty of himſelf and all Chriſtendom to pray for thoſe who had done ſo much for the advancement of our holy faith. He alſo was pleaſed to ſend to us his

holy bulls of abſolution. All this his Majeſty graciouſly thought proper to confirm, ſo far as relates to the civil and military eſtabliſhment, adding thereto his order to Velaſquez to give up his government of Cuba, on account of his having ſent out the armament under Narvaez in defiance of the peremptory orders of the royal chamber of audience, and of the brethren of the order of St. Jerome. The Biſhop of Burgos was ſo affected by the cenſure which his holineſs the Pope paſſed upon his conduct, and by his Majeſty's orders in conſequence thereof, that when he retired to his country ſeat at Toro he fell dangerouſly ill.

At this period arrived in Old Caſtille, Pamphilo de Narvaez, and Chriſtoval de Tapia, whom the Biſhop of Burgos had created governor of New Spain, together with the pilots Umbria and Cardenas. Theſe perſons waited on the biſhop to demand his permiſſion to lay their accuſations againſt Cortes before his Majeſty, and as the biſhop deſired nothing better than to hear complaints of Cortes and of us, he ſhewed them every favour in his power. When the agents of Velaſquez perceived this, they gladly joined the party, and all together went to prefer their charges before the Emperor.

They made ſtrong accuſations againſt Cortes; firſt, that Velaſquez fitted out armaments three times to his own great coſt, and entruſted the command of the laſt to Cortes, who broke his engagement. Farther, that when Velaſquez ſent Narvaez with his Majeſty's commiſſion as governor general of New Spain, Cortes made war upon, and defeated him. Alſo, that when the Biſhop of Burgos ſent Tapia to take the government of thoſe countries in his Majeſty's name, he refuſed to obey, and by main force compelled him to reimbark. They alſo accuſed Cortes of having obtained a quantity of gold in the name of his Majeſty, and converting it to his own uſe; of having taken to himſelf a fifth of all prizage; of having burnt the feet of Guatimotzin; of retaining the ſoldiers ſhares; and building palaces and fortified houſes that were as large as whole villages, making the inhabitants round Mexico work at them, and forcing them to draw large cypreſs trees, and ſtones, from a great diſtance;

diſtance; and that he had given poiſon to Franciſco de Garay, to get from him his troops and ſhipping. There were many other accuſations brought forward, ſo that his Majeſty was at laſt tired of hearing them, believing them to be true.

Narvaez, when admitted into the Emperor's preſence addreſſed him in his pompous tone of voice, as follows. "Your Majeſty muſt fur- "ther know, that on the night I was taken priſoner, having your "royal commiſſion in my pocket, my eye put out, and in apprehenſion "of being burnt alive, for the apartment was in flames, one of Cor- "tes's captains, Alonzo de Avila at preſent priſoner in France, violent- "ly tore your commiſſion out of my pocket, and when I claimed it, "declaring what it was, he denied the fact, and ſaid that they were "bonds for money owing me by Spaniards in Mexico, and which I "was coming to enforce." At this the Emperor could not refrain from laughing. In regard to the charges, his Majeſty ſaid, he would give orders that ſtrict juſtice ſhould be done; and he forthwith commanded, that certain perſons of his royal privy council ſhould be formed into a court of enquiry to hear and decide upon theſe allegations. The perſons who compoſed this court were Mercurio Catarinario grand chancellor of Italy, De la Soa, and Doctor De la Roche, Flemings, Hernando de Vega lord of Grajales, the Doctor De Garavajal, and the Licentiate Vargas.

This court gave notice to the parties to come forward, and accordingly they produced their charges in the ſame form that they had been laid before his Majeſty. To the charges brought by Velaſquez it was replied, that De Cordova was the diſcoverer of New Spain, who did it with his companions at their own coſt, and that Velaſquez was here alſo criminal, in that he ordered him to go to the Iſland of Los Guanajes, to take Indians by force, and make ſlaves of them. Farther, that admitting he ſent Juan de Grijalva thither, it was not for the purpoſe of colonization but only for trade. That for the expences incurred, the principal part was born by the different captains, and not by Velaſquez,

and

and theſe captains had there collected twenty thouſand crowns, the principal part of which went to Velaſquez. Farther, that Velaſquez gave the Biſhop of Burgos Indians in the Iſland of Cuba to procure gold, neglecting his duty to his Majeſty. Alſo, that admitting it was he who ſent Cortes, it was by the approbation of his Majeſty, and by the providence of God; for that any other commander would have failed in an undertaking of ſuch danger, and that Cortes was not ſent by him to colonize, but to barter; and that his eſtabliſhment in the country was owing, not to the inſtructions of Velaſquez, but the inſtances of his companions, for the ſervice of God, and his Majeſty. Alſo that it was well known, that Cortes reported the whole of his proceedings to his Majeſty, ſending therewith all the gold he had been able to procure, he, and his companions, awaiting his Majeſty's further orders, proſtrate on the earth. It was alſo repreſented, how the Biſhop of Burgos ſuppreſſed the ſaid letters, and ſeized the preſents, concealing from his Majeſty our meritorious ſervice; and when our agents wanted to obtain permiſſion to wait on his Majeſty, he threw one of them, Puertocarrero, into priſon, where he died; and that he forbid the officers of his Majeſty at Seville, to furniſh us with what we required. All which was done by the ſaid biſhop, from a corrupt motive, as he wanted to procure a marriage between either Velaſquez or Tapia, and his niece named Donna Petronila de Fonſeca, as he had promiſed that his ſon-in-law ſhould be governor of Mexico. In ſupport of all which accuſations they were ready to produce proofs. As to the expedition of Narvaez, our agents replied, that in the firſt place Velaſquez deſerved to ſuffer death for diſobedience of his Majeſty's orders; and alſo, that he applied himſelf ſolely to the biſhop, neglecting his Majeſty, which was a high diſreſpect; in conſequence therefore of the above miſdemeanors and crimes, our agents, prayed that the court would be pleaſed to award puniſhment; to which the court replied that they would take it into conſideration.

In reply to the charges brought againſt Cortes by Narvaez it was repreſented, that on his coming to New Spain he ſent word to the great King

The island named Petronilla, in the bay of Tampa near Michaud Lat 27½ on the South
ay called so after this Lady by Gil Gonzalez de Avila

King Montezuma, that he came to reſcue him, and thereby cauſed ſuch a diſturbance in the country, as produced a dangerous war. That on his arrival at Vera Cruz, Cortes had written to him a friendly letter, deſiring to ſee his commiſſion, to which Narvaez would make no anſwer, but declared war againſt Cortes and his companions, notwithſtanding that Cortes invited him to, and repreſented the neceſſity of, an amicable junction, for the good of his Majeſty's ſervice, leſt all ſhould be loſt. But Cortes finding that all his offers were neglected, and Narvaez not ſhewing him his Majeſty's commiſſion, and knowing the miſconduct of Narvaez in ſeizing his Majeſty's oydor, to bring him to puniſhment for ſo doing, went to him, determined to ſee his authority, and to know the reaſon of his conduct, and that Narvaez had then attempted to ſurpriſe and ſeize him, of which he could adduce proofs and witneſſes, amongſt others Andrez de Duero, who was at that time with Narvaez. In regard to his cauſing the failure of Garay, and poiſoning him at breakfaſt, it was replied that the failure of the expedition was owing to Garay's own miſconduct, and ignorance of the country. That when Garay found his ſituation hopeleſs, he accepted the friendly offer which Cortes had made him, of an hoſpitable reception at Mexico, where an alliance was agreed upon between the families, and Garay was to have had aſſiſtance to eſtabliſh a colony on the river Palmas; and that if it was God's will to take him from this life, according to the oaths of the phyſicians, by a pleuriſy, it was not in the power of Cortes to prevent it. Cortes alſo proved in anſwer to the charge of having retained his Majeſty's fifth, that he had fairly expended it in the ſervice, together with ſix thouſand crowns of his own property: that the fifth which he deducted for himſelf was according to compact, and in regard to the charge of detaining the ſoldiers prize money it was replied, that in the capture of Mexico very little gold remained to be divided, inaſmuch as the wealth of the place was almoſt all fallen into the hands of the Tlaſcalan and Tezcucan allies. In regard to burning the feet of Guatimotzin, it was done contrary to the inclination of Cortes, by his Majeſty's officers, to force him to diſcover where Montezuma's treaſure was concealed. In anſwer to the charge of his buildings it was ſtated, that they

were

The palace built by Cortes on the foundation of Montezuma's Was burned in a sedition in 1692

were truly ſumptuous, and that the cypreſſes and ſtones were brought from a great diſtance, but that the ſaid buildings were for the uſe and honor of his Majeſty and his ſucceſſors: that the materials were brought the principal part of the way by water, and that the work was carried on by the general labour of the Indians, under the order of Guatimotzin, as is always the caſe in building the houſes of the great in that country. As to the complaint of Alonzo de Avila forcibly taking the commiſſion from Narvaez, it appeared upon inſpection that there was no commiſſion whatever in thoſe papers, the whole of which were receipts for the purchaſe of horſes, and other things ſimilar; but that Cortes never ſaw them, nor was it done by his order. In regard to the complaints of the pilots againſt Cortes, the feet of Umbria were cut off by the hand of juſtice, as a puniſhment for running away with his ſhip, and Cardenas had refuſed to take his ſhare in the diviſion of the gold, conſenting that the whole ſhould be ſent to his Majeſty, but that Cortes had given him out of his own purſe three hundred crowns, which was as much as he deſerved, being a perſon of little conſideration, and no ſoldier. In regard to the charge relative to Tapia, it was alledged that had he come to Mexico and produced his Majeſty's orders, they ſhould have been received by Cortes, proſtrate on the ground, with all reſpect, and humility; but his incapacity was ſo notorious, that it was the univerſal deſire, and advice, of the Spaniards then in New Spain, that Cortes ſhould remain in the command. Theſe charges and exculpations having been duly weighed by the court for five days, it was determined to lay the whole of the proceedings before his Majeſty, together with their deciſion, which was accordingly done. The ſentence which they gave was entirely in favour of Cortes: the merit and valour of him and the old conquerors of Mexico were highly praiſed, and ſilence was impoſed on Velaſquez as to his complaints, he being told that if he looked for a remuneration of his expences he muſt ſeek it from Cortes by courſe of law. Cortes was alſo declared governor general of New Spain, according to the orders of his holineſs the Pope. The court alſo approved of the arrangements made by him in that country, and authorized him to make the diviſions of the diſtricts in ſuch a manner as he thought fit.

Narvaez

Narvaez was referred for redreſs to France, where Avila who had ſeized his papers was at preſent priſoner; the pilots Umbria and Cardenas obtained royal cedules, granting to them property in New Spain to the amount of one thouſand crowns in rent; and it was ordained, that Cortes's veterans ſhould all have immediate and ample gratifications, in lands and Indians, and ſhould enjoy pre-eminence and precedency, ſuch as their valour deſerved. The ſentence thus given was taken to Valladolid to be confirmed by his Majeſty, who was then on his way to Flanders, and who did confirm and ratify it accordingly. His Majeſty alſo gave orders relative to the baniſhment of lapſed converts in that country, and forbid the admiſſion of ſcholars for a term of years. His Majeſty and the King of Hungary were alſo pleaſed to write to Cortes and to us, thanking us for the ſervices we had rendered. The affair being thus decided in our favour, the documents were intruſted to Rodorigo de Paz, couſin to Cortes, and to another relation of his, named Franciſco de las Caſas, who arrived at St. Jago in Cuba, the reſidence of Velaſquez the governor, where the ſentence being made known to him, and proclaimed by ſound of trumpet, he fell ill from vexation, and ſhortly after died very poor and miſerable. Montejo was given by his Majeſty the government of Yucatan and Cozumel, with the lordſhip and title of Don. To Diego de Ordaz he confirmed his poſſeſſions in New Spain, and ennobled him giving him for a coat of arms the Volcano of Guaxocingo, and with theſe honours and emoluments they returned to Mexico, from whence in two or three years De Ordas went back to Caſtille, to obtain from his Majeſty permiſſion to conquer the province of Maranion, in which undertaking he loſt his life and all his property. The Biſhop of Burgos was reduced to deſpair when he learned the manner in which the affair had gone, and that all his tranſactions with Velaſquez had come to light.

When Las Caſas and Rodrigo de Paz brought the intelligence to Mexico, that Cortes was appointed governor of that country, there was univerſal rejoicing. The meſſengers were liberally rewarded, Las Caſas being made captain and preſented with a good diſtrict called Anquitlan,

and De Paz obtained other valuable poſſeſſions, and was appointed by Cortes his major domo and ſecretary. To all thoſe who came from his country of Medellin, Cortes gave Indians, and to the captain of the veſſel a liberal reward in gold.

Some readers may be curious to learn how theſe matters came to my knowledge; to which I reply, that the conquerors received information of the proceedings of our agents or procuradors, in four or five letters written by them from Caſtille; but I uſed then to ſay often, that it appeared to me that they procured only for Cortes and themſelves, and during all that time, we who had made Cortes what he was, remained encountering one danger and hardſhip after another. May God grant us his protection, and inſtil into the mind of our great Cæſar the determination to cauſe his true and juſt intentions to be carried into effect.

CHAPTER VI.

Tranſactions and occurrences in Old and New Spain. Expedition againſt the Zapotecans.

IT appeared to us, the moſt ancient, wiſe, and experienced conquerors of Mexico, that Cortes ought now to conſider duly who were his friends, and ſtood by him through the whole of his difficulties and dangers, from the firſt, and to ſettle his accounts with Pedro, with Sancho, and with Martin, according to their deſerts; which was to be done by recalling to him thoſe who were low, and poor, and unfortunate, and by placing them in good ſituations, according to their deſerts, and his Majeſty's orders. All this Cortes was bound in duty to do, as alſo to procure for us and our children all the good offices, and emoluments, that were to be had in this country of New Spain. But, "that "which does not grow from the ſkin, hangs looſely to it;" and ſo it appeared, for inſtead of doing this he procured ſuch for no one but himſelf, as in the firſt place the government, and afterwards when he went to Caſtille, and got his title. But to advert to other matters. In regard to the diviſion of the country, it was decided by many of the moſt experienced, brave, and ſage conquerors thereof, that the proper method would be, to divide it into five parts, one whereof ſhould go to his Majeſty, another to be for the eſtabliſhment and revenues of our holy church, and the other three to be given to Cortes, and the reſt of us, the true original conquerors of the country; that each ſhould have a ſhare in perpetuity, and in proportion to his rank and deſerts, and that we, for our parts, who had ſerved his Majeſty here, without putting him to the leaſt coſt, and as one may ſay without his knowledge, he being in Flanders, would be well ſatisfied therewith, and contented, and

at our eaſe, not wandering about the world as is at preſent the caſe, and falling from bad to worſe; for many of us at this moment are without a morſel of bread to eat, and God knows what will become of our children.

I will now relate what Cortes did, and which I call a very unfair diſtribution. To the Veedor Chirinos, the Factor Salazar, J. de Ribera and all thoſe who came from Medellin, and to the dependents of great men who flattered and told him pleaſing things, he refuſed nothing. Not that I blame him for being generous, for there was enough for all; but I ſay that he ought to have firſt conſidered thoſe who ſerved his Majeſty, and whoſe valour and blood made him what he was. But enough of this, and now to other matters, for it is uſeleſs detailing our misfortunes, and how he treated us like vaſſals, and how we were obliged to take to our old trade of expeditions and battles; for though he forgot us in his diſtribution of property, he never failed to call on us when he wanted our aſſiſtance. However before I take leave of the ſubject let me mention, that when Luis Ponce de Leon came to ſupercede Cortes, we went to the general, to requeſt that he would give us ſome part of that property which his Majeſty had at that time ordered that he ſhould reſign. He then told us, and ſwore it, that if he returned to his government he would provide for us all, and not do as he had done, for which he was very ſorry. As if we were to be ſatisfied with promiſes and ſmooth words.

There had lately arrived certain officers of his Majeſty from Old Caſtille, amongſt whom were Alonzo de Eſtrada the treaſurer, Gonzalo de Salazar the factor, Rodrigo Albornos the contador, (Juan de Alderete being dead,) Pedro Almindes Chirinos the Veedor, and many others.

One Rodrigo Rangel whom I have already mentioned, now came to Cortes, telling him that he had hitherto acquired no fame in the wars, and wiſhed to have a command given him, wherewith to go and conquer

Property. That is of districts, or Encomiendas, to Encomenderos. These encomiendas
the Kings rents or taxes of a conquered district granted to an individual for
ve lives.

District. or Encomienda. a certain tract of Country or number of Indians given under the Care of a Spaniard as Protector, and yielding him for that a regulated annual Stipend in form of a capitation tax. this measure so humanely intended degenerated into gross abuses, and was succeeded by that of repartimiento, wherein a European similarly appointed acted as a kind of overseer of improvements & agricultural &c. Likewise, with equal good intentions it had a similar unfortunate result.

conquer the Zapotecans who were in rebellion, and to take with him Pedro de Ircio as his private counſellor and director. Cortes knew very well this man was not fit for any ſervice, being a poor diſeaſed miſerable object, from the effects of his ſins; he therefore put him off, telling him that nation was not eaſily to be conquered on account of the high rugged mountains which they inhabit, and which are always covered with miſts and clouds; as alſo that cavalry could not be brought againſt them, on account of the bad and narrow roads which it was neceſſary to climb like ladders, each ſoldier's head at the heels of his file leader. However at laſt Cortes agreed to the propoſal of this man who was a fellow of a very ſlanderous tongue, and one whom he would have been glad to have got rid of in this way where he was likely to loſe his life. The general in conſequence wrote to ten or twelve of us who were in Guacacualco, deſiring that we ſhould go with him, and I was one of the number thus ſelected. Theſe Indians are a light and very active people, and when in the field have a way of whiſtling and ſhouting, which makes the hills and woods reſound again. Having this man with us it was impoſſible to effect any thing, and as we advanced under a very heavy rain, we came to a village of ſcattered houſes, ſome being upon a ridge, and others in the valley. Poor Rangel whined and complained all the way of the pain of his limbs, to our great annoyance, knowing it was entirely uſeleſs trouble and danger, and that the Indians who were ſo nimble would deſtroy us climbing the rocks in one file, if they made a ſtand any where. It was at laſt agreed, as Rangel grew worſe and worſe, to abandon the black expedition as we uſed to call it, and return to our homes. His counſellor alſo as he called him, Pedro de Ircio, was the firſt to adviſe him to it, and ſetting the example by following his own advice, went home to his town of Villa Rica. Rangel however preferred accompanying us to Guacacualco, which was more grief to us than going with him in his expedition. He had hopes that the hot climate of that country, as he ſaid, would relieve him of his pains.

No ſooner had we arrived at this place then he took in his head to

go

go upon an expedition againſt the Indians of Cimaton and Tatupatan, who were rebellious, for they thought themſelves ſecure amongſt their great rivers and trembling marſhes. They were alſo formidable warriors, uſing very large and ſtrong bows. Rangel however produced his commiſſion from Cortes, and we dare not but to obey and march with him, to the number of one hundred horſe and foot. We accordingly ſet out, and arrived at a paſs between the marſhes and lakes, where the whole force of the Indians was drawn up to receive us, having made circular barricades of very groſs timber, with ſpike holes to ſhoot through, and palliſadoes. Here they gave us a hearty welcome with a flight of arrows and darts, killing ſeven horſes and wounding Rangel and eight ſoldiers. We had often told him what ſtout warriors theſe Indians were, and as he was a prating fellow he now exclaimed, by heaven, if he had believed us, he would not have been in that jeopardy now, and that in future we the old conquerors of the country ſhould be his captains and not he ours. As ſoon as our wounded men and horſes were dreſſed, he begged I would go forward to reconoitre. I took with me a very fierce greyhound which belonged to him, and ſelecting two other ſoldiers for my comrades, deſired the infantry to follow us cloſe, and for Rangel and the cavalry, that they ſhould keep a good diſtance in the rear. Purſuing our route towards Cimaton, we fell in with another poſt fortified like the preceding one, and defended as ſtrongly, from whence we received a volley, which killed the dog, and wounded me and each of my comrades. I received an arrow in my leg, and ſeven more remained in my cotton armour. I called immediately to ſome of our Indian allies who were a little in rear of us, to go and bring up all the infantry, but to order the cavalry not to advance, as all their horſes would ſurely be killed. When the infantry came up we attacked the barricades, and forced the Indians from them, driving them to their marſhes where it was impoſſible to follow them a ſtep, without danger of ſinking and being ſmothered. We then advanced, and halted at a village. On the next day we proceeded, and were encountered by a large body of Indians, poſted in a marſh. This was an inſtance of the addreſs of the natives, in chuſing to meet us in the plain, hoping that they could draw our cavalry

cavalry to charge them, in expectation that galloping full ſpeed they ſhould run into the marſh, and ſo it happened; for in ſpite of all we could ſay to Rangel of their art and ſtratagem, and how neceſſary it was to be wary, he ran his cavalry full at them, and tumbled in himſelf the firſt, head foremoſt into the marſh, where the Indians began to cloſe upon him, in order to ſeize him alive for ſacrifice.

By great exertions, we got him, badly wounded, out of their hands, half drowned, and his poor ſore head expoſed and broken. As this country is very populous, we found a village hard by, whither we went to take repoſe and dreſs the wounded. It was abandoned on our approach, but we had hardly been there a quarter of an hour when we were attacked with ſuch violence, that in the firſt onſet they killed one of our ſoldiers and two horſes, and we had much to do to drive them off. All this time Rangel was complaining of his wounds and bruiſes, and the muſquitos got about him in clouds. The vermin alſo with which that country is infeſted, bit him to ſuch a degree that his life was inſupportable, for he could get no reſt day or night, and the rain fell inceſſantly. He, and ſome of Garay's ſoldiers whom he had brought with him, ſeeing that nothing had been got but three very hard fought battles, and that eleven horſes and two ſoldiers had been killed and many more wounded, began to grow very ſick of the buſineſs, and to wiſh to be quickly at home. But Rangel did not wiſh to have it appear that this retreat was a choice of his, and therefore ſummoned a council of ſuch as he knew were of his own opinion.

About twenty of us had at this time gone to ſee if we could make any priſoners among ſome gardens and plantations hard by; we took five, and on my return Rangel called me aſide and told me that the council had determined to retreat, deſiring me to bring over the reſt to it. Having known the man before, I had a kindneſs for him. How ſir, ſaid I to him can you now think of returning? What will Cortes and the world ſay of you, when they hear of your retreat without effecting any thing in theſe two expeditions? You ſurely cannot think of returning

returning till you have reached the head town of theſe Indians! I will go forward on foot and reconoitre with the infantry, give my horſe to another ſoldier, and do you follow in the rear with the cavalry. By heavens cries out Rangel, for he was a very loud talker, Bernal Diaz gives good advice; the lot is caſt and we will march on. This was accordingly done, contrary to the inclination of ſeveral, and we advanced in good order to Cimaton, the principal town, where we were ſaluted as uſual with a flight of arrows, and then, on entry, found it abandoned. We burned it in part, and took ſeveral Indians whom we diſmiſſed, deſiring them to invite their neighbours to peace and amity; but thoſe we ſent never returned to us. This enraged Rangel againſt me, and he ſwore I ſhould procure him Indians in the place of thoſe who had been liberated. To pacify him I was fain to go with thirty ſoldiers, and we picked up ſome among the marſhes, whom I brought to him and he diſmiſſed, in hopes of inducing the reſt to come in, but without effect. Thus ended the famous expedition againſt the Zapotecans, and ſuch was all the fame Rangel acquired in the wars. In two years afterwards we effected the conqueſt of theſe countries, the natives whereof were converted to our holy faith, through the grace of God, and the exertions of the reverend father Bartholome de Olmedo, who poor man was at that time grown weak and infirm. Pity it was, for he was an excellent miniſter of the goſpel.

Cortes had now collected eighty thouſand crowns in gold, and a golden culverin, which he named the Phœnix, and had cauſed to be made as a preſent for the Emperor, was finiſhed. It was a ſuperb piece of workmanſhip. The following motto was engraved on it.

" Eſta Ave nacio ſin par; Yo en ſervir os ſin ſegundo;
" Y vos ſin igual en el Mundo.

The

" The immortal Phœnix peerleſs ſweeps the air;
" To Charles is given boundleſs rule to bear;
" Zealous to conquer, at my King's command,
" I in my ſervices unrivalled ſtand.

This preſent was ſent to Europe under the care of Diego de Soto. I am not certain if J. de Ribera, formerly ſecretary to Cortes, went with it. I always thought him a bad kind of man, from what I obſerved in him at play, either with cards or dice: beſides this he had many ill qualities.

He however was ſent to Caſtille, and took a ſum of money with him for the general's father; which money he appropriated to his own uſe, and then, unmindful of the obligations he had received, ſaid much ill of Cortes; and being very flippant and fluent of ſpeech, and having been his ſecretary, he obtained credit for what he ſaid, and combining with the Biſhop of Burgos and others, did him much harm; and would have done more had it not been for the interference of the Duke of Bejar, who protected Cortes on account of a treaty of marriage which was then on foot, between our general and a niece of that Duke, named Donna Juana de Zuniga. This, combined with the ſeaſonable arrival of the preſent, gave a favourable turn to the affairs of Cortes.

In regard to the golden Phœnix, I muſt obſerve, that the motto gave great offence to many, as they thought it preſumption in Cortes to ſay he had no equal in his ſervices. But his friends juſtly defended him; for who had extended ſo far the fame and power of his Majeſty, or brought ſo many thouſands of ſouls to the dominion of our holy church? They alſo did not forget us his aſſociates, but declared that we alſo were intitled to honours and emoluments, having earned them, as the Caſtillian nobility did thoſe enjoyed by their deſcendants.

As to the culverin, it went no farther than the city of Seville; his Majeſty was pleaſed to make a preſent of it to Don Franciſco de los Cobos, commendador major of Leon, who melted it down. Its value amounted to twenty thouſand ducats.

A ſuit was commenced by Martin Cortes againſt Ribera, on account of the money of which the latter had defrauded him. While it was yet pending, and as Ribera was on a journey, he ſtopped to dine at the town of Çadahalſa, where, eating ſome broiled meat, he fell down dead ſuddenly, and without confeſſion. God pardon his ſins! Amen.

Cortes continued to rebuild and embelliſh the city of Mexico. It was now as well peopled by the natives as it had ever been before. He gave them privileges, exempting them from all tribute to his Majeſty until their houſes were completed, as alſo the cauſeways, bridges, public edifices, and aqueducts. In the Spaniſh quarter churches and hoſpitals were erected, under the care of the good father Bartholome de Olmedo, as vicar and ſuperior. This reverend father had alſo eſtabliſhed an hoſpital for the natives, to whom he paid the utmoſt attention.

In compliance with our petition to his Majeſty, as formerly related, Don Franciſco de los Angeles, general of the Franciſcans, ſent twelve of his order under the vicarage of father Martin de Valencia. Amongſt them came father Toribio de Motolinea; this ſirname, the meaning of which is, the poor brother, was given him by the Mexicans, becauſe all that he got in charity he diſtributed in the ſame manner, and was frequently without a morſel to eat. He alſo always went barefooted, and wore a tattered habit, and conſtantly preaching to the natives, was very popular among them. As ſoon as Cortes was informed of their arrival at Villa Rica, he gave directions for the road to Mexico to be put in good order, houſes to be built at proper ſtations for them to refreſh in, and the inhabitants of all the towns to go out to receive them with

or Benavente.

with reverence, ringing the bells, bearing crucifixes and lighted wax candles, and the Spaniards to kneel down and kiſs their hands. When they approached Mexico, he went out to meet them and as ſoon as they appeared, Cortes threw himſelf from his horſe to kiſs the hands of the reverend vicar. When the natives ſaw the general on his knees to thoſe reverend fathers, with bare feet and in tattered habits, they were aſtoniſhed, and conſidering them as gods, they all followed his example, and have continued to do ſo ever ſince.

Cortes at this time thought it neceſſary to inform his Majeſty of his proceedings in the converſion of the natives, the rebuilding of the city, and the expedition which he had ſent againſt the province of Honduras under the command of De Oli, who had deſerted, and embraced the party of Velaſquez, on which account he had determined to ſend a force againſt him. He alſo complained of the proceedings of Velaſquez, and of the injury his Majeſty's ſervice had ſuſtained thereby, as alſo by the partiality of the Biſhop of Burgos. He remitted at the ſame time thirty thouſand crowns in gold to his Majeſty's treaſury, and lamented the unfortunate effects of thoſe abuſes, as having prevented him from making an ampler contribution of gold. He at the ſame time complained of one Rodrigo de Albornos, contador in Mexico, who aſperſed him from private motives, becauſe he had refuſed to give him in marriage the daughter of the Indian lord of Teſcuco, adding that he underſtood that this Albornos was attached to the intereſt of the Biſhop of Burgos, and was accuſtomed to write to him in cyphers.

At this time the news of the biſhop's removal had not reached Mexico. Albornos, before mentioned, ſent by the ſame veſſel his accuſations againſt Cortes, charging him with levying exceſſive contributions of gold for his own uſe. That he was fortifying caſtles, and marrying the daughters of great lords to his private ſoldiers, inſinuating that Cortes was endeavouring to ſet himſelf up as an independent king, and ſtrongly repreſenting the neceſſity of ſending an officer with a great force, to ſupercede him. Theſe letters came to the hands of the Biſhop

of Burgos, who laid them before the whole junto of the enemies of Cortes, and this new matter was immediately brought before his Majesty. They complained of the partiality which they alledged was shewn towards him on former occasions, and his Majesty, deceived by these misrepresentations, which were enforced by the bold and lofty tone of Narvaez, now issued an order for the admiral of St. Domingo to go with six hundred soldiers to arrest Cortes, and make him answer if he found him culpable, with his head. Also to punish all those of us who had been concerned in the attack upon Narvaez. As an encouragement, this officer was promised the admiralty of New Spain, the right of which was now under litigation in the courts.

The admiral, either from want of money, or being apprehensive of serious consequences from committing himself against so able and so successful a leader as Cortes, delayed setting out upon his expedition so long, that it gave time to the friends and agents of Cortes to make a full explanation of the circumstances, and also of the conduct of Albornos, to the Duke of Bejar, who immediately went to wait upon the Emperor, to represent the true state of the case, and to offer his life as a security for the loyalty and good conduct of Cortes.

His Majesty being upon due consideration convinced of the justice of our cause, determined to send a person of high quality and sound judgment, and one who feared the Lord, to hold a supreme court of justice in New Spain. Such a person he found in the licentiate Luis Ponce de Leon, cousin to the count Don Martin de Cordova. To him his Majesty intrusted the business of enquiry into the conduct of Cortes, with full power to inflict the greatest punishment, in case he should find him guilty. It was however two years and an half before this gentleman arrived in New Spain.

I have now gone beyond the date of my narrative two years in advance, to inform the reader of this circumstance; and I may now also mention, that during the viceroyalty of Don Anthonio de Mendoza,

that

. de Mendoza, brother to the Marquis de Mondejar & the first who held
ice of Viceroy and Captain General of New Spain —

that moſt illuſtrious nobleman, worthy of eternal memory and heavenly glory, for his wife and juſt government, this ſame Albornos wrote ſlanderous and malignant letters of him, as he had done before of Cortes. The letters which related to Don Anthonio were all returned from Caſtille, into the hands of that nobleman, and when he had read them, with all the perſonal abuſe of himſelf that they contained, he ſent for Albornos, and ſhewing them to him, ſaid in his mild and ſlow manner of ſpeaking, "whenever you chooſe to make me the ſubject of "your letters to his Majeſty, mind that in future you tell the truth; "and now go about your buſineſs, for a knave as you are." Thus he left the contador, overwhelmed with confuſion.

CHAPTER VII.

Expedition of Cortes to Higueras.

DE OLI I have already mentioned as having revolted. When Cortes received intelligence of this, it made him very penſive; but as he was one not to be trifled with in ſuch caſes, he determined to ſend a gentleman who was his relation, by name Franciſco de las Caſas, with five ſhips, and one hundred well provided ſoldiers, having with them ſome of the original veteran conquerors of Mexico.

Las Caſas ſet out from the port of Vera Cruz, with his good ſhips, and his pennants flying, and with fair winds arrived at the bay named El Triumpho de la Cruz, where De Oli had eſtabliſhed his poſt. Although Las Caſas hoiſted the ſignal of peace, De Oli determined upon making reſiſtance, and embarking a number of ſoldiers in two armed veſſels, he ſent them to oppoſe Las Caſas, who being a brave man was determined to land at all events; he therefore ordered out his boats and arming them with ſwivels and muſquetry, attacked the other party, and ſunk one of their veſſels, killing four ſoldiers and wounding many. When De Oli ſaw this he thought it adviſable to propoſe terms of peace, for a conſiderable part of his ſoldiers were detached up the country, in ſearch of another body of troops which was making conqueſts there, about the river Pechin. This laſt mentioned party was commanded by a Captain Gil Gonzalez de Avila.

De Oli as I have already related being in expectation of the return of his detachment, wiſhed for a truce with Las Caſas, which the latter for his misfortune agreed to, and remained at ſea, partly in the intention

tion of looking out for ſome other place of diſembarkation, and partly induced by letters from the friends of Cortes who were in the troops commanded by De Oli. On that night a hard gale ſprung up, by which our veſſels were driven on ſhore and entirely loſt, with above thirty of the ſoldiers. The reſt were made priſoners, after being two days without food, and almoſt dying with cold, being thoroughly ſoaked in the ſalt water and with rain which at that ſeaſon fell very heavily. De Oli was very triumphant on this occaſion. He made his priſoners ſwear fidelity to him againſt Cortes, releaſing them all except Las Caſas. The parties he had ſent out againſt Gonzalez de Avila returned about this time. It ſeems that Avila came there as governor of Golfo Dolce, and had founded a town which he named St. Gil de Buena Viſta. De Oli on hearing of it ſent his troops againſt him, who in their firſt attack had taken Avila priſoner, killed his nephew, and alſo eight of his ſoldiers. De Oli was now in great ſtate with two captains as his priſoners, and that all might know his valour which certainly was very great ſo far as his own perſon was concerned, he wrote a full account of his exploits to his friend Velaſquez. He afterwards marched up the country to a place called Naco, in a very populous diſtrict, the whole of which is now deſtroyed. While De Oli remained here, he ſent out troops on different excurſions; among others he ſent a party under one Captain Briones who was the firſt to inſtigate him to revolt. He was a ſeditious fellow, and the lower parts of his ears had been cut off, as he uſed to tell us, for refuſing, together with other officers, to ſurrender themſelves in a certain fortreſs. This man was afterwards hanged in Guatimala for mutiny. To return to my narrative, intelligence came to De Oli, that Briones with his whole body had revolted from him, and gone to New Spain, which turned out to be the caſe.

Las Caſas and De Avila being at large, though priſoners, for De Oli was too brave to be under any apprehenſions from them, concerted a plan with ſome ſoldiers to put him to death, the ſignal for which was to be the words, "To me, friends of the King and Cortes, kill the ty-" rant!" Las Caſas half in jeſt as it were, and laughing, then aſked him

him for liberty to return to Cortes; to which De Oli replied, that he was too happy to have ſo brave a man for his companion, and did not chooſe to part with him. "Then," ſaid Las Caſas in the ſame manner, "take care that one of theſe days I do not kill you." All this the other conſidered as a joke; but the meaſures were taken, and one night after ſupper, when the cloths were taken away, and the ſervants and pages had ſat down in their apartment, as Juan Nunez de Mercado and other ſoldiers of the party of Cortes, Las Caſas, and Avila, were converſing with De Oli upon the affairs of Mexico, and the fortune of Cortes, he being entirely unſuſpicious of their deſigns, the conſpirators ſuddenly drew out penknives and fell upon him. Las Caſas ſeizing him by the beard made a cut at his throat, and the others gave him ſeveral wounds; but ſuch was his ſtrength and activity of body, that he eſcaped out of their hands for the preſent, calling aloud to his people for aſſiſtance, but they were all too buſily employed at their ſuppers to hear him. He then fled, and concealed himſelf among ſome buſhes, in hopes of aſſiſtance. Many were in the act of coming to him for the purpoſe, but were deterred by the cries of Las Caſas not to aſſiſt the tyrant, but to rally on the ſide of their King, and his general Cortes. They firſt heſitated, and then obeyed; and Las Caſas immediately gave notice, that whoever knew where De Oli was, and did not immediately reveal it, ſhould ſuffer death. Information was ſoon given, in conſequence of which he was made priſoner, and, by ſentence of the two captains, beheaded in the town of Naco, thus paying with his life for having followed evil counſels; being a very brave man, but of no foreſight. Cortes had conferred many favours on him; he held a commiſſion of Maeſtre de Campo, had valuable eſtates, and was married to Donna Philippa de Aranja, a handſome Portugueze lady, by whom he had one daughter.

Las Caſas and Avila being now free and their enemy dead, joined their troops together, and acted in concert. Las Caſas colonized Truxillo in Eſtremadura; Avila ſent a meſſage to his lieutenant in Buena Viſta, ordering him to remain as he was, and that he ſhould ſhortly receive

receive reinforcement, which he was going to requeſt from Cortes at Mexico. The two captains having ſet out for that city, I will now take my leave of them for the preſent.

Cortes, in ſome months after the departure of Las Caſas, began to grow apprehenſive of a diſaſter; not that he entertained the leaſt doubt of the valour or conduct of that officer, but he repented, under the circumſtances of the caſe, that he had not taken the command himſelf. He was alſo anxious to examine the ſtate of that province, more eſpecially its mines, and for theſe reaſons now determined to ſet out upon his journey thither. He appointed a good garriſon to take charge of the city of Mexico during his abſence, and provided the different poſts with artillery, leaving as his deputies in the government, the treaſurer Alonzo de Eſtrada, and the contador Albornoz. Cortes did not know the ſecret ſervices the latter had been rendering him at court, or he probably would not have left him in power, although on the other hand it is poſſible, that he could not have avoided it. He appointed the licentiate Zuazo alguazil major of the city, and as alguazil major and agent in his private concerns, Rodrigo de Paz. To theſe he ſtrongly inſiſted on the ſtricteſt attention, both to the intereſt of his Majeſty, and the converſion of the natives. This he alſo recommended to the worthy fathers Motolinea and Olmedo, both holy men.

In order to deprive the Mexicans of chiefs, in caſe they ſhould attempt to riſe, he took with him Guatimotzin the late king, the chief of Tacuba, Velaſquez an Indian and captain under Guatimotzin, and ſeveral others. There came alſo with us Fra Juan de las Varillas, another clergyman, two reverend fathers, Flemings, and good theologians, to preach the faith, and the captains De Sandoval and Luis Marin, with many other cavaliers. The ſuite, or officers who attended the perſon of Cortes were as follows; a ſteward and paymaſter, a keeper of the plate, a major domo, two ſtewards of the houſehold, a butler, a confectioner, a chamberlain, a phyſician, a ſurgeon, a number of pages of his houſehold, amongſt whom was D. Franciſco de Montejo afterwards captain

in Yucatan, two armour bearers, eight grooms, two falconers, five muſicians, a ſtage dancer, a jugler and puppet player, a maſter of the horſe, three Spaniſh muleteers. The general brought a great ſervice of gold and ſilver plate, and a large drove of ſwine for his table followed feeding by the way. Three thouſand Mexican warriors attended their chiefs, beſides a numerous train of domeſtics.

When the party was on the point of ſetting out, the factor Salazar, and the veedor Chirinos, either ſeeing or affecting to ſee much danger likely to reſult from Cortes quiting the ſeat of government, and finding alſo that they had not been left in any ſtation during his abſence, remonſtrated with him, but finding it to be to no purpoſe, they then requeſted permiſſion to accompany him as far as Guacacualco. To this he gave his conſent, and they accordingly ſet out. Cortes was received in all the places upon his way with ſuch pomp and rejoicing as is not in my power to deſcribe. Above fifty ſoldiers and ſtraggling travellers newly arrived from Caſtille joined him upon the road, and the general divided his troops in two parties, until their arrival at Guacacualco, for the greater convenience of obtaining proviſions.

During the journey, the veedor and factor kept themſelves cloſe to Cortes, eſpecially the latter, playing a hundred tricks of ſervility and obſequiouſneſs, and every word he ſpoke, he was cap in hand, and with his fluent ſpeech, and ſmooth words, as it were trying to get him back to Mexico, and expreſſing his ſolicitude for his ſafety. Sometimes when he was riding by the ſide of the general he would ſing, "Ay tio bolvamonos, ay tio bolvamonos." Then Cortes would laugh at him and reply ſinging,

"Adelante mi ſobrino, adelante mi ſobrino,
"Y no creais in agueros, que ſera lo que dios quiſiere.
"Adelante mi ſobrino.

Oh

" Oh good uncle let us return.
" Forward, dear nephew forward,
" Truſt in God and never heed auguries.

Quitting the ſubject of our factor and his delicate ſpeeches, I have now to mention how a marriage took place on the arrival of the party at the town of Ojeda, which is near that of Orizava, between our linguiſt Donna Marina, and Juan Xaramillo. The next place they came to was Guazpaltepeque, in the diſtrict of Sandoval. As ſoon as intelligence reached Guacacualco of the advance of Cortes to Guazpaltepeque, all the Spaniards of that ſettlement came thirty three leagues to receive him. This I mention that the reader may ſee what fear and reſpect he was held in by us. Proceeding beyond the place laſt mentioned, in croſing a large river, fortune began to frown upon us, for three of our canoes overſet, whereby ſome plate and other valuables were loſt, for that river is ſo full of alligators that there was no recovering any thing. Paſſing Illuta, when we came to the river by Guacacualco we found three hundred canoes faſtened two and two to carry us over; here we were received under triumphal arches, and with various feſtivities repreſenting ſkirmiſhes of Chriſtians and Moors, together with fireworks and other ſhows of that kind.

Here Cortes remained ſix days, during which time the factor was continually ſounding in his ears the burthen of his old ſong. He alſo told him of ſecret practices of the contador and the treaſurer, who boaſted that he was the ſon of his catholic Majeſty, and in ſhort a number of ſtories, the drift of all which was, to induce Cortes to ſupercede the preſent deputies, and put him, and the veedor, in their places. In this he too well ſucceeded; for by his arts he obtained from the general a deputation for himſelf and his aſſociate the veedor, to hold the government of Mexico, in caſe they ſhould judge that the preſent deputies

 failed

failed in their duty. Theſe intrigues cauſed much trouble afterwards in Mexico as I will relate at the proper time. The reverend father blamed Cortes for what he had done, and foreſaw the conſequences that followed. The veedor and factor now took their leaves, with ſuch tenderneſs and affection, the latter pretending to ſob and cry with ſorrow at parting, that it was ridiculous to ſee it. The fellow had by the tricks of his friend Valiente the ſecretary, got at that time in his pocket the documents he wanted for the furtherance of his views in Mexico, of which as I before obſerved I will ſay no more for the preſent, but continue the narrative of our painful journey, for I left this place with the general, and attended him throughout.

Cortes now ſent orders to one of his major domos, Simon de Cuenca, at Villa Rica, to freight two light veſſels with biſcuit of maiz, (for at that time there was no wheat in New Spain,) ſix pipes of wine, oil, vinegar, pork, iron, and other neceſſary articles, and to proceed with them along the coaſt, northward, until he ſhould receive further directions. The general then ordered all the ſettlers of Guacacualco who were fit for ſervice to join his expedition. I have already mentioned how this colony was formed out of the moſt reſpectable hidalgos, and ancient conquerors of the country; and now that we had reaſon to expect to be left in quiet poſſeſſion of our hard earned properties, our houſes and farms, we were obliged to undertake an hoſtile expedition to the diſtance of five hundred leagues, and which took up the time of above two years and a half. But we dared not ſay no, neither would it avail us. We therefore armed ourſelves, and mounting our horſes, joined the expedition, making in the whole above two hundred and fifty veterans, of whom one hundred and thirty were cavalry, beſides many Spaniards newly arrived from Europe.

I was immediately ordered to march at the head of thirty Spaniards and three thouſand Mexicans, to a diſtrict named Cimatan, which was in rebellion, with directions to quarter my troops on the natives, and if I found them ſubmiſſive, to do no farther injury, but if refractory, they

they were to be ſummoned intelligibly, three times, in preſence of a royal notary and proper witneſſes, and in caſe they perſiſted, I was to make war on, and compel them to ſubmit. The orders which I received from the general I now have in my poſſeſſion, ſigned and ſealed by him, and counterſigned by his ſecretary, A. Valiente. I found the people peaceable, but in a few months after, in conſequence of the ſettlers of Guacacualco being withdrawn, they broke out again. However they being in the ſtate that I have mentioned, I made no delay, but ſet out with my detachment to rejoin Cortes at Iquinapa.

The general, with the reſt of his troops, leaving Guacacualco, proceeded to Tonala, croſſed a river to Ayaqualulco, croſſed another river, and, ſeven leagues diſtant an arm of the ſea, upon a bridge of half a quarter of a league in length; a moſt aſtoniſhing work in ſuch a ſituation, and conſtructed by the natives of the country under the inſpection of two captains, ſettlers of Guacacualco. They then proceeded to a large river named Mazapa, which flows by Chiapa, and is named by mariners Rio de dos Bocas; this they croſſed in double canoes, and proceeding through ſome villages, came to Iquinapa, where my detachment joined them. We then croſſed another river on wooden bridges, alſo an arm of the ſea, and came to a great town named Copilco, where the province of Chontalpa begins, which was very populous, covered with plantations of cocoa, and perfectly tranquil.

From Copilco we marched to Nicaxuxuica, and to Zagutan, paſſing another river, in which the general loſt ſome articles of his baggage. The laſt mentioned town was found by us in a ſtate of peace, but the inhabitants fled during the night. Cortes ordered parties out to ſearch the woods and make priſoners, which was a very inconſiderate thing, and productive of bad conſequences; we found, it is true, after much trouble, ſeven chiefs and ſome others, but they all made their eſcape from us again during the night, and we were thus left without guides. At this period arrived at our quarters fifty canoes from Tabaſco, loaded

loaded with proviſions, alſo ſome from a place named Teapan in my encomienda.

We proceeded on our march to Tepetitan and Iztapa, croſſing a great river named Chilapa, at which we were detained four days making barks. I propoſed to Cortes, to ſend five of our Indian guides to a town of the ſame name, which I underſtood to be on the banks of this river, to deſire the people to aſſiſt us with their canoes. Cortes aſſented, and it was done; we procured ſix large canoes, and alſo proviſions. We were four days in paſſing.

From this we went on to Tepetitan which was depopulated and burnt, in conſequence of a civil war. For three days of our march from the river of Chilapa, our horſes were almoſt conſtantly up to the girths in the marſhy grounds which we had to paſs. We then reached a place named Iztapa, the inhabitants of which had fled. We ſent in ſearch of them, and ſeveral chiefs and others were brought in, who being treated kindly, made the general a preſent of ſome trifling articles in gold. We halted here for three days on account of the plenty of corn and graſs; Cortes alſo approved of it for the ſcite of a colony, it being ſurrounded by many towns which might be attached to it as dependencies. From the travelling merchants here, Cortes obtained information as to his future route, producing to them a map painted on cloth, whereon was repreſented the way which he was to take to reach Huyacala, which means great Acala; it being ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from another place of that name. They told him that the way he was to take was much interſected by rivers, and that in order to reach a place named Tamaztepeque, three days journey diſtant, three rivers and an arm of the ſea were to be croſſed. The general in conſequence gave orders to the chiefs to conſtruct bridges at the proper places, and alſo to bring canoes; neither of which was obeyed.

The three days which the natives aſſured us the journey would take up, turned out to be no leſs than ſeven; but they ſucceeded in getting

getting rid of us, and we ſet out, provided only with roaſted maiz and roots ſufficient for three days. We were obliged to conſtruct bridges of timber, at which all laboured from the general downwards, which detained us three days, during which time we had nothing to eat but a certain wild plant named Quexquexque, which inflames the mouth and tongue. When we had croſſed this inlet we found no road whatever, and we were obliged to open our way through the woods, as it were, ſword in hand. After labouring thus for two days in hopes of reaching the place which we were in ſearch of, we became totally in deſpair. The trees were ſo thick that we could not ſee the ſun, and when we aſcended to the top of one we could not diſcover to any diſtance. Of our three guides alſo two had fled, and the third was incapable of rendering any ſervice. Cortes, whoſe reſources were inexhauſtible, guided himſelf by a mariners compaſs, and by his Indian map, according to which, the town we were in queſt of, lay to the eaſt. Cortes himſelf was however forced to acknowledge, that if we were one day more without diſcovering it, he did not know what we ſhould do.

Fortunately we at this time perceived the remains of trees which had been formerly cut, and alſo a ſmall lane or path, and Lopez the pilot and I returned to report our diſcovery to the general. Our news revived the ſpirits of the army, and we puſhed forward to a village on the oppoſite ſide of a river, where, though the inhabitants had abandoned it, we found ſufficiency of proviſions for ourſelves and our horſes. Parties were immediately ſent out in queſt of the natives, and they ſoon returned, bringing with them many chiefs and prieſts, who being well treated, procured us a plentiful ſupply of proviſions, and pointed out our way to Izguantepeque, which was three days journey, or ſixteen leagues diſtant from this town of Tamaztepeque. During our journey hither we loſt our ſtage dancer by fatigue, as alſo three of the newly arrived Spaniards, and many of the Mexicans were left to die upon the road. It came alſo to be diſcovered that ſome of their chiefs had ſeized two or three of the natives of the places through which we paſſed, and concealed

concealed them with the baggage, until through hunger they had killed and eaten them, dreſſing the bodies in their manner, which is, by a kind of oven made with heated ſtones which are put under ground. On enquiry it was alſo found out that they had done the ſame with two of our guides who had fled from us, but were retaken. Cortes ſeverely reprehended all thoſe concerned, and one of the reverend father Franciſcans preached a holy and wiſe ſermon on the occaſion, after which, by way of example, the general cauſed one againſt whom it was moſt clearly proved to be burnt; for though all were equally guilty, yet in the preſent circumſtances one example was judged ſufficient. As for our poor muſicians with their inſtruments, their ſackbuts, and dulcimers, they felt the loſs of the regales and feaſts of Caſtille, and now their harmony was ſtopt, excepting one only, whom the ſoldiers uſed to curſe whenever he ſtruck up, ſaying it was maiz and not muſic that they wanted. Some perſons have aſked me how it happened that ſince neceſſity has no law, we did not, rather than ſtarve, lay our hands on the herd of pigs which Cortes brought with him. To this I reply that they were not within our ſight or reach, and the general's ſteward, who was a ſly artful fellow, ſaid that they had all been eaten by the alligators in croſſing the river. But in reality they had them four days march behind the army. On our route we made croſſes in the living trees, and put inſcriptions on them ſaying, " here paſſed Cortes and his army " at ſuch a time.

The Indians of Tamaztepeque ſent forward to our next ſtation, Ciguatepecad, to inform the people of our approach, and remove their apprehenſions. They alſo, to the number of twenty attended us thither, where, being arrived and halted, Cortes was anxious to know the courſe of a large river which flows by that town. Upon enquiry he found that it diſcharged itſelf in certain inlets of the ſea, near the towns named Gueyataſta, and Xicalango, and thereby he thought that he could conveniently ſend two Spaniards to the north coaſt, to obtain information relative to his ſhips. One of his meſſengers was Franciſco de Medina, to whom he gave a joint commiſſion of captain with Simon de Cuenca,

Com mode with heated stones. This is one of the Customs of the Caloosas which
y had in common with the modern South Sea Islanders and which was considered
ovel. They also manufactured a paper cloth in all respects similar to that used by
ormer. The North West Americans see the the flesh in the paunch of the animal
uch was the practice in ancient Scythia.

Cuenca, his officer whom he had employed to freight and command the ſhips. De Medina was an able and diligent man, and well acquainted with the country; it would have been better however on the preſent occaſion if he had not been entruſted with ſuch powers; as will appear. De Medina having gone down the river to meet the veſſels, and having arrived at Xicalonga where they were at anchor, waiting to hear from Cortes, preſented the general's letters to Cuenca, and alſo produced his own commiſſion as captain. A diſpute immediately enſued between theſe two officers relative to the chief command, and each being ſupported by a party, they had recourſe to arms, and fought until there were not eight Spaniards on both ſides left alive. When the neighbouring Indians perceived this they fell upon the ſurvivors, put them to death, and deſtroyed the two ſhips, ſo that we did not, for two years and a half, know what was become of them.

We were informed at our preſent quarters, that the town of Gueyacala was diſtant three days march from us, and that our way was acroſs deep rivers and trembling marches. Cortes accordingly ſent two ſoldiers to examine them, who, ſounding and trying the rivers, came back and reported that they were paſſable by conſtructing wooden bridges acroſs them, but as to the marſhes, which lay more diſtant, and which were the moſt material, they made no examination at all. Cortes alſo ſent me and one Gonzalo de Mexia forward to Gueyacala, with ſome guides who offered themſelves from our preſent quarters. We ſet out accordingly, but in the night our Indians left us, for it ſeemed that the two nations were at war, and we were now forced to rely entirely on ourſelves. When we arrived at the firſt town belonging to the diſtrict of Gueyacala, which is the chief over about twenty others, the inhabitants of it ſhewed ſome ſigns of jealouſy, but we ſoon reconciled them. This diſtrict is much interſected by lakes, rivers, and trembling marſhes. Some of the dependent towns are in iſlands, and all the communication is by canoes. We invited the chiefs to go and wait upon Cortes, but this they declined on account of the hoſtility between the two nations. It ſeems that on the firſt day of our arrival they had no idea of our force,

but on the next they had received further intelligence concerning it, and treated us with more deference. They promiſed that they would provide every accomodation for our people on their arrival, and while we were engaged in diſcourſe with them on theſe ſubjects, two Spaniards ſent by Cortes brought me letters, wherein he ordered, that I ſhould within three days meet him with all the proviſions that I could collect, for that he had been deſerted by the natives, and was on his way to Guey-acala without any neceſſaries whatever. Theſe Spaniards alſo informed me, that four of our ſoldiers who had been detached by Cortes higher up the river had not returned, and were ſuppoſed to be murdered, as afterwards appeared to be the caſe.

Hue, or great Acallan, the chief town of the province Acallan ſignifies "the place of the boat"

Cortes purſued his march, and was for four days employed in conſtructing his bridge acroſs the great river, during which time the army ſuffered dreadfully from hunger, having left their laſt quarters without any proviſions whatever. Some old ſoldiers cut down trees reſembling the palm, and procured nuts which they roaſted and eat. A very poor reſource for ſo many. On the night that the bridge was finiſhed I arrived with one hundred and thirty loads of corn, honey, fruit, and ſalt, and eighty fowls. It was dark, and Cortes had made mention of his expectation of my arrival. The conſequence was, that the ſoldiers waited for me, and immediately laid violent hands on every atom of proviſions which I had brought, not leaving any thing for Cortes or the other officers. The general's ſteward and major domo cried out, "this is for the general," and "do not touch that," but it was to no avail, the ſoldiers ſaid that the general and the others had been eating their hogs, while the poor ſoldiers were famiſhing, and neither entreaties nor arguments could induce them to leave him ſo much as a ſingle load of corn. Cortes loſt all patience when he heard of it, and ſwore that he would make enquiry and puniſh thoſe who had committed the outrage, and who had talked about the hogs. But he ſoon found that this was merely crying in the deſert. He then blamed me, but I told him that a guard ſhould have been appointed to receive the proviſions when they were brought in, for that hunger knows no law. As he

ſaw

ei - great or noble (Chinese Yuei - Enei - Most Noble →

ſaw there was no remedy he returned to me, and, Captain De Sandoval being preſent, addreſſed me with good words ſaying, "my dear friend "Del Caſtillo I am ſure that you have left ſomething behind you on "the road for yourſelf and our friend here; do let us go together, and "permit me to ſhare it with you." Sandoval alſo ſaid that he vowed to his God he had not ſo much as a handful of maiz. When thus applied to I could not refuſe them. "Well," ſaid I, "when the "ſoldiers are all aſleep, come with me, and take ſhares of what I pro-"vided for myſelf and thoſe with me;" which was, twelve loads of maiz, twenty fowls, three jars of honey, fruits, and ſalt; I had alſo ſome women to make bread. They both thanked and embraced me, and ſo we eſcaped famine for this time. Cortes enquired how the reverend fathers had fared, but there was no cauſe of apprehenſion for them, as each ſoldier gave them a portion of what he had obtained. Such are the hardſhips attendant upon expeditions in unexplored countries! our general, feared as he was by the ſoldiers, had his proviſions pillaged, and was in danger of ſtarving, and Captain De Sandoval would not truſt any one, but went himſelf to get his ration from me. On continuing our march, when we had advanced about a league from the river, we came to thoſe deſperate trembling marſhes. Here our horſes were near being all ſmothered; but as the diſtance was not above half a bow ſhot between the firm ground on each ſide, we contrived to draw them through it by main force, and when we had gotten acroſs, after returning thanks to God, Cortes ſent to Gueyacala for a freſh ſupply of proviſions, of which he took care not to be plundered as on the former occaſion, and on the enſuing day the whole of onr party arrived, at an early hour, in the town of Gueyacala, where the chiefs attended, and had made ample preparations for our reception.

Cortes, having done whatever was neceſſary to conciliate the good will of theſe people, enquired of them relative to his future march, and alſo, if they had ever received any intelligence of ſhips being on the coaſt, or of any ſettlement of Europeans there. They told him, that at the diſtance of eight days journey there were many men with beards

like ourſelves, who had horſes, and three ſhips with them. They alſo furniſhed him with a map of his route, and offered their aſſiſtance during the march; but in anſwer to his demand that they would open the way for us, they repreſented to him the diſobedience of ſome of their dependencies, and expreſſed their wiſhes to reduce them to ſubmiſſion by our means. This duty he gave to Diego de Mazariegos, a relation of the treaſurer Alonzo de Eſtrada, as a compliment to him, and calling me aſide, he deſired that I would attend him upon the occaſion as his counſellor, from my experience in the affairs of the country. This I ſhould not now mention, nor do I as a boaſt, but it is my duty as an hiſtorian, and further, it was well known to the whole army, and his Majeſty was informed of it in the letters written to him by Cortes. About eighty of us went with Mazariegos upon this occaſion. When we arrived, we found the diſtrict in the beſt diſpoſition poſſible; the chiefs returned with us to wait on Cortes, and brought with them a moſt plentiful ſupply of proviſions. In about four days after this, all the native chiefs deſerted us, and we were left with only three guides, to purſue our route, which we did, croſſing two rivers, to another town in the diſtrict of Gueyacala, which we found abandoned.

Here was the ſcene of the death of Guatimotzin, laſt native king of the Mexicans. It appeared that a plot had been entered into by this unfortunate man, together with many others of his nobility, to murder the Spaniards, and return to Mexico; and that on their arrival, they intended to make a junction of all their forces, and attack the Spaniſh garriſon. Their treaſon was communicated to the general by two lords named Tapia and Juan Velaſquez, who had commanded under Guatimotzin during the ſiege. As ſoon as Cortes got the knowledge of it he took the informations, not only of theſe two, but alſo of ſeveral others concerned; their confeſſion was, that perceiving we marched without precaution, that diſcontent prevailed, that many of our ſoldiers were ſick, and proviſions ſo ſcarce that ten Spaniards had died of hunger abſolutely, and others had returned to Mexico, conſidering alſo the uncertainty of our fate and deſtination they had decided, that dying at once was

Izancanac
in the province of
Acallan one one
of the three days
preceding Lent
in the Year
1525.
Guauhtimozin
Coana ochtzin
King of Tlacopan
Tetlepanquetzaltzin King of Tlacopan
or Izancanac a town in Acallan

ho founded the City of Cuzco A. 1531. Gotheld between the two Seas

was preferable to going with us any farther. They had therefore reſolved to try their fortunes, and fall upon us at the paſſage of ſome river or marſh, their numbers being an encouragement to the attempt, as they exceeded three thouſand well armed men. Guatimotzin denied that the whole of the Mexican force was concerned in this plot, or that it would have ever been, to his knowledge, carried into effect. But he admitted that it had been heard though never approved of by him. The prince of Tacuba declared that all which had ever paſſed between Guatimotzin and him was, frequent declarations that to loſe their lives at once would be preferable to waſting in the manner they were, in a ſlow death, by hunger and fatigue, and ſeeing the diſtreſſes of their friends ſuffering around them. Without any more proofs whatever, Cortes ordered Guatimotzin and his couſin the prince of Tacuba to be hanged immediately, and the preparations for the execution being made, they were brought to the place attended by the reverend fathers. Before he was executed, the king turning round to Cortes ſaid, "Malintzin! now "I find in what your falſe words and promiſes have ended;—in my "death.—Better that I had fallen by my own hands than truſt myſelf "in your power in my city of Mexico.—Why do you thus unjuſtly "take my life? May God demand of you this innocent blood!" The prince of Tacuba only ſaid that he was happy to die by the ſide of his lawful ſovereign. Thus ended the lives of theſe two great men, and I muſt ſay like good chriſtians, and for Indians, moſt piouſly; and I heartily pitied Guatimotzin and his couſin, having ſeen them in ſuch great fortune and ſituations. They behaved very kindly to me during our march, doing me many ſervices, eſpecially giving me Indians to carry graſs for my horſe; and I alſo declare that they ſuffered their deaths moſt undeſervingly, and ſo it appeared to us all, amongſt whom there was but one opinion upon the ſubject; that it was a moſt unjuſt and cruel ſentence.

We continued our march afterwards with great caution, from apprehenſions of a mutiny among the Mexicans on account of the execution of their chiefs; but the wretches were ſo exhauſted by famine, ſickneſs,

ſickneſs, and fatigue, that they did not appear even to think about the matter. At night we arrived at a village which was abandoned by the inhabitants, but on ſearching we found eight prieſts who readily attended us to Cortes. He deſired them to call back their neighbours, and that they ſhould receive no injury. This the prieſts readily promiſed, requeſting at the ſame time, that their idols which were in a temple adjoining the building wherein were the quarters of Cortes, ſhould not be touched; which the general agreed to, but took the opportunity of expoſtulating with them upon the abſurdity of venerating what was in reality no more than clay and timber. The prieſts ſeemed very willing to embrace the true doctrine, and brought us twenty loads of fowls and maiz. To the queſtion put to them by Cortes, how many days journey, or ſuns, it was, to the place where were the men with beards on their faces and who rode horſes they replied, ſeven; that the place was named Nito, and they offered to be our guides thither.

Cortes cauſed a croſs to be fixed in a large ceiba tree cloſe to their temple, which as I have before mentioned joined to the building wherein he had taken his quarters. He was at this time very ill tempered, and ſad. He was vexed by the difficulties and misfortunes which had attended his march, and his conſcience upbraided him with the death of the unfortunate Guatimotzin. He was ſo diſtracted by theſe thoughts that he could not reſt in his bed at night, and getting up in the dark to walk about, as a relief from his anxieties, he went into a large apartment where ſome of the idols were worſhipped. Here, he miſſed his way, and fell from the height of twelve feet, to the ground, receiving a deſperate wound and contuſions in his head. This circumſtance he tried to conceal, keeping his ſufferings to himſelf, and getting his hurts cured as well as he could.

Quitting this place we arrived in two days at a diſtrict the people of which are called the Mazotecas, and found a newly built town, fortified and barricaded, with very ſtrong palliſadoes in two circles, one of which was like a barbican, with loop holes, and trenches ſunk before

before it. The part which was not fortified in this manner was defended by a perpendicular rock, the top of which was piled with ſtones ſhaped for the ſling. It had alſo a parapet, and there was on one ſide of the town an impaſſable marſh. On entry we found every houſe filled with proviſions of whatever kind the country afforded, and a magazine ſtocked with arms of all ſorts, but not a ſingle human being. While we were expreſſing our aſtoniſhment at theſe circumſtances, fifteen Indians came out of the marſh, and addreſſing us with great ſubmiſſion, informed us that they had been driven to the conſtruction of this fortreſs, as a laſt reſource in an unſucceſsful war, in which they had been engaged with ſome of their neighbours, whom, as well as I recollect, they called the Lazandones. It ſeemed to be a warfare of plunder on each ſide. The name of this diſtrict means in their language a country abounding with game, which it was very well intitled to be called. Two of the Indians attended us from this place, and communicated to Cortes what they knew of the ſettlement of the Spaniards.

We now travelled through a country entirely open, conſiſting of vaſt plains without a tree. The heat of the ſun was exceſſive, and the deer which fed over this extenſive range of champaign were innumerable, and ſo tame as almoſt to come to our hands. The horſemen took them after the ſhorteſt purſuit, and we had in a very little ſpace of time above twenty killed. Aſking our guides the reaſon of theſe animals not being alarmed at the approach of men, we found that it was owing to a ſuperſtition of the people, who conſidered them to be divinities, as they ſaid that their gods appeared to them in their forms; and alſo that their idols had commanded that they ſhould be neither killed nor frightened. The heat of the weather was now ſo great, that a relation of the general's, named Palacios Rubios, loſt his horſe by purſuing the game. Purſuing our journey by villages where war had left its deſtructive marks, we met ſome Indians on their return from hunting. They had with them a huge lion which they had juſt killed, and ſome iguanas, a ſpecies of ſmall ſerpent, very good to eat. They led us to their town, being obliged to wade up to our middles in a lake of freſh water with which

they bear the ſame name in India

which it was ſurrounded. In this town was a large pond of freſh water, which was quite full of fiſhes, reſembling what we call in Europe the ſhad fiſh, but enormouſly large, with prickles on their backs. We procured ſome nets, and took above a thouſand, which afforded us a plentiful meal. We alſo procured here five Indians, who on our enquiry by deſcription for our countrymen, readily undertook to guide us to their ſettlement, for they at firſt thought that we came to put them to death, and were happy to find that they were likely to be rid of us on ſuch eaſy terms.

We proceeded towards a place named Tayaſal, ſituated on an iſland, the white temples, turrets, and houſes of which, gliſtened from a diſtance. It was the chief town of a diſtrict. As the road grew very narrow we thought it beſt to halt for the night, four companies of ſoldiers being detached to the ſhore, to ſearch for a paſſage. Luckily they took two canoes, in which were ten men and two women who were conveying ſalt and maize. Being brought to Cortes and queſtioned, they ſaid, that they belonged to the town before us, which was diſtant about four leagues. Cortes detained one canoe and ſome of the people, particularly the women, and ſent the others with two Spaniards to the chief, to demand from him canoes to croſs the water. Our whole party then ſet out towards the river, and arriving there, we found the cacique waiting for us. He invited the general to his town, and Cortes embarked with thirty croſsbow-men, and arriving there, was preſented with ſome trifles of gold much alloyed, and a few mantles. They here informed him that they knew of Spaniards being at two different places, one of which it ſeems was Nito, the other San Gil de Buena Viſta. He alſo learned that many more were at Naco, which is up the country, and diſtant ten days journey from Nito, which laſt mentioned place lies on the northern coaſt. The general on hearing this obſerved to us, that probably De Oli had divided his force, for as yet we knew nothing of Gil Gonzalez de Avila.

Our whole body having croſſed the river, we halted at the diſtance of

There is a great comparative deficiency in the variety of kinds of fresh water fish in the new world compared to the old.

San Gil. In the Gulf of Guanages, islands discovered by Columbus a. 1502. This is also called Buenas from the Sea pompions so named in the language of Hispaniola this is Golfo dolce & Isla in forma de La Cruz.

Gil Gonzalez de Avila, el Blanco or St George, 40 Leagues, 40 Leagues East of Nicaragua, 16,000 Tributaries, here Gil Gonzalez took from Hernando de Soto 120,000 pesos. a very profitable district of Mines. Vera Cruz & Sandoval had the style & Juan Grijalva was killed as is said.

of two leagues from it, to wait the return of Cortes. Here a Negro, two Indians, and three Spaniſh ſoldiers deſerted; the latter preferring the taking their chance among enemies, to the repetition of the fatigues they had gone through. This day I was ſun ſtruck and fell ill of a calenture. The weather alſo at this time changed, and for three days and nights it never ceaſed raining; but we were obliged to continue our journey under it, from the apprehenſion that our proviſions ſhould fall ſhort. After two days march we came to a ridge of rocks, the ſtones whereof cut like knives; we ſent ſoldiers a league's diſtance on each ſide to ſearch for ſome other road, but to no effect. Our horſes fell here at every ſtep, and cut themſelves to pieces, and the farther we proceeded on the deſcent, the worſe it was. We left eight horſes dead upon the ſpot, and moſt of the reſt were ſo wounded as not to be able to keep up with us. Amongſt others who received hurts the general's relation Palacios Rubios broke his leg by a fall. We called this place La Sierra de los Pedernales. When we had gotten over it we did not fail to return thanks to God for his mercy in extricating us from that difficulty. We then advanced chearfully towards a town named Taica, which lay before us, and where we hoped to find a ſufficiency of every thing; but we were ſuddenly and unexpectedly ſtopped by an enormous torrent, which, being ſwelled by the heavy rains, came tumbling between great precipices with a noiſe which could be heard at the diſtance of two leagues. Here we were obliged to halt for three complete days, in order to make a bridge from one precipice to the other, and when at the end of the third day we began to paſs over, we found that the people on the other ſide had taken advantage of our delay, to remove themſelves and all their proviſions out of our reach.

When we learned that after all our fatigues hunger was to be our portion, we ſeemed as it were thunder ſtruck. I own I never in my life felt my heart ſo depreſſed as when I found nothing to be had for myſelf or my people; and this too on the eve of our Lord's reſurrection! a pretty feſtival we had of it truly! Cortes, after ſending out his ſervants every where, procured about a buſhel of maiz. When he ſaw

the diſtreſs which we were in, he called together the coloniſts of Guacacualco, as the flower of his army, and earneſtly ſolicited us to do our utmoſt to procure ſome neceſſaries. Pedro de Ircio who was preſent aſked to be appointed to the command, to which Cortes aſſented; but I, who knew that De Ircio was more of a talking, than a marching ſoldier, and that he would lag by the way and retard us, whiſpered Cortes and Sandoval to prevent his going, for he being duck legged, could not get through the deep ground and mire like us, and would be obliged to ſit down. Cortes therefore ordered him to ſtay, and five of us ſetting out together, with two guides, and croſſing rivers and marſhes, came to ſome Indian houſes where we found proviſions in plenty. Here we alſo took ſome priſoners, and with their fruit, fowls, and corn, we celebrated the feaſt of the reſurrection heartily. On the ſame night arrived a thouſand Mexicans, whom Cortes had ordered to follow us. We joyfully loaded them with all the corn that we could procure, and twenty fowls for Cortes and Sandoval, and there ſtill remained ſome corn in the town which we ſtaid to guard. On the next day we advanced to other villages, where we found ſuch a plenty of corn that we wrote a billet to Cortes, with ink which we made, and on a piece of a drum head, deſiring him to ſend all the Indians that he could, to carry it to our people.

Thirty ſoldiers and about five hundred Indians in a ſhort time arrived, and thus, thanks to God, we were amply provided for the remainder of the five days, during which we ſtaid at Taica. I muſt obſerve, that the bridges which we conſtructed on this march, remained perfectly good for many years, and that the Spaniards, when they paſſed them uſed to ſay, "theſe are the bridges of Cortes," as formerly it uſed to be ſaid, "here are the pillars of Hercules." We continued our march for two days, to a place named Tania, through a country interſected with rivers and rivulets, and where all the towns were abandoned; and during the night, our guides, being intruſted to the care of ſome of the newly arrived Spaniards who I ſuppoſe ſlept upon their poſts, made their eſcape. Thus we were left in a difficult country, and not knowing

knowing which way to turn. In addition to this, it rained moſt heavily. Cortes was out of humour and ſaid, Pedro de Ircio and many more being by, that he wiſhed others beſides the ſettlers of Guacacualco would beſtir themſelves, and do ſome good, in ſearching for guides. De Ircio, Marmolejo a perſon of quality, and Burgales afterwards regidor of Mexico, each offered their ſervices, and taking ſix ſoldiers a piece, were out three days in ſearch of Indians, and all returned without any ſucceſs, having met with nothing but rivers, and waters, and obſtructions. Cortes was in deſpair at this, and deſired Sandoval to apply to me, aſking as a favour that I would take the buſineſs on me. When addreſſed in this manner I could not refuſe, though very ill; and taking with me two friends, men capable of enduring hunger and thirſt, we ſet out together, and following a ſtream, the marks of boughs being cut from the trees pointed out a way to ſome houſes, from whence we ſaw corn fields and houſes with people about them. We remained concealed until we ſuppoſed the people to be aſleep, and then, taking the inhabitants by ſurpriſe, made priſoners three men, two Indian girls who were very handſome, and an old woman. They had a few fowls and a little corn. The whole of our capture we brought to our quarters. Sandoval was overjoyed at our arrival; "now," ſaid he to Pedro de Ircio, in the preſence of Cortes, "was Del Caſtillo right when he inſiſted on "having none but active men with him, and not to take people who "hobble along, telling their old ſtories of the adventures that happened to "the count De Urena, and his ſon Don Pedro Giron." Theſe ſtories De Ircio uſed to peſter us with, over and over again, for which reaſon all who were preſent laughed heartily at what was ſaid by Sandoval who knew that De Ircio and I were not friends. Cortes returned me thanks, and paid me many compliments upon my conduct, but I will drop this ſubject, for what is praiſe but emptineſs and unprofitableneſs, and what advantage is it to me that people in Mexico ſhould tell what we endured, or that Cortes ſhould ſay when he wanted to perſuade me to go on this laſt expedition, that next to God it was me on whom he placed his reliance to procure guides.

From the priſoners whom we had taken we learned, that it was neceſſary to deſcend the river for two days journey, to a place of above two hundred houſes named Oculiztli; which we accordingly did, paſſing on our road ſome large buildings where the travelling merchants of the Indians are uſed to ſtop. At the cloſe of the ſecond day we arrived at the place to which we had been directed, where we found plenty of proviſions. We alſo found in one of the temples an old red cap, and a ſandal, as offerings to their idols. Some of our ſoldiers brought to Cortes two old men and four women, whom they took in the maiz fields; Cortes aſked them what diſtance the Spaniſh ſettlement was from this place; to which they replied that it was two days journey, being cloſe by the ſea ſide, and that no town intervened. Upon this Cortes ordered Sandoval immediately to ſet out on foot, with ſix ſoldiers, and get down to the coaſt, in order to aſcertain what number of men De Oli had with him, for as yet we were entirely ignorant of all that had happened there, and Cortes required this information in order to effect what he had determined, which was, to fall upon, and ſurpriſe De Oli and his troops during the night.

Sandoval taking three guides reached the ſea ſide, and going northwards, ſoon perceived a canoe, and concealing himſelf where he expected it to anchor for the night, he was fortunate enough to get poſſeſſion of it, and upon examination, found it to belong to Indian merchants who were bringing ſalt to Golfo Dolce. Sandoval embarked on board this canoe with a part of his ſoldiers, and ſending the reſt by land, he purſued his route for the great river. As fortune would have it, on his voyage he fell in with a canoe in which had come four Spaniſh ſettlers, who were ſearching for fruit near the mouth of the river, being in great diſtreſs from the hoſtilities of the Indians, and the ravages made by diſeaſe. Two of theſe being up in a tree, were aſtoniſhed at the ſight of Sandoval and the reſt, and reported to their companions what they had ſeen. When they met, Sandoval was informed by them of their preſent diſtreſs, and how they had hanged the officer left there by Avila. Upon this he determined to bring them to Cortes, which having declared

It is probable the Spanish conquerors of America were mostly clad in this colour for
Mexicans in their Chronicles, to note the period of the arrival of the Spaniards
ter opposite the year, the figure of a man with a hat or cap and dressed in
ed jerkin

red, a ſoldier named Alonzo Ortiz obtained from him permiſſion to ſet off with the news, in order to get a reward. He accordingly in a ſhort time reached us, and by his intelligence rejoiced us all. Cortes preſented him with an excellent horſe named Moor's-head, and each of us gave him ſomething proportionate to our abilities. Sandoval arrived a ſhort time after, and informed us that they were preparing to embark for the Iſland of Cuba, and how they had hanged their commanding officer, for oppoſing them and alſo becauſe he had hanged a turbulent prieſt: as alſo that they had elected one Anthonio Niote in his place.

Cortes iſſued an order to march immediately for the ſea coaſt, which was diſtant ſix leagues, and we had an inlet of the ſea to paſs. We were therefore obliged to wait till low water, and then croſs it, wading and ſwimming. Cortes puſhed forwards with his attendants, and croſſed the river in the two canoes, ſwimming the horſes by the ſide of them; but he found it ſo dangerous from the violence of the current, that he ſent word to us not to attempt to follow him until farther orders.

The place where Avila's ſettlers now were, was about two leagues diſtant from where Cortes landed. They were greatly ſurpriſed at the appearance of Europeans, and more ſo when they found that it was the general ſo renowned through all theſe countries. Cortes received their congratulations in the moſt gracious manner, and deſired them to bring together what canoes they could collect, as alſo the boats belonging to their ſhips, and to provide bread for the uſe of his people. Of this laſt article only fifty pounds could be procured, for they lived almoſt entirely on ſapotes, vegetables, and what fiſh they caught. We were four days paſſing the river, with the greateſt danger. One ſoldier with his horſe went to the bottom, and never appeared afterwards. Two other horſes were alſo loſt; one of them belonged to a ſoldier named Caſquete, who heartily curſed Cortes and his expedition, for the ill fortune he had brought upon him.

The

The general truſted the care of the embarkation to Sandoval. One Saavedra, preſuming upon his relationſhip with Cortes, would not pay reſpect to the captain's orders, and endeavouring to force his paſſage, laid his hand to his poniard with diſreſpectful expreſſions to Sandoval. The latter made few words, but ſeizing him inſtantly, threw him into the water; where he was nearly drowned. Our ſuffering at this time from hunger was beyond my expreſſion. For theſe four days we had literally nothing but the few nuts that we could gather, and ſome wild fruits; and when we arrived on the other ſide our condition was not bettered.

We found this colony to conſiſt of forty men and ſix women, all yellow and ſickly, and without any thing to eat. Of courſe we were anxious for the moment of ſetting out in order to ſearch the country for proviſions. About eighty of us went on foot, under the command of Captain Luis Marin, to a town at the diſtance of eight leagues, where we found proviſions of all kinds, cocoa in the greateſt quantity, and plenty of corn, and vegetables. This place was exactly on the route of Naco, whither it was the intention of Cortes to go. On receiving our intelligence, he diſpatched Sandoval with the principal part of his troops to join us. We ſent a plentiful ſupply of maiz to our wretched coloniſts, who having been ſo long ſtarving, eat to ſuch an exceſs that ſeven of them died immediately. At this time alſo a veſſel arrived there, with ſeven horſes, forty hogs, eight pipes of ſalted meat, biſcuit, and fifteen paſſengers, adventurers from the Iſland of Cuba. All the proviſions Cortes bought immediately, and diſtributed them amongſt the coloniſts, with an equally fatal reſult. They eat of the ſalted meat to ſuch an exceſs that it gave them diarrheas, which in a very few days carried off fourteen.

Cortes now determined to examine this great river, for which purpoſe he fitted out one of the brigantines of Avila which had been ſtranded, and with this veſſel, a boat, and four double canoes, in which he embarked thirty ſoldiers, with eight ſailors of the veſſel which lately arrived,

arrived, he proceeded up the river to a ſpacious lake with good anchorage, which extended to the diſtance of ſix leagues, and the whole of the adjacent country was liable to be inundated. Proceeding higher he found the current more ſtrong, and at length came to ſome ſhallows which his veſſels could not paſs; he accordingly diſembarked, and proceeding by a narrow road, paſſed through different villages. In the firſt he took ſome natives to ſerve as guides, and in the ſecond he found plenty of corn, and fowls, amongſt which were pheaſants, pidgeons, and partridges. Theſe laſt I have frequently obſerved domeſticated among the Indians. Purſuing his route, he came near a large town named Cinacan Tencintle, ſituated amongſt fine cocoa plantations, and in which he heard the ſound of muſic, the Indians being engaged in a drunken feſtival. Cortes waited until a fit opportunity, concealed in a wood, and then ſuddenly ruſhing out, made ten men and fifteen women priſoners. The reſt attacked him with arrows and darts, but our people cloſed with them and cut to pieces eight of their chiefs. When the natives found that the affair was going againſt them they thought it high time to ſubmit; and accordingly four old men, two of whom were prieſts, came, apparently very much tamed, to petition Cortes for the priſoners, and brought with them a few trifles of gold. Cortes promiſed to deliver his priſoners on receiving a good ſupply of proviſions which they aſſured him of, and he pointed out to them where the ſhips lay. It appears that a miſunderſtanding afterwards happened between Cortes and the natives, relative to the delivery of his captives, he wiſhing to retain three women to make bread. They in conſequence proceeded to hoſtilities again; Cortes received a wound in the face, twelve alſo of his ſoldiers were wounded, and a boat deſtroyed. He then returned after an abſence of twenty ſix days, ſuffering dreadfully by the moſquitos. He wrote to Sandoval giving him an account of all that had occurred at Cinacan, which is diſtant from Guatimala ſeventy leagues, and ordered him to proceed to Naco; Cortes himſelf intending to eſtabliſh a ſettlement at the place which was named Puerto de Cavallos, for which purpoſe he deſired ten of the veterans of Guacacualco without whoſe aſſiſtance nothing was conducted properly.

Cortes

Cortes taking with him all the Spaniards that remained at St. Gil de Buena Viſta, embarked in two ſhips, and after eight days ſail arrived at Puerto de Cavallos, in order to plant a colony there, the ſituation being anſwerable, and the harbour good. He appointed Diego de Godoy commandant of this ſettlement, which he named Natividad. He thought that by this time Sandoval had arrived at Naco which was not far diſtant, and wrote to him there, deſiring ten of the ſoldiers of Guacacualco to reinforce him, as he intended to proceed to the bay of Honduras. This letter reached us in the quarters which I laſt mentioned, for we had not arrived at Naco. I will ſay no more of the proceedings of Cortes, nor how the flies bit him day and night, and prevented his reſt, ſo that as we afterwards heard he had like to have died or loſt his ſenſes, from want of ſleep.

Sandoval on receiving the general's letter preſſed forwards towards Naco, but was obliged to halt at a place called Cuyocan, in order to bring up his ſtragglers who had quitted him in ſearch of proviſions. We had alſo a river to paſs, and the natives all round were hoſtile. As our line of march was ſo very long by the number of invalids who came ſtraggling after us, eſpecially of the Mexicans, it became neceſſary to eſtabliſh a poſt at the ferry on this river, for which purpoſe Sandoval left me with the command of eight men.

One night a body of the natives fell upon us, but we were prepared for them. They ſet fire to the houſe in which we were, and thought to have brought off our canoe; but we, with the aſſiſtance of a few Mexicans, beat them off for that time, and knowing that there were ſome invalids lodged upon the road behind us, we on the next day brought them over and all together ſet out to join Sandoval. One man died upon the road; he was a Genoeſe, had been ſome time ill, and at length ſunk under poverty of diet. I was obliged to leave the body behind, for which Sandoval blamed me when I made my report. I told him we had two invalids on each horſe, and my companion Bartholome de Villa Nueva haughtily ſaid, that it was difficult enough for us to bring

bring ourſelves, without carrying dead men. Sandoval immediately ordered me and Villanueva to return and bury him, which we accordingly did, and placed a croſs over the grave. We found in his pocket a purſe containing a quantity of dice, and a memorandum of his family and effects in Teneriffe. Reſt his ſoul! Amen.

In about two days we arrived at Naco, having paſſed a place where mines have been ſince diſcovered, and alſo a town named Quiniſtan. On arriving at Naco we found it to be a good town, but it was abandoned by its inhabitants; however we obtained plenty of proviſions and ſalt which we much wanted. We took our quarters in ſome very large quadrangles, the ſame place where De Oli had been executed, and fixed ourſelves as if we had been to remain here for ever. In this place is the fineſt water that we had met with in New Spain, as alſo a tree, which at the time of the fieſta, let the heat of the ſun be as great as it will, has a delightful refreſhing coolneſs in its ſhade, and there ſeems to deſcend from it a kind of dew, of the moſt delicate nature, which is good for the head. The place is well ſituated, the neighbourhood fertile and producing both the red and the ſmall ſapote, and it was at that time populous.

Sandoval having obtained poſſeſſion of three of the principal natives of the diſtrict, treated them kindly, and we continued in peaceable terms with them, but the inhabitants could not be induced to return to the town. It was now time to ſend the reinforcement Cortes had required, of ten Spaniſh ſettlers of Guacacualco. I was an invalid and unable to go, and Sandoval wiſhed to keep me with him; eight valiant ſoldiers were however ſent, who ſet out heartily curſing Cortes and his expedition at every ſtep. They had ſome reaſon, for they did not know the leaſt of the ſtate of the country through which they were to go. Sandoval took the precaution of ſending five principal perſons of the natives with them, and gave it to be underſtood that if any injury was done to them the country ſhould be ſeverely puniſhed. They arrived at the place where Cortes was, in ſafety, and he immediately embarked

for Truxillo, leaving Godoy in the command at Puerto de Cavallos, with forty Spaniards, which was all that remained of the ſettlers who came with Avila, and thoſe newly arrived from the Iſland of Cuba.

For ſome time Godoy maintained himſelf in the neighbouring country, but as his men were continually dropping off by diſeaſe, the Indians began to deſpiſe and neglect them, and in a ſhort time they loſt by ſickneſs and famine above half their number, and three of them deſerted and joined Sandoval. Such was the reſult of the colonization of Puerto de Cavallos. Sandoval, by different expeditions to the neighbouring diſtricts, named Cirimongo, Acalaco, Quizmitan, and four others, and by judicious meaſures, brought the whole of the country to peace and ſubjection, all around Naco, and as far as Godoy's ſettlement.

a. 1524

After ſix days ſail Cortes arrived at the port of Truxillo. This place had been colonized by Franciſco de las Caſas, but there were alſo amongſt them many of the mutineers who had ſerved under De Oli, and who had been baniſhed from Panuco. All theſe, conſcious of their guilt, waited on Cortes upon his arrival, to ſupplicate his pardon for their offences. This Cortes granted them; he alſo continued thoſe who had been appointed to offices, and put at the head of all thoſe provinces as captain general, his relation Saavedra. Cortes having now ſummoned the chiefs and prieſts of the Indians, made an harangue to them, wherein he told them of the object of his coming thither, which was, to induce them to quit the unnatural and cruel practices of their falſe religion, and to embrace the true one. He alſo dwelt upon the power and dignity of his Majeſty the Emperor Don Carlos, to whom he required their ſubmiſſion. This together with the holy exhortations of our reverend fathers being explained to theſe people they readily promiſed to obey him, in becoming his Majeſty's vaſſals; whereupon Cortes ſignified to them, that they ſhould provide the ſettlement with all articles of food, eſpecially fiſh, of which there was a great plenty in the ſea about the Iſlands of Los Guanajes, and alſo he deſired them to

San Juan de Puerto de Carlos. Lat. 15. unhealthy. a good harbour.

to ſend labourers to clear the woods in front of the town, and open the view to the ſea. All this being readily undertaken by them, Cortes ordered a number of ſows in young to be turned out on theſe iſlands, to ſtock them, which they did in the courſe of a few years. The reverend fathers Franciſcans alſo preached to the Indians many holy things very edifying to hear. The natives applied themſelves to labour ſo earneſtly, that in two days they cleared the woods towards the ſea, and built fifteen houſes one of which was for Cortes, and a very good habitation. The renown of our general made him feared through all theſe diſtricts, as far as Olancho where are the rich mines; the Indians called him the captain Hue-hue of Marina, that is the old captain who brings Donna Marina, and his preſence reduced the whole country to ſubmiſſion, two or three diſtricts in the mountains only holding out. Againſt theſe, the names of which were given to him by the chief of Papayeca, then a populous diſtrict but now almoſt uninhabited, he ſent Captain Saavedra with a party of ſoldiers who brought moſt of them under ſubjection, the only one that held out being that people named the Acaltecans.

As many of the ſuite of Cortes began now to fall ſick from the effects of the climate, he ſent them on board a veſſel to St. Domingo or Cuba, and by this opportunity he alſo ſent letters to the reverend fathers of the order of St. Jerome, and the court of royal audience, informing them of all the events that had happened; of his reſigning the government of Mexico into the hands of deputies, to proceed againſt De Oli in perſon, and alſo of his future intentions. He requeſted from them a reinforcement of ſoldiers, and, to attach credit to his report, he ſent a valuable preſent of gold, taken in reality from his ſide board, but in ſuch a manner that it ſhould appear to them the produce of this ſettlement. This buſineſs he entruſted to a relation named Avalos, with orders, on his way, to take up twenty five ſoldiers, who, he had received intelligence, were left in the Iſland of Cozumel, to kidnap Indians. This veſſel was wrecked about ſeventy leagues from the Havannah; the Captain, Avalos, and many paſſengers periſhed, and

thoſe few who eſcaped, amongſt whom was the licentiate Pedro Lopez, were the firſt who brought to the iſlands intelligence of the exiſtence of Cortes and his army, for it had been hitherto univerſally believed that we had all periſhed. As ſoon as it was known where Cortes then was, two old ſhips were freighted with horſes and colts, and ſent out to us. Except theſe, and one pipe of wine, all the reſt of the cargo conſiſted of ſhirts, caps, and uſeleſs trumpery of various kinds.

Some Indians of the iſlands called the Guanajes, which are about the diſtance of eight leagues from Truxillo, came at this time to complain to Cortes, that it had been a practice of the Spaniards to come to their iſlands, and kidnap the natives and their maceguales, or ſlaves, and that a veſſel was now there, as ſuppoſed for that purpoſe. Cortes on hearing this ordered out one of his ſhips, which came in view of the veſſel, but ſhe immediately hoiſted ſail, and made her eſcape. It afterwards appeared that the commander of her was the bachelor Moreno, who had been ſent on buſineſs to Nombre de Dios, by the royal court of audience of St. Domingo.

Whilſt Sandoval remained at Naco, the chiefs of two diſtricts in that vicinity named Quecuſpan, and Tanchinalchapa, came to him to complain of a party of Spaniards who maltreated their people, robbing them, and putting them in chains, and who were now at the diſtance of about one day's march from his poſt. He accordingly ſet out againſt them with ſeventy men, and arrived at the place where theſe people were, perfectly at their eaſe, and not expecting any attack. They were ſurpriſed at ſeeing us, and ran to their arms; but we ſoon ſeized the captain and ſeveral more, thus getting the better of them without any blood being drawn on either ſide. Sandoval cenſured them in very ſtrong terms for their miſconduct, and ordered thoſe Indians whom they had made priſoners to be immediately releaſed. The captain of this party was one Pedro de Garro; he and his men were marched priſoners to our ſettlement. From the manner in which they were mounted and attended, they ſeemed to be lords, in compariſon of us who were dirty and worn down

Pedro Arias de Avila

The first step which tended to the present connexion of America with the Old world was the discovery of it by Columbus.

Columbus in his third voyage discovered Tierra Firma

this discovery was not proceeded on until after his death when King Ferdinand gave commissions to Diego de Nicuessa and Alphonso de Ojeda to that effect, & the latter sayled in Dec. [illegible] with 300 men and was followed by Nicuessa with 800 men — Ojeda being to occupy Uraba on the [illegible] and Nicuessa Veragua on the [illegible] side of the River Darien. Here they were opposed by the Caribbs — sustained great hardships — finally ending in the death of Ojeda by a wound of a poisoned arrow, and of Nicuessa in some unknown distress at sea.

But during this time Enciso a lawyer who had been left by Ojeda at Hispaniola to follow him with relief, arriving subsequent to Ojeda & Nicuessa having abandoned the expedition, was wrecked on the coast to which he made his escape with 100 Soldiers. He appears to have retained some ascendency among these unfortunate men, but was supplanted by Vasco Nunez de Balboa who appears first in the character of a Mutineer. and is elected ultimately to succeed Nicuessa in the supreme command.

Enciso went to Europe to complain, and Valdivia was sent by the Party of V. N. de Balboa to make their representation, for parties seem to have been pretty much balanced, and Enciso had before intrigued against Nicuessa.

"V. Nunez who rather by power than usurped the governance in Dariena being a master of force and rather a rash roy oter than a politike captayn although fortune sumtyme favoureth fooles," held the command of what Spaniards remayned successfully, conquering in detail the different & independent Lords of that country as he came in reach of them. But Enciso reaching Spain lodged a formal complaint against him before the King at Valdolid which was attended to. And Pedro Arias de Avila appointed to supercede him. But in the

down with ſervice. Several of them were perſons of quality or gentlemen, and after they had repoſed a day amongſt us they grew perfectly contented.

The reaſon of their being in theſe countries is as follows. Pedro Arias de Avila, who had the government of Tierra Firma, ſent a captain named Franciſco Hernandez to make conqueſts in the province of Nicaragua and Leon. This he did, reducing the natives to obedience, and eſtabliſhing a colony there. When Hernandez found himſelf advantageouſly ſettled, he determined to throw off his dependency upon Pedro Arias, to which I believe he was incited by the bachelor Moreno, and the reaſon of it to the beſt of my judgment was this. Arias had beheaded V. N. de Balboa, who married his daughter Donna Iſabella Arias de Penoſa. This atrocious ſtretch of power he committed moſt unwarrantably, and it was on this occaſion that the bachelor Moreno had been ſent hither by the royal court of audience. The bachelor meeting with Hernandez, adviſed him to renounce his connexion with Pedro Arias, who had conducted himſelf ſo badly, and to eſtabliſh a diſtinct government in that province, immediately under his Majeſty; and Hernandez taking his counſel, ſent this party to make their way to the north coaſt, thereby to open a communication with the mother country.

founder of the town of Leon 1523. 120,000 Indian tributaries. He founded Granada the city of Nicaragua and Brussells, 1524

All this being explained to Sandoval, was by him communicated to Cortes, in expectation of his ſupporting the views of Hernandez, by Captain Luis Marin, whom I attended upon this occaſion. Our whole party conſiſted of ten ſoldiers, and a moſt deſperate journey it was. the Indians were hoſtile and attacked us with large heavy lances, wounding two of our ſoldiers. The rivers which we croſſed were ſwollen and rapid, and ſo frequent, that in one day we paſſed three of them; one river named Xagua, ten leagues from Triumpho de la Cruz, detained us for two days, and the inlets and lagoons were infeſted by alligators. By the ſide of the river Xagua we found the ſkeletons of ſeven horſes; they had belonged to De Oli's troops, and died from eating poiſonous herbs.

herbs. Paſſing El Triumpho de la Cruz, and a place named Quemara, at length we arrived in the neighbourhood of Truxillo about the hour of veſpers, and ſaw five cavaliers riding along the coaſt. Theſe were, Cortes and four of his friends, who were taking exerciſe. When he recogniſed us, after the firſt ſurpriſe at the unexpected meeting, he diſmounted from his horſe, and running up, embraced us all with tears in his eyes, ſo overjoyed was he to ſee us. It made me melancholy to find him ſo weak and reduced. Diſtreſs and diſeaſe had worn him down; indeed he expected death, and had gotten a Franciſcan habit made to be buried in. He had not at this time received any intelligence from Mexico ſince he quitted that city. He walked into the town with us, and we ſupped with him, wretchedly enough. I had not my fill even of bread or biſcuit. When he had read over the letters relative to the buſineſs of Hernandez, he promiſed that he would do all he could to ſupport him. The veſſels from St. Domingo had arrived here three days before us. I have already mentioned, that except the horſes and one pipe of wine, their cargoes were nothing but frippery; it would have been much better that they had not come, ſince it induced us all to run ourſelves in debt buying their uſeleſs traſh.

While we were relating to Cortes the hardſhips we had ſuſtained during our late journey, a ſhip was deſcried at a diſtance, making for our port. This veſſel ſailed from the Havannah, with letters for the general from the licentiate Zuazo, alcalde major of Mexico. The hidalgo who was captain of the veſſel came directly to kiſs the hands of Cortes, and preſented his letters, the ſubſtance of which the reader ſhall be informed of. As ſoon as Cortes read them he was overwhelmed with ſorrow and diſtreſs. He retired to his private apartment, where we could hear that he was ſuffering under the greateſt agitation. He did not ſtir out for an entire day; at night he confeſſed and ordered a maſs for the enſuing morning, after which he called us together, and read to us the intelligence he had received, and whereby we learned, that it had been univerſally reported and believed in New Spain that we were all dead, and our properties had in conſequence been ſold by public auction.

time V. N. having gotten intelligence of the South Sea collected 180 men and
king in one brigantine and 60 Canoes came to a territory they called Coiba
nce proceeding by land to the mountains, to another named Poncha
the King of that name got 110 Pesos weight of gold, thence "over horrible mountaynes
eat riuers" to a region named Decaequa. Near this was the people reuen
ing Ethiopians. "From the palace of Kynge Poncha to the prospect of
other South Sea is onely syxe daies journey the whyche by reason of
ers and ill weathers he could not passe for 25 daies but at length
7th daie of the calends of October he beheld with wondring eyes the
hes of the high mountains thence hime by the guides of Decaequa
m the whyche he might see the other sea so long looked for and
er seen before of any man owte of oure world. Approaching
fore to the toppes of the mountaynes he commanded his army
daie and went hymself alone to the toppe as it were to take the
ate possession thereof. Where fallynge prostrate upon the groonde
draysing himself agayne upon his knees lyftynge uppe his eyes and
des to heaven and directinge his face to the new found South Sea he poured
t his humble and deuout prayers to Almighty God.— Here he raised heaps
nes and inscribed his claime of possession in the barke of trees — he had hime
mounter with a people he calles Cheapes, & passing a riuer, also with
ing he calles Coquera. He speaks of a Gulf running 60 miles inland with many
ands — to which he went in Canoes called there Culebras — he next defeats
ing named Tumanama who procures him by fishing 12 pounds of pearls
ehs of an island 20 miles from the Coast inhabited — this is near the equator
the latitude not specified — He returns, crosses a riuer — territory of a
ng he calles Teocha, King Pacra, country parched — King Bonanima
country mid-way. He then came to the country of King Comogrea
[illegible] — then to the countries of King
Chebuca — and K Chiorisus — & Pochorosa — & Tumanama —
[illegible] Calends January 1513 / page 102 / — to his friend King Comogreas
e palace is on a plain wherein runs the riuer which descends

from the high mountains which divide the two seas. this place is 70 leagues west of Dariena. he arrived at Dariena the 14th of Feb. 1514. his letter is dated the 4th of March.

"There was ~~[illegible]~~ Nicuesa & Vasco Nuñez but Vasco turned his Nicuesa Beyrge therefore thus turned from a rash hoyste to a politike discrete Captayne he was judged worthy to be advaunced to great honour by reason whereof he was reuoked into the Kyngs favor and thereupon created the Generall of the Kyngs army in those Regions.

Pedro Arias sailed from Spain Apl. 1514 with 1500 men leaving more than 2000 very pensive and sighing that they also might not be receiued profering themselues to go at theyr owne charges. he arrived in Amarica about the 20th of June. 1514

Dariena is a river running toward the west side of the Gulf of Vraba, on the banks of this river the Spaniards planted theyr first colony after they had vanquished King Chomacus, & named it Santa Maria Antigua At the arrival of Pedrarias he divided his army into detachments under Captains whom he sent forth diuers ways. "What tragedies followed hereof I wylle absolue in fewe woordes because they are horrible and unpleasant. for synce we fynyshed our decades there hath been more other than Kyllyngs sleyngs murtheryngs and accusyngs. — The Kyng made Vasco governour but during his pleasure His courage was rude and his fortes so victorious that he could not long abyde the haughtyness of Pedrarias. To bee briefe theyr fawlyng out & discord confounded all thyngs. Juan Cancio the Iudge sitte fryar of the order of St. Fra. did his utmost endeavor to make them frendes promysyng vnto Vasco the doughter of Pedrarias to wyfe. But no meanes could be founde howe these two wheels bore the chief rule might be brought to agreement. At the length the matter grew to such enhemitie that Pedrarias fyrst kyngs ouerii

auction. From his father in Caſtille he was informed, of the death of the Biſhop of Burgos, that Albornoz had been laborioufly undermining us at court, and alſo of what I have before related, in regard to his Majeſty's orders to the admiral, and the interference of the duke of Bejar; alſo that Narvaez had been appointed to the government of the river Palmas, and that the government of Panuco had been given to one Nuno de Guzman.

In regard to the affairs of New Spain theſe letters further added, that in conſequence of the powers which Cortes had given to the factor Gonzalo de Salazar, and the veedor Pedro Almindes Chirinos, to ſupercede the deputies he had left in Mexico, viz. the treaſurer Alonzo de Eſtrada, and the contador Albornoz, and to take the adminiſtration upon themſelves in caſe of miſconduct on the part of the deputies, theſe two officers having on their return to Mexico formed a ſtrong party, amongſt whom was the licentiate Zuazo alcalde major, Rodrigo de Paz alguazil major, A. de Tapia, Jorge de Alvarado, and the reſt of the ancient conquerors, attempted to take the government into their hands by main force, and the conſequence of the ſtruggle of the two parties was, much diſturbance, and bloodſhed. The factor and veedor however carried their point, and had made priſoners the two former deputies and many of their friends. Still however there was fighting every day, the predominating party confiſcating the property of their opponents, to diſtribute it among their own adherents. They had, we learned, completely ſuperceded Zuazo in his office, and had impriſoned Rodrigo de Paz the alguazil major, but that the licentiate Zuazo had effected a temporary reconciliation between the parties. During theſe diſturbances, three diſtricts, viz. the Zapotecans, Minxes, and thoſe in the vicinity of a fortified rock named Coatlan had rebelled, and a force going againſt them under the veedor Chirinos, inſtead of attending to their buſineſs, the troops thought of nothing but card playing, in conſequence of which the natives ſurpriſed them in their camp, and did them much miſchief. The factor had then ſent a veteran captain named Andrez de Monjaraz, to aſſiſt the veedor, and adviſe him; but this

this officer was unable to exert himſelf properly, being an invalid. As to the city of Mexico, there was danger every hour of an inſurrection.

The letters alſo informed us that the factor conſtantly remitted gold to his Majeſty's treaſurer, Don Franciſco de los Cobos, to make an intereſt for himſelf at court, reporting that we were all dead at Xicalonga, the belief of which was corroborated by Diego de Ordas who, to get out of the factions and troubles of Mexico had ſailed with two veſſels to ſearch for us, and arriving at the place called Xicalonga, where the captains Simon de Cuenca and Franciſco de Medina had been killed, hearing the account of their misfortunes, and not knowing the particulars, had taken it for granted that it could be no others than Cortes and his party who were thus deſtroyed, and reported ſo in his letters to Mexico which he ſent by certain paſſengers, and then, without landing, hoiſted ſail for Cuba. The factor ſhewed his letter to our relations, and put on mourning; and a monument was erected, and funeral ſervice performed for the honour of Cortes, in the great church of Mexico. The factor then proclaimed himſelf governor, and captain general of New Spain, with the ſound of kettle drums and trumpets, and iſſued out an order, that all women who had any regard for their ſouls, and whoſe huſbands had gone with Cortes, ſhould conſider them dead in law, and marry again forthwith. And becauſe a woman named Juana de Manſilla did not chuſe to take his advice, but inſiſted on waiting the return of her huſband Alonzo Valiente, ſaying that we were not people who would let ourſelves be ſo eaſily beaten as the veedor Chirinos and his party, the factor ordered her to be publicly whipped through the ſtreets of Mexico for a witch.

As there are in all places flattering traitors, one of this deſcription, whom we once expected better from, and whoſe name I will not mention, ſolemnly aſſured the factor, before many witneſſes, that going one night by the church of St. Jago, which is built on the ſcite of the great temple of the Mexicans, and looking into the church yard, he ſaw

nelynge ageynst Vasco, sent processe to the Magistrates of the towne whereby
mmanded them to shoote Vasquez and foure other which were captaynes
hym alleggyng that they and theyr confederates conspyred to rebel in
outh Sea. —— he sent to the South partes for Vasco wythynge hym
tue of hys commission to repayre to hym foorthwith, Vasco obeyed &
into prison. To conclude he was judged worthy of death and was put
cution. Pedro Arias embarked himself in the Ships of Vasco to search those

Juan Ponce, Gonzalo de Badajos, Francisco Bizcaino,
lejo - Sollezo or Solicius are the names of so many captains sent
with detachments by Pedro Arias. ——

The son of the King called Comogrus first mentioned to Vasco
y the South Sea, navigated by ships with sails and naked men
lso, Peru ——

V. B. built pinnaces of ships on the Atlantic side of the isthmus of Darien
and transported them over the mountains to the South Sea, this was
rime, as Pedro Arias in possession of them.

ſaw the ſouls of Cortes, Donna Marina, and Sandoval, burning in flames of fire; and that he had been ſo terrified thereat, as to have remained ill ever ſince. Another man of good reputation alſo came to the factor, and told him that the quadrangles of Teſcuco were haunted by evil ſpirits, which the natives ſaid were the ſouls of Donna Marina and Cortes. All thoſe falſehoods they invented to ingratiate themſelves with the factor.

At this time arrived in Mexico the captains Franciſco de las Caſas, and Gil Gonzales de Avila, the ſame who beheaded Chriſtoval de Oli. Las Caſas on his arrival publicly aſſerted the exiſtence of Cortes, and reprobated the conduct of the factor, but declared that ſhould it be the caſe, as then believed, that we were all dead, Alvarado was the only proper man to put in the place of Cortes, until his Majeſty's further pleaſure ſhould be known. Alvarado being written to on the ſubject ſet out for Mexico, but growing apprehenſive of ſome attempt upon his life, he thought it moſt prudent to return to his diſtrict. The factor had at this time collected what gold he could lay his hands upon, to ſupport his negotiations at court. In this he was oppoſed by almoſt every other officer of the government of New Spain, who determined among themſelves, not to permit him excluſively to make repreſentations of the tranſactions there, but to ſend likewiſe their own ſtatements at the ſame time, and by the ſame opportunity with his. When the factor found that he could not bring over Las Caſas, Gonzalez de Avila, and the licentiate, to ſupport his views, he cauſed the two former to be arreſted and proſecuted for the alleged murder of De Oli; and by his wickedneſs, and the preponderance of his power, procuring their condemnation, it was with the greateſt difficulty that their immediate execution could be prevented, by appealing to his Majeſty. He was obliged however to content himſelf with ſending them priſoners to Caſtille. He then fell upon the licentiate Zuazo, and ſent him off to Vera Cruz, and there embarked him for the Iſland of Cuba, as was alleged, to anſwer for his conduct while he was judge there. He next ſeized Rodrigo de Paz, and demanded of him an account and ſurrender of the

 treaſure

treaſure of Cortes, whoſe major domo he had been, and becauſe he could not, or would not declare, or make diſcovery concerning it, he cauſed his feet and part of his legs to be burnt; and not content with giving him the torture, and knowing alſo that if left alive he might complain to his Majeſty, he ordered him to be hanged, which was accordingly done. He alſo arreſted moſt of the friends of Cortes. Tapia and Jorge de Alvarado, however, took ſanctuary with the Franciſcan fathers; but ſeveral of them went over to him, partly becauſe he gave them Indians, and partly becauſe it is natural to wiſh to be with the ſtrongeſt power, or, as the ſaying is, to cry, "ſucceſs to the conquerors." He emptied the arſenal of arms, and brought them to his palace, in the front of which he alſo planted all the artillery, which was commanded by Captain Don Luis de Guzman, ſon in law to the Duke of Medina Sidonia. He next formed a body guard for his own protection, compoſed in part of the ſoldiers of Cortes, to the command of which he appointed one Artiaga.

Zuazo alſo wrote to Cortes to inform him, that he had reported many ſcandals of him to his Majeſty, ſuch as defrauding him of the duty upon gold; and as an inſtance to what extent he carried his tyranny, he mentioned a circumſtance of a travelling Spaniard having informed a woman, and given her proofs, that her huſband who was gone with Cortes was alive. This coming to the ears of the factor, he cauſed him to be ſeized by four alguazils, and would have hanged him, but that he, to excuſe himſelf, declared that what he had ſaid was all a falſehood, and that he had only invented it to comfort the poor woman, ſeeing her weeping for the loſs of her huſband. The buſineſs which brought this man to Mexico was, to obtain a plantation, this was immediately ſettled to his ſatisfaction, and he was diſmiſſed with a hint to hold his tongue, as he valued his life. This letter alſo informed Cortes of the death of the reverend father Bartholome, a holy man, and much regretted by all the natives of Mexico, who in token of their reſpect faſted from the time of his death, until he was buried.

Zuazo

Zuazo concluded by saying, that he feared Mexico was lost, and that he had been sent a prisoner in irons to the place from whence he dated his letter.

This intelligence made us all very sad. It was difficult to say which of the two, Cortes or the factor, we cursed most heartily in our own minds. We secretly gave them ten thousand maledictions, and our hearts sunk within us. Cortes retired to his chamber, and did not appear to us till evening, when we entreated him immediately to hasten to Mexico. He replied to us kindly and gently, saying, "dear friends "and companions, this villain of a factor is powerful. If I go and you "accompany me he may lay hands upon us by the road, and murder us "all. It were better that I went privately with three or four of you, and "came to Mexico before he was prepared. Let the rest rejoin Sandoval, "and proceed with him to Mexico." Cortes now wrote to Captain Hernandez, promising him every support; he sent him also two mules loaded with presents of such things as he knew he wanted, entrusting them to the care of a gentleman named Cabrera, a brave officer who was on the staff under Blasco Nunez Velo, and was killed in the same battle with the Viceroy. When I saw that Cortes was determined to go to Mexico, I requested of him that he would permit me, who had been in all difficulties and dangers by his side, to attend him upon this occasion. He embraced me and said, "I request you my son to remain with "Sandoval. I promise you, and I swear by this beard, that I consider "myself much beholden to you, and have long done so." However he would not permit me to attend him.

who appears to have gone to Rome and is probably the anonymous Spaniard I

I remember when we were in the town of Truxillo, a gentleman named Roderigo Manueca, a principal officer in the general's household, to divert Cortes, seeing him distressed, as he was with good reason, laid a wager with some other cavaliers, that he would climb in his armour to the top of the rock, whereon stood the house which the Indians had built for the head quarters. When he had got a considerable way up he missed his hold, and falling to the ground, was killed.

Some of the ſettlers of this place now began to grow mutinous, on finding that Cortes had omitted to name them to any office. He however found the means to pacify them, by promiſes not to forget them on his arrival at Mexico. Previous to his departure, he ordered Captain Diego de Godoy with his ſettlers to quit the colony of Puerto de Cavallos, where it was impoſſible for them to keep their ground, on account of fleas, muſquitos, and other vermin, and to relieve us at the good ſettlement of Naco. He alſo ordered us to take the province of Nicaragua in our way to Mexico, as the government of it was an object worth applying for. Accordingly we took our leave of Cortes who was embarked, and ſet out chearfully upon our journey as Mexico was to be the end of it. It was as uſual attended with extreme diſtreſs. However we reached Naco, and found that Captain De Garro had before our arrival gone for Nicaragua, to acquaint his chief, Hernandez, of the promiſe which Cortes had made, and we ſet out on the enſuing day for Mexico.

Two confidential friends of the governor Arias de Avila, having gotten the knowledge that a private correſpondence was going on between Hernandez and Cortes, began to ſuſpect the view of the former to ſurrender his province, and detach himſelf from Avila. Theſe ſoldiers were named Garruito and Zamorrano. The former was urged on particularly by an old enmity to Cortes, on account of a rival-ſhip about a lady in St. Domingo when they were both youths, and which had ended in a duel. Theſe perſons informed Avila of the whole that they knew, and he, immediately on receipt of the intelligence, haſtened off to ſeize the parties concerned. Garro, alarmed in time, made his eſcape to us; but Hernandez, relying upon their former intimacy and friendſhip, thought that Avila would not proceed to extremities, and did not attempt to avoid him. He was however ſadly undeceived, for after a very ſummary proceſs he was executed as a traitor to his ſuperior officer, in the town which he was colonizing, and thus ended the negotiation between him and Cortes.

The

intended to preſent him. Sandoval applied to me at this time for my horſe, an excellent animal for career, exerciſe, or road. He coſt me ſix hundred crowns to one Avalos brother to Saavedra, my former one, which had coſt me a greater ſum, being killed in an action at a place called Zulaco. However Sandoval exchanged with me one of his, which was killed under me in leſs than two months; after which I remained with nothing better than a vicious colt, which I bought a bad bargain of from amongſt thoſe brought to Truxillo in the two veſſels, as I have before related. Sandoval at parting from us deſired us to wait his return at a large Indian town named Acalteca. When he reached Truxillo, his friend Cortes was rejoiced to ſee him, but neither our letter, nor the preſſing inſtances of Sandoval, nor of the reverend father Varillas, could induce him to ſurmount his averſion to proceed to Mexico.

When Sandoval found it impoſſible to induce Cortes to go to Mexico, he prevailed upon him to ſend a confidential ſervant named Martin de Orantes, with a commiſſion to Pedro de Alvarado, and Franciſco de las Caſas, to take upon them the government during his abſence, in caſe thoſe officers were in Mexico, and ſhould they not be found there, the ſame power was to be exerciſed by the treaſurer Alonzo de Eſtrada, and the contador Albornoz, conformably to the deputation given by Cortes to them, previous to his departure from Mexico, thoſe delegated to the factor and veedor being revoked. Cortes having agreed to this, and given his orders and inſtructions, directed Orantes to land in a bay between Vera Cruz and Panuco, and to ſuffer no one to go on ſhore but himſelf; and the veſſel was immediately to hoiſt ſail, and proceed for Panuco. Theſe laſt inſtructions were given, that the arrival of his officer ſhould be kept as private as poſſible until the proper time. He alſo ſent letters by him to all his friends in New Spain, and to the treaſurer and contador, although he knew them in reality not to belong to the number.

The wind and weather being favourable, in a few days the veſſel arrived

arrived at its deſtination, and Orantes on landing diſguiſed himſelf as a labourer. On his journey he avoided the Spaniards, lodging and mixing only with the natives. Thoſe who had known him before could not have recognized him, after an abſence of two years and three months. To ſuch as queſtioned him he ſaid, that his name was Juan de Flechilla; in this manner, being an active man, he arrived in four days at Mexico, and entering the city after dark, he proceeded directly to the lodgings of the reverend fathers Franciſcans. On being admitted, he there found the Alvarados and ſeveral of the friends of Cortes, concealed. When he had explained who he was, and produced the general's letters, all preſent, the reverend fathers not excepted, danced for joy; they immediately locked the gates of the monaſtery, to exclude the obſervation of the traitorous party, and at midnight the intelligence was communicated to the treaſurer, the contador, and many of the friends of Cortes, who immediately aſſembled at the Franciſcans.

It was then determined by them, as the firſt ſtep, to ſeize on the perſon of the factor in the morning. All the intermediate time was employed in collecting arms and friends, and making other preparations for the purpoſe. The veedor was at that period at the rock of Coatlan. At day break the whole party marched to the palace inhabited by the factor, crying, "long live his Majeſty, and Hernando Cortes." When this was heard by the citizens, they all took to their arms, thinking it ſomething wherein government called for their aſſiſtance, and numbers under that idea joined the treaſurer on his march. As to the contador, he played a double part, giving intelligence to the factor to put him on his guard, and Eſtrada reproached him ſtrongly for his conduct.

When the party of Cortes approached the reſidence of the factor, they found that he was already well prepared, owing to the information that he had received. His artillery under Don Luis de Guzman was planted in front of the houſe, and he had a ſtrong garriſon within ſide. Thoſe with the treaſurer forcing their way in, ſome by the different doors, others by the terraces and wherever they could get acceſs, all at the

the ſame time, and ſhouting for his Majeſty and Cortes, the adherents of the factor became diſmayed, and the artillery-men abandoning the guns, the other ſoldiers alſo made off and hid themſelves; one of them, Gines Nortes, leaping down from a corredor, ſo that there only remained with the factor, Pedro Gonzalez Sabiote, and four ſervants. When he found himſelf thus abandoned, he became deſperate, and endeavoured himſelf to fire off the guns, in which attempt he was ſeized, and made priſoner. A large cage of timber was conſtructed to receive him, and thus terminated his career as governor of New Spain. Circular notice was ſent to all the provinces of this revolution, by which each individual was pleaſed or diſſatisfied as his particular intereſt ſwayed him. When the veedor heard it he was ſo diſtreſſed that he fell ſick. He left his command with Captain De Monjaraz, and got himſelf conveyed towards Mexico, and reaching the monaſtery of St. Francis in Tezcuco, he there ſhut himſelf up, and was ſhortly after made priſoner and ſecured in another wooden cage.

Immediate intelligence of all that had happened was forwarded to Pedro de Alvarado, with directions to him to proceed to Truxillo, and wait upon Cortes. The next thing that the new deputies did was, to pay their reſpects to Juanna de Manſilla, the woman who had been whipped for a witch. The treaſurer placed her on horſeback behind him, and thus, attended by all the cavaliers in proceſſion, ſhe was paraded through the ſtreets of Mexico like a Roman matron, and was ever after called Donna Juanna, in honour of her conſtancy, in refuſing to comply with the orders of the factor, to marry again, while ſhe was convinced that her huſband was living.

The ſituation of Mexico evidently requiring the preſence of Cortes, Fray Diego de Altamirano was pitched on by his friends to wait upon him, and repreſent to him the neceſſity of his immediately ſetting out. This father had been in the military profeſſion before he entered the church, and was a man of buſineſs and abilities. The conduct purſued by the veedor and factor, and eſpecially their confiſcations and diſtribution

tion of property among their greedy ſupporters, had gained them many adherents, and, if not friends, at leaſt perſons intereſted in the maintenance of their government. Theſe, compoſed principally of the low and ſeditious deſcription, but mixed with ſome of quality, with the ſupport and contrivance of the contador who dreaded the arrival of Cortes, had formed a plan to kill the treaſurer, and reinſtate the factor and veedor in their offices. For the purpoſe of releaſing them from priſon, they had recourſe to one Guzman, a white-ſmith; a fellow of low character, and a ridiculous affecter of wit. To him they applied to make the keys, giving him a piece of gold whereon was marked the form in which they were to be wrought, and charging him at the ſame time to keep the ſtricteſt ſecrecy. All this he readily undertook and promiſed, ſpeaking as if he had the liberation of the priſoners ſincerely at heart. They then told him all the particulars which his inquiſitiveneſs induced him to queſtion them about, and he proceeded in his work, but ſlowly and aukwardly, in order to induce them to repeat their viſits, to hurry him on; and he thus obtained from the conſpirators the knowledge that he required. The keys being finiſhed, and the party ready to make the attempt, he ſuddenly went to the houſe of the treaſurer, and gave him an account of the whole. The treaſurer, aſſembling the friends of Cortes on the inſtant, proceeded to the place of meeting, where he found twenty conſpirators armed, and in waiting for the ſignal. Theſe he ſeized, but many others made their eſcape. Among theſe apprehended were ſome notorious characters; one of them had lately committed violence on a Caſtillian woman. They were tried before the bachelor Ortega alcalde major, and being convicted, three were hanged, and ſeveral whipped.

I muſt now make a conſiderable digreſſion from my narrative, though it comes in properly in point of matter, to mention how the ſame veſſel which conveyed the letters tranſmitted by the factor to his Majeſty in Caſtille, conveyed others, ſo artfully concealed that he had no ſuſpicion of them, wherein was given a full and true account of all

his oppreſſions, and unlawful proceedings. Theſe facts had alſo been already reported by the courts of St. Domingo, which contradicted the accounts of the death of Cortes, and informed his Majeſty how that officer was employed for his ſervice. The Emperor is reported to have declared his indignation at the manner in which Cortes had been treated, and his determination to ſupport him.

When Fra Altamirano arrived at Truxillo, and explained his buſineſs to Cortes, the latter returned thanks to heaven for having granted peace to that country. He alſo declared his intention of going thither, but that it muſt be by land, on account of the contrariety of the currents and his own bad ſtate of health. The pilots however repreſented to him that the ſeaſon was favourable, it being then the month of April, and prevailed upon him to give up his firſt determination, but ſtill he could not leave that place until the return of Sandoval, whom he had detached againſt a Captain Roxas, who ſerved under Arias, and againſt whom complaints had been lodged by the natives of a diſtrict named Olancho, which was diſtant about fifty five leagues from Truxillo. Sandoval had been detached thither with ſeventy ſoldiers; at firſt the two parties were upon the brink of hoſtilities, but became afterwards reconciled and parted amicably, Roxas and his ſoldiers quitting that country.

Sandoval was immediately recalled in conſequence of the meſſage brought by Altamirano. The general appointed Captain Saavedra his lieutenant in that province, and wrote at the ſame time to Captain Luis Marin, to march our whole party by the road of Guatimala, and Captain Godoy he ordered to Naco. Theſe letters Saavedra malicioufly ſuppreſſed, for they never came to our hands. Cortes previous to his embarkation confeſſed to Fra Juan and received the ſacrament, for he was ſo ill that he thought himſelf at the point of death. The wind favouring his voyage to the Havannah, he ſoon arrived there, and

founded a town named Gracias a Dios, A. 1530, but was obliged to abandon it.

and was joyfully received by his former friends and acquaintances; and a veſſel from New Spain which arrived about the ſame time, brought intelligence that the country was at peace, for that the Indians hearing that Cortes, and we his conquerors were yet living, had come in and ſubmitted.

CHAPTER VIII.

Return of Cortes to Mexico; occurrences there. Return of the author to Mexico.

AFTER five days refreſhment at the Havannah, Cortes embarked, and in twelve days arrived at the Port of Medellin, oppoſite to the Iſland De los Sacrificios, where he diſembarked with twenty ſoldiers, and proceeding to the town of San Juan de Ulua, which was diſtant about half a league, it was his fortune to light upon a ſtring of horſes and mules which had conveyed travellers to the coaſt, and which he engaged to take him to Vera Cruz. He ordered thoſe about him to give no hint to any one, who he was, and two hours before day break arriving at the town, he went directly to the church the doors of which were juſt opened. When the ſacriſtan ſaw the church filled with people whom he did not know, he became alarmed and ran into the ſtreet, calling to the civil power to aſſiſt him. The alcaldes, three alguazils and ſome of the neighbours came with arms in conſequence of the noiſe. Cortes was ſqualid, and the white habit of the reverend father was dirty from the ſea voyage, nor did any one recollect them until Cortes began to ſpeak; but as ſoon as he was recognized by them, they all fell upon their knees, kiſſed his hands, and bid him and his attendants welcome. All his old fellow ſoldiers aſſembled around him, and after maſs, eſcorted him to the quarters of Pedro Moreno Medrano, where he remained for eight days, during which time he was feaſted and entertained by the inhabitants. Intelligence was alſo ſent to Mexico to give the people there the joyful tidings, and Cortes wrote to his friends to the ſame effect. The Indians of the neighbourhood brought him abundant

abundant preſents, and when he ſet out for the city of Mexico every preparation was made for his accommodation. The inhabitants of Mexico, and of all the places round the lake celebrated his return with feſtivals, and thoſe of Tlaſcala did the ſame.

When he arrived at Teſcuco, where the contador came to wait upon him, he thought it proper to remain there for that night, and on the next morning but one he entered the city, being met by all the officers, cavaliers, and other inhabitants, in great ſtate. The natives in their beſt dreſſes, and armed as warriors, filled the lake with their canoes; the dancing continued in every ſtreet during the day, and at night the city was illuminated with lights at every door. Immediately on his arrival he went to the monaſtery of St. Franciſco, to return thanks to God for all his mercies to him. From that he went to his magnificent palace, where he was ſerved and eſteemed, and feared, as a ſovereign prince, all the provinces making their ſubmiſſions, and ſending preſents and congratulations to him. The entry of Cortes into Mexico was in the month of June. He immediately ordered the arreſt of thoſe who had been moſt eminent for ſedition, and faction, and cauſed an enquiry to be inſtituted into the conduct of the two great culprits. He alſo arreſted one Ocampo, who had been concerned in defamatory libels, and a perſon of the name of Ocana a ſcrivener. This man who was very old was called the body and ſoul of the factor. He now intended to proceed immediately to bring the veedor and factor to juſtice for their crimes, and if he had done ſo no one could have ſaid againſt it, and it would have met his Majeſty's approbation. This I heard ſaid by ſome members of the royal council of the Indies, the Biſhop de las Caſas being preſent, in the year of our Lord one thouſand five hundred and forty, when I was attending on my own affairs; but in this inſtance Cortes may be juſtly taxed with feebleneſs of conduct.

The reader has already been informed of the charges brought againſt Cortes in Caſtille, and of the orders iſſued to the admiral of St. Domingo,

Domingo, of the interpoſition of the Duke of Bejar, and the appointment of Luis Ponce de Leon. The licentiate at this period of which I am writing, had arrived at Medellin. The ſuddenneſs of his coming rather ſurpriſed Cortes, who when he received the intelligence, was performing his devotions in the church of St. Francis. He earneſtly prayed to the Lord to guide him as ſeemed beſt to his holy wiſdom, and on coming out of the church ſent an expreſs to bring him information of all particulars. In two days after, the licentiate ſent him his Majeſty's orders to receive him as reſident judge in Mexico, and Cortes in conſequence thereof diſpatched a perſon with a meſſage of compliment, and deſiring to know which of the two roads to the city he intended to take, that he might make ſuch preparations as were proper for the reception of a perſon of his rank. The licentiate ſent him back an anſwer, thanking him for his polite offers, and declaring his intention to repoſe after the fatigues of his voyage for a little time, where he was. This interval was buſily employed by the enemies of Cortes, who repreſented to the licentiate that it was his determination to put the factor and veedor to death, before his arrival, and that it was neceſſary for him to take good care as to his own perſon, for as to all theſe civilities of Cortes, they were only intended, by aſcertaining the road that he intended to take, under the colour of preparation to do him honour, the more effectually to ſucceed in his intention to aſſaſſinate him. They alſo miſrepreſented every tranſaction in which Cortes had been concerned.

The perſons whom the licentiate principally conſulted were the alcalde major Proano, a native of Cordova, and his brother the alcalde of the citadel, named Salazar de la Pedrada, who ſhortly after his arrival died of a pleuriſy, Marcos de Aguilar a licentiate or bachelor, a ſoldier named Bocanegra de Cordova, and certain fathers of the order of St. Domingo, the provincial of whom was one Fray Thomas Ortiz. He had been a prior ſome where that I do not now recollect, and all thoſe who came with him deſcribed him to be a man more fit for worldly affairs than thoſe which particularly concerned his holy office. With

theſe

theſe perſons the licentiate conſulted as to his proceeding to Mexico, which they all were of opinion ſhould not be delayed an inſtant. Accordingly, the laſt meſſengers diſpatched by Cortes met him on the road at Iztapalapa. A ſumptuous banquet was here prepared for them, at which, after ſeveral abundant and magnificent ſervices, ſome cheeſe-cakes and cuſtards were placed upon the table, as great delicacies. They were ſo much approved of, and ſome of the company eat of them in ſuch quantities, that they made them ſick; but thoſe who eat of them in moderation were not at all affected. However this prior, Fray Thomas Ortiz, aſſerted that they had been poiſoned with arſenic, and that he had not eaten of them from a ſuſpicion that they were ſo; but others who were preſent declared, that he ſtuffed himſelf heartily with them, and ſaid that they were the beſt he had ever taſted. This new charge was immediately ſeized on and circulated by the enemies of Cortes, to throw an odium upon him.

During this time Cortes remained in Mexico; report ſaid that he had ſent a good preſent of gold to the licentiate; this I cannot warrant; but as he had perſons ſtationed to bring him intelligence, on his quitting Iztapalapa Cortes ſet out to meet him, with a grand and numerous retinue of all the officers and gentlemen of the city. When the two parties met, many civilities paſſed between the great men; the licentiate ſeemed to me to be well acquainted with the rules of politeneſs. It was with great difficulty that Cortes could prevail upon him to take the right hand. On his entry into the city he proceeded to the monaſtery of St. Franciſco, buſineſs being deferred till the enſuing day. Cortes attended the licentiate to the palace prepared for him, where he entertained him moſt ſumptuouſly, but his politeneſs and grandeur of manner was more ſtriking than all the reſt, inſomuch that the licentiate obſerved privately to his friends, that Cortes muſt have been for a long time paſt exerciſing himſelf in the manners of a great man.

On the enſuing day, the council of Mexico, and all the civil and military

military officers, and the veteran ſoldiers, were aſſembled by order; and in our preſence the licentiate Ponce de Leon produced his authority from his Majeſty, which Cortes having kiſſed, and placed upon his head in token of ſubmiſſion, we all declared our obedience to, as in duty bound. The licentiate then received and returned back the rod of juſtice, in token of the ſurrender of the government into his hands, ſaying to Cortes, "General, this government I receive from you by his Majeſty's "orders, wherein however it is by no means implied that you are not "moſt worthy of this, or higher truſts." To which the general replied, that he was always happy in obeying his Majeſty's commands, and that it was alſo a ſatisfaction to him, that he would be thereby enabled to prove the falſehood and malice of his enemies. The licentiate in anſwer ſaid, that where were good men, there were alſo bad, and ſuch was the world; but that to each would be repaid in kind. This was all the material buſineſs of the day. On the next, Cortes attended the ſummon of the new governor, who ſent it with much reſpect, and they had a conference, at which no one was preſent except the prior Thomas Ortiz; but it is ſaid and believed that the licentiate addreſſed Cortes to the following effect. He firſt obſerved that it had been his Majeſty's intention, that thoſe who had moſt merit in the conqueſt of this country, ſhould be well provided for in the diſtribution of plantations, conſidering more eſpecially the ſoldiers who firſt came thither from Cuba; and that it had been underſtood, that this was not the caſe, for that they had been neglected, while others newly arrived had wealth heaped upon them, without any juſt pretenſions. Cortes, to this, replied, that all had got ſhares, but that ſome of theſe it was true turned out much inferior to others; however it was in his power as governor now to rectify that. The governor then aſked him how it happened that he had left Luis de Godoy to periſh for want in a diſtant ſettlement, when the veterans ought to have been ſuffered to remain and enjoy the comforts of eſtabliſhed poſſeſſions in Mexico, and the new colonizations have been aſſigned to new comers. He alſo enquired how Captain Luis Marin, Bernal Diaz del Caſtillo, and the others of his approved ſoldiers had

had been taken care of. Cortes replied, that for buſineſs of danger it was uſeleſs to employ any but his veterans; but that they would ſoon he expected return to Mexico, being then upon their road thither. The governor next aſked him, rather ſharply, about his imprudent march againſt Chriſtoval de Oli, undertaken without his Majeſty's orders or permiſſion. To which Cortes anſwered, that he conſidered it to be neceſſary for his Majeſty's ſervice, as the dangerous effects of ſuch example among officers intruſted with ſeparate commands might be very extenſive, and that he had, previous to ſetting out, reported to his Majeſty his intention ſo to do. He then queſtioned Cortes as to the affairs of Narvaez, Garay, and Tapia, to all which Cortes gave ſuch ſatisfactory anſwers that the governor ſeemed to be well contented therewith.

After Cortes had retired, Fray Thomas Ortiz called on three perſons intimate friends of the general, and with great earneſtneſs told them the ſame which he on the enſuing morning told to Cortes himſelf; for coming to him at that time, and deſiring to ſpeak to him in private, he then aſſured him, with many proteſtations of friendſhip, and wiſhes to ſerve him, that the governor had ſecret orders from his Majeſty, immediately to behead him, and that he had thought it proper, in conformity with the duty of his ſacred function, as well as from his private regard, to give him early intelligence. This friendly communication it may be ſuppoſed gave Cortes a good deal to reflect upon; he had been informed of the intriguing and ſimulating character of the friar, and was induced to think that this might be done to induce him to give a bribe for his interceſſion. Others ſaid afterwards that Ortiz acted by the directions of the governor. Cortes, however, received his pretended friendly information with many thanks, declaring his hopes that his Majeſty had a different opinion of his ſervices, than to proceed againſt him in that manner, and that he had too high an opinion of the governor, to ſuppoſe he would do any thing without warrant. When the friar found that his tricks were not attended by the effect

 that

that he had flattered himſelf with, he remained much confuſed, and did not know what to ſay.

The new governor iſſued public notice, that all who had complaints to make againſt the former adminiſtration of the country, ſhould bring them forward, whether they were concerning Cortes, the civil, or the military officers. In conſequence of this a hoſt of accuſers, litigants, and claimants, ſtarted up. All the general's private enemies brought accuſations againſt him; others who had really juſtice on their ſide laid claim to what was due to them. Some alledged that they had not received their proper ſhares of gold, others that they had not been ſufficiently rewarded, and others demanded remuneration for their horſes killed in the wars, although they had gotten ten times the value in gold; and ſome demanded ſatisfaction for perſonal injuries. Juſt at the period when the governor had opened his court to give a hearing to all the parties, it was God's will, and for our ſins and misfortunes, that he ſhould be taken ſuddenly ill of a fever, and a lethargy coming on him he remained in that ſtate four days. His three phyſicians then adviſed him to confeſs and receive the ſacrament, which he did with great devotion, and appointed as his ſucceſſor in the government, Marcos de Aguilar who had come with him from Caſtille. Some ſaid that the latter was only a bachelor and not a licentiate, and therefore incapable of acting; however the governor left him orders not to proceed further with the buſineſs of the court, but that all ſhould be laid before his Majeſty. On the ninth day from the time he was taken ill, the governor gave up his breath to our Lord. The whole city went into mourning on the occaſion. The military deplored his loſs with particular reaſon, for he certainly intended to redreſs all abuſes, and to reward us according to our merits.

I heard an anecdote of him, at the time of his death, and it was this. He was of a gay diſpoſition and fond of muſic; to divert his lethargy, his attendants brought a lute, and played upon it in his apartment;

ment; and they ſaid that while they played him a favourite air, he beat time to it, and juſt as it was finiſhed he expired. What malignities and ſlanders were now circulated againſt Cortes, by his enemies in Mexico! they ſaid that he and Sandoval had poiſoned the governor, as he had before done Garay. The moſt buſy in this malicious affair was the friar Ortiz. It appeared as if the veſſel which brought them had been infected with the diſeaſe of which the governor died; above a hundred of thoſe who came in it having died at ſea or after landing. All the friars except a very few were ſwept off, and the contagion pervaded the city of Mexico.

It was the wiſh of thoſe who were enemies to Cortes, that the enquiry ſhould be proceeded on in the ſame manner as was intended before the death of the late governor. Cortes aſſerted his readineſs, provided that the new governor Aguilar would take upon him the reſponſibility of acting contrary to the teſtament of his predeceſſor. The council of Mexico however inſiſted that Aguilar was ineligible to that high ſituation, on account of his age, infirmities, and other incapacities, which indeed were pretty evident. They therefore recommended that Cortes ſhould be aſſociated with him, but he inſiſted on adhering ſtrictly to the letter of the teſtament of his predeceſſor, and Cortes was alſo entirely adverſe to taking any ſhare of the authority, for private reaſons, ſo that the whole weight reſted on this poor hectic old man, who was obliged to drink goat's milk, and to be ſuckled by a Caſtillian woman to keep him alive.

I will now go to a diſtance both in time and place, to relate that which happened to us on our journey to Mexico from Naco, where we were waiting to hear from Sandoval, who was to ſend us notice of the ſailing of Cortes, which intelligence we never received, Saavedra, I have already mentioned, maliciouſly ſuppreſſing the letters with which he was intruſted.

When our captain Marin and the reſt of us found that we were diſappointed, in the receipt of our expected intelligence, we determined to ſend a party to Truxillo to learn the truth. Accordingly ten of the cavalry, of which I was one, ſet out, and on our arrival at a place named Olancho, we learned from ſome Spaniards that Cortes had failed. This intelligence was ſoon after confirmed to us in a communication we had with Saavedra; we therefore returned to our Captain Marin with the good news, and ſoon after we all ſet out with joyful hearts for Mexico. I recollect we threw ſtones at the country we left behind us.

On our way, at a place called Maniani, we met five ſoldiers who had been ſent by Alvarado in ſearch of us. They were commanded by one of our veterans named Diego de Villanueva, a brave ſoldier. As ſoon as we had recognized each other and ſaluted, we enquired for his Captain Alvarado, who, he informed us was not far diſtant, and whom accordingly, after two days march farther, we fell in with. Our meeting took place at the town of Cholulteca Malalaca, and a third party joined us there, compoſed of captains under Pedro Arias de Avila, who met Alvarado's party to adjuſt ſome difference about bounds. We remained here together for three days. Alvarado at this time ſent one Gaſpar Arias de Avila, a confidential friend of his to treat with Captain Pedro Arias, about ſome particular buſineſs, I believe relative to a marriage; for Captain P. A. de Avila ſeemed much devoted to Alvarado.

Continuing our march, we croſſed a hoſtile country where the natives killed one of our ſoldiers, and wounded three others. The want of time prevented our puniſhing them as they deſerved. Further on, in Guatimala, they had alſo manned the paſſes againſt us, and we were detained three days in forcing our way; here I received a wound of an arrow, but it was of little conſequence. We then arrived at the valley where the city of Guatimala is now built, the people of which were

were all hoſtile; I recollect that here we had a number of ſhocks of an earthquake, very long in their duration, and ſo violent as to throw ſeveral of the ſoldiers to the ground.

When we paſſed old Guatimala, the natives had aſſembled to give us an hoſtile reception, but we drove them away before us, and took poſſeſſion of their magnificent dwellings and quadrangles, for that night, and on the enſuing day we hutted ourſelves on the plain, where we halted for ten days; during which time Alvarado ſent ſummons to the neighbouring Indians, to come in and ſubmit. We delayed here to receive their anſwers, which none of them thought proper to ſend. We then proceeded on our journey by long marches, until we reached the ſtation of Alvarado's main force, at Olintepeque. After halting there for ſome days we proceeded on towards Mexico, by Soconuzco, and Teguantepeque. On this march we loſt two of our Spaniards, and the Mexican lord Juan Velaſquez who had been a chief under Guatimotzin.

When we arrived at Guaxaca, we learned the news of the death of the governor Ponce de Leon. Anxiouſly preſſing forward for Mexico, we arrived at Chalco, from whence we ſent forward meſſengers to Cortes to inform him of our approach, and requeſting that he would provide us good quarters, which we much required, for it was now two years and three months ſince we ſet out upon our expedition. As Cortes knew of our approach, he rode out with many cavaliers to meet us on the cauſeway, and accompany us into the city. We went on our arrival, to the great church, to return our thanks to God. From thence we attended the general to his palace, where he had a ſumptuous entertainment provided for us. Alvarado went to his reſidence in the fortreſs, of which he had been appointed alcalde. Luis Marin went to lodge with Sandoval, and I and another friend named Captain Luis Sanchez, were taken by Andrez de Tapia to his houſe. Sandoval and

Cocoa. not the same kind used for food – which is smaller & called Chocacahuat
they had them in bags of doos. – they used also small cloths of cotton called
Patolquachtli & gold dust in porcequills.
In Tlaxco. they seem to have had coined metal in use.

and all our friends, and Cortes among the reſt, ſent us preſents of neceſſaries, as alſo gold and cocoa for our expences.

On the next day my friend and I, accompanied by Sandoval and Andres de Tapia, proceeded to wait upon the governor Aguilar, who received us with much politeneſs, but declared his inability to make any new arrangements, the whole being left to his Majeſty's arbitration; but that if he was authoriſed, he would do every thing that lay in his power to give us ſatisfaction. At this time arrived from the Iſland of Cuba, Diego de Ordaz whom I have already mentioned as the circulator of the report of our deaths; he was ſeverely taxed for his impropriety, but moſt ſolemnly denied it to us, averring that he had only written an account of the unfortunate affair at Xicalonga as it really happened, and any miſrepreſentation that was made, the factor was accountable for; and for the truth of what he aſſerted he referred to his letters. Cortes had at this time too much buſineſs on his hands to embarraſs himſelf any further with this; he therefore thought proper to drop it, and endeavour to reſcue his property, which had been diſpoſed of upon the ſuppoſition of his death. A great part of it had been appropriated to the expences of celebrating his funeral ſervice, and to the ſaying maſſes for his ſoul and ours, to give credit to the report; and theſe perpetual maſſes which had been ſo purchaſed out of the property of Cortes upon the ſuppoſition of his death, and for the good of his ſoul, were now that he was found to be alive, and no longer to be in need of them, purchaſed by one Juan de Caceres, for the benefit of his own ſoul, whenever he was to die; ſo that Cortes was more removed from the re-attainment of his property than ever.

Ordas who was a wiſe man and one of experience in worldly affairs, ſeeing that Cortes was neglected and had fallen in public eſtimation ſince his being ſuperceded by the governor Ponce de Leon, adviſed him to aſſume more conſequence and a more ſtately appearance than his natural diſpoſition prompted him to, in order to maintain the reſpect that was

was due to him; but ſuch was his natural plainneſs of manners, that he never at any time liked to be called otherwiſe than ſimply, Cortes, and truly it was a great and noble name in itſelf, and as much revered as Cæſar's and Pompey's in the time of the Romans, Hannibal's among the Carthaginians, or in our time that of Gonzalo Hernandez, or the moſt valiant and ever invincible Diego Garcia de Paredes. Ordaz alſo informed Cortes of the report that was circulated through Mexico, of its being his intention to put the factor to death privately in jail; and he warned him of the man being powerfully patroniſed.

The treaſurer Eſtrada at this time married off two of his daughters; one to Jorge de Alvarado, another to Don Luis de Guzman ſon to the Count De Caſtellar. It was then ſettled that Pedro de Alvarado ſhould go to Caſtille to ſolicit the government of Guatimala, and he in the mean time ſent his brother Jorge to that province with a force of our allies of different nations, to reduce it. The governor alſo about that period ſent a force againſt the province of Chiapa under the command of Don Juan Enriquez de Guzman, a near relation of the duke of Medina Sidonia; an other to the province of Tabaſco under Balthaſar Oſſorio, and a third againſt the Zapotecan mountaineers under Alonzo de Herrera, one of our veterans.

After lingering for eight months, the governor Marcos de Aguilar gave up the ghoſt, leaving by teſtament the treaſurer Alonzo de Eſtrada his ſucceſſor. At this time, the council of Mexico and many principal Spaniards were ſolicitous that Cortes ſhould be aſſociated with the treaſurer in the government, the latter appearing entirely incompetent at the preſent juncture, more particularly for the following reaſon. Nuno de Guzman who had for two years governed the province of Panuco, was a man of a moſt furious and tyrannical diſpoſition, arbitrarily extending the bounds of his juriſdiction, and putting to death all who dared to oppoſe his will. Thus Pedro Gonzalez de Truxillo, a perſon of noble condition, aſſerting with truth that his diſtrict was a dependency of Mexico,

Mexico, the other without any ceremony ordered him to be immediately hanged, which was accordingly done, contrary to all juſtice. He alſo put many other Spaniards to death, apparently for no reaſon except to make himſelf feared, and ſet the authority of the governor of Mexico at defiance. In order therefore to curb the inſolence of Guzman, it was the wiſh of many that Cortes ſhould take a ſhare in the government, but he was utterly adverſe to it, knowing the difficulties, and the dangerous power and more dangerous malignity of his enemies, for as uſual, upon the death of Aguilar the ſtory was again induſtriouſly circulated, that it was owing to poiſon given him by Cortes.

It was determined on the peremptory refuſal of the latter, that Sandoval who was alguazil major, ſhould act conjointly with the treaſurer, and he was willingly accepted as an aſſociate by him. His firſt buſineſs on entering into office was, to endeavour to bring to juſtice one Ruano, who had fled from Mexico for ſome crime. He ſince became a rich man, for, eſcaping for the preſent, he eluded juſtice altogether, though Sandoval did his utmoſt to apprehend him.

Certain perſons, the inveterate and active enemies of Cortes, now perſuaded the treaſurer to write to Caſtille, to repreſent at court, that he had been compelled by the influence of Cortes, to aſſociate Sandoval with him in the government, contrary to his inclination, and to his Majeſty's ſervice. They by the ſame opportunity tranſmitted a volume of malignant falſehoods, which they had raked up againſt the general, ſuch as that he had poiſoned Luis Ponce de Leon, and Marcos de Aguilar the governors, as alſo the Adelantado Garay, and that he had endeavoured to adminiſter arſenic in cheeſecakes to a number of people at a feaſt. Alſo that he was plotting the ſecret murders of the veedor and factor in jail. All which lies were ſupported by the induſtry of the contador Albornoz, who was then in Caſtille. He was alſo charged ſtrongly as to the death of his firſt wife, and theſe things being thus urged, Cortes was in part judged unheard, an order being ſent to releaſe the

Thispaw had 6,000 Households. Tho.s Gage.
or rather 4,000.

the veedor and factor, and an officer named Don Pedro de la Cueva commendador major of Alcantara, was ordered to go with three hundred ſoldiers, at the coſt of Cortes, and in caſe of his guilt being proved, to inflict the puniſhment of death upon him, and diſtribute his property amongſt the veteran conquerors of Mexico. This was however to be done under the judgment of a royal court of audience, to be preſent upon the ſpot for the purpoſe. All theſe preparations however ended in nothing; for neither Don Pedro de la Cueva, nor the court of royal audience ever arrived.

The treaſurer was now greatly elevated by the countenance which he received at court, and which he attributed to his being conſidered a ſon of the catholic king. He diſpoſed of governments at his pleaſure, ſending his relation Mazariejos to make enquiry into the conduct of Don Juan Enriquez de Guzman in Chiapa, where they ſay more pillage and plunder took place than ought to have done. He alſo ſent a force againſt the Zapotecans and Minxes under one De Barrios, ſaid to be a brave ſoldier, and who had ſerved in Italy. I do not mean Barrios of Seville, the brother-in-law of Cortes. This officer marched againſt them with a hundred ſoldiers, but the natives ſurpriſed him one night, and killed him with ſeven more of the party. Such was the difference between us the veteran conquerors, and theſe raw half formed ſoldiers, who did not know the arts and ſtratagems of the enemy. The governor alſo ſent a hundred of the new ſoldiers, under the command of a particular friend named Figuero, to the province of Guaxaca. On his route by the Zapotecans, Figuero fell in with a captain left in command there by Marcos de Aguilar, named Alonzo Herrera, and ſome diſpute ariſing between them, ſwords were drawn, Herrera wounding Figuero, and three other ſoldiers who were with him. Figuero finding himſelf not able to go into the field, and his ſoldiers not being fit for expeditions in the mountains, thought proper to ſearch for and break open the ſepulchres, in which the ancient chiefs of thoſe countries were interred, to make prize of the gold, which according to

cuſtom

tumuli of ſepulture are numerously scattered thro' Tartary containing sacrificial remains, containing also figures of men, deer &c cast in brass and gold

cuſtom was buried with them. In this manner he collected to the value of above one hundred thouſand crowns, and with this wealth, which was increaſed by preſents, he ſet off for Mexico, leaving the provinces in a worſe ſtate than he found them. From Mexico he went to Vera Cruz, and embarking for Caſtille, the veſſel in which he ſailed was loſt in a gale of wind, and he and all his wealth went to the bottom. The buſineſs of ſubjecting theſe Indians was finally left to us, the conquerors of Guacacualco, who at length brought them to peace, for their cuſtom was to ſubmit during the ſummer, and to break into rebellion as ſoon as the torrents made their country inacceſſible. I was on three expeditions againſt them. The town of St. Alfonſo is now built there, to keep them in ſubjection.

When the governor heard how his friend had been maltreated by Figuero, he ſent the officers of juſtice to apprehend him; he however eſcaped to the rocks and woods, but they took a ſoldier who uſed to accompany him, and brought him priſoner to Mexico, where, without a hearing, the governor ordered his right hand to be ſtruck off. His name was Cortejo, and by birth he was a gentleman.

A ſervant of Sandoval alſo at this time wounded a ſervant of the treaſurer, in a quarrel. The treaſurer had him arreſted, and commanded his right hand to be cut off. Cortes and Sandoval were at this time at a place called Quernavaca, partly from motives of prudence. On hearing of this inſult they poſted off to Mexico, and it is ſaid that Cortes uſed ſuch expreſſions to the treaſurer upon the ſubject, as to put the latter in fear of his life. He called his friends about him to form a guard for his perſon, and immediately releaſed the veedor and factor from jail. By their advice the governor was then induced to iſſue an order, for the inſtant expulſion of Cortes from Mexico. This being repreſented to Cortes, he declared his readineſs to obey, ſince it was the will of God, that he who had gained that city, at the expence of his beſt blood, by day and by night, ſhould be baniſhed from it, by the baſe-

The funeral ritual of the Americans was derived like all their other customs from their
thien ancestors. "When a King of Mechuacan died" says Thomas Gage "the
rkass was was washed with sweet waters, and dressed; about his ankles were tied
ls of gold, about his wrists bracelets of turquoise, about his neck collars of
cious stones, rings in his ears and a great turquoise in his nether lip;
ile this was doing, others were employed in washing the men and women
h were to be slain for to accompany him to Hell. These wretches were fast
uetted and filled with drink that they should feel no pain and many
ose simple souls esteemed that death so odious for a thing of immortal
y. First, six gentlewomen of noble birth were appointed to die; they slew
many women-slaves and fee maidens, and one of every occupation
in the City. When all these that were appointed to die were washed and their
ies full with meat and drink they painted their faces yellow" (this is
ured colour of the Llamas of Asia)" and put garlands on their heads,
they went in order of procession before the bier singing a sorrowful
. The Officers and other rulers of Justice bare the Standards and di-
other arms and about midnight they departed with great light
firebrands and noise of drums and trumpets, and when they
e to the temple they went four times round a great fire and the bier
ing laid upon the fire, and while it was burning they mauled with
club those which had the garlands, and buried them as they were
hanelled, four and four behind the temple. The next morning
ashes, bones and jewels were gathered and laid on a rich mantle, and carried
e temple gate where the priest blessed those devilish reliques whereof
y made a dough or paste & thereof an image which was apparelled
e a man, with a vizor on his face and all the jewels that the King was
t to wear so that it seemed a goodly idol. At the foot of the temple
ins they opened a grave which was hung with new mats and a bed
ed therein in which they placed their idol, and did hang about the
ls targets of gold and silver, bows and arrows, with earthen vessels

vessels as pots, dishes and platters, so that the grave was filled with house-
hold stuffs, chests, apparels, jewels, meat drink and armour. This done the
grave was shut up and made sure with beams boards and floored. with
earth on the top.

Note. Thus at the funerals of the ancient Kings of Scythia near the Boris-
or . a grave being dug the body (prepared as a mummy) was laid
it on a couch, with it they buried a concubine previously strangled a but-
-ler, groom & other attendants, horses, golden goblets and other valuable
effects, over all they raised a high mound, which remained to posterity
as a place of religious worship. The ancient Thracians, Gothes and Norwegians
-fied widows at the tombs of their husbands. In Hispaniola the whole fa-
sacrificed itself, nearly, at the death of a chief, whose body was always pre-
-served. The North American tribes have the Asiatic veneration for the
manes of ancestors notwithstanding their roving life. At their annual feast
of Souls they disinter all who died in remote places and bring them to
a common receptacle of burial. The North west Americans now, like
the Chinese, keep the last deceased parent above ground. The Cabo-
did the same. Among the modern Sheperways, but not invariably the
wife sacrifices herself at her husbands death.

By this funereal system which prevailed through all Scythia as far as
the Albanic of the West wealth must have been continually dis-
-ing.

The unconverted Indians from California inland burn their dead and deposit
ashes in tumuli.

The image of paste agrees with the religious ritual in worship of Deities
for all the Mexican Races & notably the deification of their Chief or ancestor.

At the Coronation of the Tartar Monarchie Kawn above 10,000 people
were sent to the other world the armed men sacrificing all they met. (
and painted wooden images were substituted at the burials of private pe-
- A brother of the deceased might take his sister in law. V. Jewish ritual
the women were neglected, or probably left to perish in that state of society as
death of the head of the family

Turn

baſe and unworthy: and that he would ſet out immediately, and demand juſtice from his Majeſty.

Inſtantly therefore quitting the city, he went to one of his country reſidences at Cuyoacan, from whence in a few days he proceeded towards the coaſt. At this time the lady of the treaſurer, a perſon well worthy of memory for her many virtues, ſeeing the dangerous conſequences likely to reſult from his abſurd and arbitrary conduct, expoſtulated with him on it, reminding him of the many favours he had received from Cortes, the ingratitude with which he had repaid him, and the many friends that Cortes had. Theſe repreſentations are ſaid to have operated on the mind of the treaſurer, ſo as to cauſe ſincere repentance of the ſteps that he had taken.

At this time arrived in New Spain Fray Julian Garrios, firſt biſhop of Tlaſcala, and who in honour to our lord the moſt chriſtian Emperor was named Carolenſe. When this reverend prelate heard of the proceedings of the governor againſt Cortes, he was highly diſpleaſed with them, and two days after his arrival in Mexico where he was received with great pomp, at the requeſt of the governor, he undertook to mediate betwixt them. Many of theſe ſeditious perſons ſuch as there are in all ſocieties, knowing the diſſatisfaction of Cortes, offered him their ſervices if he would ſet himſelf up as an independent monarch, in New Spain. Theſe people he immediately arreſted, threatening to put them to death, and he wrote directly to the biſhop of Tlaſcala, to inform him of the treaſon. He had alſo received ſimilar offers from Mexico, which he treated in the ſame manner. The reports of what was going on however, ſo terrified the veedor and factor, who did not know to what extent Cortes might be induced to go, that they became inceſſant in their ſolicitations to the governor to accelerate the departure of the biſhop of Tlaſcala. This prelate having waited upon Cortes, and found every part of his conduct perfectly to his ſatisfaction, wrote back to Mexico to inform the government there of the reſult of his obſervations; the

Garcias or Garces — patronized by Anto de Nebrija reviver of Literature in Spain. — he remained in N. S. about 1526. Superior patience of the Indian Children

graves noticed by Jefferson the Kill at the

the unalterable determination of Cortes to go to Old Spain, and a ſevere cenſure from himſelf, upon the miſconduct of thoſe who had been the cauſe of his quitting Mexico. I do not know whether Cortes returned to that city in order to arrange his private concerns, but he appointed ſeveral agents for that purpoſe, the principal of whom was the licentiate Altamirano. He brought with him from Mexico many curioſities of the country for his Majeſty, ſuch as various kinds of birds unknown in Europe, two tigers, many barrels of ambergris and indurated balſam, and another kind that reſembled oil, four Indians expert at playing the ſtick with their feet, other Indian dancers who had a manner of appearing as if they flew in the air, three humpbacked dwarfs of extraordinary deformity, and alſo ſome male and female Indians whoſe ſkins were remarkable for their whiteneſs, and who have a natural defect of viſion. He was alſo attended by ſeveral young chiefs of the Tlaſcalan and Mexican nations, whom he conſented to take to Europe with him, at their own requeſts.

all these kind of beings were attendants upon the Court of Montezuma

Xochiotzotl - liquid storax - liquidambar - produced by a tree of the

Copalli Eccm. a white transparent resin the produced of a tree resembling the oak & bearing a red fruit.

Lapis Lac produced of a peculiar tree

Dragon's blood drawn from a tree named Ezcuahuitl.

Ulee, this produced of the Ezcuahuitl.

Flyers. They wound cords round the top of a high tree & traversed as birds let themselves off. swinging round in the air by the cord.

playing the stick with the feet. the man lay on his back with his legs perpendicular & tossed the stick from foot to foot with two men on it.

the women were spared by or probably left to perish in that state of misery — death of the head of the family

Thibetians do not inter their dead. they preserve their bones. Their festival in honor
ed ancestors is on the 24th of October. The Heirbeers their effects with the dead, & sustain pre-
-vailed
as a diversity of practices among the Americans upon this subject, but all of Asiatic
the ancient Cubans also dried the bodies and laid them out full dressed as do now
Americans. At Portlock's harbour was found a mausoleum decked on posts
ined a chest or coffin and an effigy
ean gem they said was the heart of the man, according with their idea of a future state.
y could procure one buried it with the dead to serve that purpose. In the under lip it
of the insignia of Royalty, but this custom still remains among the poor natives
North West Coast. The Japanese put a pearl in the mouth of the dead under
ove mentioned idea.
dern Brahmins have the same veneration for green Gems, so universal was the superst
the ancient Mexicans had the same idea seemingly that the Jews have of the
ub & bone the germ of the new man & which they brought with them from Egypt
has the quality of coming out of the fire, more brilliant than before.
the remains of antiquity now found in America are probably monumental. The Piles
ne semicircle of Hills about 20 miles Circle at Grave Creek on the Ohio where the ancients
are marked for 12 miles, with quantities of human bones. This plan seems to be that
al the Junction of the Ohio. Here three squares of handsome earth communicate
each other and the river by covered ways. Within them are several conical ele-
ins the principal of which is in the centre of the centre Square about 90 feet
rallelogram. The summit is ascended to by sloping parallel ramparts on
ides, as was the method in ancient use universally. The whole height is about
feet. One work contains six acres another three, among those at Lexington in Kentucky
re are pyramidal sepulchral monuments containing human skeletons in
circumscribed state diminishing so as to end in one coffin at the summit.
shen pottery is scattered about. Some recent discovery seems to have been
le in this province as the following paragraph appeared in a paper in London
r about A. 1803. "the discovery of the remains of buildings of well made
ks in the best part of the province of Kentucky justifies conjecture"
e graves noticed by Jefferson the Skeletons are erect. —
town

when the ancient Tartars interred their chiefs or the dead after a victory they raised a vast quadrangular mound of earth & stones over the bodies and decked it with military trophies. When families sacrificed themselves the son might take any of the wife except his own mother.

In South America Latitude 47. Candish says. "their usage is when any of them die to bring them to the cliffes and upon the top of them they bury them and in their graves are buried with them their bowes and arrowes and all the jewels which they have in their life time, and all is laid under their heads. The grave is made all of great stones of great Length and bigness so being set all along full of the dead mans darts which he used when he was living. And they colour both their dairy and their graves with a red colour which they use in colouring themselves.

Whether the Americans burned, or preserved the bodies embalmed, or stowed the bones or dried and swallowed them in powder of their parents all these customs were of Asiatic origin

Cremation was the ordinary funereal ritual of the Celtans. They buried a dog to serve as guide, and a green sod to serve as a Carpet for the resurgent Man in the other world. — They were to pass through cold, mountains, &c &c, to reach the seat of happiness — but they were also metempsychosists. — They buried the dead in their best apparel, as jug of water &c &c

Close to Teotihuacan were innumerable sepulchres. The bodies were buried entire, in deep graves, lined with stone & mortar, in a sitting posture on icpalli or low seats, with the instruments of their professions or trades, or their arms by them, sword & shield, women, distaffs, also a xicalli or pitcher. gold, jewels & eatables.

They buried Lords in the insignia of the Gods.

Note by General Vallancey. "There is a singular coincidence in the practice of the Kookies or Lemetas with that of some North American Indians as related in Bartram's

CHAPTER IX.

Cortes goes to Europe; is created Marquis of the Valley of Guaxaca. Account of various tranſactions and occurrences in Old and New Spain. Death and character of the Marquis of the Valley.

CORTES now received letters from the preſident of the Indies, the Duke of Bejar, and ſeveral other of his friends, informing him of the neceſſity of his appearance in Caſtille, to do away the malignant accuſations of his enemies. Others alſo informed him of the death of his father Martin Cortes. Having performed the funeral obſequies to his father, he ordered two ſhips to be purchaſed, which he ſtored with ſuch quantities of proviſions of every kind, that the overplus when he arrived in Spain, would have ſufficed for a two years voyage.

For making theſe preparations he employed his major domo who was named Eſquival. This officer croſſing the lake of Mexico to Ayotcingo in a large canoe with ſix Indian rowers and one Negro, and having ſome ingots of gold in his poſſeſſion, was way-laid and murdered ſomewhere on the lake. The manner of his death never was known, neither canoe, Indians, or Negro, ever being traced. The body of Eſquival was found four days after in a ſmall iſland, half eaten by birds of prey. There were many ſuſpicions entertained about this affair; the man was ſaid to be a great boaſter of the favours he received from the ladies. There were alſo other bad ſtories told of him, which gave riſe to ſuſpicions of ſuch a nature as I cannot relate; no great enquiry was made

made as to his death, God pardon him his ſins! Cortes appointed other officers to complete the preparations for his voyage. He offered by proclamation a free paſſage to all ſuch Spaniards as obtained a permiſſion from the government to go to Caſtille, and a ſupply of proviſions to them on the voyage.

All things being ready, and having confeſſed and comulgated, he embarked in company with Sandoval, Tapia, and other cavaliers, and after a voyage of forty one days arrived in Europe, diſembarking near the town of Palos; as ſoon as he ſet his foot on ſhore he fell on his knees, to return thanks to God for his mercies. His arrival in Old Spain was in the month of December in the year one thouſand five hundred and twenty ſeven. To good fortune ſucceeded grief, by the death of the brave Captain Sandoval, after a lingering ſickneſs, at his lodgings in the houſe of a rope maker at Palos, who, in his preſence, robbed him of thirteen bars of gold. This rogue perceiving his weak ſituation, ſent his ſervants on a pretended meſſage from Sandoval to Cortes, who was then at Nueſtra Senora de la Ravida, and having the houſe to himſelf, went into Sandoval's room, and breaking open his cheſt, took out the gold, while our poor friend lay in bed unable to reſiſt him, and apprehenſive, if he made any outcry, that the fellow would ſmother him in the bedclothes. As ſoon as he had got the gold he made his eſcape with it into Portugal, where he could not be purſued. Cortes ſhortly after arrived, and was informed of what had happened, but purſuit was too late. Sandoval then grew worſe every hour, and the phyſicians recommended confeſſion; which being done, and having received the holy ſacrament, in a ſhort time after he gave up the ghoſt, but not before he had made a will, whereby he left his property to a ſiſter who afterwards married a natural ſon of the Count de Medelin. Sandoval died univerſally regretted. His funeral was attended by a great train of mourners, among whom was Cortes. God pardon him his ſins! amen.

Cortes

. & it must appear a curious fact that in so very particular an
ue there should be this similitude, (in burial of the dead) in
stoms of two savage Nations placed in such opposite parts of the world
. the climate & other peculiar local circumstances are so totally
ient — Ans. of the Rockies. Asiat. Research. V. 7 —

The princes of Darien preserved and worship
the bodies of their ancestors, which they dried over fire —
The inhabitants of these regions (Maranon) in summe places use to bewe
Karkasses of theyre Princes when they are deade, and to reserve their bony
ged with spyces in certain hyles. In other places they onlye dreye them
imbaulme them with spyces and sweete gummes and soo reserve
n in sepulchres in their owne howses. Sum where also they drye
e, spyce them, adourne them with precyous jewels and ornches
soo reverentlye place them in certeyne tabernacles made for the
e purpose in their owne palaces.

The North American Indians in some tribes clean & preserve the
of the dead at this day. leaving them also utensils, arms, food &c
elsewhere observed they anxiously bring them together. and also
the Scythians are charged with devouring their parents
Anacaona the sister of Beuchios King of Xaragua (in Hispaniola)
commanded that among all the wyves of the concubines of the
ng her brother, the fayrest should be buried alive with his heire
two of her waytting maydes with her. She buried with her
her jewels & treasure of her best ornaments. Theyre custome
to place before everye of them in theyre sepulchres a cupp
le of water and a portion of the fyne bread of cazabi
flour. This is the colour of the garments of Seova the Hindoo Plato.
the Imperial colour of China as emblematic of the Sun, to whom the
ieror is compared. — The Tartars of the River Zulimin suspend
dead on trees, they speake a language retaining many primitive

wards and worthy of investigation for the purpose of obtaining light on ancient history. They are a poor tribe at present, or were so a century past. Heathens, who worshipping the Sun & Moon, but believing in a Creator. Possess many of the customs derived by the Americans from their ancestors, such as, ignition by attrition, tatooing, stifling hunger by constringing the Stomach. The River Tzulim runs into the Oby. Remains among these people of a better degree of civilization Bell, a traveller of a century past discerns the affinity of the Tongusi, who are, as the other Tartar tribes probably, from Lake Baikal, and the north americans

Lake Baikal demands attention as one of the curiosities of the human race, iron of fine quality & wrought by the most simple process is found there. the Scythians who invaded the West had the use of iron which was not universal to the Tartar tribes.

The Bratzki or Buratic tribe about the east & South of Lake Baikal are literate. names of the Divinity Benchem.

Tartars dance a war dance.

The first tribe on record as existed in America is the Toltecas - or people of Tola. - a River Tola is on the frontiers of China & Russia in the Country of the Mongals & falls into the Orchon 200 miles S.E. of Selinginsky. The Mongals are divided into Eastern & Western (these are the Conquerors of China) the Eastern are between the river Amoor called by the Chinese the black Dragon, and the great wall, as far as the sea. they are agriculturists & dwell in towns & villages. the Western Mongals who are wanderers are called Calchi.

Cortés ſent an expreſs to his Majeſty, and alſo to his patrons at court, informing them of his arrival, and alſo of the death of his friend Sandoval, whoſe merits and ſervices were known to his Majeſty, and for whoſe loſs he was pleaſed to expreſs great regret. The Duke of Bejar and the Count of Aguilar, on receiving the intelligence, waited on his Majeſty, but found him in poſſeſſion of it by the letter of Cortes. His Majeſty ſeemed to have at preſent a conviction of that officer's loyalty, for which his friend the Duke of Bejar had been three times obliged to engage his life, for he was pleaſed to order that in all the cities and towns through which Cortes paſſed, he ſhould be received with the higheſt honour.

When he arrived at Seville he was entertained there by the Duke of Medina Sidonia, who made him a preſent of ſeveral beautiful horſes. From thence he proceeded, to attend the nine days devotions to our Lady of Guadeloupe. Donna Maria, wife of the commendador Don Franciſco de los Cobos, with many other ladies of great rank arrived at the ſame time. As ſoon as Cortes had paid his devotions, given charity to the poor, and ordered maſs to be ſaid, he went attended by all his retinue of cavaliers to pay his reſpects to Donna Maria, the beautiful lady her ſiſter, and the many others of diſtinguiſhed rank who were in her company. Here Cortes had an opportunity of exhibiting that politeneſs, gallantry, and generoſity, in which he ſurpaſſed all men. He made preſents of golden ornaments of great value, to all, but more eſpecially to Donna Maria and her ſiſter: and to each lady he gave a penache of green feathers, richly ornamented with gold. He then produced his Indian dancers who threw the ſtick from one foot to another, to the aſtoniſhment of the ſpectators, and in addition to all this, underſtanding that one of the mules belonging to the ſiſter of Donna Maria was unable to travel, he cauſed to be purchaſed for her two of the fineſt that could be procured for money. He alſo waited the departure of thoſe ladies for the court, attending them upon the journey and providing magnificent entertainments for them, the honours of which he did with

with a grace peculiar to himſelf, inſomuch that Donna Maria de Mendoza began to entertain thoughts of an alliance between her ſiſter and Cortes. However in marriages as in other caſes it is the hand of God which leads us, and therefore no more need be ſaid upon the ſubject. Donna Maria was ſo taken with the politeneſs and generoſity of Cortes, that ſhe wrote to the commendador of Leon ſaying, that the fame of Cortes and his heroic actions was far ſhort of the judgment which muſt be formed of him, by thoſe who had the good fortune of his acquaintance, and brought over her huſband completely to his intereſt.

When our general arrived at court, his Majeſty was pleaſed to appoint the apartments to receive him, and his friends came out in a body to meet him on the road. On the enſuing day he went by permiſſion to throw himſelf at his Majeſty's feet, being attended by the Duke of Bejar, the admiral of the Indies, and the commendador of Leon. His Majeſty commanded him to riſe, and Cortes, after a ſhort enumeration of his ſervices, and vindication of his conduct from the aſperſions of his enemies, preſented a memorial wherein the whole was fully detailed. His Majeſty having received it, commanded him to riſe, and immediately honoured him with the title of Marquis del Valle, and the order of St. Jago. He alſo gave him an eſtate to maintain his new dignity, and confirmed him captain general of New Spain and of the ſouth ſeas. Cortes, thus loaded with honours, retired from the royal preſence to receive in a few days a ſtill greater than all. Shortly after his arrival in Toledo he fell dangerouſly ill; when the Emperor heard it, he did him the honour of paying him a viſit in perſon. He however recovered in a ſhort time, and the particular favour of his Majeſty encouraged him to aſſume a rank and character equal to his high title. One ſunday that his Majeſty was at maſs in the cathedral, and ſeated according to cuſtom with his nobility each in his proper ſtation, Cortes, deſignedly as it is ſaid, came there late, and after all were ſeated; and paſſing before the whole of them, took his place next to

the

D. of Bejar. His brother D. Alvaro Manrique de Zuniga, Marquis of Villa Manrique was Captain General of N. S.

the Count de Naſao, who was neareſt to the Emperor. This gave great offence to many though others ſaid it was by the Emperor's deſire. Indeed Cortes began to feel his elevation ſo much, that it made him not hold ſome of his former patrons in the eſtimation he ought, all his attention being beſtowed on the Duke of Bejar, the Count de Naſao, and the admiral. Thinking that now the ball was at his foot with the ſupport of ſuch great men, he applied to the Emperor for the government of New Spain; this requeſt, though ſupported by his patrons, did not ſucceed, his Majeſty thinking he had done ſufficiently and that ſome of his attention was due to thoſe conquerors, by whoſe aſſiſtance he had gained that country. From this time Cortes did not ſeem ſo much in favour as before.

His Majeſty was then proceeding on his journey to Flanders. After his departure, the marriage took place between the Marquis del Valle, and Donna Juana de Zuniga, on which occaſion he preſented his lady with the moſt magnificent jewels that ever had been in Caſtille. Her Majeſty Queen Iſabella, from the account given by the lapidaries, expreſſed a wiſh to have ſome, which Cortes accordingly preſented her with, but it is ſaid that they were not ſo fine or ſo valuable as thoſe which he gave to his lady.

I will now relate ſome other circumſtances, ſuch as I have heard concerning him while he reſided in Caſtille. One was, that Queen Iſabella was not his friend on account of the appearances of ingratitude in his conduct to his patrons, and alſo in conſequence of the inferiority of the preſents which he made her. However ſhe ordered in the Emperor's abſence, that he ſhould have every ſupport from the council of the Indies. Cortes at this time obtained permiſſion to fit out two ſhips on a voyage of diſcovery to the ſouth ſeas, with a condition that he ſhould enjoy certain rights and revenues from whatever lands were acquired to the crown of Spain. Don Pedro de la Cueva was at this time at court; this was the officer who was to have gone to Mexico to try, and

if found guilty, to execute Cortes. They were now on the moſt amicable and intimate footing. Don Pedro told him that even his innocence would have been ſufficiently expenſive to him, as the coſts of the expedition, which he muſt have paid, amounted to upwards of three hundred thouſand crowns. All thoſe, and other particulars we received an account of in private letters, as well from the Marquis del Valle, as from other perſons. He now ſent a gentleman to Rome, to kiſs the feet of his Holineſs Pope Clement, and with a rich preſent of gold, ſilver, and jewels. He alſo ſent ſome of the Indians who played with the ſtick, and a full memorial of all circumſtances concerning the newly diſcovered country. He alſo took this opportunity to ſupplicate for a partial remiſſion of the tithes of New Spain.

This gentleman, Juan de Herrada, was a brave ſoldier, who attended Cortes in his expedition to Honduras. After he returned from Europe he went to Peru, where Don Diego de Almagro left him in the office of governor to his ſon. He was highly in the confidence of this family, and ſerved as Maeſtre de Campo to the young Almagro; he was alſo captain of the party which killed Don Franciſco Pizarro the elder.

His Holineſs on the receipt of the letters returned thanks to God for the opportunity of making ſo many thouſand converts to the holy faith. He alſo praiſed the ſervices rendered by us, to the church and our monarch, and ſent us bulls of indulgence from penalties of our ſins, with others for churches and hoſpitals. In regard to the tithes, I do not know what was done. The Indians were brought to dance before his Holineſs and the cardinals, who expreſſed their high ſatisfaction at their performances. After Herrada had concluded his buſineſs at Rome, he returned with a liberal reward from Pope Clement, who gave him the title and rank of count palatine, and wrote by him, ſtrongly requeſting for him a grant of a conſiderable plantation in New Spain, which he never received, and in conſequence went to Peru.

While

The paintings in Vienna were in possession of pope Clement 7. who is said to have them from Emanuel King of Portugal — the Cardinal of Saxe Eisenach left them to the Emperor Leopold.

Juan de Venada was also one of the fifty Spaniards who protested against murder of Atahualpa ~~King~~ of Peru, opposing it to the utmost of Power Francisco Pizarro and his associates, and Juan de Venada elected by his party Protector of the ~~Indians~~ King.

It is very probable Juan de Venada who killed Francisco Pizarro was the enemy as conqueror of Nicaragua. who evidently was not present at the Conquest of Peru.

Matienzo introduced the Silk-worm

While Cortes was in Caſtille, the members of the royal court of audience arrived in Mexico. Nuno de Guzman formerly governor of Panuco was the preſident. The Oydors were, four licentiates, by name Matienzo, Delgadillo, Maldonado, (I do not mean Alonzo Maldonado the good who was governor of Guatimala) and Parada. Theſe magiſtrates from their firſt arrival ſhewed a determination to do juſtice. They were armed with greater powers than any officers ever ſent by his Majeſty to New Spain. They were alſo intruſted with the management of the final partition of landed property, wherein his Majeſty had particularly charged them to take care of the intereſts of the conquerors. On their arrival, they iſſued a proclamation, requiring the attendance of an agent from each ſettlement, with memorials and returns of the ſeveral diſtricts. The agents all arrived in the courſe of a few days. I was then in Mexico on my office of procurador ſindico of the town of Guacacualco; I poſted off to the laſt mentioned place, in order to attend at the election of the agents, about which there was a violent conteſt but plurality of voices decided it in favour of Captain Luis Marin and myſelf. When we arrived at Mexico we found that two of the oydors were dead of pleuriſies, and that the factor Salazar had acquired ſo complete an aſcendency over the others, that they did nothing but as he adviſed them. It was lucky for Cortes that he was not at Mexico; the death of the two oydors would have been certainly laid to his charge.

The agents now called loudly for a final repartition; but the factor had perſuaded the preſident and oydors, not to agree to that which would be a diminution of their influence, by taking ſo much patronage out of their hands. It was alſo ſettled, that Salazar ſhould go to Europe to ſolicit the government of New Spain for the preſident Guzman. He actually ſailed, but being overtaken by a ſtorm was ſhipwrecked on the coaſt near Guacacualco, from whence he returned to Mexico. The treaſurer Eſtrada died in a ſhort time after his being ſuperſeded, which he was more by his own tameneſs than from any right they could prove

from his Majeſty's orders, for they were, that he ſhould govern ſolely; nor was any thing ſaid of aſſociating Guzman with him; whereas the latter uſurped the government to himſelf entirely, from the time he was appointed preſident of the court. He was much regretted by all, having conducted himſelf in ſuch a manner as to give univerſal ſatisfaction, nor would he have wanted ſupport if he had inſiſted on maintaining his office.

A commiſſion was appointed at Guatimala, where Jorge de Alvarado was eſtabliſhed, but I do not know the reſult of it.

In Mexico they proceeded with great ſeverity againſt the Marquis del Valle. The factor eſpecially took the opportunity to revile and ſlander him in the groſſeſt manner, and fouleſt expreſſions. The Marquis's friend the licentiate Altamarano remonſtrated with the court upon theſe indecencies, but to no good effect, for the factor, countenanced by Guzman and the reſt, became more abuſive than before. The court was thereby thrown into confuſion; for Altamirano was at laſt ſo provoked as to draw his poniard, and would have put the factor to death had it not been for the interference of thoſe preſent. Altimirano was carried to the fortreſs, the other was ſent to his houſe, and the whole city was in an uproar. The licentiate, upon our ſupplication, was at the end of three days releaſed from confinement, and the preſent matter was made up; but a greater ſtorm ſucceeded, for at this time there arrived in Mexico one Zavalos, a relation of the Captain Pamfillo de Narvaez, who had been ſent by the wife of the latter in queſt of her huſband, who had gone as governor to the river of Palmas, and was ſuppoſed to have been loſt or dead. When Zavalos arrived in Mexico, inſtigated as is ſuppoſed by the members of the court, he lodged informations againſt all the ſoldiers of Cortes who had been concerned in the attack upon Narvaez. Of courſe nearly the whole of us who were in the city, and myſelf amongſt the reſt, amounting in all to about two hundred and fifty, were apprehended, brought to trial, and convicted.

We

We were ſentenced to pay a fine of a certain quantity of gold, and to be baniſhed to the diſtance of five leagues from Mexico. However the ſentence was but ſlightly enforced, the baniſhment being remitted and very few paying the fine.

The enemies of the Marquis del Valle now took a new ground of attack againſt him, which was, that he had embezzled the treaſure of Montezuma and Guatimotzin, and that he was anſwerable to the ſoldiers, not only for that which he had appropriated to his own uſe, but alſo for that which he had ſent to Europe as a preſent to his Majeſty, and which had been captured by the corſair Juan Florin. A long catalogue of other demands followed, every one of which he was condemned upon, and his property ſold for the payment. One Juan Xuares his brother-in-law was alſo at this time brought forward, to demand juſtice in open court for the murder of his ſiſter Donna Catalina, offering to produce witneſſes of the manner of her death. Many of us the friends of the Marquis, ſeeing the attacks that were made againſt him, met by appointment and under the licence of an alcalde, at the houſe of one Garcia Holguin, where we entered into a reſolution to renounce all claim to the treaſure; but when the oydors heard our buſineſs, they ordered us all to be arreſted, as they alleged, for meeting without permiſſion. We produced to them the licence which we had obtained for the purpoſe, but they, to keep up appearances, baniſhed us to the diſtance of five leagues from Mexico. We were however allowed to return; though we ſtill thought ourſelves hardly treated enough.

New matter for confuſion was now brought forward; a proclamation was iſſued that all perſons of Indian deſcent, or of that of Moors, who had been burned or *enſanbenited by the holy inquiſition, as far as the fourth degree from their anceſtors who had thus ſuffered, ſhould quit New Spain within four months from the date thereof, on pain of loſing one half of their properties. It was moſt wonderful to ſee what hoſts of accuſers and informers ſtarted up at once on this occaſion, and what

* San Benito; a dreſs put on criminals.

what ſlanders and infamies were brought forward. At laſt it ended in the expulſion of two individuals.

The court was generous in fulfilling his Majeſty's commands, in regard to the old conquerors, who were all well provided for; the greateſt error it committed was, the exceſſive licenſe given to the branding ſlaves. So many were made in the province of Panuco that it became almoſt depopulated. The preſident Guzman, who was of a noble and liberal diſpoſition, made a new year's gift of a whole diſtrict named Guazpaltepeque, to Albornoz who was newly returned from Spain. He brought with him his Majeſty's patent, under which he erected ſome ſugar works in Cempoal, which went to ruin after a few years. The oydor Delgadillo was cenſured on account of his free gifts, for it was noticed that ſome rent was reſerved to himſelf in them, and the conſequent extortions and oppreſſions of thoſe he patroniſed were exceſſive. The conduct of Guzman was equally reprehenſible; as to the other oydor, Matienzo, he was ſuperannuated. The abuſes of this court came at length to ſuch an exceſs, that it was thought proper by the higher powers in Europe, completely to ſupercede it, and ſubſtitute one compoſed of perſons of more diſcretion. Old Matienzo who was the leaſt objectionable, was ſent to Panuco to enquire into and remedy the abuſes which had been committed there. This officer ordered accounts or liſts of the ſlaves to be drawn out, to prevent them from being arbitrarily tranſported from one province to another, and he revoked the grants which the preſident and the other oydor had made to their friends and clients, beſtowing the plantations upon thoſe perſons who were pointed out by his Majeſty's inſtructions. Every one then who had acquired the plantations which they were to deliver up, inſiſted that they had been granted as a reward of former merits, the proofs of which they endeavoured to adduce, and utterly diſclaimed all patronage or protection from the preſident and oydor. The confuſion was extreme. However many if not almoſt all ſucceeded in keeping what

what they had got, the only perſons deprived being Albornoz of his new year's gift, one Villaroel, and Villegas.

As ſoon as the members of the court heard that they were to be ſuperceded, they reſolved to diſpatch agents to Caſtille with plenty of witneſſes, ſuch as were fit and well prepared for their purpoſe, to vouch for the propriety of their conduct. It was determined to proceed to the election of the agents who were to be ſent on this occaſion, and for this purpoſe all the veteran conquerors, with many other perſons of conſideration, met in the great church, where the perſon was to be choſen by vote. Guzman and the oydors recommended the factor Salazar, and although they had committed ſome improprieties, yet as they had in the main acted ſo well by us in the diſtribution of property, we were all well inclined to vote for the perſon recommended by them, and which they expected us to do. When we had all aſſembled for the purpoſe in the great church, there was ſuch a noiſe and outcry ſet up by perſons who had no buſineſs there, but had crouded in, that it was hardly poſſible to proceed to the election. It was ordered that all who had not been ſummoned ſhould quit the place, but it was to no effect; they would not go, and at laſt the queſtion was obliged to be put to the whole. Since thoſe who had no buſineſs there would neither quit the place nor be ſilent, it may be judged what kind of an election it was. When we perceived how matters were going, it was agreed amongſt us to adjourn until the following day, at the houſe of the preſident of the council, and none were ſummoned but perſons of one way of thinking. Of courſe it was amicably decided. In conſequence of an adjuſtment, two agents were to be choſen, one, Anthonio de Carvajal, on the part of the oydors, and another, Bernardino Vaſquez de Tapia, on that of Cortes. However it appeared to me that both were equally devoted to the views of the preſident; and it was natural enough, for the latter had rendered much more ſervice to our intereſt in his ſhort time, than Cortes had done during the long period of his power. But ſuch is the natural loyalty of the Spaniards, that we were more attached

to

to Cortes, from his having been our captain, than he was to our intereſts, although he had his Majeſty's orders to attend to them. Of this a proof now occurred, for the preſident and oydors intrigued for an application to be made to his Majeſty, in manner of a petition, againſt the appointment or return of Cortes to New Spain, at any future time. The grounds upon which they moved it were, the dangers that would occur from public diſturbances and factions, which might end in the loſs of the country. This we oppoſed with all our might, and Alvarado, being at this time arrived in Mexico with the office of governor and adelantado of Guatimala, and a commandery of St. Jago, it was agreed between him and the friends of Cortes, to lay before his Majeſty a ſtatement of the whole affair, with the views of the members of the council; and it hereby appearing to the ſupreme court of the Indies, that all theſe meaſures were guided by paſſion and intereſt, it confirmed the original determination to ſupercede Guzman and the oydors. The preſence of Cortes in Spain alſo at this period was highly favourable to his intereſts, and he now was rapidly proceeding to the pinnacle of his fortune.

When Nuno de Guzman had received certain intelligence from Old Spain of his being ſuperceded, he determined to go upon an expedition to the province of Xaliſco, now called New Gallicia. For this purpoſe he collected the greateſt force that he was able in Mexico, partly of volunteers, and partly of ſuch as he compelled to join him by the weight of power of which he was not yet deprived. Thoſe who did not ſerve perſonally he compelled to find, or pay for ſubſtitutes, and thoſe who had horſes were obliged to give them for half their value. He brought with him a number of Mexicans as ſoldiers, or to convey his baggage, and cruelly oppreſſed the provinces through which he paſſed. In Mechoacan he obtained a great quantity of gold, which the inhabitants had collected and amaſſed for ages paſt; it was much lowered in value by a mixture of ſilver. The unfortunate chief of the province, not being able to gratify his avarice to its full extent, he firſt commanded

The King of an independent Nation, of Calvoan origin, so populous as to
no fewer than seven hundred towns marked in Clondias's map
It seems to have been copied from one of Ptolemy's constructions. and
owed early in the 17th Century. The King of Mechuacan once in
submitted or as he thought entered into Alliance with Cortes.

commanded him to be put to the torture by burning his feet, and afterwards upon ſome trifling and falſe allegations cauſed him to be hanged, which was one of the wickedeſt and cruelleſt actions ever committed by an officer, and as ſuch it was conſidered by every Spaniard in his army. He brought from this province alſo a number of natives loaded with booty, to the city of Compoſtello, which he founded at a heavy expence to his Majeſty and the inhabitants of Mexico. Here Guzman remained until his arreſt.

As I have before related, in conſequence of the injuſtice practiſed by the former court of audience, his Majeſty was pleaſed to ſuppreſs it and cancel all its grants. He alſo appointed a new one, compoſed of wiſe and upright members, whereof D. Sebaſtian Ramirez de Villaeſcaſa biſhop of St. Domingo was preſident, and the licentiates Maldonado de Salamanca, Zainos de Toro, Vaſco de Quiroga de Madrigal afterwards biſhop of Mechoacan, and Solomon de Madrid were oydors. Theſe officers being arrived, the court opened its ſittings, which was notified by a proclamation, in conſequence whereof there aſſembled ſuch crouds of complainants, from city, towns, and country, of all deſcriptions, ſettlers, agents, and native chiefs, alledging acts of partiality and oppreſſion againſt the former court, and demanding juſtice, that the members were quite aſtoniſhed. The demands of the agents of Cortes for what had been unjuſtly alienated from him, if they had been all to be now repaid, would have amounted to above two hundred thouſand crowns. Nuno de Guzman being abſent, the whole blame was laid upon him by the other members of the old court, who alledged that they were compelled to act as he thought proper to order them. He was accordingly ſummoned to appear, which he did not think proper to do, and in the preſent circumſtances it was judged moſt expedient to refer the affair to the ſupreme court in Europe: which being done, a civil officer named Torre, a licentiate and native of Badajos, was ſent with full power, to the province of Xaliſco, and with orders to tranſmit Guzman to Mexico and commit him to the common goal.

He had alſo a commiſſion to indemnify us in the coſts which we had been fined upon the affair of Narvaez, and thoſe at the time that we were arreſted, as I have already related. But I will now take leave for the preſent of the licentiate Torre, and return to the affairs of the court.

The properties of Delgadillo and Matienzo were ſold to pay the damages of thoſe who had gained their cauſes againſt them, and their perſons were impriſoned for the deficiency. A brother of Delgadillo who was alcalde major in Guaxaca, was fined and impriſoned for the ſame reaſon; he died in jail, as did another who was alcalde amongſt the Zapotecans, and certainly the new judges were ſo wiſe and juſt, that they conſidered nothing but what was in compliance with the will of God and his Majeſty. They alſo ſhewed a laudable anxiety for the converſion of the Indians to our holy faith, and immediately prohibited the branding them for ſlaves, and made many other good regulations. After four years thus employed, the oydors Solomon and Zaynos petitioned for leave to retire, being both of an advanced age, and very wealthy, and his Majeſty in conſideration of their eminent ſervices, was pleaſed to grant their requeſt. The preſident alſo, by command of his Majeſty, repaired to Europe, to give an account of the affairs of this country. He was then biſhop of St. Domingo, but was advanced in ſucceſſion through the ſees of Toro, Leon, and Cuenca, with ſuch celerity, that the bulls had hardly a day's interval between them. He was alſo preſident of the royal chancery of Valladolid, and while in poſſeſſion of theſe honours he was ſeized by death, and placed in glory among the virtuous, according to the promiſe of our holy faith, for he was a true and upright judge. He had been before his promotion to a biſhopric, inquiſitor in Seville. The good conduct of the oydor Maldonado was rewarded with the government of the provinces of Guatimala, Honduras, and Viragua, and with the title of adelantado of Yucatan, and the oydor Quiroga obtained the biſhopric of Mechoacan. Such were the rewards of the good judges! Delgadillo and Matienzo returned

Transferred from a Seculer Office to a Biſhopric.

Don Anthonio de Mendoza. — P. Martyr says — "When I was in Flanders
"in the Emperor's court I saw his letter written in the year 1541 — out
"dated from Mexico wherein was declared how towards the North
"west he had found the Kingdom of Cette Cities — Seven
"seven cities whereas is that called Civola by the name and
"Father Marco de Niza and how beyonde the sayde King-
"dome yet further towards the North West Capitaine Francisco
"Vasquez of Gronado havynge overpassed great deserts came to
"the sea syde where he found eatayne shippes which sailed
"that sea with marchaundies & had in their bargys upon
"the shoore of their shippes eatayne fowles made of
"golde and sylver which they of Mexico call Mexicanos
"and that theyre fraimes shewed by signes that they
"were 30 dayes sayllynge in comyng to that haven

returned to Caſtille in poverty, where, as I have heard, they died in the courſe of two or three years.

At this time his Majeſty was pleaſed to appoint to the vice-royalty of New Spain, the moſt illuſtrious and worthy cavalier of praiſe worthy memory, D. Anthonio de Mendoza brother to the Marquis of Montejar. There alſo came as oydors the doctor Queſada, the licentiate Tejada de Logrono, and the licentiate Loayſa native of Cuidad Real; he was an old man, and ſtayed three or four years in Mexico; and during that time having collected a good ſum of money, he took his leave of the country at the expiration of it, and returned to his home. There was alſo another licentiate who came out as oydor, who was named Santillana; but the licentiate Maldonado had not then vacated his office. All were excellent magiſtrates. As ſoon as they had opened the court, free enquiry was proclaimed into the conduct of their predeceſſors, which was found to be in every reſpect conformable to juſtice. 1541

The Viceroy, on his arrival, knowing that the licentiate Torre was ſent out with orders to arreſt Nuno de Guzman, to ſave Guzman from that inſult ſent to him to come to Mexico, which he having complied with, the Viceroy aſſigned him apartments in his palace, and treated him with much politeneſs. Juſt about this time Torre arrived with his Majeſty's orders to arreſt Guzman, but with directions to communicate them to the Viceroy. It ſeems that the licentiate did not find the ſupport to his ſtrong meaſures that he expected, and this exaſperating his natural violence, he in conſequence went to the Viceroy's palace, and there furiouſly ſeized, and dragged Guzman to the common jail, ſaying he did it by his Majeſty's order, and that he cared for nothing further. Here Guzman remained for ſeveral days, and was at laſt releaſed on the interceſſion of the Viceroy. It was well known that Torre had ſtrong powers given to him to act diſcretionarily in regard to Guzman.

This licentiate was much addicted to card playing, although he

belong to it, and who were to be his tributaries. Cortes underſtood that the head of the family only was conſidered as the vaſſal or "vecino," or that one only ſhould be counted for each houſe, but the oydor, doctor Quezada who was ſent to allot his diſtrict, inſiſted that every male adult, maſter or head of family, ſon, ſervant, or ſlave, was to be counted in the number, and as there were frequently twelve or fifteen of thoſe to one houſe, the Marquis was much diſappointed, and ſeveral lawſuits enſued. The matter was reported to his Majeſty, but continued in ſuſpence for ſeveral years, during which time the Marquis received his full rents, without any moleſtation. He retired to a place upon his eſtate named Quernavaca, where he eſtabliſhed his reſidence, never returning to Mexico.

While Marcos de Aguilar had the government of New Spain, the Marquis del Valle fitted out four ſhips at Zacatula. They were well provided, loaded with various articles of merchandize, and commanded by Alvarado de Saavedra, who with two hundred and fifty ſoldiers took his courſe for the Molucca and Spice Iſlands, and China. This was by his Majeſty's command, as I can teſtify, the royal letters having been ſhown to me and many others. He was further ordered to cauſe ſearch to be made during the courſe of his voyage, for a ſquadron which had ſailed from Caſtille for China, under the command of Don Garcia de Loayſa, commander of St. John of Rhodes. At the time that Saavedra was preparing for his expedition, a veſſel arrived belonging to this fleet, from the pilot and crew of which Saavedra acquired all the information he wanted, and taking one pilot and two ſailors from this veſſel with him, he ſet ſail in December, of one thouſand five hundred and twenty ſeven or twenty eight, and ſuſtained many misfortunes, hardſhips, and loſſes, in the way to the Molucca Iſlands. I do not know the particulars, but in three years afterwards I met with a ſailor who had been on board this fleet, and who told me many ſtrange and ſurpriſing things of the cities and nations he had ſeen, during his voyage. Theſe are the countries to which they are now ſending expeditions from Mexico.

Mexico. I alſo heard that the Portugueze had made priſoner Saavedra or ſome of his people, and brought them to Caſtille.

In the month of May, one thouſand five hundred and thirty two, the Marquis del Valle ſent two ſhips from the port of Acapulco, to make diſcoveries in the South Seas. They were commanded by a captain named Diego Hurtado de Mendoza, who, without going far to ſea, or doing any thing worthy of relating, had the misfortune of a mutiny among the troops, in conſequence whereof, one ſhip, of which the mutineers took poſſeſſion, as is ſaid, but very improbably, by the approbation of Hurtado himſelf, returned to New Spain, to the great diſappointment of Cortes. As for Hurtado, neither he nor his veſſel were ever more heard of.

After this, Cortes ſent off two other veſſels, one of which was commanded by a gentleman named Diego Bezerra de Mendoza; he was of the Bezerras of Badajos or Merida; the other was commanded by one Hernando de Grijalva. The principal pilot was one Ximenes, a Biſcayan, and a great coſmographer. The orders from the Marquis were, firſt to go in ſearch of Hurtado, and in caſe of not finding him, to go upon a voyage of diſcovery of new iſlands, eſpecially thoſe which were reported to be rich in pearls. The Biſcayan pilot, before they ſailed, was always telling the others how he would bring them to countries where they ſhould all make their fortunes. Many were weak enough to believe him. The firſt night after they left the port of Guantepeque, a gale of wind roſe and ſeparated the veſſels, which never afterwards joined company, Grijalva not chooſing to be under the command of Bezerra, who was very haughty. He had alſo another motive, in wiſhing to keep the merit of any diſcoveries he ſhould make, to himſelf. After ſailing two hundred leagues, he came to an iſland which was uninhabited, and which he named Santo Tome. Bezerro and his pilot Ximines had a quarrel upon their voyage, and the former having made himſelf very odious by his domineering diſpoſition, the pilot formed

formed a plot for the aſſaſſination of him and ſeveral more, which he put in execution one night as the captain and the others were ſleeping. The ſanguinary views of the conſpirators went much farther, but the interceſſion of two Franciſcan friars ſaved the lives of many who were already bleeding from their treachery, but whom, together with the friars, they determined to land in Xaliſco. Ximines taking the command upon the death of Bezerra, and continuing his route, diſcovered an iſland to which he gave the name of Santa Cruz. It was ſaid that pearls were found on its coaſts. It was inhabited by ſavages, and here he determined to put the friars and thoſe whoſe lives had been ſpared at their interceſſion on ſhore, which he accordingly did, and being in want of water, he went to the ſhore at the ſame time in ſearch of it; they had been on the iſland but a very ſhort time when the natives came down upon them, and put every perſon they found to death, in view of thoſe on board the ſhip.

This gave the Marquis great vexation. He now determined not to truſt any one, but to go in perſon, having three ſhips ready to launch in the port of Guantepeque. When the Spaniards of thoſe countries ſaw that he intended to embark upon a voyage of diſcovery, they thought ſucceſs was certain, and numbers prepared to follow him as ſoldiers, above one hundred and thirty of whom were married men, and brought their wives with them. They were in all above three hundred and twenty, the women included. The Marquis left Mexico accompanied by Andres de Tapia and ſeveral other officers, ſome eccleſiaſtics, phyſicians, ſurgeons, and an apothecary, and having embarked, in the month of May, one thouſand five hundred and thirty ſix, or ſeven, he ſet ſail for the Iſland of Santa Cruz, with as many coloniſts and ſoldiers as the veſſels could contain; and having arrived there after a proſperous voyage, he ſent back the ſhips to bring the remainder of his people. The ſecond voyage was not ſo fortunate. They met with gales of wind, in which they were ſeparated near the river of St. Peter and St. Paul, one veſſel only arriving at the Iſland of Santa Cruz, where

where the Marquis anxiouſly expected them, as the proviſions, of which he began to be in great want, were on board. Of thoſe veſſels which did not join him at Santa Cruz, one was ſtranded on the coaſt of Xaliſco, and the people on board being tired of the buſineſs quitted her there, moſt of them returning to New Spain. This was the one which contained the proviſions. The other came to a bay which they named, from the quantity of guayavas, Guayaval.

During this time the Marquis and thoſe with him were famiſhing upon this uncultivated iſland. Twenty three of the ſoldiers died from abſolute diſtreſs, and the reſt were ſinking every day, and curſing his expeditions and diſcoveries. Their ſituation and murmurs compelled him at length to go in ſearch of his ſhips, and he accordingly embarked with fifty ſoldiers, and judging that they muſt have been driven on the coaſt in the ſtorms, he ſearched in that direction, and after ſome time found one as before mentioned, ſtranded on the coaſt of Xaliſco, and abandoned by the people. The other was met with by him amongſt ſome rocks. Having got them repaired and afloat, with much trouble, he brought them to his Iſland of Santa Cruz, and a quantity of proviſions being now ſerved out to the famiſhed ſoldiers, they eat thereof in ſuch a manner that the half of them died.

The Marquis, in order to avoid ſuch a ſcene of diſtreſs, embarked in purſuit of new diſcoveries, and during this voyage fell in with the land of California. He was by that time as heartily tired of the buſineſs as any one, but he could not bear the thoughts of returning after ſuch expences and loſſes, without having effected ſomething, leſt his misfortunes ſhould be aſcribed to the curſes of the conquerors of Mexico, his ancient companions.

The Marchioneſs del Valle, hearing of the loſs of one of the veſſels on the coaſt, grew very apprehenſive, and accordingly fitted out two ſhips, which ſailed under the command of one Ulloa, in ſearch of the

the marquis and his ſquadron, with letters from his lady and the Viceroy earneſtly ſoliciting his return. Ulloa was fortunate enough to light upon him, and the Marquis ſuffered himſelf to be prevailed upon, and returned to Mexico by the port of Acapulco, leaving Ulloa in command of the ſquadron. His return rejoiced the Spaniards, who feared always that the native chiefs, not being awed by him, would break out into revolt. In a ſhort time after his arrival, the people whom he had left in California returned, but I cannot ſay whether in conſequence of orders from the government or not.

After the Marquis had repoſed for a few months, he fitted out another expedition of two ſhips under the command of Franciſco de Ulloa, already named by me, who ſailed from the port of Natividad in the month of June, of I forget what year, with orders to examine the coaſt of California, and to ſearch for Captain Hurtado who never had been heard of. Ulloa employed in this voyage about ſeven months, at the expiration of which he returned to Xaliſco, without having effected any thing; and going for a few days on ſhore to repoſe, a ſoldier who bore a malice againſt him took an opportunity to way-lay and aſſaſſinate him, and thus ended the diſcoveries of the Marquis del Valle, in which he expended, as I have heard him declare, above three hundred thouſand crowns.

In order to get ſome allowance from his Majeſty for this loſs, he determined to go to Caſtille; he had alſo other buſineſs which called him there, ſuch as the diſpute about his vaſſals, and the reſtitution of his property which had been ſeized by Nuno de Guzman, now priſoner in Old Spain. I will conclude this account by obſerving, that it appears that the Marquis never proſpered from the time of his firſt conqueſt of New Spain, and his ill fortune is aſcribed to the curſes with which he was loaded.

The Viceroy and court of royal audience had ſent out a military

force commanded by an officer named Franciſco Vaſquez Coronado, who married the virtuous and fair daughter of the treaſurer Eſtrada. Coronado left his government of Xaliſco to an officer named Onate, and after he had been for ſome months in the country to which he was ſent, and which was named Celibola or the ſeven cities, a Franciſcan friar named Marcos de Nica, returned from thence to Mexico to give an account of the country to the Viceroy. He deſcribed it as conſiſting of fine plains full of herds of cattle, but which were quite different in their appearance from thoſe of Caſtille. The houſes he deſcribed as having two ſtories and ſtairs, and the towns as being populous. He alſo repreſented, that as it lay near the Pacific Ocean, a ſupply of neceſſaries could be ſent to the Spaniſh force, conveniently, in that direction. It was for this reaſon that three ſhips were ſent thither under the command of Hernando de Alarco, an officer in the Viceroy's houſehold.

I muſt not omit to mention the particulars of the great armament prepared by Don Pedro de Alvarado, in the year one thouſand five hundred and thirty ſeven, in the port of Acaxatla on the Pacific Ocean. This fleet was fitted out by Alvarado in conſequence of permiſſion obtained from his Majeſty, by whom he was granted certain rents and advantages, in ſuch countries as he ſhould diſcover towards the weſt; that is to ſay China, the Moluca, and Spice Iſlands.

Alvarado being always zealous for his Majeſty's ſervice, as appeared by his conduct in Mexico and Peru, was anxious that this expedition ſhould exceed any other that had ever been fitted out. It conſiſted of thirteen ſail, amply provided. The port at which the preparations were made was above two hundred leagues diſtant from that of Vera Cruz, from which all the iron, and moſt other neceſſary articles were to be brought by land carriage. The conſequence was, that the money expended would have built eighty ſuch ſhips in Seville. All the wealth Alvarado brought from Peru, what he got from the mines of Guatimala, with the rents of his eſtates and the preſents of his friends and relations,

Marcos de Niza preceded Coronado. This Cibola is probably the country described to
way as Copallan or Apallachen. This city the inhabitants defended; it was walled and had gates. and
houses of stone very excellent. good houses, three, four, and five lofts high wherein are
d lodgings and fair chambers with ladders instead of stairs, and cellars under ground
y good and paved which are made for winter. They are in manner like stoves. These
seven cities (so the Spaniards called this country) are seven small towns, in this where
ow remain there may be some 200 houses, all compassed with walls, and I think
th the houses that are not so called there may be some five hundred together.
e people of these towns seem not to be such as they should be of that judgement
will to build these houses in such sorts as they are — they are of a reasonable
ure and witty — They wear the hair on their heads like those of Mexico
e Spaniards besieged one town for 45 days and could not take it. — The
ntry consists of mighty plains and sandy heaths — with great droves of
ffalos — in and about Latitude 40. deg. where vessels with laden
ds came upon the coast after a thirty days voyage; as the Spaniards
pposed from China. The stages more properly, or stories of the houses
ve mentioned were described to Marcos de Niza (who did not visit them)
an Indian taking a stick or staff and pointing with it as high as he could
ch. Well wrought earthen ware was found by Ulloa in coasting the gulf
California yet the Indians (Cosa de vaca) much more ignorant of their
e. Account communicated by English prisoners of that day.

The Spaniards have notice of seven cities which old men of the Indies
them should lie North West of Mexico. They have used much diligence
cannot find them. Which they ascribe to witchcraft. Also of another
they call Copalla. They have found the Lake on which it stands
nd, and a Canoe the Lead of which was wrought with Copper
iously. Cibola is a city the Spaniards have found of late, without
people in the same goodly buildings, fayre chimnies, windows
le of stone and timber excellently wrought, fair wells with wheels to
w their water and a place where they had buried their dead people
many fair stones upon the graves — They asked certain people

where the inhabitants were gone and they answered, down a certain river. The Floridans had a tradition of a Lord of Chiquola who dwelt in a fair walled city far off to the north. — Refer to the accounts given to the Baron de La Hontan in 1688. of the six cities of the Nation called Taghulak. sailing up a western branch of the Mississippi. Tanaka is west considerably to the North of this country.

In 1540 Marcos de Nizza a friar. Francisco Vasquez Coronado and Ferdinand Alarchon penetrated to the settlement called Celibola or the seven cities in Latitude 35°. De Nizza's account of its riches & others contradict; of its civilization they certain. De Nizza travelled nearly to the bottom of the Gulf of California whence he was told Celibola was thirty days journey. Quitting the coast he met some people tatowed (pintados) and was brought by them to a town beyond their limits where he met a people clothed in long garments of cotton, or of well dressed skins of buffaloes, and who irrigated their lands by canals. Rain was frequently wanting & had not rained for three years when de Nizza was there. These people wore turquoises in their ears and noses and in strings round their necks. Enquiring concerning the houses of Celibola, these people took clay and moulded it in a pyramidal form and lofty. upon this he asked them had the Celibolians wings to get to such houses, whereon they drew the form of the steps they were ascended by and taking a stick placed it on their heads, to shew that was the height of each floor or stage, above the other. Incited by these accounts he proceeded thither but did not enter the town for his guides excited suspicion and they were imprisoned in a strong house outside the town, a negro was killed and the rest made their escape wounded. De Nizza on his return to Mexico gave very exaggerated accounts of what he had, and what he had not seen. In consequence thereof Coronado was sent thither to make enquiry and his account is as follows. "The houses are not built with mortar neither are the streets paved in never

relations were inſufficient, although the merchandize was taken upon credit. The expence attending the ſhips was nothing in compariſon to that of his army, conſiſting of ſix hundred and fifty ſoldiers with their officers, and a number of horſes, of which latter a good one could not be procured for leſs than three hundred crowns. Alvarado ſailed ſome time in the year one thouſand five hundred and thirty eight, for the harbour of the Purification in the province of Xaliſco, where he was to take in water, and embark more ſoldiers. When the Viceroy heard of this great armament, he became anxious to have a ſhare in it, and went with Alvarado to view his fleet, after which they returned to Mexico.

Alvarado wiſhed to have a relation of his own, named Juan, (not the Juan de Alvarado of Chiribito) as general, and the Viceroy was anxious that an officer named Villalobos ſhould have the command, conjointly with him. Things were in this ſtate when Alvarado was obliged to return to his fleet at the port of Natividad; and being there, and juſt ready to ſet ſail, he received a letter from Chriſtoval de Onate who was left in command at Xaliſco, in the abſence of Franciſco Coronado, requeſting his immediate aſſiſtance to ſave him and the ſettlement from the deſtruction with which they were threatened, by the force of the neighbouring Indians of Cochitlan. Alvarado ſet off with his troops to their relief, and found them in a moſt deſperate ſituation indeed. The inſurgents rather decreaſed the violence of their attacks upon the appearance of Alvarado's force, but ſtill hoſtilities were carried on, and one day that Alvarado was purſuing ſome of the enemy among the rocks and mountains where they had retreated, a ſoldier who was on horſe-back at a conſiderable height above him on the ſide of a mountain, and whoſe horſe had loſt his footing, came, horſe and all, rolling down the precipice, and ſtriking Alvarado, brought him down with them. By this accident he was ſo much bruiſed, that in conſequence thereof, and of being removed too ſuddenly to the town of the Pacification, he was ſeized with fainting fits, and in the courſe of a few days gave up the ghoſt. God pardon his ſins! ſome ſay that he made a will

300. Miles or Leagues from Guatemala

on St John's day 1541.

will previous to his death, but it never appeared. He was buried with as much ceremony as could be beſtowed upon his funeral, and his remains were, as I have heard, afterwards removed to the town of Piripito by Juan de Alvarado his relation.

As ſoon as the news of his death was known to his fleet and army, numbers diſcharged themſelves, and returned to their homes with what they had received. In Mexico he was greatly regretted. The Viceroy ſent off immediately the licentiate Maldonado, to take proper ſteps to prevent any confuſion likely to enſue, and ſhortly after following in perſon, collected what remained of the ſoldiers, and marching againſt the inſurgents in the rocks, after a tedious expedition ſucceeded in reducing them. The loſs of Alvarado was ſeverely felt in his family. As ſoon as the fatal intelligence arrived in Guatimala, the Biſhop D. Franciſco Marroguin of excellent memory, and all the clergy, aſſiſted in rendering him the funeral honours. His majordomo alſo, to ſhew his ſorrow, cauſed the walls of his houſe to be painted black, which colour they remained ever after. Many cavaliers waited upon his lady Donna Beatrix de la Cueva and her family, in order to conſole them, for their diſtreſs was very great. They told her that ſhe ſhould give thanks to God, ſince it was his will to take her huſband, to which ſhe as a good chriſtian aſſented, but obſerved, that ſhe wiſhed to be free from this melancholy world, and all its misfortunes.

Guatimala was destroyed by an earth-quake July 29. 1773. — for account of this town See Page

Theſe circumſtances I mention, becauſe the hiſtorian Gomara attributes the unfortunate event which ſhortly afterwards befell her, to her having ſpoken blaſphemouſly, in ſaying that God could do her no more injury than ſhe had already ſuffered. She met with her death in the following manner. A deluge of water and mud broke from the Volcano which is at the diſtance of about half a league from Guatimala, and bringing with it great quantities of large ſtones and trees, overwhelmed the houſe of Donna Beatrix, who was at the time praying with her women. As to the words which Gomara aſcribes to her, ſhe never

the[illegible]s they are opulent houses of three four and five floors (or stages) containing
lodging rooms and handsome apartments, with corridores, also subterraneous
[illegible]s tolerably good and paved with stone. These last are their winter habitations
[illegible] are nearly in the manner of stove chambers. The different stages of their
s are ascended to by portable ladders. Seven small towns, their constant and
within a space of four leagues are conjunctively called [illegible] (can
be Chicuei moztoc?) Cebibola (this (R.B. is not Culiacan) perhaps it
Can or Chicuei pallan). The town in which Coronado resided consisted of
such houses and the number of hearths or families was 500. Of
ther six, one town was larger [illegible] another the same size, and the other
were smaller. — Coronado observes that the people did not appear to be
ficate to the constructing such houses. — They had no knowledge of
ea on either side of them. Coronado computes the distance from this
coast to the Pacific at a hundred and fifty leagues. The country
plain, destitute of wood, and the winter there is very severe.
property the natives had consisted of cotton, dressed skins,
parchment for painting on, of which art he found some tolerable
imens in different houses, and which he sent to Mexico, with
ew of Cebibola, which from some resemblance he called Granada
nd by himself.
chow ascended the great river for about two hundred and
y miles always gaining intelligence of Cebibola, which
ed a place of great consideration in the minds of the natives
s to have co-operated with Coronado whom however he did not
.
as well as Casa grande on the River Gila which runs into the Gulf
fornia if they are not both the same place, was the construction of
thian colony, by which both were subsequently [illegible]
doned. it may be presumed in their finding in that hitherto un
ed country a more genial situation. The architecture is con
with the structures of the Scythian caucasus. The route on

which they lie coincides with Culwan his story. and each circumstance is corroborated by its relatives. As the Culwan his story represent their migration to have been from the North, as they were a people endowed with the civil science, as it is alone on the route above specified that remains thereof appear and that on the right and left nothing exists but darkness and barbarism, and as there appears a total cessation of any enlightment beyond their country of Anahuac while those best qualified to judge have decided that these remains upon the route were relinquished stations it is to migrators that they may be with most probability ascribed.—
and to the Culwan nations of Anahuac only—
It is supposed their route was first South, to a place called Culiacan on the coast of the Gulf of California—then East to Tula and again South to Anahuac

These migrators appear not to have crossed the Shining or Appalachian mountains on their left. and this seems to have drawn the line of distinction between them and the Chepeweyans whose accounts tallies so well with theirs, and appear so perfectly to relate to their Asiatic origin and the Noatkan archipelago for such it is now ascertained to be.

Population appear to have proceeded from one point in three different channels through america. viz.t by the North coast through the Esquimaux until they met the Goths in Greenland. 2.dly by the Chichimecans of Chepeweyan who crossed the Shining mountains and the Missisipi becoming more barbarous as they advanced from their parent seite, and thirdly the Culwan nations which proceeded Southwards until their final settlement in Anahuac.

Various opinions have existed and been given from time to time on this subject. De Laet says America could not have been peopled from Asia because no trace of Asiatic science or manners is found there. Doctor Robertson would give them a Finnish origin from the Tschutzkans. Forster thinks them the remnant rescued from the wreck of a Chinese armament, but on these occasions women are not embarked or at any

never uttered them, nor was her death a judgment of God in any reſpect. But I muſt obſerve the particularities of the fate of this family. Although Alvarado and his four brothers had ſerved his Majeſty ſo zealouſly, not any part of his property deſcended to his children. D. Pedro de Alvarado died as I have related, by an uncommon accident in Cochitlan; his brother George died in the city of Madrid, in the year one thouſand five hundred and forty, being then ſoliciting his Majeſty for ſome reward; Gomez de Alvarado died in Peru, Gonzalo de Alvarado in Mexico or Guaxaca, I forget which, and Juan on his voyage to the Iſland of Cuba. His eldeſt ſon going with his relation Juan de Alvarado the younger to wait on his Majeſty, and ſolicit a recompence for his father's ſervices, the ſhip wherein they went was loſt, and neither they nor it were ever heard of after they ſet ſail. Don Diego the younger ſon, ſeeing his fortunes deſperate, returned to Peru, where he died in battle, and the lady of Pedro de Alvarado, with the female part of his family, one only excepted, were drowned by a torrent from a Volcano. Now curious readers reflect on what I have related of the fate of this family, and may our Lord Jeſus Chriſt take them into his holy glory! amen. The only ſurvivor, Donna Leonora one of his daughters who was ſaved from the torrent, has cauſed to be built two ſepulchres in the great church of this city of Guatimala, to receive the bones of her relations.

In about a year after the death of D. Pedro de Alvarado, the Viceroy collected the beſt of the thirteen ſhips which compoſed his fleet, and ſent them under the command of an officer named Villalobos, to make diſcoveries to the weſtward, but what the reſult was, I never heard. As to the expences incurred by Alvarado he never recovered any part of them, nor his family after him.

The Marquis del Valle being in Spain at the time of the expedition againſt Algiers, and attending his Majeſty in it, with his eldeſt ſon, and alſo Don Martin his ſon by Donna Marina, the fleet was

was dispersed in a storm. The vessel on board which the Marquis was being stranded, he, his sons, and the other cavaliers reached the shore with very great difficulty. His servants have related, that before he quitted the vessel, he tied round his arm in a handkerchief a quantity of jewels of inestimable value, which he wore according to the custom of great lords, as we say "para no menester," or because they are not wanting, but in the confusion of quitting the vessel by some accident they were all lost. On account of this disaster to the fleet, the council of war were of opinion to raise the siege immediately. To this council the Marquis was not summoned, but he is said to have declared, that had he been present at it he would have given his vote for the continuation of the siege, and that if it had been his fortune to have had such brave soldiers as those who first accompanied him to Mexico, he would entertain no doubt of success.

The Marquis was now grown old, and he was worn down by fatigues; he was therefore very anxious to return to New Spain, but a treaty of marriage was on foot between his eldest daughter Donna Maria Cortes, for whom he had sent to Mexico, and Don Alvaro Pinez Osorio son and heir to the Marquis of Astorga. The lady was to have a fortune of a hundred thousand ducats, and the Marquis had gone as far as Seville to meet her on her arrival in Spain, but the match was broken off, as it is said, by the fault of Don Alvaro. The Marquis was greatly displeased, and being in a bad state of health before, he declined so rapidly that he found it necessary to retire from Seville to Castileja de la Cuesta, to attend to his soul, and make his last testament. Having arranged all his affairs for this, and the next world, it was the Lord's will to take him from this troublesome state, on the second day of December one thousand five hundred and forty seven. He was buried with great pomp in the chapel of the Dukes of Medina Sidonia, but his remains were afterwards, according to his will, brought to New Spain, and interred in Cuyoacan or Tezcuco, I am uncertain which. In regard to his age, I will give the best account that I am able. In the

is numbers capable of colonizing a country. Grotius thinks the North Americans from Norway and those of the South from Java but none of the Americans were of nautical habits, and the accounts of the Gothic themselves contradict his supposition as to that the Peruvians are from China wrecks of Chinese vessels having been cast on their coasts.

History

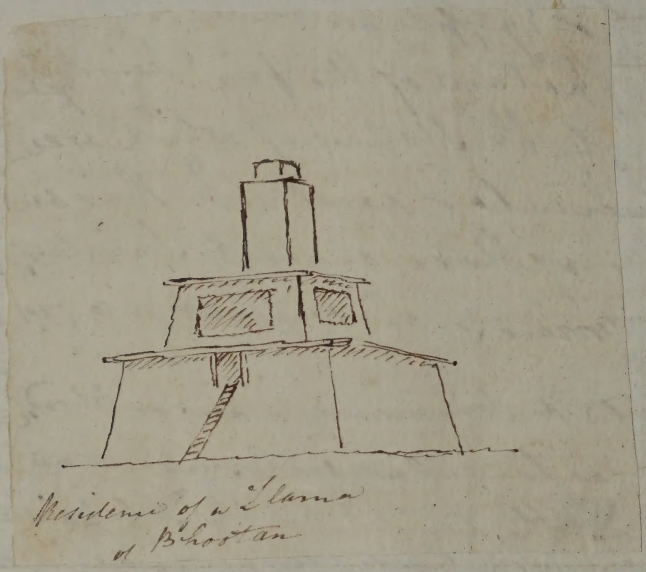
From the rapidity of their population and the diversity of arts, and sciences found among them they cannot but have been a Colony, newly and expressly sent out for the purpose —

the reign of Yu. twenty fifth Emperor of the family of Hia — this — the Sun / the provinces to the North of China being overstocked with inhabitants sent out Colonies to people the Islands of the Ocean.

This passage in the ancient history of China so exactly corresponds with all the circumstances which relate to the primary inhabitants of America, that it is very hard to reject it upon any surmountable difficulty. As the period spoken of here is about, or antecedent to the Christian æra there is a long period to account for. Yet a long period was also necessary to bring the Esquimaux in the tenth century to the Ilfs Nies in Greenland, or the Chickimecans to Labrador. and the Incas likewise are supposed to have been in Mexico in the seventh century. If any have visits of a great convulsion in North China about the period last mentioned it would be with most probability assigned to that. — But it must be observed that though numerous and enlightened these people were ignorant of the graphic art of China, the Egyptians, or any other Nation. Tho' this is so generally diffused a language which bears affinity to that of China was most probably of the North of that Nation which is a language of very limited expression By the accounts of the peasantry and Indians which coincide in this fatality, their expatriation was compulsive regretted and filled with misery. — They had arts of which the Peruvians were ignorant. and certainly had the precedency of them in civilization —

Like the writers of the Orient their finest graphy was in blue.

Casa grande, on the River Gila which runs into the Gulf of California consi
of three stages and a turret. The lower stage is solid earth the second has a door
for entrance and as well as that above was habitables. The two upper stages
and the turret are constructed of Lime Stone and timber plaistered with lim
the stages being reduced as they are above each other leave a platform as
a passage round their base. On one side of this building is a precipi
on the other a wall about seven feet thick.



Residence of a Llama
of Bhootan

the year one thouſand five hundred and nineteen, when we went with him from Cuba to New Spain, he uſed to tell us that he was thirty four years of age; from one thouſand five hundred and nineteen, to one thouſand five hundred and forty ſeven, is a period of twenty eight years, which makes him at the time of his death exactly ſixty two years old.

The legitimate children of the Marquis del Valle were, Don Martin the preſent Marquis, Donna Maria before mentioned who married the Count de Luna de Leon. Donna Juana, who married Don Hernando Enriquez heir to the Marquis of Tariffa, and Donna Catalina de Arrellano, who died in Seville. Theſe ladies came with the Marchioneſs from Mexico; her brother Fray Anthonio de Zuniga being ſent for them. One daughter named Donna Leonora, was married in Mexico, to a rich Biſcayan named Juanes de Toloſa, which alliance gave great offence to the young Marquis. He alſo left two natural ſons, one by Donna Marina, named Don Martin, who was commander of the order of St. Jago. The other, Don Luis, who was a commander of the ſame order, was the ſon of a lady, by name, De Hermoſilla. He had alſo three natural daughters, one by an Indian woman of Cuba, was named Donna——Pizarro; the others were by a Mexican woman. Theſe ladies were all left great fortunes. The Marquis alſo having due time, took care of his ſoul, by diſcharging his ſins; endowing an hoſpital in Mexico, and a monaſtery of nuns in his own town of Cuyoacan.

He was put to the torture in 1568 — at the time the Bena vides were beheaded, he was charged with having permitted a crown to be put on his head at a feast — one of his two Judges Ibarra — died of vexation being reprimanded by Charles 5. on his return to Europe

The motto and arms which were granted to him were well adapted to a valiant warrior. The former being in Latin I will ſay nothing about, becauſe I do not underſtand that language. His arms were the heads of ſeven kings in a chain, repreſenting Montezuma, Cacamatzin, Guatimotzin, Tulapa, Coadlavaca, and the princes of Tacuba and Cuyoacan.

I will now proceed to deſcribe the perſon and diſpoſition of the Marquis. He was of a good ſtature and ſtrong built, of a rather pale complexion,

complexion, and ſerious countenance. His features were, if faulty, rather too ſmall; his eyes mild and grave. His beard was black, thin, and ſcanty; his hair in the ſame manner. His breaſt and ſhoulders were broad, and his body very thin. He was very well limbed, and his legs rather bowed; an excellent horſeman, and dexterous in the uſe of arms. He alſo poſſeſſed the heart and mind, which is the principal part of the buſineſs. I have heard that when he was a lad in Hiſpaniola, he was very wild about women, and that he had ſeveral duels with able ſwordſmen, in which he always came off with victory. He had the ſcar of a ſword-wound near his under lip, which appeared through his beard if cloſely examined, and which he received in ſome of thoſe affairs. In his appearance, manners, tranſactions, converſation, table, and dreſs, every thing bore the appearance of a great lord. His cloaths were according to the faſhion of the time; he was not fond of ſilks, damaſks, or velvets, but every thing plain, and very handſome; nor did he wear large chains of gold, but a ſmall one of prime workmanſhip, bearing the image of our Lady the Bleſſed Virgin with her precious ſon in her arms, and a Latin motto; and on the reverſe, St. John the Baptiſt with another motto. He wore on his finger a ring with a very fine diamond, and in his cap, which according to the faſhion of that day was of velvet, he bore a medal, the head and motto of which I do not recollect; but latterly he wore a plain cloth cap, without any ornament.

His table was always magnificently attended and ſerved, with four major domos or principal officers, a number of pages, and a great quantity of plate both gold and ſilver. He dined heartily at mid-day, and drank a glaſs of wine mixed with water, of about half a pint. He was not nice in his food, nor expenſive, except on particular occaſions where he ſaw the propriety of it. He was very affable with all his captains and ſoldiers, eſpecially thoſe who accompanied him in his firſt expedition from Cuba. He was a Latiniſt, and as I have been told, a bachelor in laws. He was alſo ſomething of a poet, and a very good rhetorician;

tinued.

bold enterprise buildings of brick recently discovered in the
banks of Kentucky - which puzzle conjecture. v. 1803.
Mining Mountains — Geography. Date Sept. 23d. 1806. Lop
see next page

Cortes married Dn. Jeroma, daughter of the Count of Aguilar
heir to the Counts of Benavex and of the Duke of Bejar. — his posterity now
in the family of Pignatelli

Captain Clarke passed the winter 1805 at Fort Clatsop near the mouth of Columbia river — Set out, thence 27 March and arrived at the foot of the Rocky mountains (May 6) where they were detained until June 24. by the Snows which rendered the passage across these mountains impracticable

From the mouth of the Missouri to the great falls of that River 2575 miles

From the great falls of the Missouri to a navigable part of the Koos koos ke River by Land 340

200 miles of this would admit of a good road, the remainder is over tremendous mountains which for 60 miles are covered with eternal Snows.

Down the Koos koos ke from where first navigable to South Easterly branch of the Columbia 73 miles

Down that branch to the main river Columbia 154

to the Pacific down Columbia river 413

Total from the mouth of the Missouri to the Pacific 3550

The tide flows up the Columbia 183 miles to within 7 miles of the great rapids & so far would admit large sloops — navigable by boats above the rapids —

rhetorician; very devout to our Holy Virgin, and his advocates St. Peter, St. Jago, and St. John the Baptiſt in particular; and charitable to the poor. When he ſwore he uſed to ſay, "by my conſcience!" and when he was angry with any of us, his friends, he would ſay, "oh! may you repent it." When he was very angry, the veins in his throat and forehead uſed to ſwell, and when in great wrath, he would not utter a ſyllable to any one. He was very patient under inſults or injuries; for ſome of the ſoldiers were at times very rude and abuſive with him; but he never reſented their conduct, although he had often great reaſon to do ſo. In ſuch caſes he uſed only to ſay, "be ſilent," or, "go away "in God's name and take care not to repeat this conduct, or I will have "you puniſhed." He was very determined and headſtrong in all buſineſs of war, not attending to any remonſtrances on account of danger; an inſtance of which he ſhewed in the attack of thoſe fortreſſes called the rocks of the Marquis; which he forced us to ſcale, contrary to our opinions, and where neither courage, counſel, or wiſdom, could give any rational hope of ſucceſs. Another inſtance was given by him of his obſtinacy in regard to the expedition againſt De Oli. I repeatedly adviſed him to go by the mountains; but he perſiſted in adhering to the coaſt, whereas if he had gone in the direction that I propoſed he would have found towns the whole way, of which the following route is a proof; Guacacualco, the high road to Chiapa, from that to Guatimala, and from thence to Naco. Where we had to erect a fortreſs, Cortes was the hardeſt labourer in the trenches; when we were going into battle, he was as forward as any.

Cortes was very fond of play, both at cards and dice, and while playing he was very affable and good humoured. He uſed frequently at ſuch times, thoſe cant expreſſions which perſons who game are accuſtomed to do. In military ſervice he practiſed the moſt ſtrict attention to diſcipline, conſtantly going the rounds in perſon during the night, viſiting the quarters of the ſoldiers, and ſeverely reprehending thoſe whom he found without their armour and appointments, and

not ready to turn out; repeating to them the proverb, that "it is a bad "ſheep which cannot carry its own wool." On our expedition to Higueras I perceived that he had acquired a habit which I had never before obſerved in him, and it was this; after eating, if he did not get his ſieſta or ſleep, his ſtomach was affected, and he fell ſick. For this reaſon, when on the journey, let the rain be ever ſo heavy, or the ſun ever ſo hot, he always repoſed for a ſhort time after his repaſt, a carpet or cloak being ſpread under a tree, on which he lay down, and having ſlept a ſhort time he mounted his horſe and proceeded on his journey. When we were engaged in the wars during the conqueſt of New Spain, he was very thin and ſlender, but after his return from Higueras he grew fat, and acquired a belly. He at this time trimmed his beard which had not begun to grow white, in the ſhort faſhion. In his early life he was very liberal, but grew cloſe, latterly; ſome of his ſervants complaining that he did not pay them as he ought, and I have alſo to obſerve that in his latter undertakings he never ſucceeded. Perhaps ſuch was the will of heaven, his reward being reſerved for another place; for he was a good cavalier, and very devout to the Holy Virgin, and alſo to St. Paul and other Holy Saints. God pardon him his ſins; and me mine; and give me a good end which is better than all conqueſts and victories over Indians.

Anno 1556. Robert Thompson was in Mexico and served the conqueror Gonzalo Ceruzo. He found a Scotsman Thomas Blake who had been settled and married there twenty years.

Anno 1575 Paul Horsewell an English prisoner married in Mexico the daughter of a conqueror having to her fortune 4000 pesos & a fayre horse.

CHAPTER X.

Enumeration and account of the valiant companions who paſſed over to the conqueſt of New Spain with the moſt adventurous and magnanimous Don Hernando Cortes Marquis of the Valley. Advantages reſulting from the conqueſt—Tranſactions at court. Concluding obſervations of the author.

IN the liſt of the conquerors of Mexico the firſt is the Marquis Don H. Cortes; with him came the following officers and ſoldiers. Don P. de Alvarado, commander of St. Jago, adelantado and governor of Guatimala, Honduras, and Chiapa; he was about thirty four years of age when he came to this country, of a handſome perſon, very chearful countenance, and mild look; for which reaſon he was called by the Mexicans, "Tonatio," which ſignifies the ſun; he was very active, and a good horſeman; of a generous diſpoſition, and courteous manners, very ſplendid in his dreſs, wearing a gold chain with a medal round his neck, and a diamond ring on his finger.

F. de Montejo was of the middle ſtature, of a chearful countenance, and gay diſpoſition; at the time of his arrival here he was about thirty five years of age; he was fitter for buſineſs than war, and of a liberal turn, expending more than he received; he arrived to the dignity of adelantado and governor of Yucatan, and died in Caſtille.

Captain G. de Sandoval was at the time of his arrival here about twenty two years of age; he was joint governor of New Spain for about eleven months; in this officer courage and judgment were combined; he

he was robuſt in body, his legs rather bowed, and his countenance maſculine; his hair and beard were curled, and of a light brown; his voice was rough, and ſomewhat terrible, and he ſtammered a little; he was a plain man, and one who did not know much of letters, not avaritious of gold, but attentive to his buſineſs like a good officer, ſeeing that his ſoldiers did their duty well, and taking good care of them. He was not fond of rich dreſſes, but went plain and like a ſoldier. He had the beſt horſe that ever was ſeen; he was a cheſtnut, with a ſtar in his forehead, and his near foot white; his name was Motilla; he became a proverb, ſo that when any horſe was extraordinarily good, we uſed to ſay he was as good as Motilla. Sandoval was an officer fit for any ſtation; he was a native of Medellin, and an hidalgo; his father was an alcalde of a caſtle.

Don C. de Oli was a Hector in battle, but his judgment was not equal to his valour, and he required to be kept under command. The captains De Alvarado, De Sandoval, and De Oli, were in high eſtimation with his Majeſty, who was pleaſed to ſay that he had three in New Spain who might be compared with the greateſt the world had produced. Cortes alſo uſed to talk highly of his officers and ſoldiers, but what Bernal Diaz del Caſtillo thinks upon the ſubject is this; that if what Cortes afterwards ſaid in their favour, he had written at firſt to his Majeſty, he would have done right; but at that time he made no mention of our valiant actions, nor even our names; but only ſaid, "this I did; this I ordered to be done;" whereas I think the leaſt he ſhould have done was to make mention of us. I will now return to my enumeration of our officers and ſoldiers.

J. V. de Leon, native of Old Caſtille, was about twenty ſeven years of age, well proportioned, and robuſt; his beard was red and curled, his voice rough and fierce, and he ſtammered a little; he was a cavalier of good manners, and generous, ſharing what he had with his companions; he killed a perſon of conſequence in the Iſland of Hiſ-

paniola,

paniola, for which he was obliged to conceal himſelf, and the officers of juſtice never were able to apprehend him, he made ſuch reſiſtance He was moſt valiant both on horſeback and on foot; he died at the bridge.

D. de Ordas, from the neighbourhood of Campos, was about forty years of age; he was captain of the ſoldiers armed with ſword and buckler, not being a horſeman; he was very valiant, and wiſe, ſtrong, and of good ſtature, of a maſculine countenance, and black thin beard. In ſpeaking there were certain words which he could not pronounce; he was generous, and of good manners. He was commander of St. Jago, and governor of Maranion, where he died.

Captain L. Marin was valiant, and ſtout built; bow legged, with a red beard, and a full and chearful countenance, ſlightly marked with the ſmall pox. He was about thirty years of age, and a native of St. Lucar, liſping a little, like the Sevillians. He was a good horſeman, and of mild manners; he died in Mechoacan.

Captain P. de Ircio was of middle ſtature, chearful countenance, and duck legged; a great boaſter of his exploits, but by what we could perceive in him good for very little; he was always repeating certain ſtories of the Count de Urena, and Don Pedro Giron; we uſed to call him Agrages without deeds; he was for a time captain under Sandoval during the ſiege, and died in Mexico.

A. de Avila was of a good perſon and countenance, clear and ſenſible in his converſation, very valiant, and about thirty three years of age. He was free with his companions, but proud, fond of commanding, and impatient of controll, with a conſiderable ſhare of envy, and turbulence, inſomuch that Cortes could not bear to have him near him; he therefore took care that he ſhould be employed in ſuch affairs as would draw him to a diſtance; he was uncle to the cavaliers the ſons of Benavides,

Benavides, who were beheaded in Mexico; he died in that city or in Yucatan.

A. de Monjarez was of middling ſtature, and a good countenance; he acted as captain during the ſiege, but was always an invalid; he was aged about thirty years, and died a natural death.

C. de Olea was a native of Medina Del Campo, and a moſt valiant ſoldier; he was about twenty ſix years of age, of the middle ſtature, with a maſculine but pleaſing countenance; his hair and beard a little curled, and a clear voice; this ſoldier's bravery was ſuch that we all held him in the higheſt honour; he ſaved the life of Cortes at Suchimillico, when the enemy had ſeized and were carrying him off to ſacrifice; and a ſecond time upon the cauſeway of Mexico when he was in a ſtill more deſperate ſituation, being wounded and in the hands of a number of the Indians, the brave De Olea, though mortally wounded, with his ſword killed and beat off every one of theſe who were upon Cortes, thus ſaving his general's life, and loſing his own at the ſame time. When the perſon of this valiant ſoldier recurs to my mind, and the manner he uſed to fight at our ſides, the tears flow from my eyes, for he was my towns-man, and we were related to the ſame families.

G. Dominguez, and Lares, were ſoldiers of high renown, and might be put in compariſon with Olea; the firſt died by the fall of his horſe, the ſecond at the battle of Otumba.

A. de Tapia was aged about twenty four years, of a pale complexion and grave countenance; he was a valiant captain, and died in Mexico, a natural death.

J. de Eſcalante was a captain; he died at Villa Rica. F. de Lugo, a brave officer, acted as captain occaſionally; he was the natural

Naquiatato. following one of these names signifies "interpreter"

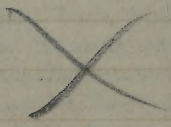
ral ſon of a wealthy gentleman at Medina del Campo; he died a natural death. Gregorio de Monjaraz; a good ſoldier; loſt his hearing during the ſiege, and died a natural death. Four brothers of Don P. de Alvarado. J. Xaramillo was an officer of merit; he died a natural death. Chriſtoval Flores, a worthy ſoldier. Chriſtoval de Gamboa, equerry to Cortes. One Calcedo, a wealthy man. Franciſco de Bonal, a good ſoldier. Maldonado, ſurnamed "the broad," a good ſoldier. Franciſco Alvarez Chico, a man of buſineſs. Franciſco de Torrazas, major domo to Cortes, a perſon of merit. Chriſtoval del Corral, our enſign; an officer of merit. Anthonio de Villaroel, ſome time enſign. Alonzo de Grado; one fitter for buſineſs than war; by his importunities he induced Cortes to give him the daughter of Montezuma in marriage. Franciſco Flores, a very noble perſon. De Solis. There were four of this name; one was ſurnamed, "caſquete," or "rattle-ſkull;" another called himſelf "De la Huerta;" but we called him "ſilk coat," becauſe he prided himſelf on his dreſs. Another was named "De atras la Puerta," becauſe he always ſat behind the door of his houſe, obſerving the paſſengers in the ſtreet. Bernardino Vaſquez de Tapia; a perſon of wealth and conſequence. Juan Lopez de Ximena, alcalde major of Vera Cruz. Juan de Cuellar, a good horſeman, married the handſome daughter of the Lord of Tezcuco, named Donna Anna. Another Cuellar related to F. Verdugo. Santos Hernandez, whom we uſed to call "the good old ranger." Pedro Moreno Medrano, alcalde in Vera Cruz, a good ſoldier, and an upright judge. Roman Lopez, a perſon of eminence. Juan de Limpias Caravajal, grew deaf during the ſiege, where he was captain of a veſſel. Melchor de Galvez. Villandrando, ſaid to have been related to the Count of Ribadeo. Oſſorio, a good ſoldier. Rodrigo de Caſtaneda, a good ſoldier. Juan de Naxara, a good ſoldier. Ojeda, who loſt an eye during the ſiege. Alonzo Hernandez Puertocarrero, couſin to the Count of Medellin. Hernando Burgueno, a good ſoldier. Tirado de la Puebla, a man of buſineſs. Hernandes de Alanis, a very brave ſoldier. Navarrete. Juan Flamenco. Franciſco del Barco, promoted to be a captain. Juan Perez, who killed his

Trunk hotzin widow of Quauhtemotzin

& the King of Mechuacan.

his wife, the daughter of La Baguera. Najara, "the hump backed," a moſt valiant ſoldier. Madrid, "the hump backed;" a very valiant ſoldier. Juan de Inhieſta. De Alamilla, a good croſsbow-man. Moron; a fine muſician. De Varela; a good ſoldier. De Villafuerte; a perſon of conſequence, married to a relation of the firſt wife of Cortes. Gutierrez. Pacheco; a perſon of diſtinction. Hernando de Lerma, or de Lema; a captain. Suarez the elder, who killed his wife with a blow of a hand-mill. Laſios, who had a ſuit about his diſtrict. Garci Caro. One Ximenes. Amaya. Two Carmenos, brothers. One Vargas. Polanco. Juan de Aragon. St. Eſtevan. Bernardino de Coria. Rodorigo Rangel. Almodova, his ſon, and nephew. A reverend father of the order of mercy, named Fra Bartholome de Olmedo; a great theologian, a fine ſinger, and a virtuous man. Two nephews of Alonzo Hernandez de Palo. Chriſtoval Diaz; a good croſsbow-man. Juan Siciliano. Diego de Coria. Juan Sedeno. Saragoſſa, father to the ſcrivener in Mexico. Diego Martin de Agamante, a good ſoldier. Diego Hernandez, loſt his ſight; he was an aſſiſtant ſhipwright. Alvaro Lopez. One Yanez who went to Higueras; during his abſence his wife took another huſband with whom he left her. Martin de Alpedrino, Juan Alvarez Rubazo, Gonzalez Sanchez, brave men, all Portugueze. One Avila. One Eſpinoſa, ſurnamed "De la "buena benedicion," from his often uſing the word. Peron de Toledo. One San Juan. Aparicio Martin. Izguierdo; a good ſoldier. Morrales, an old man, lame of a leg, alcalde in ordinary at Villa Rica, and a ſtrict doer of juſtice. Arevalo, Juan Leon, Madrigal; inhabitants of Villa Rica; never were on ſervice. Navarro. Manzanilla, an Indian of the iſlands. Benito Vejel, a drummer who had ſerved in Italy. Alonzo Romero. Pedro Lopez; a good ſoldier. Juan Garcia, Hernan Martin, and another; ſmiths. Alvaro Gallego. Pedro de Tapia. Lorenzo Ginoves. Ochoa; a rich and eminent perſon. Martin Vaſquez, a man of eminence. Sebaſtian Rodriguez, a croſsbow-man and Trumpeter. Penaloſa. Juan Perez Artiaga, ſurnamed "Malintzin;" a rich man. Pedro Gonzalez Sabiote, a good ſoldier. Aguilar whom

we



Pesos. - some say the 2lb. of 8 oz - others an unmixed castillano of which 50 go to the Lb of 14 oz. Queen Isabella was obliged to borrow 2500 ducats to fit out Columbus for his first voyage

In the 15th. century the revenues of France were 400,000 Francs 16,000 £ —

16,000 maravedis are 40 Crowns in Gold.

we found at the point of Cotoche; a good ſoldier. Pedro Valenciano. One Tariffa. Another of that name called by us "the meritorious," becauſe he was always bragging of what he had done, and that he had not been properly rewarded; a prating fellow. Pedro Sanchez Farfan; a brave ſoldier; he acted as captain. Eſcobar the bachelor, apothecary, ſurgeon, and phyſician; he went mad. Juan de Caceres the rich. Gonzalo Hurones. Ramirez the elder. Aſtorga. Toſtado. Pedro Valencia. Fray Juan de las Varillas, of the order of mercy; a good theologian, and a virtuous man. Thoſe enumerated above all died naturally. Franciſco de Saucedo, called "the gallant." Franciſco de Morla, a very brave ſoldier. De Lares, a good ſoldier and horſeman. Another of that name. De Solis, an old man. Benitez, a brave man. Juan Ruano, a good ſoldier. Two nephews of Gonzales de Najara. Gonzalo Dominguez, very brave and an excellent horſeman. One De Mora, a good ſoldier. Juan Alvarez Chico. A good ſoldier who had loſt one hand in Caſtille by the courſe of juſtice. One Tobillo, lame, as he ſaid by a wound received while ſerving under the great captain. Gonzalo Lopez de Ximena. One Pilar, a good linguiſt. Alonzo Luis, a good ſoldier; being very tall he was called "the infant." Alonzo de Monroy, a good ſoldier, ſon of a commander of St. Stephen; he went under the name of Salamanca. Juan Rico de Alanis, a good ſoldier. Martin de Vendabal. Pedro Gallego. Three ſoldiers of the name of Truxillo, brave men. De Valladolid. De Angulo. Franciſco Gutierrez. Santa Clara. One Ximenes. Two brothers of the name of Florin. One Vargas. One De Cieza, remarkable for pitching a bar. Bartholome Pardo. Arbolanche, a very brave ſoldier. A nephew of one Almodovar. Two brothers by name Martinez; brave men. Sancho de Avila who is ſaid to have brought ſix thouſand crowns in gold to Caſtille from St. Domingo, having had the luck to fall on ſome very rich mines there; he loſt the whole at play and then joined us. Alonzo Hernandez de Palo, Alonzo de la Meſta, and Rabanal Montanez, good ſoldiers. Retamales: Gines Nortes, a brave ſoldier. Luis Alonzo, an excellent ſwordſman. Alonzo Catalan, a good ſoldier.

Canillas, a drummer, and a good ſoldier, having ſerved in Italy. Hernandez, ſecretary to Cortes. Juan Diaz, belonged to the general's houſehold. Balnor. Cardenas, who ſaid he was ſon to a commander. Arguello, a good ſoldier. Vaſquez, a brave ſoldier. Arroyuelo. Pizarro; a relation of Cortes, acted as captain; his name was not then remarkable, nor had Peru been heard of. Magellanes, a brave ſoldier, a Portugueze, as was another, a goldſmith. One Avila. Two of the name of Eſpinoſa. One of the name of San Juan, called "the lofty," from his preſumptuouſneſs. Caceres, a good ſoldier. Eſcanola the younger. Alonzo de Talavera, a good ſoldier. An Indian of the iſlands named Manzanilla. Galleguillo, a very little man. A ſmith whoſe name I forget. Paredes. Gonzalo Mexia Rapapello, who ſaid he was deſcended from the corſair of that name in the reign of King John. Lucas Ginoves. Cervantes, a buffoon. Plazuela. Alonzo Perez Maite, a brave ſoldier, married to a handſome Indian of the iſlands. Alonzo de Eſcobar, a perſon of conſideration, formerly page to Velaſquez. Ponce. Mendez. An old croſsbow-man a great card player whoſe name I forget. The page Orteguilla and his father. Gaona. Luis Farfan. Morillas. One of the Toſtados. Porras, a fine ſinger, with a very fair complexion. Ortiz; he played on the fiddle and taught dancing. Serrano, a good ſoldier. Quintero. Andres de Mola. Alberza, a good ſoldier. Moſt of theſe loſt their lives at the bridge, were ſacrificed, or fell in battle.

Simon de Cuenca was killed at Xicalonga, with ten more ſoldiers. Franciſco de Medina died in the hands of the Indians with fifteen more. One De la Serna, who diſcovered ſilver mines, I do not know what is become of him. Martin Lopez, the ſhip carpenter who rendered ſuch eminent ſervices; he is now living in Mexico. One Granado is now living in Mexico. Villa Lobos returned rich to Caſtille. Juan del Rio returned to Caſtille. Juan Gomez returned rich to Caſtille. Herman Lopez de Avila, a truſtee of the effects of the dead, returned very rich to Caſtille. Pedro Eſcudiro, Juan Cermeno, and his brother, all good ſoldiers.

ancisco Pizano the Corregidor of Peru, served under Ojeda in Tera Firma with V. N. de Balboa at the discovery of the South Sea. and he after served under P. A. de Avila at Nombre de Dios & Panama on De Luca, Diego de Almagro & Francisco Pizano determined at the Con of Peru in the town of Panama. the conquest of them was then up by 30. they nicknamed the first Peruan el loco. Peruan the mad . this was in 1525. under permission of P. A. Davila with 114 men —

it doubtful if this was or was not one of the conquerors of Peru, but the author says he his life at the Bridge, he was probably one of the brothers. The Peruvians were as rous as their Scythian brethren. Atabalipa realized over his enemies the threats Gothic edda and drank out of their skulls. as was the custom at the drinking of the ancient Kings of Scythia; to whom the heads of enemies were presented. nor of this was confined to those who had killed an enemy.

Notes upon Peru —

Peruvians held their solar festival at the summer solstice — kindled fire by the sacred ix. ordinary by friction — Its most remarkable antiquities are at a named Tiahuanaco not remote from the Lake Titicaca because they more than ten antecedent to the time of the Incas — note, ~~Cuzco~~ & Incas reigned rings the reigns on record one with another to 30 years each solar Cycle. — or thereabout — v. Calcondylographia — Building Tiahuanaco. — an artificial mound — propped up by great stones — two hic Statues, in long robes to the feet & caps on the heads. very ancient ryed. — a long wall — the quarries very remote — the stones 0 feet in length — 15 in breadth & 6 — high. — all these structures er to have been left unfinished — Tradition dates them anterior to ncas. — V. Pedro de Cieza de Leon — sec. of Peru. They are in rovince of Collao — upon the bank of the Lake Chucuyto. — some of uildings had roofs of stone but imitating thatch. the Peruvians had the use of Lime, made of bricks not tiles — they seem to have used also ramidal structure like the most ancient buildings of India — y worshipped the sun moon & heavenly host — or this worship introduced y the Incas superceded the bestial worship of the rude natives is to say the worship of irrational animals down to the vilest —

Peru — yet Garcilasso talks of Terre unite — Their high priest, or priests were called Umu — Magues — The priesthood was in the family of the Incas — naked feet token of respect — Intermarriage in the Royal family — Pampa — a plain — the Incas were embalmed, and ranged according to seniority in the temple of the Sun. The Antis admitting themselves strangers in the country they conquered — the sacred herb Cuca or Coca — or grass. herb coca — counted by decimals. The nation of Iscuicas, 30,000. warlike stuffed or made drums of the skins of their Enemies — eat dogs — a custom which was odious to the Incas — They were called Huancas near Tumbez. — stones 40 feet long in the Peruvian ruins — irregular but the irregularities made to correspond. Semi lunar barbacanes — Apes, superior in Station —

The Paltas were the only Nation in Peru that flattened the head — one of the customs of Asia imported to America. — The Peruvians danced in masks at their festivals

---

Maranon. River of Amazons — these countries are covered with vast forests.

Peru — Sacred structures Royal & Sacred at Cuzco — a dome of four stories of wonderful fabric of timber of prodigious size, but the roof was higher than any steeple in Spain, that of Seville excepted. it was round at the summit, faced like the walls, terminating in a Spire Like resembling a pike, very thick hollowed in the inside and above 60 feet high —

The Triumvirate of Francisco Pizano Diego Dellemagro and Hernando de Luco was formed in 1525 — Francisco Pizano set out on his Voyage of discovery and it was three years to his arrival in Tumbez two years more were employed in going to Spain & obtaining the Commission of Conquest from the Emperor.

ſoldiers. Gonzalo de Umbria a pilot. Franciſco de Orozco; had been a ſoldier in Italy, and acted as captain during the ſiege of Mexico; I know nothing more of him. Meſa had been a canonier in Italy; was drowned in croſſing a river, after the conqueſt. Luis Velaſquez, and Martin Valenciano, died in the expedition to Higueras. Alonzo de Barrientos, Juan del Puerto a good ſoldier, died of diſeaſe. Pedro de Guzman, a brave ſoldier; it is ſaid that on his journey to Peru, he and his whole family, ſervants and horſes, were frozen to death. Cardenas; this was he who talked of the two kings; he was very troubleſome to Cortes. The Emperor made him a grant of lands worth a thouſand crowns a year, with which he returned to Mexico, but ſhortly after, died. Los Villanuevas; two brothers; Portugueze; I do not know what became of them. Villocinda, a brave ſoldier, put on the Franciſcan habit. Alonzo de Herrera, a good ſoldier, he fought with Captain Figuero, and to avoid the vengeance of the treaſurer, fled to the Indians of Maronon, by whom he was killed. Figuero was drowned going to Caſtille. Maldonado de Medellin, I do not know what became of him.

Auguſtine de Zarate ſays D. Pedro and who brought his family, namely his wife and two little daughters ſeeing that they lay down exhauſted and that he could give them no aſſiſtance, remained with them "in the mountains and they were all frozen to death" this was in the march of Alvarado to Peru in 1535 with 500 ſoldiers. for a time they nearly periſhed for thirſt in the plains, but that they found water in bamboos they cut their horſes

Lencero, a good ſoldier, had an inn on the road to Vera Cruz, turned friar. Sindos de Portillo, poſſeſſed large eſtates, which he ſold, giving the money to the poor, and taking orders, led a holy life. Quintero a good ſoldier, attained great wealth, which he renounced for God's ſake, and taking the Franciſcan habit, led a holy life. Alonzo de Aguilar owned the inn between Vera Cruz and La Puebla; a rich man; he ſold all his property for the ſervice of God, and putting on the Dominican habit, led a holy life. Burguillos, a rich man, renounced his property, and entered the order of St. Francis, which he afterwards quitted. Eſcalante, a good ſoldier, of a gay diſpoſition; he put on the Franciſcan habit, but afterwards quitted the monaſtery, and entered again into the military ſervice; but, in the courſe of a month, reſumed his friar's habit, and led a holy life. Gaſpar Diaz, a wealthy man, renounced all for God's ſake, and retired to the pine woods of Guaxocingo,

had cost them 6000, or 7000 ducats. they were near being ſuffocated by cinders from the Volcano of Quito which threw them for 80 leagues they then found forests where they were obliged to cut their way finally ascending the mountains ſixty of them were there frozen to death

The widow Loyzana's wife was the firſt Spaniſh woman that came to Peru. A. de Zarate.

cingo, where, in the moſt retired part, he made a hermitage for himſelf; in this courſe of life he reduced his body to a very weak ſtate, by faſting and penance, and the fame of his auſterities reaching the Biſhop Juan de Zumarraga, he entreated him not to carry them to ſuch an extreme. Several other perſons alſo joined him, being induced by his example to lead holy lives; at the end of about four years, it was God's will to take them all from this world, to his heavenly glory. Lerma; a very valiant ſoldier; it was he who rendered ſuch eſſential ſervice to Cortes, in once ſaving his life; Lerma was afterwards obliged to fly, and ſeek refuge among the Indians from this very Cortes whom he had preſerved, and who was exaſperated againſt him, for reaſons which, from regard to his honour, I will not mention; we never knew what became of him, but our ſuſpicions were very bad. Pinedo, a good ſoldier, had been educated in the houſe of Velaſquez; on the arrival of Narvaez, quitting Mexico to join him, he was way-laid and killed on the road by Indians; Cortes was ſuſpected of having a hand in his death.

One Lopez, returned to Hiſpaniola. Alaminos and his ſon, Camacho de Triano, Alvarez de Huelva, Sopuerto del Condado, Cardinas, Umbria, Galdin, and ſeveral others, all pilots; Sopuerto, only, remained in Mexico; the reſt being in dread of Cortes, becauſe they had offered their ſervices to Garray. Enreque, drowned himſelf, from deſpair and fatigue on a march. Zemudio, a very brave ſoldier, returned to Old Spain, on account of having wounded ſeveral perſons in frays; he was there given the command of a company; he died in Locaſtil with many other Spaniſh cavaliers. Tariffa, the third of that name, called by us "of the white hands," becauſe he was not fit either for war or labour; or any thing elſe except to prate about what had happened to him in Seville; he and his horſe were drowned on the march to Higueras. Eſcobar, a brave man but very turbulent; he was hanged for ſedition and for violating a married woman. St. Jago, returned rich to Caſtille. Alonzo de Eſcobar, a perſon of eſtimation, formerly

page

page to Velaſquez. Saldanha and two more whoſe names I forget were killed in Tabaſco. De Rojas, went to Peru. Guillen de la Loa, Andrez Nunez, Maiſſe Pedro el de la Harpa, and three more; the firſt died by a cannon ſhot, the others by the enemy, or courſe of nature. Alonzo Rodriguez, left good mines in Cuba; was killed at the rocks, together with Gaſpar Sanchez, a brave man, nephew to the treaſurer of Cuba, and ſix of the ſoldiers of Narvaez. Pedro de Palma, firſt huſband of Elvira Lopez "the tall," was hanged together with a ſoldier named Trebejo, and a prieſt, for ſedition, by Avila or Las Caſas, after the death of De Oli, under whom they ſerved; I was ſhewn the tree whereon they were executed, when returning from Higueras with Captain Marin. Many ſea-faring men alſo came with us, and behaved very bravely in the wars, but not recollecting their names I do not put them down; I ſhould run indeed into too great prolixity if I were enumerate and deſcribe all the valiant ſoldiers who paſſed over with Cortes; but they were worthy to be recorded in letters of gold.

Laſt of all I put down myſelf, having been in this country antecedent to the coming of Cortes twice, and the third time with him, as I have related; and I give thanks and praiſe to our Lord God, and his Holy Mother the Virgin Mary, who preſerved me from being ſacrificed like the moſt of my companions, that I might now relate and make manifeſt our heroic actions, and enumerate by name our valiant captains and ſoldiers, who conquered this new world, thereby to prevent all the honour and merit from being unjuſtly aſcribed to one perſon.

Of thoſe who came with Narvaez, although ſeveral were very valiant men, I will ſay nothing, becauſe my intention in writing this hiſtory, was but to record the heroic actions of the ſoldiers of Cortes. I will therefore only deſcribe Narvaez himſelf.

Narvaez was about forty two years of age, of tall ſtature and large limbs, a full face, and red beard, and agreeable preſence; very ſonorous and

and lofty in his ſpeech, as if the ſound came out of a vault; a good horſeman, and ſaid to be valiant. He was a native of Valladolid, or Tudela de Duero, and married to a lady named Maria de Valenzuela. He had a conſiderable property in the Iſland of Cuba, where he was a captain. One of his eyes was beaten out in the attack which we made upon him. This gentleman was ſaid to be very cloſe in his diſpoſition. He went to Caſtille to lay his complaints againſt us before his Majeſty, and obtained a royal grant of a government in Florida, where he was loſt and all his property. Thoſe who read the particulars of ſo many gallant officers and ſoldiers, ſuch as I have now deſcribed them, frequently aſk me how it happened that I ſhould remember them perfectly, after the lapſe of ſo many years. To which I reply, that it is natural enough that I ſhould recollect the names of five hundred and fifty companions who were always together, in expeditions, in watches, in battles, and in ſkirmiſhes, and converſing with each other how ſuch a one had been killed at ſuch a place, and how others were carried off to be ſacrificed. For this was the manner in which we communicated with each other, eſpecially after we had come out of a bloody and doubtful battle. And there have been generals who knew the ſoldiers of their armies perſonally, even when there were as many as thirty thouſand men; ſo ſays hiſtory of Mithridates king of Pontus, and another king of the Epirots, and of Alexander, and Hannibal of Carthage, and in our times of the valiant Gonzalo de Cordova called the great captain, and many others. I ſay farther, that I have their figures ſo perfectly pourtrayed in my imagination, that I could draw them as it were to the life, each of them in the manner he entered into battle, like the great Apelles, and theſe famous modern painters Michael Angelo, or the far celebrated Burgales, who is ſaid to be another Apelles. Glory be to God, and the Holy Virgin, who ſaved me from being ſacrificed to idols, to make thoſe things known!

Having enumerated the ſoldiers who paſſed with Cortes, and related in what manner they died, I have now to obſerve, that we were for the

Vaca his treasurer, after the destruction of the armaments. he travelled from the Gulf of
Narvaez was lost in 1527. The first European who penetrated into the interior of America was Cabo de
vaca to that of California, during a period of nine years. As he proceeded westwards he
and the Natives more civilized and settled. The natives of the East coast (from whom Europeans
ormed their opinions were in the lowest stage of misery subsisting on shell fish until the tuna
(opuntia) or Indian fig, which covered the whole interior country was ripe, they then
esorted thither and lived during the season in abundance. He describes the Cheichimeca
or hunting tribes as of gigantic stature. over another corroborates this. V. his voyage
f Florida. The Apallachians seem to be identified with the Cheichimecans. Narvaez
ent in search of some great City called Apallachen where he was to find immense
ealth. when he reached the place pointed out to him it turned out an insignificant
illage. Note this name is of Asiatic derivation. "Palla". excelsus. high, same
ignification with "Bal." "fall" is ancient Persic. unde Palatium &c. in modern
languages - "an" is the asiatic terminative signifying place and is always
sed in the same sense in the Celtic languages. Apachen is a corruption
of this word. Apallachen on the Gulf of Florida and the Apallachian mountains
ains in the interior mark the extent of this tribe, from the Gulf of California. The
hief wore a robe of fine furs reaching to his feet. Cabo de Vaca found the tribes
n the interior living in settled residences and communities, humane hospitable
nd civilized. they were ignorant of the art of potting to stand the fire, which is diffi
lt to explain as it was so generally known to all these Nations but seethed their
ood in wooden troughs with hot stones like the Finns and Scotch and
n a country too where timber was scarce. not their dress of deer skins
as well manufactured. These Spaniards escaped the destruction of Narvaez's
leet. Cabo de Vaca travelled as a pedlar & subsisted thereby. His wares consisted
of hides, red ochre, flint arrow heads, glue, false hair in tassels to ornament
the head, & Indian trinkets of shells. Narvaez was equally distinguished for mis
nduct and misfortune. after being an eye-witness of the total destruction of his
rmy of 2,000 men, he was blown out to sea in an open boat with two servants
s never heard of more. The Spaniards devoured each other to the great horror
d astonishment of the Indians who though used to eat their enemies thus when

explited by ~~Victor~~ had no idea of doing it through want.
These Apalachian mountains are described as of gold and things tat (some
of immense probably.). The City Xaraca went in quest of he supposed to be
60 Leagues up the country from St Helena or Port Royal in Florida
and 20 days journey North west was supposed to be the City of Cofaltan or
Grand Copal probably the Colibola of the Spaniards.
Apachitta, is frequently used for tops of mountains

the moſt part hidalgos, although ſome were not of ſuch clear lineage as others, for all cannot be alike in this world, either in rank or in virtues. But whatever may have been the dignity of our birth, we made ourſelves much more illuſtrious by our heroic actions in the conqueſt of this country, at our own proper coſt, and without any ſupport ſave that of our Lord Jeſus Chriſt who is the true aid and ſuccour. If we look into the antient hiſtory of our own country, we ſhall then ſee that many cavaliers aroſe to dignity and honours, by valiant and faithful ſervices to their king; and I have obſerved that thoſe who thus obtained theſe titles and dignities, did not go into the field without receiving pay and ſalaries for their ſervice; and yet they were rewarded with houſes and caſtles, and lands, and privileges, to them and their deſcendents in perpetuity. Alſo when his Majeſty Don Jayme won parts of his kingdom from the Moors, he made grants thereof to thoſe cavaliers who had aſſiſted him in the conqueſt, from which period they derive their honours and blazons. Thoſe alſo who ſerved under the great captain and the Prince of Orange were rewarded in like manner, and we, even without his Majeſty's knowledge, by our valour gained him this great country. I have here recalled this to recollection, that the world may conſider and ſee our manifold, and good, and notable, and loyal ſervices, to God and the King, and all Chriſtendom, and let them be put in a ballance and weighed, and let it be decided if we are not as worthy of rewards and remunerations, as thoſe cavaliers whom I have mentioned above. And as amongſt thoſe whom I have enumerated there were many valiant companions, I was held in no inconſiderable degree of eſtimation in my day as a ſoldier.

Now curious reader reflect on my life, and in how many battles and dangers I have been, ſince I firſt came to this country, and how I was twice in the hands of the enemy who were carrying me off to ſacrifice, and God gave me force to eſcape out of their clutches; beſides the diſtreſſes by hunger, thirſt, and fatigue, which occur to all who undertake diſcoveries in unknown countries.

It

It is now proper that I ſhould relate the good effects of our exertions for the ſervice of God and his Majeſty, by our illuſtrious conqueſts, in which moſt of our companions loſt their lives, being ſacrificed to the idols Huitzilopochtli and Tezcatepuca. In the firſt place, we purged the land of its wickedneſs and evil cuſtoms, as for inſtance that of human ſacrifice. By the accounts taken by certain reverend Franciſcan fathers, the firſt who came here after Fray Bartholome de Olmedo, it appears, that in the city of Mexico, and ſome adjacent towns in the lake, they ſacrificed every year above two thouſand five hundred human beings, young and old. Of courſe in the whole extent of the country the number thus put to death annually, muſt have been much greater. Their various horrid practices of this nature exceed the powers of my pen to deſcribe. Their curſed adoratories were ſo many that I beſtow on all of them a hearty malediction; it ſeems to me that they reſembled what we have in Caſtille, for as we ſee there in every city, holy churches, and hermitages, and chapels, ſo they had in this country their houſes of idols, devils, and diabolical figures. Beſides theſe, each native, male or female, had two altars, one by the place where he or ſhe ſlept, the other at the door of the houſe, with cheſts containing idols large and ſmall, ſtones, and ſtone knives, with books made of the bark of trees, in which were noted down their records of paſt times. They were much addicted to abominable practices, eſpecially upon the coaſt, and in the ſultry provinces, where boys wore female attire. They eat human fleſh, as we do beef which we buy in the market, and in every town they had wooden cages, wherein they kept and fattened thoſe men, women, and children, who were deſtined for that purpoſe, as was the caſe with all thoſe whom they took in their wars. Inceſt was common amongſt them; and they were drunkards in an extreme. In the province of Panuco in particular, they took the wine into their bodies in the manner a medicine is adminiſtered, by means of a hollow cane; an unheard-of beaſtlineſs! They had as many wives as they pleaſed, and all theſe, and other abominations, it was the will of our Lord Jeſus Chriſt that we ſhould be the inſtruments to ſweep from the land,

among which however was many ceremonials

the sacrificial knife of Egypt, and that used in cutting the bodies of their mummies was of stone —

Maniage of boys in Germany was sometimes used this by this way to Iceland —

The Gods washed their feet, they said, in the wine consumed at their festivals

& this spirit equally as here described among the miserable islanders of the
North West coast — and those also of the South Sea. [redacted] and is
boys. &c. / to be traced to the Scythian origin of them all. Very particular [illegible] at-
-d it. The Spaniards made enquiry upon the N. W. coast of America and the result was that
was not optional in the objects. The natives told them each tribe had a certain number
then one died the rule was that the next male child born succeeded to that situation
Herodotus. Expedition under Oghus Kawa. a. a. C. 700. against the Kimerii, and plun-
-r of the temple of Venus or Ass yria) & the Enarees or diviners —

Paintings. Their Calendars were named Tonal-amatl. Moon-books
Siguenzas Libra Astronomica. art. Cilographica Mexicana — Spies
Mexico — In Yucatan their books consisted of Calendars. Herbals
Zoologies - Chronicles. — Records — (cilographies & astro
nomicals.

Books. Of the different kinds of writing. this was curiologic or natural Representation of things, with
-e additions of symbolic kinds, —

Of these (paintings) what do or may remain are, The collection made by the Archbishops of
-xico for the Emperor Charles the fifth. They were obtained from the natives with great difficulty
-uches gives wooden engravings of them but they want the Symbols (which are in place of)
-ames; (the explanation gives the names) The same deficiency exists in Clavigero's publication.
They have been republished in New Spain three times. — 2dly The collection of Vienna
which was inaccurately copied for Doctor Robertson who has inserted a part in his history.
3dly The very valuable records and paintings obtained and insured by the suppositious
traveller Carreri. — A collection of Culhuan paintings is or ought to be in the Vatican.
Siguenza (who best observed was a man of Science being professor of Mathematics in the Univ-
-ersity of Mexico) fifty years only, after the Conquest compiled, collated and wrote relative to Culhuan his-
-tory and antiquities. his works are lost except fragments contained in Carreri (above mentioned)
and Betancourt. Siguenza traced the Culhuan Story through Asia. he calls them the Children
of Neptune. Boturini compiled as he says & possessed Toltecan records for five centuries previous
the Conquest. These are lost to the public, perhaps totally. Torquemada also compiled from the historical
-ntings of noble Indian families, from those communicated by Motolinea the good friar,
-s ensued immediately after the Conquest, and how the Collections of Sahagun who [illegible] came to

that Country a few years subsequently thereto. Acosta compiled from the same materials and a few years subsequently

There are paintings said to be in the Bodleian library.

Tezcucano was born and passed his life in Mexico & publication of his appeared there in 1680.

Boturini was in Mexico in 1736. and made a great collection of ancient Mexican records but the Spanish Government siezed and detained it and he wrote in Europe from memory. He published in 1746.

Torquemada published his 1614. He obtained materials (among others) from the Grand-son of Montezuma (Ixtlilxochitl) who succeeded Montezuma the 2d. and from descendants of the Royal family of Tezcuco.

Materials were obtained by these compilers also from Don Ferdinando D'Alva Ixtlilxochitl great, great grand Son to Nezualcoyotl K. of Tezcuco & of Toltecan descent.

Paintings

In the Collection of Mendoza or Thevenot published in Purchas the 12th & 22d, paintings of the original were not copied. many emblems or proper names of Cities and omitted — the figures of the years corresponding with the Mexican Kings of Mexitzotle & Montezuma the 2d. are changed as Boturini says who saw originals of them in Mexico. They were republished complete in Mexico in 1770 by Lorenzana.

v. last page — add. topographical & chorographical, codexes, tributary, astrological.

They painted on dressed skins. Some cloth of Maguey fibres of Maguey like canvas. or bark-paper. which was as thick as pasteboard, soft & easy to write on. in long sheets folded like cloth. or like screens. The Mexican paintings at Bologna are on a thick ill dressed sheet of skins.

Indigo their chief colour.

land, ſubſtituting in their places, a good policy and the holy doctrine. It is true that after the lapſe of two years, when the country was ſubjugated and civilized, certain worthy fathers Franciſcans, of good example and doctrine came here, and were followed in three or four years by fathers of the order of St. Dominic, who completed what others had begun, but if it is duly conſidered it will appear that the meed and honour of deſtroying the evil cuſtoms of the land, in juſtice belongs to us the true conquerors, in preference to any other perſons, even though they ſhould be of the holy profeſſion.

Since the deſtruction of idolatry, by the will of God, and with his holy aid, and the good fortune and ſacred chriſtianity of the moſt chriſtian Emperor Don Carlos of glorious memory, and of our monarch and moſt fortunate ſovereign, the invincible King of Spain, our lord Don Philip his dear and much beloved ſon, to whom may God grant years, and much increaſe of dominion, to be enjoyed by him during his fortunate and holy life, and to be tranſmitted from him to his poſterity, there have been baptized in this country, all the natives, whoſe ſouls formerly were ſunk and loſt in the infernal pit. At preſent alſo as there are here many reverend fathers of the different orders, they go through the country preaching and baptizing, whereby the holy Evangeliſts are firmly planted in the hearts of the natives, who confeſs every year, and thoſe ſufficiently advanced in the knowledge of the faith comulgate. The churches alſo and their altars are richly adorned, with all requiſites for holy worſhip, as, croſſes, and candleſticks, wax candles, chalices, cups, plates, and veſſels for incenſe, all of ſilver. The ornaments of the altars and croſſes are of velvet and damaſk, and other rich materials of various colours and workmanſhip, aud embroidered with gold, ſilk, and pearls. The funerals alſo are diſtinguiſhed by their emblematic repreſentations of ſkulls and bones, and with their palls, ſome good, and others not ſo. Each town alſo has its bells, according to its ability. There are choirs alſo in the chapels, of good voices which ſing in concert, tenors, and trebles, and counter-altos. In ſome

places are organs, and moſt have flutes, hautbois, ſackbuts, dulcimers, with trumpets baſe and treble, more in this one province of Guatimala than there are in my native country, which is Old Caſtille. It is a thing worthy to thank God on to ſee the devotion which the natives exhibit when at holy maſs, eſpecially if it is ſaid by fathers of the orders of St. Francis, or of Mercy, who are appointed to the cures of pariſhes. All the natives alſo, men, women, and children, are taught the holy orations in their mother tongue, and when they paſs a croſs, crucifix, or altar, they bow, and falling on their knees ſay a Pater Noſter or Ave Maria. We, the conquerors alſo taught them to keep wax candles lighted before the holy altars and croſſes, for before our arrival they did not know the uſe of wax in making candles. We alſo taught them to behave with reſpect to the reverend fathers, and when they came to their towns, to go out to meet and receive them with lighted wax candles, ringing the bells, and giving them plentifully to eat; and thus they do. They have alſo other holy and good cuſtoms, for on the day of our Lady, or of Corpus Chriſti, and other ſolemn feaſts, when we make proceſſions, moſt of the neighbours of this city of Guatimala go in proceſſion with croſſes and lighted candles, bearing the image of the ſaint who is their patron or patroneſs, as richly dreſſed as they can afford; and they go ſinging the litanies, and other holy orations, and ſound their flutes and trumpets.

The natives of theſe countries have alſo learned the trades uſed amongſt us in Caſtille, and have their ſhops, manufactories, and journeymen, and gain their livelihood thereby. The gold and ſilverſmiths work both in caſt metal, and by the hammer, and excel, as do the lapidaries and painters. The engravers execute firſt rate works, with their fine inſtruments of iron, eſpecially upon emeralds, whereon they repreſent all the acts of the holy paſſion of our redeemer and Saviour Jeſus Chriſt, in ſuch a manner that thoſe who had not ſeen them execute it, would not believe that ſuch works could be done by Indians; inſomuch that according to my judgment, that famous painter of ancient times the

Paintings

Mendoza's collection. Observe the beauty of Peace, the parties holding ends of a belt or rd. so remains of Persepolis the same idea represented by each having hold of a ing. — blowing a shell, a defiance, observe also the expression of the hands.
The annual Orgies also depicted & wrote in blue.
Peter Martyr says of the first books, sent among the presents into Spain from
Cortes, from Montezuma ~~to Charles~~ Nuna Suez. Note he calls Montezuma
ultzuzumas / these pronunciations / Montejo or Puertocarrero / among these

---

The Caucasians ancient and modern. S. S. Islanders Cubans & Peruvians were all given to
the use of oily or animal substance for the purpose of Light.

Lord Arches cup. of Gold presented by ~~Lord Cross~~ Edward Earl of Oxford as Lady
one side is the full face, on another the profile and on a third the back part
the head of a swan
Note the similarity in the physiognomy Egyptian & Cuban painting long ears

other presents brought also a great number of bookes the leaves whereof are made of the inner rynndes or barkes of trees thinner then eyther that of the elme or sallow. These they smeare or anoynt with the pytch of the moltten bitumen and whyle they be soft extend them to what forme them lyst[eth]. When they be cooled & harde, they rubbe them over with a certeyne plaister. It is to bee thoughte they beate the playstes into fine floure & so tempereyng it with some beyndyng moister to make a cruste therwith upon the leaves, whereon they wryte with any sharpe instrument and blotte the same agen with

Zumarraga - says "the Indians are temperate, and ingenious particularly in the art of painting, they are not endowed with mental talents." Zumarraga destroyed their paintings as Idolatrous.
above two millions of Indians in the three Audiences of N. S.

Peach tree, this is a timber tree of South America.
Wheat grows in the temperate but not hot parts of America. there are 2 crops of each times & harvests within the year — Sinaloa a cold country yields 200 for one — Chili 150 for one. it is sold at five pesos a fanega — & this Country supplies Peru. Rosine — Peaches of 16 oz. sold by 20 vc in Peru Chili for the smallest currency. in this 50 different kinds of Pears
— Hernandez — a Mexican Botanist.
Acacia yields the true Gum Arabic.
There are in America before the Conquest Oranges, Lemons

the renowned Apelles, or the modern ones named Michael Angelo and Berruguete, and another a native of Burgos who is in great fame, being as they ſay a ſecond Apelles, could not with their ſubtle pencils equal the works which are done by three Mexican artiſts named Andres de Aquino, Juan de la Cruz, and El Creſpillo. In addition to all theſe things, the ſons of the chiefs uſed to be grammarians, and were learning very well, until they were forbidden by the holy ſynod, under an order of the moſt reverend archbiſhop of Mexico, but many of them are now, notwithſtanding, literate. They are alſo weavers of ſilk, ſtuffs, and cloths, and manufacturers thereof, through all the various ſtages. They have alſo learned to be hatters and ſoap boilers. Two trades only could never be acquired by them; one is, that of making glaſs, the other that of the apothecary; but this is not owing to any defect of natural genius, for they are ſurgeons, and herbaliſts, jugglers, and makers of puppets, and of violins. Tillers of land they were before our arrival; and now they rear ſtock, and break bullocks, and plow, ſow wheat, manure, reap, ſell, and make bread and biſcuit. They have planted their lands and inheritances with the fruit trees of Old Spain, and ſell the fruit, cutting down the unwholeſome peach trees, and overſhading plantains, to make room for quince, apple, and pear trees, which they hold in high eſtimation. We have taught them alſo laws and juſtice, and in conſequence, they every year elect their ordinary alcaldes, regidors, notaries, alguazils, fiſcals, and major domos. They have their halls of common council, with bailiffs, where they meet two days in the week, judging, and ſentencing, and for ſome offences puniſhing and whipping; but for murder and higher crimes, they refer them to the governors, if there is no court of royal audience.

I have further been told by perſons well informed upon the ſubject, that in Tlaſcala, Tezcuco, Cholula, Guaxocingo, Tepeaca, and other great cities, when the natives go to council, gilt maces are borne before the governors and alcaldes, as is done before the viceroys, and they do

juſtice with as much zeal and activity as is uſed among us, priding themſelves thereon, and being very anxious to obtain a knowledge of our laws.

All the caciques have horſes and are rich, and ride, handſomely capariſoned and attended by their pages, through and about their reſpective towns. In ſome towns alſo they exerciſe with the lance on horſeback, run at the ring, and have bull fights, eſpecially on the days of Corpus Chriſti, St. John, St. James, our Lady in Auguſt, or the patron or patroneſs of the town. Many alſo of them will face the bulls be they ever ſo fierce, and are excellent horſemen, eſpecially thoſe of a place named Chiapa de los Indios. Thoſe who are caciques now breed horſes, and uſe them and mules for ordinary purpoſes, conveying by their means, wood, maiz, and lime for ſale. Many of the natives have likewiſe taken up the trade of arrieros or carriers, as is in practice in Caſtille. To conclude, they excel in all manufactures, not excepting that of tapeſtry.

Other advantages and profits are alſo derived from our illuſtrious ſervices. By them our mother country has obtained gold, ſilver, precious ſtones, grain, wool, ſarſaparilla, and hides; all which are annually tranſmitted thither to the benefit of his Majeſty's revenue. I do not include the preſents we at various times ſent, and that which is exported by merchants and paſſengers, for ſince the time that the wiſe King Solomon built the holy temple of Jeruſalem with the gold and ſilver which he cauſed to be brought from the Iſlands of Tarſis, Ofir, and Saba, ancient or modern hiſtory do not record ſuch treaſures to have been derived from any country, as what have been ſent from New Spain; and this I ſay, becauſe although it is notorious that from Peru many millions in gold and ſilver have been obtained, yet at the time of the conqueſt of this country Peru was unknown, nor was it gained until ten years after. We alſo from the firſt continued to ſend to his Majeſty moſt rich preſents, for which and other reaſons, I rate this country

heronge or such like other thynge as marchaant men and noblemen doe
e me accustomed to do with theyr wryting tables made of the wood of
ge trees. The leaves of theyr bookes are not sette in order after the
ner of owres but are extended many rubottes in length, the mater
ygthe they write are contegned in. 20 square tables, not loose but so
nde togither with the tough & flexible clay called bitumen that they
m lyke wooden tables which had bene under the hands of Carpynge
Kalynders. which way soever the boke lyeth open there are two
ges seen and two syden wrytten, with as many lying under them
lyft the boke be unfoulded in length. for under one leafe there are
any leaves joyned together. The formes of theyr letters are nothing
ke unto owres, but are much more crooked and entangled lyke
nto fyshe hookes, knottes, snares, starres, dise, fyshes, and such
er much lyke unto the Egyptian lettres, & wrytten in lynes like unto
es. Here and there betweene the lynes are pictured the shapes of men
dyvers beastes, and especially the images of Kynges & other noble
n. whereby it is thought that in such bookes the facts of theyr

---

The present revenue of Mexico is calculated at 24 millions. Some say 32
illions 400 lbs weight of gold was remitted to Europe in the early period
fter the Conquest. Gold was not in currency, tin and cacao were the medicum
irculation

The Navaros, in South, the Apaches & Seris in N. A. are yet hostile to the
Mexicans — these last are of Sinaloa

Hyeroglyphicks are contayned as well the like among the Mexicans, which
doe expresse the storie of their Actes in pictures that many may be the
more allured to buye such bookes. The conveyance also of their bookes
are artificially wrought and payntes. Which they are shutte they
seeme to differ nothing from our owne in forme. In these bookes are further
more comprehended their lawes, rytes of ceremonies & sorceryes, ex-
positions of astronomy, accompts computations of tymes, wyth
the manner of graffyng &c, sowyng & other Hyeroglyphicks pertayning
to husbandry.

Apices that appeare to have been
playn well understood among the Americans for the first Euro-
pean discoverers found instances of sundrie graffts upon
one tree, ~~among~~ in the west Indian Islandes.

Language. The Indians like the Samscrit, (Greek Persian
& Germane) delight in long sounde words. In the Samscrit this
composition of words is called Sandi (i. e. Junction) one whole
sentence wordes therein of 20 syllables. Sensual roots of words
bisyllabical

Indians and the ordinarie use of the decimal scale of the Hindus

According to a Chinese writer "The ancient character used in hie-
roglyphic were the outlines of visible objects earthly & celestial but as things
merely intellectual could not be represented by these figures the grammarians
of China contrived to represent the various operations of the mind by meta-
phors drawn from the productions of nature.

country higher in eſtimation, becauſe we well know that Peru has been involved in cruel civil wars, whereas we have remained, and will continue to do ſo, our breaſts proſtrate on the earth in ſubmiſſion and allegiance to our lord the King, and ready to expoſe and devote our lives and fortunes in his ſervice.

Let the curious reader conſider the number of cities of New Spain, which from their being ſo many, I will not detail; our ten biſhopries, not including the archbiſhopric of the noble city of Mexico, the three courts of royal audience, together with the ſucceſſion of governors, archbiſhops, and biſhops, our holy cathedrals and monaſteries, Dominican, Franciſcan, Mercenarian, and Auguſtin, our hoſpitals with the extenſive remiſſions and pardons attached to them, and the Santa Caſa of our Lady of Guadeloupe with the holy miracles there performed every day, and let us give thanks to God, and to his bleſſed mother our Lady, for giving us grace and ſupport to conquer theſe countries, where ſo much chriſtianity is now eſtabliſhed.

Let it be alſo remembered, that in Mexico there is a univerſity wherein are ſtudied and learned grammar, theology, rhetoric, logic, philoſophy, and other ſciences. There is alſo a printing preſs for books both in Latin and Romance, and in this college they graduate as licentiates and doctors; to which I might add many other inſtances to enhance the value of theſe countries, ſuch as the mines of ſilver, and other diſcoveries, whereby proſperity and grandeur redound to the mother country. If all which I have now ſaid does not ſuffice, let the wiſe and learned read my hiſtory from beginning to end, and they will then confeſs, that there never exiſted in the world men who by bold atchievement have gained more for their Lord and King, than we the brave conquerors; amongſt the moſt valiant of whom I was conſidered as one, and am the moſt ancient of all. I ſay again that I,—I myſelf,—I, am a true conqueror: and the moſt ancient of all.

I will

I will now propoſe a few queſtions by way of dialogue, with the immortal and illuſtrious goddeſs of Fame, who has ſeen, and proclaims through the world, our manifold, great, and remarkable ſervices, to God, his Majeſty and all Chriſtendom, and cries with a loud voice, ſaying, that it is in juſtice and in reaſon, that we ſhould have better eſtates and ſituations than others who have not ſerved his Majeſty here or elſewhere. The goddeſs alſo enquires where are our palaces, and manſions, adorned with diſtinguiſhing blazons, with ſculptures of our coats of arms, and monumental trophies of our heroic actions, in the ſame manner as thoſe cavaliers have who ſerved their king in Spain, our atchievements being no way inferior to theirs, but on the contrary of moſt eminent merit, and not exceeded by any. The goddeſs of Fame alſo enquires for thoſe conquerors who eſcaped from cruel deaths, and for the tombs and monuments of thoſe who fell.

To theſe queſtions I reply as follows, with much brevity. Oh excellent and illuſtrious Fame! deſired and ſought for by the good and virtuous, but ſhunned and hated by the malicious, why do you not exalt us as our merits deſerve? know, goddeſs, that of five hundred and fifty ſoldiers who left the Iſland of Cuba with Cortes, at the moment that I am writing this hiſtory in the year one thouſand five hundred and ſixty eight no more than five are living, the reſt having been killed in the wars, ſacrificed to idols, or died naturally. In anſwer to your queſtion concerning their tombs and monuments, I tell you that their tombs are the maws of cannibal Indians, who devoured their limbs, and of tigers, ſerpents, and birds of prey, which feaſted on their mangled bodies. Such were their ſepulchres, and ſuch their monuments! but to me it appears that the names of thoſe ought to be written in letters of gold, who died ſo cruel a death, for the ſervice of God and his Majeſty, to give light to thoſe who were in darkneſs, and to procure wealth which all men deſire.

The illuſtrious goddeſs next aſks me for an account of thoſe who came

Dances from page 140

in instrument like a paddle used in the S. S. Islands, Tongatabos in their
es. with which they make corresponding motions & flourishes. we observe
of the use of the fan in dancing by the ancient Celtonians.

came with Narvaez, and with Garray; to which I reply, that the number of the ſoldiers who came with the former was one thouſand three hundred excluſive of the mariners, of whom not more than ten or eleven ſurvive, the reſt having fallen in the wars, and being ſacrificed and devoured. Thoſe who came with Garray, according to my account, including the three companies which landed at St. Juan de Ulua previous to the arrival of Garray himſelf, were in all one thouſand two hundred ſoldiers, moſt of whom were ſacrificed and devoured in the province of Panuco. Fame alſo aſks for the fifteen ſoldiers who accompanied Lucas Vaſquez de Aillon who loſt his life on the coaſt of Florida; to which I reply that they are all dead. I alſo inform you Oh excellent Fame! that there only remain alive at this moment five of the companions of Cortes, and we are very old, and bowed down with infirmities, and very poor, and with a heavy charge of ſons to provide for, and of daughters to marry off, and grandchildren to maintain, and little rent to do it withall! and thus we paſs our lives, in pain, in labour, and in ſorrow.

Having now anſwered your queſtions illuſtrious Fame relative to our monuments, blazons, and palaces, I requeſt of you that henceforward you exalt to more effect your moſt virtuous and excellent voice, in order that our high proweſſes may be made known to the univerſe, and not be obſcured as they are by the ſlanders of the malignant. To this my requeſt moſt virtuous Fame replies, that ſhe will do ſo moſt willingly; and alſo, that ſhe is aſtoniſhed to find that we have not the beſt properties allotted to us in that country which we conquered, and which it was his Majeſty's orders ſhould be given to us, in like manner as the Marquis Cortes was rewarded, not indeed to the ſame extent, but moderately. The goddeſs alſo ſays that the actions of the valiant and magnanimous Cortes are always to be moſt highly eſtimated, and conſidered amongſt thoſe moſt celebrated in hiſtory. She alſo at the ſame time obſerves, that in the hiſtories of Gomara and the Doctor Illeſcas and others, no mention is made of any of us, but they only ſay, "Cortes

" diſcovered,"

diſcovered," and "Cortes conquered;" the captains and ſoldiers remaining unnoticed; but ſhe has been very happy to find that all which I have narrated in my hiſtory is ſtrictly conformable to the truth, and that I follow matter of fact cloſely and literally, without running into ſervile praiſes, and that I do not depreciate many valiant captains and ſoldiers to exalt one, as is the caſe with Gomara and the other hiſtorians. The good goddeſs alſo promiſes me, that ſhe will proclaim theſe truths wherever ſhe ſhall be, and further, that if this my hiſtory is publiſhed, it ſhall be credited, and its authenticity acknowledged wherever it is ſeen or heard, and that it ſhall obſcure and annull all others.

Beſides what I have here propoſed by way of dialogue, a certain doctor, an oydor of the court of royal audience of Guatimala, aſked me how it happened that when Cortes wrote to his Majeſty, and alſo when he went the firſt time to Caſtille, he did not ſolicit for us, ſince we were, under God, the means whereby he acquired his marquiſate and government. To this I then replied, and now ſay, that when his Majeſty gave him the government, he therewith received the better part of this whole country, believing that he was to remain abſolute maſter thereof, and to have unlimited liberty to beſtow or deprive as he thought proper; and this, it is ſuppoſed, was the reaſon why he would not and did not write on the ſubject. Alſo, at the time his Majeſty gave him his marquiſate, he ſolicited the government in the ſame manner that he had held it before; but it was then refuſed him, and he did not think of aſking any thing that might be ſerviceable to us, but only to himſelf.

Further, the veedor and factor, together with other cavaliers of Mexico had repreſented to his Majeſty, that the Marquis had taken for himſelf the beſt provinces and towns of New Spain, and had aſſigned others to his friends and relations newly come from Caſtille, leaving very little for the royal patrimony; whereupon, as we afterwards learned, his Majeſty was pleaſed to order that all the overplus ſhould be divided amongſt

amongſt us, the companions of Cortes, but the Emperor was at that time in Barcelona, preparing to embark for Flanders. Had Cortes immediately after the conqueſt divided this country into five parts, and aſſigned one of the richeſt and beſt of the fifths for his Majeſty; allotted one ſhare and a half for himſelf, for churches, monaſteries, and municipal properties, as alſo for a fund wherefrom his Majeſty could reward cavaliers who ſerved him in Italy or againſt the Turks and Moors; and divided the other two fifths and a half, by grants in perpetuity to us, we ſhould have been all ſatisfactorily provided for. As our Cæſar was ſo chriſtian a monarch, and as the conqueſt of this country coſt him nothing, he would have readily granted us theſe favours. But we at that time did not know how to apply for juſtice, nor to whom to repreſent our ſervices or our injuries, except to Cortes himſelf, who did in the buſineſs as he thought fit. We therefore remained with the little which had been aſſigned us, until we ſaw that Don Franciſco de Montejo who went to wait upon his Majeſty in Europe obtained the appointments of adelantado and governor of Yucatan, eſtates in Mexico, and other rewards. Diego de Ordas alſo, who went to court, obtained an encomienda of St. Jago, and diſtricts in New Spain. Then Don Pedro de Alvarado went to kiſs his Majeſty's feet and was made adelantado and governor of Guatimala and Chiapa, commander of the order of St. Jago, and obtained diſtricts of lands. Laſt went Cortes, who was created a marquis, and appointed captain general of the South Sea.

When we the conquerors therefore ſaw, that thoſe who did not reach his Majeſty's preſence had no one to ſpeak in our favour, we ſent to petition that whatever lands thenceforward fell vacant, ſhould be diſtributed in perpetuities amongſt us, according as our claims were ſubſtantiated, as was the caſe before the firſt court of royal audience held in Mexico, whereof Nuno de Guzman was preſident. His Majeſty's expreſs directions to Nuno de Guzman were, to throw the whole property of New Spain into a maſs, and then to make the diviſions more equal, deducting in due proportion from the immoderate grants of

Cortes. Alſo, that to us, the true conquerors ſhould be given the beſt diſtricts and of moſt rent, leaving the cities and great towns for his Majeſty's property. The Emperor alſo ordered that the vaſſals of Cortes ſhould be counted, leaving no more with him than his patent ſpecified; but what was to be done with the ſurplus I do not recollect. The reaſon why Nuno de Guzman and the oydors did not make this repartition in perpetuity was, that they were miſled by bad adviſers, whom, not to diſhonour, I will not name, but the perſons I have alluded to told them, that if the conquerors once found themſelves provided for, they would ceaſe to reſpect and be dependent on them, as was the caſe while they were compelled to ſupplicate for a ſubſiſtence. As alſo, by retaining, they kept the power of beſtowing the vacant lands at their pleaſure, and to the advantage of their own private intereſt. It is true that as diſtricts fell vacant, Guzman and the oydors conſtantly aſſigned them to conquerors, and coloniſts, to their ſatisfaction; and if that court was ſuperceded, it was on account of the diſputes with Cortes, and of marking free Indians for ſlaves.

In the year one thouſand five hundred and fifty, I being in Old Spain, the licentiate De la Gaſca came from Peru, and with him D. Martin el Regente a Dominican friar; and repairing to the court which was then at Valladolid, his Majeſty promoted the aforeſaid father to the biſhopric of Las Charcas. At this period a council was formed, compoſed of D. Fray B. de las Caſas biſhop of Chiapa, D. Vaſco de Quiroga biſhop of Mechoacan, and other cavaliers who came as agents from New Spain and Peru, together with ſome hidalgos who were brought by buſineſs to the court, and to this council I was alſo called, as being the moſt ancient of the conquerors of New Spain.

Painted by the Aborigines of the Lake of Pazcuaro he died there at Uttacapan at the age of 96 - A.1556 He is called by the Natives "Tata Vasco"

De la Gaſca and the other Peruvians had brought with them great quantities of treaſure, as well for their own uſe as for his Majeſty, the latter being ſent from Seville to Auguſta in Germany where the Emperor then was, and in his company our moſt happy Don Philip king of the

the Spains, our lord his dear and much beloved ſon, whom God guard. At that time certain of the Peruvian cavaliers waited on his Majeſty with the treaſure, and to petition that he would cauſe the allotment of lands in perpetuity to be made. It ſeems alſo, that previous to this time a petition to the ſame effect had been preſented from New Spain by Gonzalo Lopez, and Alonzo de Villanueva, who had been ſent as procuradors or agents from Mexico. It ſo happened that juſt then the biſhopric of Palencia fell vacant, and was beſtowed on the licentiate De la Gaſca who was alſo made Conde de Pernia, on account, as was ſaid at the court, of the ſervices rendered in Peru, which was then at peace.

His Majeſty was pleaſed, in regard to the repartition of lands in perpetuity, to order, that the Marquis de Mondejar preſident of the royal council of the Indies, the licentiates Gutierre Velaſquez, Tello de Sandoval, Gregorio Lopez and Brivieſca, and the Doctor Hernan Perez de la Fuente, oydors of that court, together with cavaliers of other royal councils ſhould aſſemble, to conſider, and ſee how the repartition ſhould be made, as was beſt for the ſervice of God and for his Majeſty's intereſt.

When theſe cavaliers were met in the houſe of Pero Gonzalez de Leon, where was eſtabliſhed the royal council of the Indies, it was propoſed in that very illuſtrious aſſembly, that the perpetual repartition ſhould take place in New Spain and in Peru; I am not certain that Grenada and Bobotan were included, but am inclined to think that they were, and the reaſons offered in ſupport of the meaſure were holy and good. It was argued that if the lands were granted in perpetuity, the proprietors would for their own intereſts treat the natives better, and pay more attention to the converſion of them to our holy faith. That if they ſuffered from ſickneſs or misfortune they would be attended to like their children, and the rents alleviated. The proprietors would alſo go into improvements, planting vines and breeding cattle; diſputes

and litigations about lands and boundaries would ceaſe, and the office of viſitadors or inſpectors would be unneceſſary. The minds alſo of the ſoldiers would be tranquillized, in knowing that the preſidents and governors had not the power of beſtowing lands when they fell vacant, on their clients and favourites. His Majeſty alſo in doing this would exonerate his royal conſcience, in recompenſing thoſe who had ſerved him faithfully. To theſe, many other good reaſons were added. It was alſo propoſed to deprive the turbulent and rebellious in Peru of their diſtricts. After all this had been well debated and conſidered in the illuſtrious aſſembly, we proceeded to give our opinions in favour of the perpetual repartition.

It was then oppoſed by the Biſhop of Chiapa, his aſſociate Fray Rodrigo of the order of St. Dominic, the Biſhop of Palencia, the Marquis of Mondejar, and two oydors of the royal council of his Majeſty. The Marquis of Mondejar did not however ſpeak upon the occaſion, but remained as it were on the look out to ſee which party was likely to carry the queſtion. The arguments uſed by the others againſt the repartition were, that many in Peru had now life eſtates, who ſo far from deſerving perpetuities, merited confiſcation, and that if peace was once eſtabliſhed in that country, if the ſoldiers who were unprovided for ſaw that there was no fund for that purpoſe, they would become mutinous and cauſe new troubles. The Biſhop of Mechoacan who was of our party hereupon aſked the licentiate De la Gaſca, how it had happened that he did not chaſtize the mutineers as he very well knew them; whereas on the contrary he had given them lands. To this the other replied, laughing, that he had hanged and quartered many of them, and thought it no ſmall atchievement to have eſcaped from amongſt them ſafe and ſound. More was alſo ſaid on this ſubject.

It was propoſed, and approved by many preſent, that the few of the real conquerors of New Spain who now remained, including thoſe who came with Cortes, with Narvaez, and with Garray, ſhould receive

ceive perpetuities, referring the other matter to future conſideration. As ſoon as this propoſition was made, the other party moved that all further proceedings ſhould be poſtponed until the return of his Majeſty to Caſtille, becauſe in an affair of ſuch importance his preſence was neceſſary. It was then urged by the Biſhop of Mechoacan and other cavaliers, as well as myſelf, that the perpetuities might be granted in New Spain, leaving the Peruvian procuradors to act as they thought fit, this being conformable to his Majeſty's declarations and inſtructions in our favour. This now brought on much debate; for we inſiſted that whatever reaſons might be againſt the granting perpetuities in Peru, could be of no avail againſt us in New Spain, conſidering our great ſervices to his Majeſty and all Chriſtendom. But all we ſaid was of no effect with the members of the royal council of the Indies, the Biſhop Fray Bartholome de las Caſas, Fray Rodrigo his aſſociate, and the Biſhop of Las Charcas. They ſaid that on the return of his Majeſty from Auguſta in Germany every thing ſhould be arranged to the ſatisfaction of the conquerors, and thus the affair dropped for the preſent.

Intelligence of theſe matters being conveyed by expreſs to Mexico, the conquerors there propoſed to ſend procuradors, to apply to his Majeſty for our intereſt, excluſively. In conſequence, after my return from the court I was written to, here, in this city of Guatimala, by Captain Andres de Tapia, P. Moreno Medrano, and J. de Limpias Caravajal "the deaf," giving me an account of their intention, and of thoſe conquerors concerned with them, amongſt whom I was put down as one of the moſt ancient. I accordingly went round with the letter to the other conquerors ſettled in this city, to raiſe a ſum by ſubſcription for the purpoſe. This project failed from want of money. It was then determined that the conquerors in Mexico, conjointly with the whole of the community, ſhould ſend procuradors to Caſtille; but neither was this carried into effect. At a ſubſequent period, our unconquered king and lord Don Philip, whom God preſerve, and may he live many years in augmentation of power, was pleaſed to command by his

his royal ordinances that the conquerors and their poſterity ſhould be provided for, attending in the firſt inſtance to thoſe who were married, as may be ſeen in the royal cedules.

When I had written out fairly this my hiſtory, two licentiates requeſted me to lend it to them for their peruſal, in order that they might know in detail the occurrences which happened in the conqueſt of New Spain, and alſo that they might ſee what difference exiſted between my account, and thoſe of Gomara and the Doctor Illeſcas, relative to the heroic actions of the Marquis Del Valle. I accordingly preſented this book to them for their peruſal, with the reſpect which is due to ſcholars from a poor illiterate perſon like myſelf, deſiring them at the ſame time to make no alteration whatever herein, as what I had written was the ſtrict truth. As ſoon as they had read it, one of them who was a great rhetorician, and vain of his knowledge, began to praiſe the book, and expreſſed his ſurpriſe at my memory, and at my being able to carry in it ſuch a ſeries of matter, from the time I firſt came to theſe countries.

The licentiates alſo obſerved, that in regard to my ſtile or language, it was conformable to that in ordinary uſe in Old Caſtille, and that as ſuch it was the more agreeable, not being embarraſſed with flowery affected phraſes, ſuch as are made uſe of by hiſtorians in general. They alſo obſerved that it ſeemed to them as if I praiſed myſelf greatly, in the battles which I give an account of, whereas I ought to have left that to be done by others; and that I ſhould have given my witneſſes, teſtimonies, and quotations, as authorities for what I wrote, and not have ſaid drily, "that I did; this I ſaw;" it not being conformable to the cuſtom of hiſtorical writing; for I am not a witneſs for myſelf. To theſe obſervations I then replied, as I do now, that in the year one thouſand five hundred and forty the Marquis Del Valle wrote a letter to his Majeſty giving an account of me and my ſervices, how I had come twice to this country on voyages of diſcovery previous to his expedition, how

how he had often been an eye witneſs of my conduct as a brave ſoldier in battle as well in Mexico as in other places, how I accompanied him in his expedition to Honduras and Higueras, and many other particulars which to avoid prolixity I will not relate. The moſt illuſtrious viceroy alſo, Don Alonzo de Mendoza wrote to his Majeſty informing him of what he had learned relative to me from the captains by whoſe ſide I fought, and his account was in all reſpects conformable to that of the Marquis Del Valle. Proofs to the ſame purport were alſo preſented on my part to the royal council of the Indies in the year one thouſand five hundred and forty.

Now, ſaid I, gentlemen licentiates, are not the Marquis Del Valle, the viceroy D. A. de Mendoza, and my proofs, good witneſſes? but if they will not ſuffice, I will produce you the Emperor our lord Don Carlos the fifth, who by his royal letter, ſealed with his royal ſeal, commanded all viceroys and preſidents, that reſpecting the many and good ſervices which I had rendered, benefits ſhould be conferred upon me and mine. The original letters are now in my poſſeſſion, and the copies depoſited at court in the archives of the ſecretary Ochoa de Luyado. Such was my anſwer to the obſervation of the licentiates.

But to return to my ſubject, if more teſtimony is wanting look at New Spain which is three times larger than our Caſtille, and more thickly inhabited by Spaniards, and the great wealth which it ſends to Caſtille. But I have obſerved that the hiſtorians Gomara and Illeſcas never choſe to relate our heroic actions, leaving all our value and honours in the dark, where they would have remained were it not for this my true hiſtory, and aſſigning ſuch great merit to Cortes; in which, although they were right to a certain degree, yet they ought not at the ſame time to have forgotten us.

Of the achievements of Cortes a part alſo of the honour falls to me, for I was one of the moſt forward in every battle by his ſide, as I was

was in many others when he ſent me under different captains to conquer provinces, as is found written in my hiſtory, how, when, and where.

Alſo when Cortes returned to Europe the firſt time, to kiſs his Majeſty's feet, he informed him that he had many valiant captains and companions in the Mexican wars, and who he believed did not yield to the moſt famous in ancient hiſtory. Of this praiſe a proportionate ſhare falls to me. Further, at Algiers, he ſaid much in praiſe of his companions the conquerors. Of this I come in for my portion, as I was one of them.

As to what the licentiates ſaid, that I praiſe myſelf ſo much, and that I ought to leave it to be done by others, I ſay, in common life it is the cuſtom of neighbours to ſpeak of each other as each deſerves; but he who never was in the wars with us, nor ſaw them, nor heard of them, how can he ſpeak of us? were the birds which flew over our heads while in battle to give accounts of us? or the clouds? who then was to ſpeak our praiſes but we ourſelves? Indeed gentlemen licentiates ſaid I had you found that I detracted from the honour due to one of our valiant captains or ſoldiers, and aſcribed it to myſelf, then you might juſtly blame me. But the fact is that I do not praiſe myſelf ſo much as I ought.

I will now make a compariſon, although on one ſide the ſubject of it is very high, and on the other a poor ſoldier like myſelf. Hiſtorians ſay that the great emperor and warrior Julius Cæſar was in fifty three pitched battles. I ſay that I was in many more battles than Julius Cæſar, as may be ſeen in this my hiſtory. Hiſtorians alſo ſay that Julius Cæſar was brave and active in battle, and that when he had time, he at night committed to writing with his own hand, his heroic actions, although he had many hiſtorians, not chuſing to entruſt the office to them. Truly this happened many years ago, and may or may not be the caſe; whereas what I relate occurred yeſterday as it may be ſaid.

It

It is therefore not extraordinary if I relate the battles in which I fought, that in future ages it ſhould be ſaid, "thus did Bernal Diaz del Caſtillo," in order that my ſons and their poſterity ſhould enjoy the praiſes of their anceſtor, in the manner that many cavaliers and lords of vaſſals in the preſent day, do the fames and blazons of their predeceſſors. I will however drop this ſubject leſt the detracting malicious, to whom theſe things are odious, ſhould charge me with digreſſing too much. There are alſo conquerors now living to contradict me if I were in error, and the world is ſo malevolent that any ſuch thing could hardly paſs without animadverſion; but the narrative itſelf is the beſt teſtimony of its veracity.

I will now enumerate and particulariſe the various battles and other matters of warfare in which I was preſent. They are as follows. At the point of Cotoche, with Captain F. H. de Cordova. At Champoton, a battle, wherein half our companions were killed. In Florida, where we landed to procure water. Under Captain J. de Grijalva, a ſecond battle in Champoton. In my third voyage under Cortes, at Tabaſco, two pitched battles. On our arrival in New Spain, the battle of Cingapacinga. Shortly after, three pitched battles with the Tlaſcalans. The affair of Cholula. On our entry into Mexico I was at the ſeizure of Montezuma; I do not mention it as an affair of war, but on account of its great boldneſs. In four months after, the attack upon Narvaez whom we under Cortes defeated with two hundred and ſeventy ſix men, he having one thouſand three hundred. The relief of Alvarado who was beſieged by the Mexicans, when they made war upon us during eight days and nights, and killed above eight hundred and ſeventy ſoldiers; I conſider ſix battles as having happened during this period, at which I was preſent. The battle of Obtumba. A battle at Tepeaca. Under Cortes a battle at Tezcuco. Two field battles, in one of which I was wounded in the throat by a lance. Two actions concerning the fields of maize. In the expedition round the lake when we made that raſh and inconſiderate attack upon the fortreſſes named the

rocks of the marquis. The battle of Cuernavaca. Three battles at Suchimilco. The ſiege of Mexico which laſted ninety three days, during which I was engaged, as I find by my account, in above eighty battles and ſkirmiſhes. After the conqueſt when I was ſent to pacify the provinces of Guacacualco, Chiapa, and the Zapotecans. In Chamula and Cuitlan, two engagements. In Teapa and Chimatan two engagements; here I was wounded badly in the throat. I forgot to mention in its place, how, after our flight from Mexico we were purſued for nine days, and fought four battles. In the Expedition to Higueras and Honduras, an action at Culacotu, where my horſe which coſt me ſix hundred crowns was killed. After my return to Mexico I went againſt the Zapotecans and Minxes in the mountains. I do not mention numberleſs other engagements and dangers in which I have been, as it would be endleſs to detail them all. Nor do I chuſe to ſay how I was one of the firſt who came to lay ſiege to Mexico, three or four days at leaſt before Cortes.

I have therefore according to this account been preſent in one hundred and nineteen battles and engagements; and it is not extraordinary if I praiſe myſelf, as what I ſay is the mere truth. Nor are theſe old ſtories or hiſtories of Romans, of many ages paſt; for evident and true are the many and notable ſervices which I have rendered; firſt to God, then to his Majeſty, and all Chriſtendom; and I give thanks and praiſes to our Lord Jeſus Chriſt, that I eſcaped from all dangers, to make theſe things manifeſt; and I alſo ſay, and praiſe myſelf thereon, that I have been in as many battles and engagements as, according to hiſtory, the Emperor Henry the fourth.

FINIS.

Vishnoo Incarnations

For the Giant Bolee of the first, Dwarf ape or Sattee Dug - See
iatic Researches - V. 1. p. 129 - note also - there - religious system,
Opposition to Brahminicism. - see especially page 142

dra. God of the Firmament was dethroned for a time by the
il Spirits A. A. R. V. 138

The Ten principal Avatars.

1. As the Sword fish. towing the Ark. with Menu or Noah. & recovering the lost Vedas writing

2. As the Tortoise. (supported by Sir W. Jones Astronomical)

3 as the Boar.

passover vapour [illegible] Hiranyaxa &c

4. The Lion. Punishing impiety. in the person of the giant with the Golden Heart this appears to relate to Bacchus in the war of the Titans ag^st Jupiter probably a former Bacchus — King of Egypt

5 The dwarf. Subdued the powerful Bali by guile. B.C. Sacontala p. 299- one Event

6 Para Su Rama "Thou bathest in pure water of the blood of Chatriyas other births "the world whose Offences are removed & who are relieved from the pain of

7 Rama Chandra. Subdues the 10 headed Demon. King of Ayodha a.c. 1070. in the interval between the Silver & Brazen Ages. / ~~silver age 870 years~~ brazen age 870 years duration

8 Bala Rama. Inventor of the plough. Bacchus. a.c. 1200.

9 Buddha. Reformer of the Sanguinary ritual of the Veda — a.c. 1000. whose era is differently fixed. a. 1366. 1036. 1027. 1031. 959. a earthen age commences

10. Ki to come.

Vyasa compiler of the Vedas lived in the Era of Ramachandra or Valmiki. a.a.c. 1170.

The 4th avatar seems rather to relate to the Giants war.
9th avatar said by S.W.J. to be Isaac "Issa" the Egyptian King Mejator a Conqueror. c. an A Visit
6th Avatar Extirpation of the Military Cast also said the persecution of the Budsoists.

Note - In ancient Statues of Venus she was figured with one foot on a tortoise - in her character of Nature - the Syrian Astarte, who loved Adonis - or the Sea. She sprang from the Sea and Saturn his emasculation by Jupiter - alias Urania, &c.,

NOTES AND ERRATA.

the 4th Avatar stands between the Golden and Silver age, and probably relates to the Babelian dispersion - and the Giants war

The author frequently mistakes dates; it has been therefore judged necessary to insert them in the heads of chapters according to the most correct accounts.

and the Deluge

Page 25. chapter 3. although the appointment of Cortes took place before, the fleet did not sail for the continent until 1519.

Brahmins are second born

Page 31. Line 19. *instead of* "who took Guatimotzin" *read* whom Guatimotzin took.

interval between 6th

—— 74. —— 18. *instead of* "got" *read* gone.

—— 76. —— 8. from the bottom, *instead of* "his" *read* this.

of the Avatar

—— 145. —— 7. *between* "to" *and* "which" *insert*, the flat summit of.

—— 147. —— 3. *from the bottom* "invalids" *note*, suffering by the disease ascribed to Hispaniola.

supposed three generations

—— 227. —— 8. *instead of* "hundred" *read* thousand.

—— 243. —— 17. *after* "friends" *insert* to whom they were given by us.

—— 253. —— 16. *instead of* "Guatimotzin now" *read* Coadlavaca, late.

—— 440. —— 2. *instead of* "our" *read* their.

—— ibid. —— 4. *instead of* "we" *read* they.

—— 450. —— 14. *instead of* "Figuero" *read* Herrera.

the Incarnation probably relates to Veneus & Indra.

Earlier age

LONDON, PRINTED FOR J. WRIGHT, PICCADILLY, BY J. DEAN, CONGLETON.

This Buddha of Jayadeva was the Sanya Sinha or Lion of Sanya who though he forbad the sacrifice of cattle which the Vedas enjoin was believed to be Vishnoo himself in a human shape, and that another Buddha one pretender of his followers in a later age attempted to overset the whole system of the Brahmans and was the cause of that persecution from which the Bauddhas are known to have fled to very distant regions. J. W. J.

Note this agrees with the migration of the Goths under Woden. whom however W. J. thinks the first Buddha Sanya or the Egyptian Sesonchis

1. Incarnation Brahma - Creation.
2d Sword fish. (Devotion or Divine love) towing the ark with eight persons in it (Noah) by the cable of the serpent the Emblem of eternity or renovation -
3. as a boar (symbol of religion, the two grand objects of sacrifice being the symbol of the bristles of the boar) by which the submerged earth was raised out of the waters

Note Jeypur Rama - probably Ramchandra
who lived in the second or Tretan age. and conquered
Ravan King of Lanca or Ceylon
Three Ramas - two Kings & Heroes
the 3d a civilizer & cultivator - supposed Bacchus
Gr Bacchus. Princeps Bacchus of Bactriana

14: probably relates to the migration of the Brahmins from Iran.

x the military cast are supposed to have been expelled by the Brahmins & to have founded the Kingdom of Shedi in North China, previous to their invasion of Maha China

+21 i the 10th avatar in ordinary computation & long subsequent to the Era of Ramchandra alias Bacchus

On the Avatar's. descents of the divine spirit, or incarnations

numerable descents - principal 22. including the 10 usually enumerated.
slumbering on the waters. whose navel Brahma
sprang in whom was contained the germs of worlds. Brahma the
image of God. virtue & devotion. [or otherwise] first
as a Sword fish towing the
Ark —
2. as the Boar.
3 Haredha. prescribed good & proscribed evil.
4. In Penance as Nara Narayenaic
5. As Capila inventor of Numeration. (sankhya)
6 Datta treya. son of Atri & Anusuya instructs in Science
Pralhad & his disciples in Alaki.
7 As Indra Chief of the Deva. {God of the firmament
8 Born of Meru devi to instruct in virtue. Meru devi & Bauhey
9 Prithu to Milk the earth personified as a Cow.
10. A fish in the Oceans, saves the Menu vaivasvata.
11 a tortoise supports the Mountain Mandara with which the
Gods churn the ocean 3d avatar
12. Dwanantari, bringing ambrosia from the ocean
13 A nymph fascinating the Titans } This is Thor & Jupiter
14 Nara-Lion destroying them } Bauhey —
15 a dwarf deluding Bali the Mighty 2. Maha bali of Iran
16 Parasurama extirpating the Military Cast +
17 Vyasa, partitioning the veda & promulgating it
18 Ramchandra conquering Lanca, Ceylon
19. 20. Rama & Creeshna (9th)
21. To appear as Budha in the land of Kikata at the era of
Cali yug. to destroy the impious
22. at the end of Cali. to destroy oppression. which is the tenth
avatar of the Hindus —

follow

Vishnoo.

Born of Mahamaya. Deva. father Suddhana Rajah in Jambudwipa or Madya desa, alias middle region between mount Imaus & the River Narmada or Nerbudda, in which was Kicata.
Budsoos now promulgated in Ceylon a.a.c 543
Bud. alias Saya.
— Son of Suddhana, son of the Sun & King of Ayodha or Oud — he is also described as father of Suddhana
He deluded the Giants & prevented them from the Veda.
Budsoists priests, celibatic & eaters of animal food. in reverse to the Brahmens
Rawan King of Lanca or Ceylon defeated & killed by Rama King of Ayodha or Oud. 9th avatar, a.a.c 2387. or 18th

Deities as to Bhoodh. His devouring the Titans as a nymph — notes this Tradition of Thor among the Goths & of the war of Jupiter with the Giants of the Greeks.
A method of reconciling this inconsistency of the coincidence of these fables what as is supposed Bhoodh did not exist Jam is — to conclude that the fable of Thor's discus & the Giants war of the Goths & Gauls with both of whom it is ascribed to Jupiter is of great antiquity and was subsequently engrafted by the Hindu Brahmens upon the History of Bhoodh.
"a particular Buddha must be descended in the family of Saya." W. J. V. I. p 262. Saya was the Egyptian Osyris.
Deva is the Arcadian Apollo, surnamed Nomios or the legislator any other than Bhoodh as Creeshna?
The Brahmins might have seized down at a later period all great events and characters into incarnations of the divine Spirit

Aquilon the Interpreter Enciso Valdivia & Nuñez &c

4th voyage of Columbus. A. 1502. 11th of the ides of May he sailed from Cadiz and came the Gulf of Paria. After the death of Columbus K. Ferdinand gave a [illegible] license to all Spaniards & a Special commission to Diego de Nicuesa & Alonso Ojeda to Conquer that Country.

[illegible] ides of Dec.r Ojeda sailed from Hispa. with 300 Soldiers — and arrived at Columbus's Porten Carthagenia. where he was defeated by the Indians. Nicuesa followed him with 800 men. Caribana is in this Country — Ojeda being wounded went to Hispaniola where he died. Nicuesa deserted his armament on board a Caravel. After their departure arrived Enciso who had been left in Hispa. by Ojeda to follow him with refreshments & provisions. The troops remained in great distress after the departure of their Chiefs — one Francisco Pizarro seems to have been appointed to the Command.

The Gulf of Uraba where they were is 24 Miles broad. Nicuesa was to be commanded the West & Ojeda the East side. & 9 degrees from the Line. The troops now divided part going to occupy the West side of the Gulf.

Nicuesa it is said sailed from his armament in a Caravel, this was stranded & he wandered on the coast for 70 days [A. 2d dead of P. M. C. 59.] but was relieved. & rejoined the armament.

Enciso appears to have succeeded Pizarro, & to have been superplanted by Vasco Nunez de Balboa. [about A. 1510]

Nicuesa was found at Port Brasnol. the 700 men were now reduced to 80. he was received, but afterwards banished being forced on board a Ship by Vasco Nunez with 17 men. See Agreeable account.

Vasco Nunez was therefore now in the Command, having also displaced Enciso, appointing Valdivia to succeed him.

Vasco conquered the various Kings & Nations of that Country.

N. B Valdivia was lost at Sea

Pedro Arias was appointed to command at Tierra Firma

Page 244.

Dog apis of Egypt. Teo-Zoonoc. of Cuba.

Seals found in Ireland. many are supposed extinct. Lets have been known from Ireland

"The remains of architecture & sculpture in India seem to prove an early connexion between this country (India) & Africa, the pyramids of Egypt the colossal statues described by Pausanias the Sphinx & the Harmer Lanis which last bears a great resemblance to the Varaha avatar or the incarnation of Vishnoo in form of a Boar indicate the Style and mythology of the same indefatigable workmen who formed the vast excavations of Canarah, the various images and temples of Budda and the idols which are continually dug up at Gaya & its vicinity, the letters on these appear partly of Indian, & partly of Phenician or Ethiopic origin" & x see the Greek Alphabet in Brand

Names of Indian Nations

Toltecas.
Chochemecas
Nicolhuas
Olmecas
Xicallancas.
Otomi
Matlatzincas
Tarascans. (Michuacans)
Mazahuas. (Otomi some dialect)
Mixtecas
Zapotecas
Chiapawese
Colimpcas
Cuitlatecas
Jopas
Huaxtecas
Popolocas
Chinantecas
Totonacas

Carlos de Siguenza y Gongora — ~~[illegible]~~

Professor of Mathematics in the university of Mex.o 1668, to 1693

His works

1. Mexican Cyclography

2. Hist.a of the Chichimecan Empire, or accounts of the first colonies that passed from Asia to America, from Mexican paintings, & of the most ancient Nations of that Empire.

3.d On the annunciation of the Gospel in America by St. Thomas, founded on the traditions of the Indians, crosses & other Monuments.

4. Genealogy of the Mexican Kings from the ~~[illegible]~~ ~~century~~ seventh century of the Christian aera.

5 Critical annotations on Torquemada & B. Diaz

These works such as were in manuscript lost or left payments in Gemelli —

Betancourt & Florencia. — Fr. B. Betancourt in his judicious abridgment of Torquemada made

De Solis

Pedro Fernandez del Pulgar, succeeded de Solis as historiographer wrote "The true History

Lorenzo Boturini Benaducci of Milan — lived 8. years in Mex. going thither Adds travels in North America. ~~[illegible]~~

Diego De Godoi

S. Complete introduct. to the Philosophy of Confucius. Paris 1687

of the Sequestration of R. S.
Solely for literary purposes.

Cortes wrote four Letters upon the Conquest to Charles 5th. the first was printed in Seville in 1522 - they are published in Spanish, Latin, & Tuscan

Alfonso de Ojeda, commissary to the Native auxiliaries at the Siege -
Alfonso de Mata — both these wrote upon the Conquest
The anonymous Conqueror -
Gomara, printed in Saragossa 1554
Toribio Motolinea v. supra. — Toribio de Benevente. a Franciscan & one of the first twelve sent to N. S. — wrote "The History of the Indians of N. S. one Vol. folio. — a work, not printed as the Calvan calendar & others
Andrea de Olmos - a treatise on Mx. Antiquities
Sahagun's works - seem to be lost. Clavijero
Acosta's works are unpublished - f.o
Juan de Tobar, unpublished supplied materials to Acosta.
Acosta. natural & moral Hist.y of the Indies. Seville 1589. Barcelona 1591
Diego Muñoz Camargo. Hist.y of Tlascalla.
Oviedo Spain / Manuscript / his History dated how 1064
Mexican paintings a volume in the library of Bologna
Las Casas, a Manuscript of his in the library of the Dominicans of Valdolid
Observations Curieuses sur la Cte de Mexique. Anonymous
Mendoza's collection — N.B. the 36 paintings begin with the 13th. and end with the 48th — is the copy of them published by Thevenot the 21st & 22d are wanting and for the most part the figures of the tributary cities The Copy published in 1770 in Mexico is still less perfect for it wants the 22. 22d, 38th. 39th & 47th. of Mendoza's collection besides a number of errors in the interpretations. but it has the advantage over Thevenot of having the figures of the cities and of being elegantly engraved

Briga Romagnosi a dragon always marks the period of eclipse tome unmonnied
anier . Mythologie
ude History of the Slavonians
ogues origin of the Chinese.
Père Joseph — China. Passage in Chinese history re
ive to the Migration of the redundant population of the
ovinces of North China to people the Islands of the
ean

Languages of which are Grammars & Dictionaries

Mexican. by Gimenez, Olmos, Sahagun, Molina, Tapia Centeno, Rangel Reinoso, Carochi, Arevalo, Davila Padilla, Betancourt Paez, Tovar Montezuma, Paredes, Castelo, Perez Cabrera, Aldana de Guevara, Fischer, Aperibamos Cortes Cano

Otomi. Rangel, Palacios, Lombi, Sanchez, Ribero, Dio Carlos,

Tarascan. Gilbert, Sierra, Lagunas

Zapotecan. Del Pozo, Aguero.

Mixtecan - Los Reyes

Maya - Acosta - Ciudad Real - Villafranco - Beltran -

Totonaquean Olmos, Diaz Deleaya.

Popolucan - Sarabia

Matlatzincan De Castro

Huastecan, Olmos, Tapia.

Mixe - Quintana

Coxigual Villagomez

Tarascan Figueroa, de Rosa

Zapotecan Figueroa, Guadalajara, Real Dicc

Grazis Graeci. a Milanese Jesuit. a valuable grammar published
the middle of the 17th. Century - printed in the pica. contains ancient
Grecian poetry.

Torquemada. Madrid. 1614. 3. vol. f°. a complete work

Arriago } follows Acosta. printed in Mex. 1606
Martinez }

Boturini. a catalogue of his collection of materials published at Madrid in 1746

Eguiara, Bibliotheca Mexicana

a collection of Mexican paintings said to be in the Vatican Library.
another in the Vatican.

Gomara

Garcia, origin of the Indians — Republished. Madrid 1729. folio

Ixtlilxochitl. } writing on Mexican Hist. } Fernando Pimental — son of Coanacotzin — a Mexican Historian
Chimalpain }
Tezozomoc }
Veja }
Ayala }

manuscripts in the library of the Jesuits of St. Peter & Paul

Gage

Corral

Vaggnez.

Arias Villalobos — a Lisbon in verse

Pomar — supplied Torquemada

Christoval Chaves Carbellejo. 1632. 1. vol. f°. Origin of the Indians of Peru

Columbia Magazine 1789. V. 1. Jno. Watt's account of the Indian antiquities
their Arts is under cultivation for Magazine —

Father Burgoa. a Jesuit wrote a chronicle on Mexican History

Father Cogolludo. Franciscan. a history

Dr. Sepulveda's called the bloody book

~~Francisco~~ Monardes. a physician of Seville, on the medicinal articles

Account of the European Settlements in the west Indies was written by Ed. Bryan

Knapton's voyages, London, a. 1711. 2 vol 4 to. travels contained
the Philippines, Sarmiento Straits of Magellan, Lawson Carolinas

Sketch of a general history of New Spain.

Fernando D'Alva

Ionies in Shakeness

the river Muskingum near Marietta. The trees on them have been felled and

copied from N. S. two treatises.

First mention of potatoes. Hawkins's voyage.
Del Corro. Magalhaens's pilot a Biscayan first circumnavigated the Globe.
Augustin de Villa Nueva.
Poisoned arrows. Negroes use wounds of by a clove of garlic. Some obtained poor drink
Sheratepee. Mountain of Soles, both seas visible from.
A book translated on Conq. Mx. 1578. by F. Nicholls
Sandoval's history is doubtful authority.
Reasoning of Bernier on the savidity of the cow just. Grossness reasoning just.
Origine des Langues Compte de Gebelin
Bibliotheca Americana 1789.
Bossu's Louisiana
Pittman's American travels
Note. Mr. Pherson's anachronisms. Forgot with the Danes
Steller's worship of Kamtska.
Hakluyt was chaplain to the English Embassy at Paris; he brought the Colect
of Mendoza, sent to Sea Sr. which was taken by french Men of war and obtai
by Shark or Stevens the King of France's Geographer after his death for 20 Crowns
Hakluyt procured Master William Lorke to translate it. (Sr Walter Raleig
name.)
Ordaz a writer on the conquest.
Garcia a dominican searched curiously for affinities between the Indians & the
American Letters.
Gonzalo Hernandez Oviedo a writer on America & Columbus's piracy with Columbus
Ferdinand Columbus, historian to his father
P. Martyr ab Angleria & connected with Alamiros, Montejo, Puerto Carrero-
Acosta natural & moral History
Figueroa a Theatre of Political virtues - Figueroa otherwise named. Engiva.
Kircher Oedipus Egyptiacus
Grotius Inca
Adrian Walton preface to Polyglott bible
Sahagun published in 1540
Valades. Rhetorica Christiana (Lat.) many Mx. Antiquities